

Eighth Edition

2016  
MLA  
Update

Rules *for*  
**WRITERS**



Diana Hacker  
Nancy Sommers

# Brief Menu

## **The Writing Process** 1

- 1 Exploring, planning, and drafting 3
- 2 Revising, editing, and reflecting 30
- 3 Building effective paragraphs 49

## **Academic Reading, Writing, and Speaking** 65

- 4 Reading and writing critically 66
- 5 Reading and writing about multimodal texts 80
- 6 Reading and writing arguments 91
- 7 Speaking confidently 119

## **Clarity** 125

- 8 Active verbs 126
- 9 Parallel ideas 129
- 10 Needed words 133
- 11 Mixed constructions 137
- 12 Misplaced and dangling modifiers 140
- 13 Shifts 147
- 14 Emphasis 152
- 15 Variety 163
- 16 Wordy sentences 166
- 17 Appropriate language 170
- 18 Exact words 180

## **Grammar** 187

- 19 Sentence fragments 188
- 20 Run-on sentences 195
- 21 Subject-verb agreement (*is* or *are* etc.) 202
- 22 Pronoun-antecedent agreement (singular or plural) 213
- 23 Pronoun reference (clarity) 218
- 24 Pronoun case (*I* and *me* etc.) 222
- 25 *who* and *whom* 227
- 26 Adjectives and adverbs 230
- 27 Standard English verb forms, tenses, and moods 237

## **Multilingual Writers and ESL Challenges** 255

- 28 Verbs 256
- 29 Articles 270
- 30 Sentence structure 279
- 31 Prepositions and idiomatic expressions 288

## **Punctuation** 293

- 32** The comma 294
- 33** Unnecessary commas 308
- 34** The semicolon 313
- 35** The colon 317
- 36** The apostrophe 319
- 37** Quotation marks 323
- 38** End punctuation 330
- 39** Other punctuation 332

## **Mechanics** 337

- 40** Abbreviations 338
- 41** Numbers 341
- 42** Italics 343
- 43** Spelling 345
- 44** The hyphen 353
- 45** Capitalization 356

## **Grammar Basics** 361

- 46** Parts of speech 362
- 47** Sentence patterns 375
- 48** Subordinate word groups 383
- 49** Sentence types 392

## **Research** 395

- 50** Thinking like a researcher; gathering sources 396
- 51** Managing information; taking notes responsibly 408
- 52** Evaluating sources 416

## **Writing Papers in MLA Style** 431

- 53** Supporting a thesis 435
- 54** Citing sources; avoiding plagiarism 441
- 55** Integrating sources 445
- 56** MLA documentation style 458
- 57** MLA manuscript format; sample research paper 513

## **Writing Papers in APA Style** 527

- 58** Supporting a thesis 530
- 59** Citing sources; avoiding plagiarism 534
- 60** Integrating sources 537
- 61** Documenting sources in APA style 546
- 62** APA manuscript format; sample paper 580

## **Appendixes** 597

- A document design gallery 597
- Glossary of usage 608

## **Answers to lettered exercises** 622

## **Index** 636

*this page left intentionally blank*

Eighth Edition

# Rules *for* **WRITERS**



**Diana Hacker**

**Nancy Sommers**

Harvard University

**Contributing ESL Specialist**

**Kimberli Huster**

Robert Morris University

**Bedford/St. Martin's**

A Macmillan Education Imprint

Boston • New York

## **For Bedford/St. Martin's**

*Vice President, Editorial, Macmillan Higher Education Humanities:* Edwin Hill

*Editorial Director, English and Music:* Karen S. Henry

*Publisher for Composition:* Leasa Burton

*Executive Editors:* Michelle M. Clark and Brendan Baruth

*Senior Editor:* Mara Weible

*Senior Media Editor:* Barbara G. Flanagan

*Assistant Editor:* Stephanie Thomas

*Senior Production Editor:* Gregory Erb

*Senior Production Supervisor:* Jennifer Wetzel

*Marketing Manager:* Emily Rowin

*Copy Editor:* Hilly van Loon

*Indexer:* Ellen Kuhl Repetto

*Director of Rights and Permissions:* Hilary Newman

*Permissions Manager:* Kalina Ingham

*Photo Editor:* Martha Friedman

*Senior Art Director:* Anna Palchik

*Text Design:* Claire Seng-Niemoeller

*Cover Design:* William Boardman

*Composition:* Cenvo Publisher Services

*Printing and Binding:* RR Donnelley and Sons

Copyright © 2016, 2012, 2008, 2004 by Bedford/St. Martin's

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, except as may be expressly permitted by the applicable copyright statutes or in writing by the Publisher.

1 0 9 8 7 6  
f e d c b a

*For information, write:* Bedford/St. Martin's, 75 Arlington Street,  
Boston, MA 02116 (617-399-4000)

ISBN 978-1-319-08349-6 (Student Edition) Printed in China

ISBN 978-1-319-01134-5 (Instructor's Edition) Manufactured in U.S.

ISBN 978-1-319-08351-9 (Student Edition with Writing about Literature)  
Printed in China

## **Acknowledgments**

*Acknowledgments and copyrights appear on the same page as the text and art selections they cover; these acknowledgments and copyrights constitute an extension of the copyright page. It is a violation of the law to reproduce these selections by any means whatsoever without the written permission of the copyright holder.*



Photo by Mara Weible

## A letter from the author

Dear Students:

Welcome to *Rules for Writers*—your college writing handbook. One of the pleasures of college writing is exploring ideas and discovering what you think about a subject. You may find that the writing process leads you in unexpected directions—the more you read about a topic, the more questions arise for you to consider; new questions may lead you to challenge your initial assumptions. It is in the *process* of writing—of thinking in depth about ideas—that you learn what’s interesting in a subject and why you care about it. And it is through this process that you figure out not just what you think, but why you think it. *Rules for Writers* will be your companion throughout the writing process, helping you to develop your authority as a thoughtful and effective writer.

College offers many opportunities to write and to learn from the process of writing and revising. In a criminal justice course, for example, you may be asked to write a policy memo or a legal brief; in a nursing course, you may be asked to write a case study or a nursing practice paper. To write in these courses is to learn how to think like a criminologist or a nurse and to contribute your ideas to the discipline’s important conversations and debates. As you write college papers, you’ll have questions about how to engage with other writers who have written about your topic, how to support your ideas with well-documented evidence, and how to communicate your points effectively. *Rules for Writers* provides the guidance you’ll need to write successful college papers in all your courses.

As you flip through *Rules for Writers*, you'll see that it's easy to use and convenient to keep with you as you draft and revise. You'll find answers to all your writing questions — forming a thesis, developing an argument, evaluating and citing sources, and managing information to avoid plagiarism. You'll find documentation models and formatting advice in MLA and APA. You'll also find answers to your questions about grammar, punctuation, and mechanics — how to tighten wordy sentences, for example, or how to use commas or quotation marks correctly.

The more you rely on *Rules for Writers* and learn from its advice, the more successful you'll be as a college writer. For each assignment, flag sections that contain information you need to write a successful paper. And when you get feedback on a draft, flag sections to help you address your writing challenges.

*Rules for Writers* supports your writing in every college course. Use it. Being a successful college writer starts here.

With all good wishes,

A handwritten signature in black ink that reads "Nancy Sommers". The signature is written in a cursive, flowing style with a large initial "N" and a long, sweeping underline.



## Making the most of your handbook


Want to be successful with writing assignments in all your college courses? Using *Rules for Writers* is a key first step. Make the most of your handbook by turning to it whenever you're writing, revising, conducting research, or documenting sources. You'll find advice you can use for nearly every college writing assignment, starting with answers to common questions like these:

- How can I improve my thesis? **1c**
- How should I format a research essay in MLA style? **57a, 57b**
- What is critical reading? Why does it matter? **4a–4e, 5a–5e**
- How do I write a speech? **7a–7d**
- What are multimodal texts, and how do I write about them? **5a–5e**
- I've gotten feedback on a draft. What do I do next? **2a–2i**
- How can I make my writing flow better? **3d**
- What is the right way to use an apostrophe? **36a–36e**
- How do I know whether a source is reliable and worth my time? **52a–52e**
- How should I introduce a source in my paper? **55c (MLA) and 60c (APA)**
- Are there easy ways to avoid plagiarism? **54 (MLA) and 59 (APA)**
- How do I cite online videos and social media posts? **56 (MLA) and 61 (APA)**

## Quick tips for finding more help

Whatever writing and research questions you have, finding help in *Rules for Writers* is easy. The following reference aids offer convenient, reliable help for writing assignments in any course.

- **The brief and detailed contents** inside the front and back covers allow you to quickly spot the help you need.
- **The index** includes user-friendly terms such as “flow” to point to help with coherence.
- **Color-coded MLA and APA sections** give discipline-specific advice for working with sources. Directories at the beginning of each section list documentation models.
- **The glossaries** in the Appendixes offer useful definitions and help with commonly confused or misused words such as *affect* and *effect*.

If your instructor has assigned this book with  **LaunchPadSolo** for *Rules for Writers*, use the activation code to access the exercises, sample student papers, and LearningCurve game-like quizzing. Visit [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e) to log in.

- **260 writing, grammar, and research exercises** help you improve your writing and integrate sources.
- **39 sample student papers** provide guidance in writing and formatting your work in any course.
- **30 LearningCurve adaptive quizzes** offer game-like sentence-level practice and let you track your progress.

References to additional online support appear throughout *Rules for Writers*.



**LaunchPadSolo** [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

8 Active verbs

> Exercises: 8-2 to 8-6

> LearningCurve: Active and passive voice

## Preface for instructors

Dear Colleagues:

As college teachers, we have an important mission. We prepare students to write for different purposes and for different audiences. We show students how to read critically and write effectively, preparing them to join ongoing research conversations as contributors (not just consumers) of ideas. In college, students learn to write, and they learn through writing. Effective writing is fundamental to academic success — across the disciplines.

When you adopt *Rules for Writers* for your students, you send an important message: Writing is worth studying and learning. And you give students the resource to answer their questions and to learn from the answers. College writing is high stakes: Students learn to become nurses and teachers, biologists and criminal justice professionals through writing. They might focus on psychology or economics, but they'll most likely write in each college class they take. *Rules for Writers* is the *one* text that students will need for all their college work.

When students have a trusted handbook to answer their writing questions, they become more confident writers. Confident college writers are more flexible learners; they're more willing to try new approaches, and they feel comfortable thinking critically. I recently surveyed 700 first-year writers about the relationship between handbook use and writer confidence. When students were asked about this relationship, 79% of survey participants, many of whom use *Rules for Writers*, reported that using a handbook made them more confident academic writers. Students reported that using *Rules for Writers* helped them become more efficient and effective writers than if they had simply searched the Internet for answers to their questions about comma usage, for example, or about citing and documenting sources. A Google search might call up 46 million results to their question about comma usage, but these results are often more confusing than illuminating, and never as straightforward and authoritative as the confidence-building instruction they receive from relying on *Rules for Writers*.

Each new feature in the eighth edition is designed to answer students' writing questions and address specific problems students face as college writers. And each new feature of *Rules for Writers* is designed to support your teaching with the handbook. One such feature is an emphasis on the relationship between

reading critically and writing effectively. The eighth edition shows students how to read carefully to understand an author's ideas, how to read with skepticism to question those ideas, and how to present their own ideas in response. The entire academic writing section is focused on the important reading and writing relationship, because the more students learn to take from their reading, the more they have to give as writers.

My goal in revising *Rules for Writers* was to create an even more useful classroom resource to save you time and increase students' learning. The eighth edition is informed by teachers and students who use it and who helped me look squarely at the writing problems students face and the practical solutions they need to become confident academic writers. You'll find new instruction on effective peer review, successful paraphrasing, accurate citation of online sources, and meaningful research—turning topics into questions; finding entry points in debates; and evaluating, integrating, and citing sources. And you'll find step-by-step writing guides to help students write common assignments, such as an annotated bibliography.

Teaching with *Rules for Writers* has become easier than ever. The eighth edition is now available with LaunchPad Solo for *Rules for Writers*—an online product with assignable exercises, sample student writing, and other resources. I've included “Writing Practice” prompts to help students apply handbook advice to their own drafts and to offer practice with core academic skills—thesis statements, research questions, peer review, and more. You and your students will also find videos; practice exercises for grammar, style, and citation; and LearningCurve, game-like adaptive quizzing.

As the author of *Rules for Writers*, I bring to this handbook the belief that writing *is* worth studying and learning—that all students who use this book will learn to read deeply and write clearly, that they will find in their reading ideas they care about, and that they will write about these ideas with care and depth.

I am eager to share this handbook with you, knowing that in the eighth edition you'll find everything you and your students trust and value about *Rules for Writers*.

A handwritten signature in black ink that reads "Nancy Sommers". The signature is written in a cursive, flowing style with a large initial "N" and a decorative flourish at the end.

## Acknowledgments

I am grateful for the expertise, enthusiasm, and classroom experience that so many individuals brought to the eighth edition.

### Reviewers

I thank those instructors who offered detailed feedback on various parts of the handbook and its supplements: Kirk Adams, Tarrant County College; Kathryn Allen, University of North Carolina–Pembroke; David Arnold, University of Wisconsin–Stevens Point; Kevin Burke, University of Delaware; Sherry Clark, Hopkinsville Community College; Kristen di Gennaro, Pace University; Marylynne Diggs, Clark College; Kimberly Dozier, College of the Desert; Candice Floyd, Prince George’s Community College; Ann Guess, Alvin Community College; Derek Handley, Community College of Allegheny County; Peter Harvan, Beachwood High School; Anne Helms, Alamance Community College; Elizabeth Joseph, Tarrant County College; Chippy McLain, Walters State Community College; L. Adam Mekler, Morgan State University; Matt Miller, Oxford High School; Candice Rowe, University of Massachusetts–Boston; Tony Russell, Central Oregon Community College; Jim Schrantz, Tarrant County College; Art Schuhart, Northern Virginia Community College; Cynthia Scurria, Alcorn State University; Alex Tavares, Hillsborough Community College; Janel Mays Thompson, Durham Technical Community College; Brandon Wallace, Montgomery College; Sander Zulauf, County College of Morris.

### Contributors

I am grateful to the following individuals, fellow teachers of writing, for their smart revisions of important content: Kimberli Huster, ESL Specialist at Robert Morris University, updated the advice for multilingual writers, and Sara McCurry, Instructor of English at Shasta College, coauthored the second edition of *Teaching with Hacker Handbooks* with Jonathan Cullick, Professor of English and Chair of the Department of English at Northern Kentucky University.

### Students

I would like to thank the following students who have let us adapt their papers as models: Ned Bishop, Sophie Harba, Sam

Jacobs, Luisa Mirano, Michelle Nguyen, Emilia Sanchez, and Ren Yoshida. Thanks also to Alyson D'Amato and Marisa Williamson for permission to use their multimodal projects as models.

### **Bedford/St. Martin's**

A comprehensive handbook is a collaborative writing project, and it is my pleasure to acknowledge and thank the enormously talented Bedford/St. Martin's editorial team, whose deep commitment to students informs each new feature of *Rules for Writers*. Edwin Hill, vice president for the humanities, Leasa Burton, publisher for composition, and Karen Henry, editorial director for English, have helped shape the handbook's identity and have guided us with their insights about how the college handbook market is changing and how we can continue to meet the needs of today's college writer.

Michelle Clark, executive editor, is a treasured friend and colleague and an endless source of creativity and clarity. Michelle combines wisdom with patience and imagination with practicality. Mara Weible, senior editor, brings to the eighth edition her superb editorial judgment and her teacher's sensibility. It is a deep personal and professional pleasure to work with an editor as thoughtful and talented as Mara. Her creativity has shaped the eighth edition and made it an even more practical and innovative handbook. Barbara Flanagan, senior media editor, has worked on the Hacker handbooks for more than 25 years and brings attention to detail, keen insights, and unrivaled expertise in documentation and media. Thanks to Stephanie Thomas, assistant editor, for help with art and permissions, for managing the review process, and for developing several ancillaries. Many thanks to Gregory Erb, senior production editor, for keeping us on schedule and for producing the book with skill and care. And I am grateful to the media team—especially media producer Allison Hart—for creating engaging media for the writing course. Practical advice from Bedford colleagues Emily Rowin, Brendan Baruth, Jimmy Fleming, and Nick Carbone, who, like me, spend many, many hours on the road and in faculty offices, is always treasured. Thanks to Hilly van Loon, copy editor, for her thoroughness and attention to detail; to Claire Seng-Niemoeller, text designer, who crafted another open and beautifully designed edition of the book; and to William Boardman, art director, who has given the book a strikingly beautiful cover.

Last, but never least, I offer thanks to my own students who, over many years, have shaped my teaching and helped me understand their challenges in becoming college writers. Thanks to my friends and colleagues Suzanne Lane, Maxine Rodburg, Laura Saltz, and Kerry Walk for sustaining conversations about the teaching of writing. And thanks to my family: to Joshua Alper, an attentive reader of life and literature, for his steadfastness across the drafts; to my parents, Walter and Louise Sommers, and my aunt Elsie Adler, who encouraged me to write and set me forth on a career of writing and teaching; to my extended family, Ron, Charles Mary, Alexander, Demian, Devin, Liz, Kate, and Sam for their good humor and good cheer; and to Rachel and Curran, to Alexandra and Brian, witty and wise beyond measure, always generous with their instruction and inspiration in all things that matter. And to Lailah Dragonfly, my granddaughter, thanks for the joy and sweetness you bring to life.

*Nancy Sommers*

## Welcome to the eighth edition

*Rules for Writers* speaks to everything student writers need. Many students want to turn to popular search engines for quick answers, but the real shortcut is right in their hands. *Rules for Writers* provides authoritative, trustworthy advice that's easy to understand and apply. No guesswork involved. And while writing-related resources on the Web offer *information* (sometimes accurate, sometimes not), they don't offer the *instruction* students will find in their handbook. With the eighth edition, students have access to reference content that has been class-tested by millions of students, along with the following new content to meet their evolving needs.

**An emphasis on critical reading** The second section of *Rules for Writers* — Academic Reading, Writing, and Speaking — has been substantially revised to emphasize the importance of reading to college research and writing. The handbook offers students a reading process, teaching them to analyze various types of texts, sources they discover through research, their own writing, and the work of their peers.

**Help with analyzing multimodal texts** A new chapter, “Reading and writing about multimodal texts” (pp. 80–91), introduces new genres and practical strategies for analysis.

**More help for composing in a variety of genres** Writing guides throughout *Rules for Writers* (see pp. 76–77 for an example) help students work through college assignments in a variety of genres. New annotated sample papers provide helpful models.

**Practical advice for public speaking** A new chapter, “Speaking confidently” (pp. 119–23), helps students develop effective oral communication strategies, whether they're writing a speech from scratch or turning a paper into a presentation.

**More help with peer review and revising with comments** A new chapter, “Revising, editing, and reflecting” (pp. 30–49), advises students on giving and receiving comments on assignments and applying feedback to revisions of their own work.

**Research and documentation help for every course** Substantially revised sections teach students to find an entry point in a debate and develop authority as a researcher. Students will find new practical advice for writing a research proposal. *Rules for Writers* now includes more than 200 documentation models for sources in MLA and APA styles. And because some sources are especially



hard to cite, new how-to boxes address tricky issues such as authorship of reposted online content.

 **LaunchPadSolo for *Rules for Writers*—handbook-specific online assignments and exercises**

LaunchPad Solo for *Rules for Writers*, available free when packaged with the print text, includes 36 interactive writing prompts related to specific handbook content; 260 writing, grammar, and research exercises; 39 additional sample student papers in MLA and APA styles; and 30 adaptive LearningCurve quizzes. Targeted cross-references throughout the handbook connect you and your students to related resources in LaunchPad Solo for *Rules for Writers*. ISBN 978-1-319-08691-6



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhigher.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhigher.com/rules8e)

8 Active verbs

- > Exercises: 8-2 to 8-6
- > LearningCurve: Active and passive voice

***Writer's Help 2.0 for Hacker Handbooks*—a complete online handbook, and more**

For searchable, assignable Hacker handbook content online, you can package *Rules for Writers* with *Writer's Help 2.0 for Hacker Handbooks*. Instead of turning to Google for hit-or-miss advice, students can search *Writer's Help 2.0* for the same straightforward, reliable content they find in their handbook as well as exercises, videos, and additional coverage of topics such as writing in the disciplines and analyzing and composing multimodal texts. With *Writer's Help 2.0*, you can assign online pages and activities and track students' use and progress. User-friendly help for college writers also means useful data for instructors and administrators—two benefits of *Writer's Help 2.0 for Hacker Handbooks*. ISBN 978-1-319-08690-9

**LaunchPad Solo for *Readers and Writers*—prebuilt teaching and learning units**

*Rules for Writers* can be packaged with *LaunchPad Solo for Readers and Writers*, which provides multimedia content and assessments—including LearningCurve adaptive quizzing—organized into prebuilt, curated units for easy assigning and assessment of student progress. ISBN 978-1-319-08662-6

### Supplements and media

Visit the catalog page for *Rules for Writers* to see a complete list of instructor supplements, including *Teaching with Hacker Handbooks*, student supplements, e-books (various formats), and other media: [macmillanhighered.com/rules/catalog](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules/catalog).

### Custom solutions

Many schools opt for a custom edition of *Rules for Writers*. Some programs choose to add a section about course outcomes and policies; others choose to customize by adding sample writing by their own students. Custom covers with the school's name and school colors or a photo help emphasize that the handbook provides advice students can count on in all their courses, across the disciplines and throughout their college careers.



# Contents

PREFACE FOR INSTRUCTORS ix

## The Writing Process 1

### 1 Exploring, planning, and drafting 3

- a Assess the writing situation. 3
- b Explore your subject. 12
- c Draft and revise a working thesis statement. 14
- d Draft a plan. 19
- e Draft an introduction. 22
- f Draft the body. 24
- g Draft a conclusion. 25
- h Manage your files. 29

### 2 Revising, editing, and reflecting 30

- a See revision as a social process. 30
- b Use peer review: Revise with comments. 30
- c Use peer review: Give constructive comments. 33
- d Highlights of one student's peer review process 35  
SAMPLE ROUGH DRAFT WITH PEER COMMENTS 35
- e Approach global revision in cycles. 38
- f Revise and edit sentences. 43
- g Proofread the final manuscript. 44
- h Sample student revision 45  
SAMPLE REVISED LITERACY NARRATIVE 45
- i Prepare a portfolio; reflect on your writing. 48

### 3 Building effective paragraphs 49

- a Focus on a main point. 49
- b Develop the main point. 52
- c Choose a suitable pattern of organization. 52
- d Make paragraphs coherent. 59
- e If necessary, adjust paragraph length. 63

**Academic Reading, Writing, and Speaking** 65**4 Reading and writing critically** 66

- a** Read actively. 66  
**SAMPLE ANNOTATED ARTICLE** 67
- b** Outline a text to identify main ideas. 71
- c** Summarize to deepen your understanding. 72
- d** Analyze to demonstrate your critical reading. 73  
**WRITING GUIDE: ANALYTICAL ESSAY** 76
- e** Sample student writing: Analysis of an article 77  
**SAMPLE ANALYSIS PAPER** 78

**5 Reading and writing about multimodal texts** 80

- a** Read actively. 81  
**SAMPLE ANNOTATED ADVERTISEMENT** 83
- b** Outline to identify main ideas. 84
- c** Summarize to deepen your understanding. 85
- d** Analyze to demonstrate your critical reading. 86
- e** Sample student writing: Analysis of an advertisement 88  
**SAMPLE ANALYSIS OF AN ADVERTISEMENT** 88

**6 Reading and writing arguments** 91

- a** Distinguish between reasonable and fallacious argumentative tactics. 92
- b** Distinguish between legitimate and unfair emotional appeals. 98
- c** Judge how fairly a writer handles opposing views. 100
- d** When writing arguments, consider purpose and context. 103
- e** View your audience as a panel of jurors. 103
- f** In your introduction, establish credibility and state your position. 105
- g** Back up your thesis with persuasive lines of argument. 106
- h** Support your claims with specific evidence. 107
- i** Anticipate objections; counter opposing arguments. 109
- j** Build common ground. 111
- k** Sample student writing: Argument 111  
**SAMPLE ARGUMENT PAPER** 112  
**WRITING GUIDE: ARGUMENT ESSAY** 118

- 7 Speaking confidently** 119
- a** Identify your purpose, audience, and context. 120
  - b** Prepare a presentation. 120
  - c** Focus on delivery. 122
  - d** Remix an essay for a presentation. 123

## **Clarity** 125

- 8 Prefer active verbs.** 126
- a** Active versus passive verbs 126
  - b** Active versus *be* verbs 127
  - c** Subject that names the actor 128
- 9 Balance parallel ideas.** 129
- a** Parallel ideas in a series 130
  - b** Parallel ideas presented as pairs 130
  - c** Repetition of function words 132
- 10 Add needed words.** 133
- a** In compound structures 133
  - b** *that* 134
  - c** In comparisons 134
  - d** *a, an, and the* 136
- 11 Untangle mixed constructions.** 137
- a** Mixed grammar 137
  - b** Illogical connections 138
  - c** *is when, is where, and reason . . . is because* 139
- 12 Repair misplaced and dangling modifiers.** 140
- a** Limiting modifiers 140
  - b** Misplaced phrases and clauses 141
  - c** Awkwardly placed modifiers 142
  - d** Split infinitives 142
  - e** Dangling modifiers 144
- 13 Eliminate distracting shifts.** 147
- a** Point of view (person, number) 147
  - b** Verb tense 148
  - c** Verb mood, voice 149
  - d** Indirect to direct questions or quotations 150

**14 Emphasize key ideas.** 152

- a Coordination and subordination 152
- b Choppy sentences 157
- c Ineffective or excessive coordination 158
- d Ineffective subordination 160
- e Excessive subordination 160
- f Other techniques 162

**15 Provide some variety.** 163

- a Sentence openings 163
- b Sentence structures 164
- c Inverted order 164

**16 Tighten wordy sentences.** 166

- a Redundancies 166
- b Unnecessary repetition 166
- c Empty or inflated phrases 167
- d Simplifying the structure 168
- e Reducing clauses to phrases, phrases to single words 169

**17 Choose appropriate language.** 170

- a Jargon 171
- b Pretentious language, euphemisms, “doublespeak” 171
- c Slang, regional expressions, nonstandard English 174
- d Levels of formality 175
- e Sexist language 176
- f Offensive language 179

**18 Find the exact words.** 180

- a Connotations 180
- b Specific, concrete nouns 181
- c Misused words 181
- d Standard idioms 182
- e Clichés 184
- f Figures of speech 185

**Grammar** 187

**19 Repair sentence fragments.** 188

- a Subordinate clauses 190
- b Phrases 191
- c Other fragmented word groups 192
- d Acceptable fragments 194

- 20 Revise run-on sentences.** 195
- a** Revision with coordinating conjunction 197
  - b** Revision with semicolon, colon, or dash 198
  - c** Revision by separating sentences 199
  - d** Revision by restructuring 200
- 21 Make subjects and verbs agree.** 202
- a** Standard subject-verb combinations 202
  - b** Words between subject and verb 202
  - c** Subjects joined with *and* 203
  - d** Subjects joined with *or, nor, either . . . or,* or *neither . . . nor* 206
  - e** Indefinite pronouns 206
  - f** Collective nouns 207
  - g** Subject following verb 209
  - h** Subject, not subject complement 209
  - i** *who, which,* and *that* 210
  - j** Words with plural form, singular meaning 211
  - k** Titles of works, company names, words mentioned as words, gerund phrases 211
- 22 Make pronouns and antecedents agree.** 213
- a** Singular with singular, plural with plural (indefinite pronouns, generic nouns) 213
  - b** Collective nouns 215
  - c** Antecedents joined with *and* 215
  - d** Antecedents joined with *or, nor, either . . . or,* or *neither . . . nor* 216
- 23 Make pronoun references clear.** 218
- a** Ambiguous or remote reference 218
  - b** Broad reference of *this, that, which,* and *it* 219
  - c** Implied antecedents 219
  - d** Indefinite use of *they, it,* and *you* 220
  - e** *who* for persons, *which* or *that* for things 221
- 24 Distinguish between pronouns such as *I* and *me*.** 222
- a** Subjective case for subjects and subject complements 223
  - b** Objective case for objects 223
  - c** Appositives 224
  - d** Pronoun following *than* or *as* 225
  - e** *we* or *us* before a noun 225
  - f** Subjects and objects of infinitives 225
  - g** Pronoun modifying a gerund 226

**25 Distinguish between *who* and *whom*.** 227

- a In subordinate clauses 228
- b In questions 229
- c As subjects or objects of infinitives 229

**26 Choose adjectives and adverbs with care.** 230

- a Adjectives to modify nouns 231
- b Adverbs to modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs 232
- c *good* and *well*, *bad* and *badly* 233
- d Comparatives and superlatives 234
- e Double negatives 235

**27 Choose appropriate verb forms, tenses, and moods in Standard English.** 237

- a Irregular verbs 237
- b *lie* and *lay* 241
- c -s (or -es) endings 242
- d -ed endings 245
- e Omitted verbs 246
- f Verb tense 247
- g Subjunctive mood 252

**Multilingual Writers and ESL Challenges** 255

**28 Verbs** 256

- a Appropriate form and tense 256
- b Passive voice 259
- c Base form after a modal 261
- d Negative verb forms 264
- e Verbs in conditional sentences 265
- f Verbs followed by gerunds or infinitives 267

**29 Articles** 270

- a Articles and other noun markers 270
- b When to use *the* 271
- c When to use *a* or *an* 274
- d When not to use *a* or *an* 276
- e No articles with general nouns 277
- f Articles with proper nouns 277

**30 Sentence structure** 279

- a Linking verb between a subject and its complement 280
- b A subject in every sentence 280



- c** Repeated nouns or pronouns with the same grammatical function 281
  - d** Repeated subjects, objects, and adverbs in adjective clauses 282
  - e** Mixed constructions with *although* or *because* 283
  - f** Placement of adverbs 284
  - g** Present participles and past participles as adjectives 285
  - h** Order of cumulative adjectives 287
- 31 Prepositions and idiomatic expressions** 288
- a** Prepositions showing time and place 288
  - b** Noun (including *-ing* form) after a preposition 290
  - c** Common adjective + preposition combinations 291
  - d** Common verb + preposition combinations 291
- Punctuation** 293
- 32 The comma** 294
- a** Independent clauses joined with *and*, *but*, etc. 294
  - b** Introductory elements 295
  - c** Items in a series 297
  - d** Coordinate adjectives 297
  - e** Nonrestrictive and restrictive elements 299
  - f** Transitions, parenthetical expressions, absolute phrases, contrasts 303
  - g** Direct address, yes and no, interrogative tags, interjections 305
  - h** *he said* etc. 305
  - i** Dates, addresses, titles, numbers 306
  - j** To prevent confusion 307
- 33 Unnecessary commas** 308
- a** Between two words, phrases, or subordinate clauses 308
  - b** Between a verb and its subject or object 309
  - c** Before the first or after the last item in a series 309
  - d** Between cumulative adjectives, an adjective and a noun, or an adverb and an adjective 309
  - e** Before and after restrictive or parenthetical elements 310
  - f** Before essential concluding adverbial elements 310
  - g** After a phrase beginning an inverted sentence 311
  - h** Other misuses 311
- 34 The semicolon** 313
- a** Between independent clauses not joined with a coordinating conjunction 313
  - b** Between independent clauses linked with a transitional expression 314

- c In a series containing internal punctuation 315
- d Misuses 315

### **35 The colon** 317

- a Before a list, an appositive, or a quotation 317
- b Conventional uses 318
- c Misuses 318

### **36 The apostrophe** 319

- a Possessive nouns 319
- b Possessive indefinite pronouns 320
- c Contractions 321
- d Not for plural numbers, letters, abbreviations, words as words 321
- e Misuses 322

### **37 Quotation marks** 323

- a Direct quotations 324
- b Quotation within a quotation 325
- c Titles of short works 325
- d Words as words 325
- e With other punctuation marks 326
- f Misuses 328

### **38 End punctuation** 330

- a The period 330
- b The question mark 331
- c The exclamation point 331

### **39 Other punctuation marks** 332

- a The dash 332
- b Parentheses 333
- c Brackets 334
- d The ellipsis mark 334
- e The slash 335

## **Mechanics** 337

### **40 Abbreviations** 338

- a Titles with proper names 338
- b Familiar abbreviations 338
- c Conventional abbreviations 339
- d Units of measurement 339
- e Latin abbreviations 340

**f** Plural of abbreviations 340

**g** Misuses 340

## **41 Numbers** 341

**a** Spelling out 341

**b** Using numerals 342

## **42 Italics** 343

**a** Titles of works 343

**b** Names of ships, spacecraft, and aircraft 344

**c** Foreign words 344

**d** Words as words, letters as letters, numbers as numbers 344

## **43 Spelling** 345

**a** Spelling rules 345

**b** The dictionary 347

**c** Words that sound alike 351

**d** Commonly misspelled words 351

## **44 The hyphen** 353

**a** Compound words 353

**b** Hyphenated adjectives 354

**c** Fractions and compound numbers 354

**d** With certain prefixes and suffixes 355

**e** To avoid ambiguity or to separate awkward double or triple letters 355

**f** Word division 355

## **45 Capitalization** 356

**a** Proper vs. common nouns 356

**b** Titles with proper names 358

**c** Titles and subtitles of works 358

**d** First word of a sentence 359

**e** First word of a quoted sentence 359

**f** First word after a colon 359

## **Grammar Basics** 361

### **46 Parts of speech** 362

**a** Nouns 362

**b** Pronouns 363

**c** Verbs 365

**d** Adjectives 367

- e Adverbs 368
- f Prepositions 369
- g Conjunctions 370
- h Interjections 371

**47 Sentence patterns** 375

- a Subjects 375
- b Verbs, objects, and complements 378
- c Pattern variations 382

**48 Subordinate word groups** 383

- a Prepositional phrases 384
- b Verbal phrases 385
- c Appositive phrases 388
- d Absolute phrases 388
- e Subordinate clauses 389

**49 Sentence types** 392

- a Sentence structures 392
- b Sentence purposes 394

**Research** 395

**50 Thinking like a researcher; gathering sources** 396

- a Manage the project. 396
- b Pose questions worth exploring. 398
- c Map out a search strategy. 401
- d Search efficiently; master a few shortcuts to finding good sources. 402
- e Conduct field research, if appropriate. 406
- f Write a research proposal. 408

**51 Managing information; taking notes responsibly** 408

- a Maintain a working bibliography. 409
- b Keep track of source materials. 410
- c Take notes carefully to avoid unintentional plagiarism. 410

**52 Evaluating sources** 416

- a Think about how sources might contribute to your writing. 416
- b Select sources worth your time and attention. 418
- c Select appropriate versions of online sources. 421
- d Read with an open mind and a critical eye. 422

- e Assess Web sources with care. 424
  - f Construct an annotated bibliography. 427
- WRITING GUIDE: ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY** 428

## **Writing Papers in MLA Style** 431

### **53 Supporting a thesis** 435

- a Form a working thesis. 435
- b Organize your ideas. 436
- c Use sources to inform and support your argument. 437
- d Draft an introduction for your thesis. 439
- e Draft the paper in an appropriate voice. 440

### **54 Citing sources; avoiding plagiarism** 441

- a Understand how the MLA system works. 441
- b Avoid plagiarism when quoting, summarizing, and paraphrasing sources. 442

### **55 Integrating sources** 445

- a Summarize and paraphrase effectively. 446
- b Use quotations effectively. 447
- c Use signal phrases to integrate sources. 450
- d Synthesize sources. 454

### **56 Documenting sources in MLA style** 458

- a MLA in-text citations 458
- b MLA list of works cited 468
- c MLA information notes 512

### **57 MLA manuscript format; sample research paper** 513

- a MLA manuscript format 513
- b Sample MLA research paper 516

## **Writing Papers in APA Style** 527

### **58 Supporting a thesis** 530

- a Form a working thesis. 530
- b Organize your ideas. 531
- c Use sources to inform and support your argument. 532

### **59 Citing sources; avoiding plagiarism** 534

- a Understand how the APA system works. 534
- b Avoid plagiarism when quoting, summarizing, and paraphrasing sources. 535

<b>60</b>	<b>Integrating sources</b>	537
	<b>a</b> Summarize and paraphrase effectively.	538
	<b>b</b> Use quotations effectively.	539
	<b>c</b> Use signal phrases to integrate sources.	541
	<b>d</b> Synthesize sources.	545
<b>61</b>	<b>Documenting sources in APA style</b>	546
	<b>a</b> APA in-text citations	547
	<b>b</b> APA list of works cited	553
<b>62</b>	<b>APA manuscript format; sample paper</b>	580
	<b>a</b> APA manuscript format	581
	<b>b</b> Sample APA research paper	584
	<b>Appendixes</b>	597
	A document design gallery	597
	Glossary of usage	608
	<b>ANSWERS TO LETTERED EXERCISES</b>	622
	<b>INDEX</b>	636

# The Writing Process

**1** Exploring, planning, and drafting, 3

**2** Revising, editing, and reflecting, 30

**STUDENT WRITING: HIGHLIGHTS OF ONE STUDENT'S  
PEER REVIEW PROCESS, 35**

**STUDENT WRITING: REVISED LITERACY NARRATIVE, 45**

**3** Building effective paragraphs, 49

College offers many opportunities to write and learn from the process of writing and revising.

As you write, you will read and respond to what others have written, use evidence to support your ideas, and develop your ability to think carefully and creatively. In a sociology class, you might be asked to write a field report; in a nursing class, a case study; and in a literature class, a critical analysis. By writing in these classes, you contribute your ideas and join thinkers and writers who share interests, ideas, and ways of communicating with one another. Developing the following habits of mind — curiosity, engagement, responsibility, and reflection — will help you write successfully in all of your college courses.

**Be curious.** Good college writing starts with curiosity. What issues intrigue you? What questions need to be explored? Writing is more interesting and rewarding when you explore questions you don't have answers to, questions that matter to you and to those in the discipline in which you are writing.

**Be engaged.** Writing is a social activity that brings you into conversations with scholars, instructors, classmates, librarians, and writing center tutors. Reading actively allows you to consider and respond to the ideas of other writers. Participating in classroom or online discussions deepens your thinking and gives you opportunities to engage with your peers. Effective college writers reach out to readers who can help shape their work in progress.

**Be responsible.** Engaging with the ideas of other writers and thinkers requires responsibility — to represent their ideas accurately and honestly and to acknowledge their contributions to your work. By giving credit to your sources and differentiating your own ideas from those of your sources, you encourage your readers to trust you and take you seriously.

**Be reflective.** Being reflective in a writing class often means stopping to think about your own writing habits or approaches to writing assignments. By examining your decisions, successes, and challenges, you'll be able to figure out what's working and what needs more work and to transfer skills from one writing assignment to the next.



# 1 Exploring, planning, and drafting

Writing is a process of figuring out what you think, not a matter of recording already developed thoughts. Since it's not possible to think about everything all at once, you'll find the process more manageable if you handle a piece of writing in stages. You will generally move from planning to drafting to revising, but as your ideas develop, you will find yourself circling back and returning to earlier stages.

Before composing a first draft, spend some time generating ideas. Mull over your subject while listening to music, taking a walk, or driving to work; or jot down inspirations or explore your questions with a willing listener. Consider these questions: What do you find puzzling, striking, or interesting about your subject? What would you like to know more about? Be curious and open to new ideas and different points of view. Explore questions you don't have answers to.

## 1a Assess the writing situation.

Begin by taking a look at your writing situation. The key elements of a writing situation include the following:

- subject
- purpose
- audience
- genre
- sources of information
- constraints (length, document design, reviewers, deadlines)

It is likely that you will make final decisions about all of these matters later in the writing process—after a first draft, for example—but you will become a more effective writer if you think about as many of them as possible in advance. For a quick checklist, see the chart on pages 4–5.

**Checklist for assessing the writing situation****Subject**

- Has the subject (or a range of possible subjects) been assigned to you, or are you free to choose your own?
- What interests you about your subject? What questions would you like to explore?
- Why is your subject worth writing about? How might readers benefit?
- Do you need to narrow your subject (because of length restrictions, for instance)?

**Purpose and audience**

- Why are you writing: To inform readers? To persuade them? To call them to action? To offer an interpretation of a text? Do you have more than one purpose for writing?
- Who are your readers? How well informed are they about the subject? What do you want them to learn?
- How interested and attentive are your readers likely to be? Will they resist any of your ideas? What possible objections will you need to anticipate and counter?
- What is your relationship to your readers: Student to instructor? Citizen to citizen? Expert to novice? Employee to supervisor?

**Genre**

- What genre (type of writing) does your assignment require: A report? A proposal? An analysis of data? An essay?
- If the genre is not assigned, what genre is appropriate for your subject, purpose, and audience?
- What are the expectations and conventions of your assigned genre? For instance, what type of evidence is typically used in the genre?
- Does the genre require a specific design format or method of organization?
- Does the genre require or benefit from visuals, such as photos, drawings, or graphs?

**Sources of information**

- Where will your information come from: Reading? Research? Direct observation? Interviews? Questionnaires?

- What type of evidence suits your subject, purpose, audience, and genre?
- What documentation style is required: MLA? APA?

#### Length and format

- Do you have any length specifications? If not, what length seems appropriate, given your subject, purpose, audience, and genre?
- Is a particular format required? If so, do you have guidelines to follow or examples to consult?

#### Deadlines

- What are your deadlines? How much time will you need to allow for the various stages of writing, including proofreading and printing or posting the final draft?

**Academic English** What counts as good writing varies from culture to culture and even among groups within cultures. In some situations, you will need to become familiar with the writing styles — such as direct or indirect, personal or impersonal, plain or embellished — that are valued by the culture or discipline for which you are writing.

## Subject

Frequently your subject will be given to you. In a psychology class, for example, you might be asked to discuss Bruno Bettelheim's Freudian analysis of fairy tales. In a composition course, assignments often ask you to analyze texts and evaluate arguments. In the business world, you may be assigned to draft a marketing plan. When you are free to choose your own subject, let your own curiosity focus your choice. Make connections between yourself and what you are learning. If you are studying television, radio, and the Internet in a communications course, for example, you might ask yourself which of these subjects interests you most. Perhaps you want to learn more about the role streaming video can play in activism and social change. Look through your readings and class notes to see if you can identify questions you'd like to explore further in an essay.

Make sure that you can reasonably investigate your subject in the space you have. If you are limited to a few pages, for example, you could not do justice to a broad subject such as “videos as agents of social change.” You could, however, focus on one aspect of the subject — perhaps contradictory claims about the effectiveness of creating video content for small, specific audiences.

If your interest in a subject stems from your personal experience, you will want to ask what it is about your experience that would interest your audience and why. For example, if you have volunteered at a homeless shelter, you might have spent some time talking to homeless children and learning about their needs. Perhaps you can use your experience to broaden your readers’ understanding of the issues, to persuade an organization to fund an after-school program for homeless children, or to propose changes in legislation.

Whether or not you choose your own subject, it’s important to be aware of the expectations of each writing situation. The following chart suggests ways to interpret assignments.

### Understanding an assignment

#### Determining the purpose of an assignment

The wording of an assignment may suggest its purpose. You might be expected to do one or more of the following in a college writing assignment:

- summarize information from course materials or research (See 4c.)
- analyze ideas and concepts (See 4d.)
- take a position on a topic and defend it with evidence (See 6h.)
- synthesize (combine ideas from) several sources and create an original argument (See 55d and 60d.)

#### Understanding how to answer an assignment’s question

Many assignments will ask you to answer a *how* or *why* question. You cannot answer such questions using only facts; instead, you will need to take a position. For example, the question “*What* are the survival rates for leukemia patients?” can be answered with facts. The question “*Why* are the survival rates for leukemia patients in one state lower than those in a neighboring state?” must be answered with both a claim and facts.

If a list of questions appears in the assignment, be careful — instructors rarely expect you to answer all the questions in order. Look instead for topics or themes that will help you ask your own questions.

### Recognizing implied questions

When you are asked to *discuss, analyze, agree or disagree with, or consider* a topic, your instructor will often expect you to answer a *how* or *why* question.

<i>Discuss</i> the effects of the No Child Left Behind Act on special education programs.	= <i>How</i> has the No Child Left Behind Act affected special education programs?
<i>Consider</i> the recent rise of attention deficit hyperactivity disorder diagnoses.	= <i>Why</i> are diagnoses of attention deficit hyperactivity disorder rising?

### Purpose

Your purpose, or reason for writing, will often be dictated by your writing situation. Perhaps you have been asked to draft a proposal requesting funding for a student organization, to report the results of a psychology experiment, or to write about the controversy surrounding genetically modified foods for the school newspaper. Even though your overall purpose may be fairly obvious in such situations, a closer look at the assignment can help you make some necessary decisions. How detailed should the proposal be? How technical does your psychology professor expect your report to be? Do you want to inform students about the controversy surrounding genetically modified foods or to change their attitudes toward it?

In many writing situations, part of your challenge will be discovering a purpose. Asking yourself why readers should care about what you are saying can help you decide what your purpose might be. Perhaps your subject is magnet schools — schools that draw students from different neighborhoods because of features such as advanced science classes or a concentration on the arts. If you have discussed magnet schools in class, a description of how these schools work probably will not interest you or your readers. But maybe you have discovered that your county's magnet schools are not promoting diversity as had been planned, and you want to call your readers to action.

Although no precise guidelines will lead you to a purpose, you can begin by asking, “Why am I writing?” and “What is my goal?” Identify which one or more of the following aims you hope to accomplish.

**PURPOSES FOR WRITING**

to inform	to evaluate
to persuade	to recommend
to entertain	to request
to call readers to action	to propose
to change attitudes	to provoke thought
to analyze	to express feelings
to argue	to summarize
to reflect	to synthesize

Writers often misjudge their own purposes, summarizing when they should be analyzing, or expressing feelings about problems instead of proposing solutions. Before beginning any writing task, pause to ask, “Why am I communicating with my readers?” This question will lead you to another important question: “Just who are my readers?”

**Audience**

Take time to ask questions about your readers and their expectations. Consider questions such as these: Who will be reading your draft? What is your relationship to your readers? What information will your audience need to understand your ideas? The choices you make as you write will tell readers who you think they are (novices or experts, for example) and will show respect for your readers’ perspectives.

**Academic audiences** In college writing, considerations of audience can be more complex than they seem at first. Your instructors will read your essay, of course, but most instructors play multiple roles while reading. Their first and most obvious roles are as coach and evaluator; but they are also intelligent and objective readers, the kind of people who might be informed or called to action by what you have to say and who want to learn from your insights and ideas.

**Business audiences** Writers in the business world often find themselves writing for multiple audiences. A letter to a client, for instance, might be distributed to sales representatives as well. Readers of a report might include people with and without

technical expertise, or readers who want details and those who prefer a quick overview.

**Public audiences** Writers in communities often write to a specific audience—a legislative representative, readers of a local newspaper, fellow members of a social group. With public writing, it is more likely that you are familiar with the views your readers hold and the assumptions they make, so you may be better able to judge how to engage those readers.

For help with audience when composing e-mail messages, see the following chart.

### Considering audience when writing e-mail messages

In academic, business, and public contexts, you will want to show readers that you value their time. Here are some strategies for writing effective e-mails:

- Use a concise, meaningful subject line to help readers sort messages and set priorities.
- State your main point at the beginning so that your reader sees it without scrolling.
- Write concisely; keep paragraphs short.
- Avoid writing in all capital letters or all lowercase letters.
- Proofread for typos and obvious errors that are likely to slow down readers.

You will also want to follow conventions of etiquette and academic integrity. Here are some strategies for writing responsible e-mails:

- E-mail messages can easily be forwarded to others and reproduced. Do not write anything that you would not want attributed to you.
- Do not forward another person's message without asking his or her permission.
- If you write an e-mail message that includes someone else's words—opinions, statistics, song lyrics, and so forth—let your reader know the source for that material and where any borrowed material begins and ends.
- Choose your words carefully because e-mail messages can easily be misread. Without hearing your voice or seeing your facial gestures or body language, readers can misunderstand your message.

## Genre

When writing for a college course, pay close attention to the genre, or type of writing, assigned. Each genre is a category of writing meant for a specific purpose and audience, with its own set of agreed-upon expectations and conventions for style, structure, and document design. Sometimes an assignment specifies the genre—an essay in a writing class, a policy memo in a criminal justice class, or an executive summary in a business class. Sometimes the genre is yours to choose, and you need to decide if a particular genre—a poster presentation, an audio essay, a Web page, or a podcast, for example—will help you communicate your purpose and reach readers.

If the genre has been assigned, the following questions will help you figure out how to present your ideas:

- Do you have access to sample projects in the genre that has been assigned?
- Who is the audience? What specialized vocabulary do readers expect in the genre?
- What type of evidence is usually required in the genre?
- What format, organization, and citation style are expected?

If you are free to choose the genre, consider the following questions when deciding which genre to use:

- What is your purpose: To argue a position? To instruct? To present a process? To inspire? To propose? Do you have more than one purpose?
- Who is your audience? What do you know about your readers or viewers?
- What method of presenting information would appeal to your audience: Reasoned paragraphs? Diagrams? Video? Slides?

## Sources of information

Where will your evidence—facts, details, and examples—come from? What kind of reading, observation, or research is necessary to meet the expectations of your assignment?



**Reading** Reading is an important way to deepen your understanding of a topic and expand your perspective. It will be your primary source of information for many college assignments.

Read with an open mind to learn from the insights and research of others. Take notes on your thoughts, impressions, and questions. Your notes can be a way to enter a conversation with the authors of the texts you read. (See 51c.) And always keep careful records of any sources you read and consult. (See 51c.)

**Observation** Observation is an excellent means of collecting information about a wide range of subjects, such as gender relationships on a popular television program, the clichéd language of sports announcers, or a current exhibit at the local art museum. For such subjects, do not rely on your memory alone; your information will be fresher and more detailed if you actively collect it, with a notebook, laptop, or voice recorder.

**Interviews and questionnaires** Interviews and questionnaires can supply detailed and interesting information on many subjects. A nursing student interested in the care of terminally ill patients might interview hospice nurses, for example.

It is a good idea to record interviews to preserve any vivid quotations that you might want to weave into your essay. Circulating questionnaires by e-mail or on a Web site will facilitate responses. Keep questions simple, and specify a deadline to ensure that you get a reasonable number of replies.


### **Length and format**

Writers seldom have complete control over length requirements. Journalists usually write within strict word limits set by their editors, businesspeople routinely aim for conciseness, and most college assignments specify an approximate length.

Your writing situation may also require a certain format. In the academic world, you may need to learn precise disciplinary and genre conventions for formatting lab reports, critiques, research papers, and so on. For most undergraduate essays, a standard academic format is acceptable. (See pp. 597–607.)

**EXERCISE 1-1** Narrow three of the following subjects into topics that would be manageable for an essay of two to five pages.

1. Treatments for mental illness
2. An experience with racism or sexism
3. Cyberbullying
4. Images of women in video games
5. Public health care

**EXERCISE 1-2** Suggest a purpose and an audience for three of the following subjects. *More practice:*  LaunchPadSolo

1. Genetic modification of cash crops
2. Government housing for military veterans
3. The future of print magazines
4. Working with special needs children
5. Hybrid cars

## 1b Explore your subject.

Experiment with one or more techniques for exploring your subject and discovering your purpose: talking and listening; reading and annotating texts; asking questions; brainstorming and free-writing; keeping a journal; blogging.

Whatever technique you turn to, the goal is the same: to generate ideas that will lead you to a question, a problem, or a topic that you want to explore further.

### Talking and listening

Conversation can help you develop your ideas before you begin to write them down. By talking and listening to others, you can also discover what they find interesting, what they are curious about, and where they disagree with you. If you are planning to develop an argument, you can try it out on listeners with other points of view.

## Reading and annotating texts

Reading is an important way to deepen your understanding of a topic, learn from the insights and research of others, and expand your perspective. Annotating a text, written or visual, encourages you to read actively — to highlight key concepts, to note contradictions in an argument, or to raise questions for further research and investigation.

## Asking questions

Whenever you are writing about ideas, events, or people, whether current or historical, asking questions is one way to get started. You might try the questions journalists routinely ask themselves: *Who? What? When? Where? Why? and How?* If you were writing about a negative reaction to a film, for instance, you might want to ask — *Who* objected to the film and *why*? *What* were the objections and *when* were they voiced? Such questions will help you investigate your subject to discover important facts.

In academic writing, scholars often generate ideas by posing questions related to a specific discipline. If you are writing in a particular discipline, try to find out which questions its scholars typically explore. Look for clues in assigned readings, assignments, and class discussions to understand how a discipline's questions help you understand its concerns.

## Brainstorming and freewriting

Brainstorming and freewriting are good ways to figure out what you know and what questions you have. Write whatever comes to mind without pausing to think about word choice, spelling, or even meaning. The goal is to write quickly and freely to discover what questions are on your mind and what directions you might pursue.

## Keeping a journal

A journal is a collection of informal, exploratory, sometimes experimental writing. In a journal, often meant for your eyes only, you can take risks. You might freewrite, pose questions, comment on an interesting idea from one of your classes, or keep a list of questions that occur to you while reading. You might imagine a conversation between yourself and your readers or stage a debate to understand opposing positions.

## Blogging

Although a blog is a type of journal, it is a public writing space rather than a private one. You can explore an idea for a paper by blogging about it in different ways or from different angles. Since most blogs have a commenting feature, you can create a conversation by inviting readers to give you feedback — ask questions, make counterarguments, or suggest other sources on a topic.

## 1c Draft and revise a working thesis statement.

For many types of writing, you will be able to state your central idea in a sentence or two. Such a statement, which ordinarily appears in the opening paragraph of your finished essay, is called a *thesis*.

### Understanding what makes an effective thesis statement

An effective thesis statement is a central idea that conveys your purpose — your reason for writing — and requires support.

Keep the following guidelines in mind to help you develop an effective thesis statement:

- A thesis should take a position that needs to be explained and supported.
- A thesis should be your answer to a question, your solution to a problem, or your position on a topic or debate.
- A thesis should be appropriate for the length requirements of the assignment. It should not be too broad or too narrow.
- A thesis should be sharply focused. Use concrete language and make sure your thesis lets readers know what you plan to discuss.
- A thesis should stand up to the “So what?” question. (See p. 16.)

### Drafting a working thesis

As you explore your topic, you will begin to see possible ways to focus your material. At this point, try to settle on a *tentative* central idea, or working thesis statement. The more complex your topic, the more your focus may change. Think of your

working thesis as preliminary, open for consideration and revision, as you clarify your purpose and consider the expectations of your audience. As your ideas develop, you'll need to revisit your working thesis to see if it presents the position you want to take and if it can be supported by the sources of evidence you have accumulated.

You'll find that the process of answering a question you have posed, resolving a problem you have identified, or taking a position on a debatable topic will focus your thinking and lead you to develop a working thesis. Here, for example, are one student's efforts to pose a question and draft a working thesis for an essay in his ethics course.

**QUESTION**

Should athletes who enhance their performance through biotechnology be banned from athletic competition?

**WORKING THESIS**

Athletes who boost their performance through biotechnology should be banned from athletic competition.

The working thesis offers a useful place to start writing — a way to limit the topic and focus a first draft — but it doesn't take into consideration the expectations of readers who will ask “Why?” and “So what?” The student has taken a position — athletes who boost their performance through biotechnology should be banned from athletic competition — but he hasn't answered *why* athletes should be banned. To fully answer his own question and to claim something specific in his thesis, he might push his own thinking with the word *because*.

**STRONGER WORKING THESIS**

Athletes who boost their performance through biotechnology should be banned from athletic competition *because* biotechnology gives athletes an unfair advantage and disrupts the sense of fair play.

**Revising a working thesis**

As you move to a clearer and more specific position you want to take, you'll start to see ways to revise your working thesis. You may find that the evidence you have collected supports a different thesis; or you may find that your position has changed as you learned more about your topic. Revision is ongoing; as your

ideas evolve, your working thesis will evolve, too. One effective way to revise a working thesis is to put it to the “So what?” test (see the box below). A test like this can help you keep audience and purpose—and the expectations of your assignment—in mind as you revise.

### Putting your working thesis to the “So what?” test

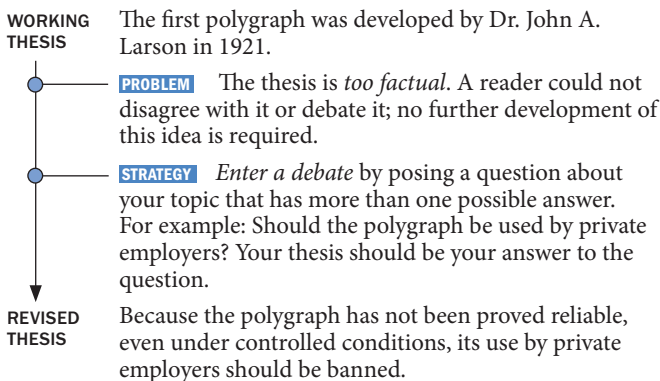
Use the following questions to help you revise your working thesis.

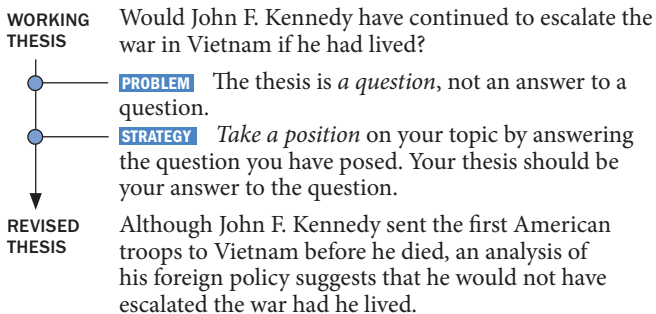
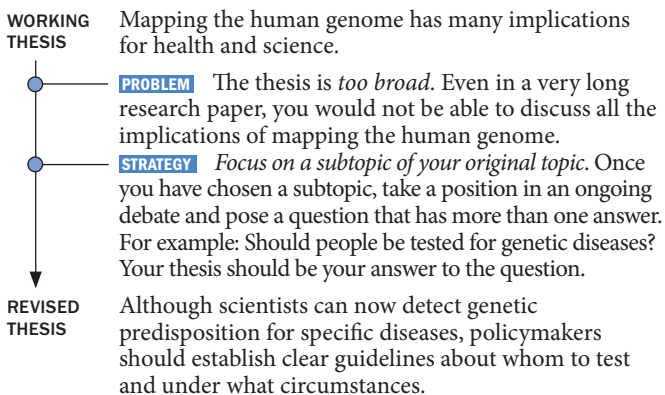
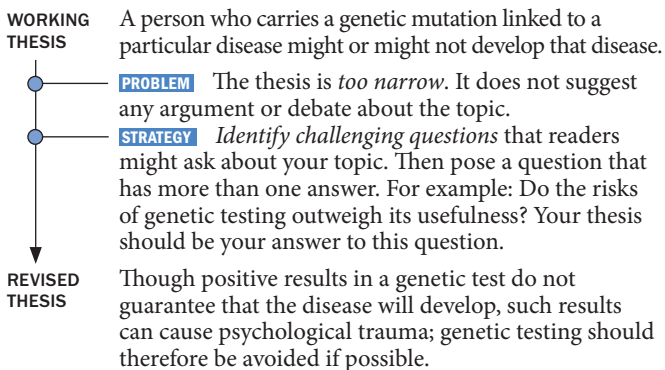
- Why would readers want to read an essay with this thesis? How would you respond to a reader who hears your thesis and asks “So what?” or “Why does it matter?”
- Will any readers disagree with this thesis? If so, how might your thesis respond to a counter perspective?
- Is the thesis too obvious? If you cannot come up with interpretations that oppose your own, consider revising your thesis.
- Can you support your thesis with the evidence available?

### Using a problem/strategy approach as you revise

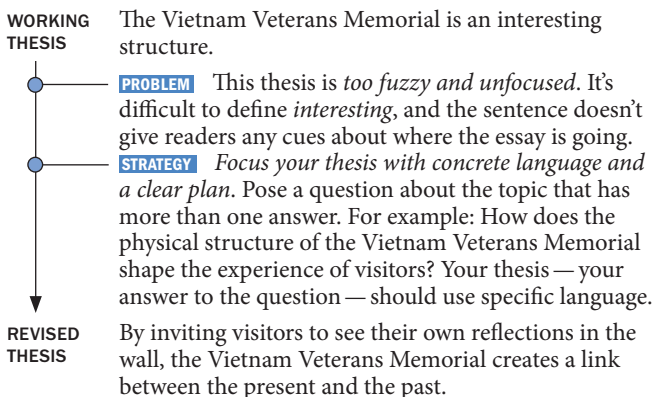
Revising a working thesis is easier if you have a method or an approach. The following problem/strategy approach is an effective way to evaluate and revise a working thesis, especially if you tend to start out with thesis statements that are too factual, too broad, too narrow, or too vague.

**A thesis should require proof or further development through facts and details; it cannot itself be a fact or a description.**



**A thesis should be an answer to a question, not a question itself.****A thesis should be of sufficient scope for your assignment; it should not be too broad.****A thesis also should not be too narrow.**

A thesis should be sharply focused, not too vague. Avoid fuzzy, hard-to-define words such as *interesting*, *good*, or *disgusting*.



**EXERCISE 1-4** In each of the following pairs, which sentence might work well as a thesis for a short paper? What is the problem with the other one? Is it too factual? Too broad? Too vague? Use the problem/strategy approach from pages 16–18 to evaluate each thesis.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

1. a. By networking with friends, a single parent can manage to strike a balance among work, school, a social life, and family.  
b. Single parents face many challenges as they try to juggle all of their responsibilities.
2. a. At the Special Olympics, athletes with disabilities show that, with hard work and support from others, they can accomplish anything — that they can indeed be winners.  
b. Working with the Special Olympics program is rewarding.
3. a. History 201, taught by Professor Brown, is offered at 10:00 a.m. on Tuesdays and Thursdays.  
b. Whoever said that history is nothing but polishing tombstones must have missed History 201, because in Professor Brown's class history is vibrantly alive.
4. a. So far, research suggests that zero-emissions vehicles are not a sensible solution to the problem of steadily increasing air pollution.



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

1 Exploring, planning, and drafting

> Writing practice: Revising a thesis

> Exercises: 1-5 and 1-6



- b. Because air pollution is of serious concern to many people today, several US government agencies have implemented plans to begin solving the problem.
5. a. Anorexia nervosa is a dangerous and sometimes deadly eating disorder occurring mainly in young, upper-middle-class teens.
  - b. The eating disorder anorexia nervosa is rarely cured by one treatment alone; only by combining drug therapy with psychotherapy and family therapy can the client begin the long journey to wellness.

## 1d Draft a plan.

Once you have drafted a working thesis, listing and organizing your supporting ideas can help you flesh out the thesis. Creating outlines, whether informal or formal, can help you make sure your writing is focused and logical and can help you identify any gaps in your support.

### When to use an informal outline

You might want to sketch an informal outline to see how you will support your thesis and to figure out a tentative structure for your ideas. Informal outlines can take many forms. Perhaps the most common is simply the thesis followed by a list of major ideas.

Working thesis: In the *Hunger Games*, the games help transform Katniss Everdeen's love for her sister into the spark of revolution.

- Pitting the districts against each other in the games helps the Capitol maintain control by discouraging widespread revolt.
- Before the games, Katniss and Gale think about leaving the district in search of a better life for their families. They don't imagine ways of improving life within their district or across districts.
- Katniss volunteers for the games to save her sister, Prim, with whom Katniss shares a close bond.
- In the arena, Katniss acts like a big sister to Rue, who reminds her of Prim.
- By protecting Rue and mourning her death, Katniss begins to use the Capitol's instrument of control — the games — to undermine the Capitol's hold on the districts.
- More than a temporary alliance, the sister-like bond between Katniss and Rue gives Katniss, and the rest of Panem, an opportunity to imagine a world in which members of one district might fight for the well-being of those in another.

If you began by jotting down a list of ideas, you can turn the list into a rough outline by crossing out some ideas, adding others, and putting the ideas in a logical order.

### When to use a formal outline

Early in the writing process, rough outlines have certain advantages: They can be produced quickly, they are obviously tentative, and they can be revised easily. However, a formal outline may be useful later in the writing process, after you have written a rough draft, especially if your topic is complex. It can help you see whether the parts of your essay work together and whether your essay's structure is logical.

The following formal outline brought order to the research paper that appears in 57b, on regulating healthy eating. The student's thesis is an important part of the outline. Everything else in the outline supports it, directly or indirectly.

#### FORMAL OUTLINE

Thesis: In the name of public health and safety, state governments have the responsibility to shape public health policies and to regulate healthy eating choices, especially since doing so offers a potentially large social benefit for a relatively small cost.

- I. Debates surrounding food regulation have a long history in the United States.
  - A. The 1906 Pure Food and Drug Act guarantees inspection of meat and dairy products.
  - B. Such regulations are considered reasonable because consumers are protected from harm with little cost.
  - C. Consumers consider reasonable regulations to be an important government function to stop harmful items from entering the marketplace.
- II. Even though food meets safety standards, there is a need for further regulation.
  - A. The typical American diet—processed sugars, fats, and refined flours—is damaging over time.
  - B. Related health risks are diabetes, cancer, and heart problems.
  - C. Passing chronic-disease-related legislation is our single most important public health challenge.

- III. Food legislation is not a popular solution for most Americans.
  - A. A proposed New York City regulation banning sale of soft drinks greater than twelve ounces failed in 2012, and in California, a proposed soda tax failed in 2011.
  - B. Many consumers find such laws to be unreasonable restrictions on freedom of choice.
  - C. Opposition to food and beverage regulation is similar to the opposition to early tobacco legislation; the public views the issue as one of personal responsibility.
  - D. Counterpoint: Freedom of “choice” is a myth; our choices are heavily influenced by marketing.
- IV. The United States has a history of regulations to discourage unhealthy behaviors.
  - A. Tobacco-related restrictions faced opposition.
  - B. Seat belt laws are a useful analogy.
  - C. The public seems to support laws that have a good cost-benefit ratio; the cost of food/beverage regulations is low, and most people agree that the benefits would be high.
- V. Americans believe that personal choice is lost when regulations such as taxes and bans are instituted.
  - A. Regulations open up the door to excessive control and interfere with cultural and religious traditions.
  - B. Counterpoint: Burdens on individual liberty are a reasonable price to pay for large social health benefits.
- VI. Public opposition continues to stand in the way of food regulation to promote healthier eating. We must consider whether to allow the costly trend of rising chronic disease to continue in the name of personal choice, or whether we are willing to support the legal changes and public health policies that will reverse that trend.

### Planning with headings

When drafting a research paper or a business document, consider using headings to guide your planning and to help your readers follow the organization of your final draft. While drafting, you

can insert your working thesis, experiment with possible headings, and type chunks of text beneath each heading. You may need to try grouping your ideas in a few different ways to suit your purpose and audience.

**NOTE:** Headings help writers plan and readers understand a document. See page 41 for help using headings and page 585 for a sample paper organized with headings.

## 1e Draft an introduction.

The introduction to a piece of writing announces the main point; the body develops it; and the conclusion drives it home. You can begin drafting, however, at any point. If you find it difficult to introduce a paper that you have not yet written, try drafting the body first and saving the introduction for later.

Your introduction will usually be a paragraph of 50 to 150 words (in a longer paper, it may be more than one paragraph). Perhaps the most common strategy is to open with a few sentences that engage, or hook, the reader and that establish your purpose for writing and your central idea, or thesis. In the following introduction, the thesis is highlighted.

As the United States industrialized in the nineteenth century, using immigrant labor, social concerns took a backseat to the task of building a prosperous nation. The government did not regulate industries and did not provide an effective safety net for the poor or for those who became sick or injured on the job. Immigrants and the poor did have a few advocates, however. Settlement houses such as Hull-House in Chicago provided information, services, and a place for reform-minded individuals to gather and work to improve the conditions of the urban poor. Alice Hamilton was one of these reformers. Her work at Hull-House spanned twenty-two years and later expanded throughout the nation. **Hamilton's efforts helped to improve the lives of immigrants and drew attention and respect to the problems and people that until then had been ignored.**

— Laurie McDonough, student

Each sentence leading to your thesis should engage readers by drawing them into the world of the essay and showing them why your essay is worth reading.

Whether you are writing for a scholarly audience, a professional audience, a public audience, or a general audience, you

cannot assume your readers' interest in the topic. The hook should spark readers' curiosity and offer them a reason to continue.

The chart that follows provides strategies for drafting an introduction.

**NOTE:** Different writing situations call for different introductions. For more examples of effective introductions, see pages 88 (Yoshida), 112 (Jacobs), and 517 (Harba).

### Strategies for drafting an introduction

The following strategies can provide a hook for your reader, whether you are composing a traditional essay or a multimodal work such as a slide show presentation or a video (see p. 80).

- Offer a startling statistic or an unusual fact
- Ask a question
- Introduce a quotation or a bit of dialogue
- Provide historical background
- Define a term or concept
- Propose a problem, contradiction, or dilemma
- Use a vivid example or image
- Develop an analogy
- Relate an anecdote

As you draft your introduction, think about your writing situation, especially your genre. For some types of writing, it may be difficult or impossible to express the central idea in a thesis statement; or it may be unwise or unnecessary to put a thesis statement in the essay itself. A literacy narrative, for example, may have a focus too subtle to be distilled in a single sentence. Strictly informative writing, like that found in many business memos or nursing reports, may be difficult to summarize in a thesis. In such instances, do not try to force the central idea into a thesis statement. Instead, think in terms of an overriding purpose and of the genre's conventions and expectations. (See 1a and 1c.)



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhigherred.com/rules8e](https://macmillanhigherred.com/rules8e)

1 Exploring, planning, and drafting

> Writing practice: Revising an introduction

> Exercise: 1-7

**Academic English** If you come from a culture that prefers an indirect approach in writing, you may feel that asserting a thesis early in an essay sounds unrefined and even rude. In the United States, however, readers appreciate a direct approach; when you state your point as directly as possible, you show that you understand your topic and value your readers' time.

## 1f Draft the body.

The body of your essay develops support for your thesis, so it's important to have at least a working thesis before you start writing. What does your thesis promise readers? What question are you trying to answer? What problem are you trying to solve? What is your position on the topic? Keep these questions in mind as you draft the body of your essay.

### Asking questions as you draft

You may already have written an introduction that includes your working thesis. If not, as long as you have a draft thesis, you can begin developing the body and return later to the introduction. If your thesis suggests a plan or if you have sketched a preliminary outline, try to organize your paragraphs accordingly.

Draft the body of your essay by writing at least one paragraph about each supporting point you listed in the planning stage. If you do not have a plan, pause for a few moments and sketch one. As you draft the body, keep asking questions; keep anticipating what your readers may need to know.

Keep in mind that often you might not know what you want to say until you have written a draft. It is possible to begin without a plan — assuming you are prepared to treat your first attempt as a “discovery draft” that may be radically rewritten once you discover what you really want to say. Whether or not you have a plan when you begin drafting, you can often figure out a workable order for your ideas by stopping each time you start a new paragraph to think about what your readers will need to know to follow your train of thought.

For more detailed help with drafting and developing paragraphs, see 3.

**USING SOURCES RESPONSIBLY:** As you draft, keep careful notes and records of any sources you read and consult (see 51). If you quote, paraphrase, or summarize a source, include a citation,

even in your draft. You will save time and avoid plagiarism if you follow the rules of citation while drafting.

### Adding visuals as you draft

As you draft, you may decide that some of the support for your thesis could come from one or more visuals. Visuals can convey information concisely and powerfully. Graphs and tables, for example, can simplify complex numerical information. Images—including photographs and diagrams—often express an idea more vividly than words can. Keep in mind that if you download a visual—or use published information to create your own visual—you must credit your source.

Always consider how a visual conveys your purpose and how your audience might respond to it. Choose visuals to support your writing, not to substitute for it. For an example of an effective use of a visual, see page 46. In writing about the shift from print to online news, student writer Sam Jacobs used a screen shot of a link embedded in a news article to illustrate his argument (see 6k).

The chart on pages 26–27 describes eight types of visuals and their purposes.

## 1g Draft a conclusion.

A conclusion should remind readers of the essay's main idea without repeating it. Often the concluding paragraph can be relatively short. By the end of the essay, readers should already understand your main point; your conclusion drives it home and, perhaps, gives readers something more to consider.

### Strategies for drafting a conclusion

In addition to echoing your main idea, a conclusion might do any of the following:

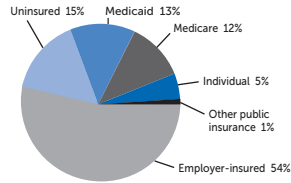
- Briefly summarize your essay's key points
- Propose a course of action
- Offer a recommendation
- Discuss the topic's wider significance or implications
- Redefine a key term or concept
- Pose a question for future study

## Choosing visuals to suit your purpose

### Pie chart

Pie charts compare a part or parts to the whole. Segments of the pie represent percentages of the whole (and always total 100 percent).

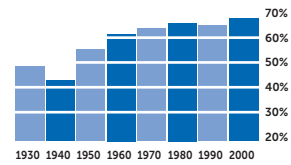
Health insurance coverage in the United States (2007)



### Bar graph (or line graph)

Bar graphs highlight trends over a period of time or compare numerical data. Line graphs display the same data as bar graphs; the data are graphed as points, and the points are connected with lines.

THE PURSUIT OF PROPERTY  
Home ownership rates in the United States



### Infographic

An infographic presents data in a visually engaging form. The data are usually numerical, as in bar graphs or line graphs, but they are represented by a graphic element instead of by bars or lines.



Just 8% of kids growing up in low-income communities graduate from college by age 24.

### Table

Tables display numbers and words in columns and rows. They can be used to organize complicated numerical information into an easily understood format.

Prices of daily doses of AIDS drugs (\$/d)

Drug	1997	2001	2004	2007
3TC (Zalcitabine)	1.80	3.28	2.00	8.73
ddC (Zalcitabine)	0.24	4.17	3.78	8.80
Didanosine	2.84	5.26	3.48	7.25
Zalcitabine	0.80	7.04	6.40	12.12
Didanosine	10.52	12.79	8.07	24.00
Didanosine	4.10	5.49	4.28	8.47
Zalcitabine	0.60	n/a	n/a	8.98
Didanosine	8.31	7.37	8.82	8.83
Didanosine	0.58	6.18	4.18	3.07
3TC/1TC	1.44	7.04	n/a	16.78
Zalcitabine	1.00	4.04	3.49	13.12

Source: UNAIDS, 2007



### Photograph

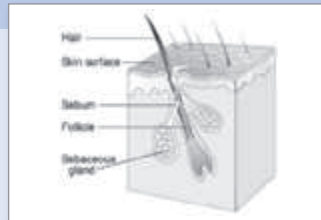
Photographs vividly depict people, scenes, or objects discussed in a text.



Behrouz Mehri/AFP/Getty Images

### Diagram

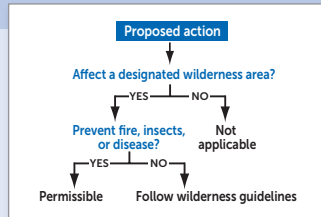
Diagrams, useful in scientific and technical writing, concisely illustrate processes, structures, or interactions.



NIAMS

### Flowchart

Flowcharts show structures (the hierarchy of employees at a company, for example) or steps in a process and their relation to one another. (See also p. 145 for another example.)



### Map

Maps illustrate distances, historical information, or demographics and often use symbols for geographic features and points of interest.



To conclude an essay analyzing the shifting roles of women in the military services, one student discusses her topic's implications for society as a whole.

As the military continues to train women in jobs formerly reserved for men, our understanding of women's roles in society will no doubt continue to change. And as news reports of women training for and taking part in combat operations become commonplace, reports of women becoming CEOs, police chiefs, and even president of the United States will cease to surprise us. Or perhaps we have already reached this point.

— Rosa Broderick, student

To make the conclusion memorable and to give a sense of completion, you might bring readers full circle by returning to the thesis or including a detail from the introduction. To conclude his argument essay about the shift from print to online news, student writer Sam Jacobs returns to the phrase “fit to print” from his introduction, and echoes his thesis to show the wider significance of his argument. (See pp. 112–117.)

The Internet has enabled consumers to participate in a new way in reading, questioning, interpreting, and reporting the news. Decisions about appropriate content and coverage are no longer exclusively in the hands of news editors. Ordinary citizens now have a meaningful voice in the conversation — a hand in deciding what's “fit to print.” Some skeptics worry about the apparent free-for-all and loss of tradition. But the expanding definition of news provides opportunities for consumers to be more engaged with events in their communities, their nations, and the world.

To see more examples of effective conclusions, see pages 91 (Yoshida), 116 (Jacobs), and 523 (Harba).

Whatever concluding strategy you choose, keep in mind that an effective conclusion is decisive and unapologetic. Avoid introducing completely new ideas at the end of an essay. And because the conclusion is so closely tied to the rest of the essay in both content and tone, be prepared to revise it or rewrite it as you revise your draft.



## 1h Manage your files.

Keeping track of all your notes, outlines, rough drafts, and final drafts can be challenging. Be sure to give your files distinct names that reflect the appropriate stage of your writing process, and store them in a logical place.

Writing online or in a word processing program can make drafting and revising easier. You can undo changes or return to an earlier draft if a revision misfires. Applying the following steps can help you explore drafting and revising possibilities with little risk.

- Create folders and subfolders for each assignment. Save notes, outlines, and drafts together.
- Label revised drafts with different file names and dates.
- Print hard copies, make backup copies, and press the Save button often (every five to ten minutes).
- Always record complete bibliographic information about any sources you might use, including visuals.
- Use a comment function to make notes to yourself or to respond to the drafts of peers.

### MANAGING FILES

The screenshot illustrates a file management interface. The top window shows a folder named "My English 101 Portfolio" with the address "C:\My English 101 Portfolio". Inside this folder, four subfolders are listed: "Essay 1 - Literacy narrative", "Essay 2 - Argument paper", "Essay 3 - Ad analysis", and "Essay 4 - Research paper Navajo art". The "Essay 3 - Ad analysis" folder is highlighted, and a blue arrow points to a second window. This second window shows the address "C:\My English 101 Portfolio\Essay 3 - Ad analysis" and lists four files: "Ad analysis draft 10.13.15", "Ad analysis FINAL 10.28.15", "Ad analysis peer response 10.18.15", and "Ad analysis revised 10.20.15".



## 2 Revising, editing, and reflecting

Revising is rarely a one-step process. Global matters — thesis, purpose, organization, content, and overall strategy — generally receive attention first because global revisions involve bigger changes, including rewrites of paragraphs or whole sections of a paper. Improvements in sentence structure and word choice usually come later; it's a good idea to make sure global revisions are complete before you spend time fine-tuning sentences. Revising at the sentence level gives you a chance to reconsider whether a particular point could be stronger or clearer or if a certain word or phrase sends the message you intended.

Editing is a step that is best left for the end of the writing process. It involves identifying errors or patterns of errors, such as using commas and quotation marks correctly, making subjects and verbs agree, or using the right form of a pronoun. See 2b for advice on keeping an editing log.

Writing multiple drafts allows you to write in stages, seek feedback, and strengthen your paper through both revising and editing.

### 2a See revision as a social process.

To revise is to *re-see*, and the comments you receive from reviewers — instructors, peers, and writing center tutors — will help you re-see your draft from your readers' point of view. When you ask readers for their comments, revision becomes a social experience, connecting you with the suggestions and insights of readers who help you shape your work in progress. As you write for college courses, form a community of readers around you and seek their feedback.

Feedback gives you perspective on what's working and not working in your draft and keeps the expectations of your readers in mind. Simple questions such as “What would you say is my main idea?” and “Is my draft focused and organized?” will help you see your draft through readers' eyes. The checklist for global revision on page 42 may help you and your reviewers get started.

### 2b Use peer review: Revise with comments.

Peer review gives you an opportunity to see your draft through the eyes of readers. When peers — classmates and fellow students — read your work, they offer feedback, pointing out where they are intrigued

or confused. They offer their insights and suggestions, answer your questions, and help you strengthen your draft. Think of peer review as an opportunity to talk about your writing with a coach, an advocate, who will help you achieve your purpose for writing.

The following guidelines will help you learn from your reviewers' comments and revise successfully.

**Be active.** Help reviewers understand your purpose for writing and provide background about why you chose your topic, why it matters to you, and what you hope to accomplish in your draft. Let your reviewers know your specific questions and concerns so they can provide focused feedback.

**Listen with an open mind.** After you've worked hard on a draft, you might be surprised to hear reviewers tell you it still needs more development. Don't take criticism personally. Your readers are responding to your essay, not you. If comments show that a reviewer doesn't understand what you're trying to do, don't be defensive. Instead, consider why your reader is confused, and figure out how to clarify your point. Responding to readers' objections—instead of dismissing them—may strengthen your ideas and make your essay more persuasive. Taking feedback seriously will make you a stronger writer.

**Weigh feedback carefully.** As you begin revising, you may find yourself sorting through suggestions from many people, including instructors, writing tutors, and peer reviewers. Sometimes these readers will agree, but often their advice will differ. Your reviewers will probably make more suggestions than you can use, so be strategic. It's important to sort through all the comments you receive with your original goals in mind and to focus on global concerns first (see p. 42)—otherwise, you'll be facing the impossible task of trying to incorporate everyone's advice.

**Keep a revision and editing log.** Make a clear and simple list of the global and sentence-level concerns that keep coming up in most of your reviewers' comments. That list can serve as a starting point each time you revise a paper to help you learn about your strengths and weaknesses as a writer. When you take charge of your own writing in this way, comments will become a valuable resource.

**NOTE:** Some instructors suggest that writers acknowledge their reviewers in a brief note at the end of their finished paper.



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhigherred.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhigherred.com/rules8e)

2 Revising, editing, and reflecting

> Writing practice: Using reviewers' comments

> Exercises: 2-1 and 2-2



## Strategies for revising with comments

Often the comments you'll receive are written as shorthand commands—"Be specific!"—and sometimes as questions—"What is your main point?" Such comments don't immediately show you *how* to revise, but they do identify where revision might improve your draft. Don't hesitate to ask your reviewers to explain their comments if you don't understand them. The following sample comments and revision strategies will help you think about how to apply reviewer feedback to your own writing—and where you might look in *Rules for Writers* for help.

### THE COMMENT: *Unfocused introduction*

**Understanding the comment** When readers point out that your introduction needs to be "focused," the comment often signals that the beginning sentences of your essay are vague, unconnected to the rest of your essay, and don't establish your purpose for writing.

#### Strategies for revising

- **Reread your introduction and ask questions.** Are the sentences leading to your thesis specific enough to engage readers and communicate your purpose? Do these sentences lead logically to your thesis? Do they spark your readers' curiosity and offer them a reason to continue reading? (See 1e.)
- **Try engaging readers with a "hook"** in your introduction—a question, a quotation, a vivid example, or a startling statistic. (See the chart on p. 23.)

### THE COMMENT: *Consider opposing viewpoints*

**Understanding the comment** When readers suggest that you "consider opposing viewpoints," the comment often signals that you need to recognize and respond to possible objections to your argument.

#### Strategies for revising

- **Read more** to learn about the debates surrounding the topic. Understand the various sides of your issue so you can anticipate and counter objections to your argument. (See 50a and 50b.)
- **Be open-minded.** Although it might seem illogical to introduce opposing arguments, you'll show your knowledge of the topic by recognizing that not everyone draws the same conclusions or holds the same point of view. (See 6i and p. 438.)
- **Introduce and counter objections** with phrases like these: "Some readers might point out that . . ." or "Critics of this view argue that. . . ." (See p. 110.)

## 2c Use peer review: Give constructive comments.

Peer review gives you an opportunity to read the work of your classmates and to learn from each other. As you offer advice about how to strengthen a peer's thesis or how to use a visual to convey concise information, you are thinking about the purpose of a thesis and the role of visuals. When you propose a strategy for focusing an introduction or for anticipating a counterargument, you not only help your classmate, but you also benefit from the process of thinking strategically about revision.

As a peer reviewer, your work is to engage with a writer as a reader. It isn't your job to rewrite, correct, or proofread the work of your peers. It is your job, though, to offer thoughtful, positive, encouraging comments to show peers what they're doing well and how they might build upon their strengths as writers.

The following guidelines will help you offer constructive comments to your peers.

**Be specific.** Your comments will be more constructive if you point to specific places in a draft and show your classmate how, why, and where a draft is effective or confusing. Instead of saying "I like your draft," be specific about what you like: "You do a great job of using a startling statistic in your introduction to hook me as a reader." Or instead of offering a generality such as "Your draft doesn't have much support," give a specific suggestion: "A bar graph in the third paragraph might support your thesis and be convincing visual evidence."

**View yourself as a coach, not a judge.** Think of yourself as asking questions and proposing possibilities, not dictating solutions. It is the writer, after all, who will have to grapple with revising. Help the writer identify the strengths of a draft and conceive possible solutions to address the draft's problems. Try phrasing comments this way: "Have you thought about . . ." "What if you tried . . ." or "How can you help a reader understand this important point. . ."

**Pay attention to global issues first.** Focus on the big picture—purpose, thesis, organization, and content—before sentence structure, word choice, and grammar. As a reader, do you understand the writer's main idea? Can you follow the train of thought? Restate the writer's thesis and main ideas to check your

understanding. Use the checklist for global revision (p. 42) to guide your comments.

The following excerpt from an online peer review session shows a peer reviewer offering constructive comments:

#### EXCERPT FROM AN ONLINE PEER REVIEW SESSION

**Juan (Peer Reviewer):** *Rachel, your essay makes a great point that credit card companies often hook students on a cycle of spending. But it sounds as if you're blaming students for their spending habits and credit card companies for their deceptive actions. Is this what you want to say?*

**Rachel (Writer):** *No, I want to keep the focus on the credit card companies. I didn't realize I was blaming students. What could I change?*

**Juan (Reviewer):** *In paragraphs three and four, you group all students together as if all students have the same bad spending habits. If students are your audience, you'll be insulting them. What reader is motivated to read something that's alienating? What is your purpose for writing this draft?*

**Rachel (Writer):** *Well . . . It's true that students don't always have good spending habits, but I don't want to blame students. My purpose is to call students to action about the dangers of credit card debt. Any suggestions for narrowing the focus?*

**Juan (Reviewer):** *Most students know about the dangers of credit card debt, but they might not know about specific deceptive practices companies use to lure them. Maybe ask yourself what would surprise your audience about these practices?*

**Rachel (Writer):** *Juan, that's a good idea. I'll try it.*

Peer reviewer restates writer's main point and asks a question to help her clarify her ideas.

Writer takes comment seriously and asks reviewer for specific suggestion.

Peer reviewer points to specific places in the draft and asks questions to help writer focus on audience and purpose.

Writer is actively engaged with peer reviewer's comments and doesn't take criticism personally.

Peer reviewer responds as a reader and acts as a coach to suggest possible solutions.

Writer thanks reviewer for his help and leaves session with a specific revision strategy.

POST COMMENT



## 2d Highlights of one student's peer review process.

Student writer Michelle Nguyen wrote a draft in response to the following assignment:

How have your experiences with writing, positive or negative, shaped you as a writer? Write a literacy narrative (500–1,000 words) to explore this question. Select one or more key experiences that you think best illustrate how you became the writer you are today. In addition to telling a story, your narrative should make a larger point about learning to write that will be of interest to your readers.

Below is the draft Nguyen submitted to her three peer reviewers. Here are questions she gave her peer reviewers to focus their feedback.

### QUESTIONS FROM NGUYEN TO PEER REVIEWERS

Alex, Brian, and Sameera: Thanks for reading my draft. Here are three questions I have about my draft: Is my focus clear? Is there anything that confuses you? What specifically should I cut or add to strengthen my draft?

### ROUGH DRAFT WITH PEER COMMENTS

#### Rough Draft

My family used to live in the heart of Hanoi, Vietnam. The neighborhood was small but swamped with crime. Drug addicts scoured the alleys and stole the most mundane things—old clothes, worn slippers, even license plates of motorbikes. Like anyone else in Vietnam in the '90s, we struggled with poverty. There was no entertainment device in our house aside from an 11" black-and-white television. Even then, electricity went off for hours on a weekly basis.

I was particularly close to a Vietnam War veteran. My parents were away a lot, so the old man became like a grandfather to me. He taught me how to ride a bicycle, how to read, how to take care of

**Alex F:** You might want to add a title to focus readers.

**Sameera K:** I really like your introduction. It's so vivid. Think about adding a photo of your neighborhood so readers can relate. What does Hanoi look like?

**Brian S:** You have great details here to set the scene in Hanoi, but why does it matter that you didn't have an "entertainment device"? Maybe choose the most interesting among all these details.

small pets. He worked sporadically from home, fixing bicycle tires and broken pedals. He was a wrinkly old man who didn't talk much. His vocal cords were damaged during the war, and it caused him pain to speak. In a neighborhood full of screaming babies and angry shop owners and slimy criminals, his home was my quiet haven. I could read and write and think and bond with someone whose worldliness came from his **wordlessness**.

The tiny house he lived in stood at the far end of our neighborhood. It always smelled of old clothes and forgotten memories. He was a slight man, but his piercing black eyes retained their intensity even after all these years. He **must have made one fierce soldier**.

"I almost died once," he said, dusting a picture frame. It was one of those rare instances he ever mentioned his life during the war. As he talked, I perched myself on the side of an armchair, rested my head on my tiny hands, and listened intently. I didn't understand much. I just liked hearing his low, humming voice. The concept of war for me was strictly confined to the classroom, and even then, the details of combat were always murky. The teachers just needed us to know that the communist troops enjoyed a glorious victory.

"I was the only survivor of my unit. 20 guys. All dead within a year. Then they let me go," he said. His voice cracked a little and his eyes misted over as he stared at pictures from his combatant past. "We didn't even live long enough to understand what we were fighting for."

He finished the sentence with a drawn-out sigh, a small set of wrinkles gathering at the end of his eyes.

**Brian S:** Worldliness came from wordlessness—great phrase! Is this part of your main idea? What is your main idea?

**Sameera K:** You do a good job of showing us why this Vietnam veteran was important to you, but it seems like this draft is more a story about the man and not about you. What do you want readers to understand about you?

Years later, as I thought about his stories, I started to wonder why he referred to his deceased comrades by the collective pronoun “we.” It was as if a little bit of him died on the battlefield with them too.

Three years after my family left the neighborhood, I learned that the old man became stricken with cancer. When I came home the next summer, I visited his house and sat by his sickbed. His shoulder-length mop of salt and pepper hair now dwarfed his rail-thin figure. We barely exchanged a word. He just held my hands tightly until my mother called for me to leave, his skeletal fingers leaving a mark on my pale palms. Perhaps he was **trying to transmit to me** some of his worldliness and his wisdom. Perhaps he was telling me to go out into the world and live the free life he never had.

**Some people say that writers are selfish and vain.** The truth is, I learned to write because it gave me peace in the much too noisy world of my Vietnamese childhood. In the quiet of the old man’s house, I gazed out the window, listened to my thoughts, and wrote them down. **It** all started with a story about a wrinkly Vietnam War veteran who didn’t talk much.

**Sameera K:** I’m curious to hear more about you and why this man was so important to you. What did he teach you about writing? What did he see in you?

**Alex F:** This sentence is confusing. Your draft doesn’t seem to be about the selfishness or vanity of writers.

**Brian S:** What does “it” refer to? I think you’re trying to say something important about silence and noise and literacy, but I’m not sure what it is.

After reading her draft and considering the feedback from her classmates, Nguyen realized that she had chosen a good direction but that she hadn’t focused her draft to meet the expectations of the assignment. Her classmates offered her valuable suggestions about adding a photograph of her Hanoi neighborhood and clarifying her main idea. With her classmates’ specific questions and suggestions in mind, and their encouragement to



see the undeveloped possibilities in her draft, Nguyen developed some goals for revising.

#### MICHELLE NGUYEN'S REVISION GOALS

- Add a title.
- Revise introduction to set the scene more dramatically. Use Sameera's idea to include a photo of my neighborhood.
- Make the story my story, not the man's story. Answer Sameera's question: What did the man see in me and I in him? Delete extra material about the old man.
- Answer Brian's question: What is my main idea?
- Follow Brian's suggestion about the connection between wordlessness and worldliness. Make the contrasts sharper between the neighborhood and the man's house.
- Figure out what main idea I'm trying to communicate. See if there is a possible idea in the various contrasts. The surprise was finding writing in silence, not in the noisy exchange of voices in my neighborhood.

See page 45 for Nguyen's revised draft.

## 2e Approach global revision in cycles.

Revision is more effective when you approach it in cycles, rather than attempting to change everything all at once. Four common cycles of global revision are discussed in this section:

- Engaging the audience
- Sharpening the focus
- Improving the organization
- Strengthening the content

### Engaging the audience

Sometimes a rough draft needs an overhaul because it is directed at no particular audience. A good question to ask yourself and your reviewers is the toughest question a reader might ask: "So what?" or "Why does it matter?" If your draft can't pass the "So what?" test, you may need to rethink your approach.

Once you have made sure that your draft is directed at an audience—readers who have a stake in the topic—you may

still need to refine your tone. The tone of a piece of writing expresses the writer's feelings toward the audience and the topic, so it is important to get it right. When you seek responses to your draft, ask your readers about your tone. If they respond that your tone seems self-centered, flippant, bossy, patronizing, or hostile, for example, you'll want to modify it to show respect for your readers.

The following paragraph was drafted by a student who hoped to persuade his audience to buy organic produce.

#### A PARAGRAPH THAT ALIENATES READERS

If you choose to buy organic produce, you are supporting local farmers as well as demonstrating your opposition to chemical pesticides. As more and more supermarkets carry organic fruits and vegetables, consumers have fewer reasons not to buy organic. Some consumers do not buy organic produce because they are not willing to spend the extra money. But if you care at all about the environment or the small farmer, you should be willing to support organic farms in your area.

When the student asked a classmate to review his draft, his classmate commented that the tone was harsh and alienating. His peer reviewer questioned why he assumed his readers didn't care about the environment.

#### A PARAGRAPH THAT RESPECTS READERS

By choosing to buy organic produce, you have the opportunity to support local farmers, to oppose the use of chemical pesticides, and to taste some of the freshest produce available. Because more supermarkets carry organic produce than ever, you won't even have to miss out on any of your favorite fruits or vegetables. Although organic produce can be more expensive than conventional produce, the costs are not prohibitive. For example, a pound of organic bananas at my local grocery store is eighty-nine cents, while the conventional bananas are sixty-nine cents a pound. If you can afford this small price difference, you will have the opportunity to make a difference for the environment and for the small farmer.

— Leon Nage, student

### Sharpening the focus

A clearly focused draft fixes readers' attention on one central idea and does not stray from that idea. You can sharpen the focus of a draft by clarifying the introduction (especially the thesis) and by deleting any text that is off point.

**Clarifying the introduction** Reread your introduction to see if it clearly states the essay's main idea. To help you revise, ask your reviewers questions such as the following:

- Does the introduction let readers know what to expect as they read on?
- Does it make the significance of the subject clear so that readers will want to keep reading?
- Can readers tell where the introduction stops and the body of the essay begins? Have you included material in the introduction that should appear in the body instead? Is your introduction too broad or unfocused?
- Does the thesis accurately state the main idea of the essay?

**Deleting text that is off the point** Compare the introduction, especially the thesis statement, with the body of the essay. Does the body fulfill the promise of the introduction? If not, you will need to adjust one or the other. Either rebuild the introduction to fit the body or keep the introduction and delete body sentences or paragraphs that stray from its point.

### **Improving the organization**

A draft is well organized when its major divisions are logical and easy to follow. To improve the organization of your draft, you may need to take one or more of the following actions: adding or sharpening topic sentences, moving blocks of text, and inserting headings.

**Adding or sharpening topic sentences** Topic sentences state the main ideas of the paragraphs in the body of an essay. (See 3a.) You can review the organization of a draft by reading only the topic sentences. Do the topic sentences clearly support the essay's main idea? Can you turn them into a reasonable sentence outline of the paper? (See 1d.) If your draft lacks topic sentences, add them unless you have a good reason for omitting them.

**Moving blocks of text** Improving the organization of a draft can be as simple as moving a few sentences from one paragraph to another or reordering paragraphs. You may also find that you can clarify the organization of a draft by combining choppy paragraphs or by dividing those that are too long for easy reading. (See 3e.) Often, however, the process is more complex. As you move blocks of text, you may need to supply transitions to make the text fit smoothly in the new positions; you may also need to rework topic sentences to make your new organization clear.

Before moving text, consider sketching a revised outline. Divisions in the outline might become topic sentences in the restructured essay. (See 3e.)

**Inserting headings** In long documents, such as complex research papers or business reports, headings can help readers follow your organization. Typically, headings are presented as phrases, declarative or imperative sentences, or questions. To draw attention to headings, you can center them, put them in boldface, underline them, use all capital letters, or do some combination of these techniques. (See also 58b for use of headings in APA papers.)

### Strengthening the content

In reviewing the content of a draft, first consider whether your argument is sound. Second, consider whether you should add or delete any text (sentences or paragraphs). If your purpose is to argue a point, consider how persuasively you have supported your point. If your purpose is to inform, be sure that you have presented your ideas clearly and with enough detail to meet your readers' expectations.

**Rethinking your argument** A first draft presents you with an opportunity to rethink your argument. You can often develop your ideas about a subject by asking yourself some questions:

- Is your claim more sweeping than the evidence supports?
- Have you left out an important step in the argument?
- Have you dealt fairly with opposing arguments?
- Is your draft free of faulty reasoning? (See 6a.)

**Adding text** If any paragraphs or sections of the essay are too skimpy to be clear and convincing (a common problem in rough drafts), add specific facts, details, and examples. You may need to go back to the beginning of the writing process: listing specifics, brainstorming ideas with friends or classmates, perhaps doing more research. As you revise paragraphs, it's helpful to ask questions such as Why? and How?

**Deleting text** Look for sentences and paragraphs that can be cut without serious loss of meaning. Ask your reviewers if they can show you sentences where you have repeated yourself or strayed from your point. Maybe you have given too much emphasis to minor ideas. Cuts may also be necessitated by word limits, such as those imposed by a college assignment or by the realities of the business world, where readers are often pressed for time.

## Checklist for global revision

### Purpose and audience

- Does the draft address a question, a problem, or an issue that readers care about?
- Is the draft appropriate for its audience? Does it account for the audience's knowledge of and possible attitudes toward the subject?
- Is the tone respectful?

### Focus

- Is the thesis clear? Is it prominently placed?
- Does the thesis answer a reader's "So what?" question? (See p. 16.)
- If the draft has no thesis, is there a good reason for omitting one?

### Organization and paragraphing

- Is each paragraph unified around a main point?
- Does each paragraph support and develop the thesis?
- Have you provided organizational cues for readers such as topic sentences and headings?
- Have you presented ideas in a logical order?
- Are any paragraphs too long or too short for easy reading?

### Content

- Is the supporting material relevant and persuasive?
- Which ideas need further development? Have you left your readers with any unanswered questions?
- Are the parts proportioned sensibly? Do major ideas receive enough attention?
- Should you delete any material? Look for redundant or irrelevant information.

### Point of view

- Is the dominant point of view — first person (*I* or *we*), second person (*you*), or third person (*he*, *she*, *it*, *one*, or *they*) — appropriate for your purpose and audience? (See 1a.)



## 2f Revise and edit sentences.

When you *revise* sentences, you focus on clarity and effectiveness; when you *edit*, you check for correctness. Sentences that are wordy, vague, or rambling may distract readers and make it hard for readers to focus on your purpose or grasp your ideas. Read each sentence slowly to determine if it is as specific and clear as possible. You might find it helpful to read your work aloud and trust your ears to detect awkwardness, wordiness, or a jarring repetition. Your goal, as you revise your sentences, is to make each word count to keep the attention and interest of your readers.

Here, for example, is a rough-draft paragraph as one student made changes to solve a variety of sentence-level problems.

Although some cities have found creative ways to improve access to public transportation for passengers with physical disabilities, ~~and to fund other programs,~~ there have been problems in our city has struggled with ~~due to the need to address~~ budget constraints and competing needs-priorities. ~~This~~ The budget crunch has led citizens to question how funds are distributed. ~~?~~ For example, last year ~~when~~ city officials voted to use available funds to support ~~had to choose between allocating funds for accessible transportation or allocating funds to~~ after-school programs rather than transportation upgrades. ~~, they voted for the after-school programs.~~ It is not clear to some citizens why ~~these~~ after-school programs are more important.

The original paragraph was too wordy, a problem that can be addressed through any number of revisions to clarify the meaning of each sentence. The following revision would also be acceptable.

Some cities have funded improved access to public transportation for passengers with physical disabilities. Because of budget constraints, our city chose to fund after-school programs rather than transportation programs. As a result, citizens have begun to question how funds are distributed and why certain programs are more important than others.

Some of the improvements in the first revision do not involve choice and must be edited to avoid confusion and misunderstanding. For example, the hyphen in *after-school programs* is necessary; a noun must be substituted for the pronoun *these* in

the last sentence; and the question mark in the second sentence must be changed to a period.

**NOTE:** You can use an editing log to keep a personal list of your common errors and learn the rules to correct the errors. To begin your log, review all the grammar, punctuation, and spelling errors identified in your last piece of writing. For each error, list the handbook section that provides advice or examples for you to review as you edit.

## 2g Proofread the final manuscript.

Proofreading is a special kind of reading: a slow and methodical search for misspellings, typographical mistakes, and omitted words or word endings. Such errors can be difficult to spot in your own work because you may read what you intended to write, not what is actually on the page.

Although proofreading may be slow, it is crucial. Errors in an essay can be distracting and annoying. If the writer doesn't care about this piece of writing, the reader might wonder, why should I? A carefully proofread essay, however, sends a positive message: It shows that you value your writing and respect your readers.

As you proofread, pay attention to formatting your final draft and follow your instructor's directions for formatting documents. (See the document design gallery [pp. 597–607] for formatting guidelines for MLA and APA.)

### Proofreading tips

- Remove distractions and allow yourself ten to fifteen minutes of pure concentration; turn off the TV and your cell phone and find a quiet place, away from people who are talking.
- Proofread out loud, articulating each word as it is actually written.
- Proofread your sentences in reverse order.
- Proofread hard copy pages; mistakes can be difficult to catch on-screen.
- Don't rely too heavily on spell checkers and grammar checkers. Before automatically accepting their changes, consider their accuracy and appropriateness.
- Ask a volunteer (a friend, roommate, or co-worker) to proofread after you. A second reader may catch something you didn't.

## 2h Sample student revision

On pages 35–37, you’ll find Michelle Nguyen’s first draft, along with the highlights of her peer review process. Comments from her peer reviewers helped Nguyen see her draft through her readers’ eyes and to develop a revision plan (see p. 38). One reviewer asked: “What is your main idea?” Another reviewer asked: “What do you want readers to understand about you?” As she revised, Nguyen made both global revisions and sentence-level revisions to clarify her main idea and to delete extra material that might distract readers from her story. Here is Nguyen’s final draft, “A Place to Begin.”

<p>Nguyen 1</p>	<p>Michelle Nguyen Professor Wilson English 101 22 September 2014</p> <p style="text-align: center;">A Place to Begin</p> <p style="text-align: center;">I grew up in the heart of Hanoi, Vietnam—Nhà Dầu—a small but busy neighborhood swamped with crime. Houses, wedged in among cafés and other local businesses (see fig. 1), measured uniformly about 200 square feet, and the walls were so thin that we could hear every heated debate and impassioned disagreement. Drug addicts scoured the vicinity and stole the most mundane things—old clothes, worn slippers, even license plates of motorbikes. It was a neighborhood where dogs howled and kids ran amok and where the earth was always moist and marked with stains. It was the 1990s Vietnam in miniature, with all the turmoil and growing pains of a newly reborn nation.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">In a city perpetually inundated with screaming children and slimy criminals, I found my place in the home</p>	<p>Nguyen formats her final draft using MLA guidelines.</p> <p>Nguyen revises her introduction to engage readers with vivid details.</p> <p>Sentences revised for clarity and specificity.</p>
-----------------	---	--

Marginal annotations indicate [MLA-style formatting](#) and [effective writing](#).



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhigher.com/rules8e](https://macmillanhigher.com/rules8e)

2 Revising, editing, and reflecting

> Sample student writing: Nguyen, “A Place to Begin” (literacy narrative)

Nguyen 2



Fig. 1 Nhà Dầu neighborhood in Hanoi (personal photograph by author)

As her peer reviewers suggested, Nguyen adds a photograph to help readers visualize Hanoi.

Nguyen focuses on one key story in response to reviewers' questions.

Nguyen's revisions clarify her main idea.

of a Vietnam War veteran. My parents were away a lot, so the old man became like a grandfather to me. He was a slight man who didn't talk much. His vocal cords had been damaged during the war, and it caused him pain to speak. In his quiet home, I could read and write in the presence of someone whose worldliness grew from his wordlessness.

His tiny house stood at the far end of our neighborhood and always smelled of old clothes and forgotten memories. His wall was plastered with pictures from his combatant past, pictures that told his life story when his own voice couldn't. "I almost died once," he said, dusting a picture frame. It was one of those rare instances he ever mentioned his life during the war.

I perched myself on the side of the armchair, rested my head on my tiny hands, and listened intently. I didn't understand much. I just liked hearing his low, raspy voice.

"I was the only survivor of my unit. Twenty guys. All dead within a year. Then they let me go."

Nguyen develops her narrative with dialogue.

Nguyen 3

He finished the sentence with a drawn-out sigh, a small set of wrinkles gathering at the corner of his eye.

I wanted to hear the details of that story yet was too afraid to ask. But the bits and pieces I did hear, I wrote down in a notebook. I wanted to make sure that there were not only photos but also written words to bear witness to the old veteran's existence.

Once, I caught him looking at the jumbled mess of sentences I'd written. I ran to the table and snatched my notebook, my cheeks warmed with a bright tinge of pink. I was embarrassed. But mostly, I was terrified that he'd hate me for stealing his life story and turning it into a collection of words and characters and ambivalent feelings.

"I'm sorry," I muttered, my gaze drilling a hole into the tiled floor.

Quietly, he peeled the notebook from my fingers and placed it back on the table.

In his muted way, with his mouth barely twisted in a smile, he seemed to be granting me permission and encouraging me to keep writing. Maybe he saw a storyteller and a writer in me, a little girl with a pencil and too much free time.

The last time I visited Nhà Dầu was for the veteran's funeral two years ago. It was a cold November afternoon, but the weather didn't dampen the usual tumultuous spirit of the neighborhood. I could hear the jumble of shouting voices and howling dogs, yet it didn't bother me. For a minute I closed my eyes, remembering myself as a little girl with a big pencil, gazing out a window and scribbling words in my first notebook.

Many people think that words emerge from words and from the exchange of voices. Perhaps this is true. But the surprising paradox of writing for me is that I started to

Nguyen revises to keep the focus on her story and not the old man's, as her peer reviewers suggested.

Nguyen revises her final two paragraphs, circling back to the scene from the introduction, giving the narrative coherence.

Nguyen revises final paragraph to show readers the significance of her narrative.

Nguyen 4

write in the presence of silence. It was only in the utter stillness of a Vietnam War veteran's house that I could hear my thoughts for the first time, appreciate language, and find the confidence to put words on a page. With one notebook and a pencil, and with the encouragement of a wordless man to tell his story, I began to write. Sometimes that's all a writer needs, a quiet place to begin.

Following a peer reviewer's advice, Nguyen chooses words from her final sentence for her title.

## 2i Prepare a portfolio; reflect on your writing.

At the end of the semester, your instructor may ask you to submit a portfolio, or collection, of your writing. A writing portfolio often consists of drafts, revisions, and reflections that demonstrate a writer's thinking and learning processes or that showcase the writer's best work. Your instructor may give you the choice of submitting your portfolio on paper or electronically.

As early in the course as possible, be sure you know the answers to the following questions:

- Should the portfolio be a paper collection or an electronic one? Is it your choice?
- Will the portfolio be checked or assessed before the end of the term? If so, when or how often? By whom?
- Are you free to choose any or all of the pieces to include?
- Are you free to include a variety of items (not just rough and final drafts of papers), such as outlines and notes, journal entries, photographs or other visuals, comments from reviewers, sound files, or video clips?
- Will your instructor be the primary or only audience for the portfolio? Or will the portfolio be shared with peers or with other instructors?

**TIP:** Save your notes, drafts, and reviewers' comments for possible use in your portfolio. The more you have assembled, the more you have to choose from to represent your best work. Keep your documents organized in a paper or electronic file system for easy access. (See 1h.)

Reflection — the process of stepping back periodically to examine your decisions, preferences, strengths, and challenges as a writer — helps you recognize your growth as a writer and is the backbone of portfolio keeping.

When you submit your portfolio for a final evaluation or reading, you may be asked to include a reflective opening statement — a cover letter, an introduction, a preface, a memo, or an essay.

Reflective writing allows you to do the following:

- show that you can identify the strengths and weaknesses of your writing
- comment on the progress you've made in the course
- understand your own writing process
- demonstrate that you've made good writing decisions
- comment on how you might use skills developed in or experiences from your writing course in other courses where writing is assigned

Check with your instructor about the guidelines for your reflective opening statement.

## 3 Building effective paragraphs

A paragraph is a group of sentences that focuses on one main point or example. Except for special-purpose paragraphs, such as introductions and conclusions (see 1e and 1g), body paragraphs function to develop and support an essay's main point or thesis. Aim for paragraphs that are well developed, organized, coherent, and neither too long nor too short for easy reading. Note that there is no ideal length for a paragraph, but your instructor may have specific guidelines.

### 3a Focus on a main point.

A paragraph should be unified around a main point. The point should be clear to readers, and all sentences in the paragraph should relate to it.

### Stating the main point in a topic sentence

As readers move into a paragraph, they need to know where they are—in relation to the whole essay—and what to expect in the sentences to come. A good topic sentence, a one-sentence summary of the paragraph's main point, acts as a signpost pointing in two directions: backward toward the thesis of the essay and forward toward the body of the paragraph.

Like a thesis statement (see 1c), a topic sentence is more general than the material supporting it. Usually the topic sentence (highlighted in the following example) comes first in the paragraph.

All living creatures manage some form of communication. The dance patterns of bees in their hive help to point the way to distant flower fields or announce successful foraging. Male stickleback fish regularly swim upside-down to indicate outrage in a courtship contest. Male deer and lemurs mark territorial ownership by rubbing their own body secretions on boundary stones or trees. Everyone has seen a frightened dog put his tail between his legs and run in panic. We, too, use gestures, expressions, postures, and movement to give our words point.

—Olivia Vlahos, *Human Beginnings*

In college writing, topic sentences are often necessary for advancing or clarifying lines of an argument and introducing evidence from a source. In the following paragraph on the effects of the 2010 oil spill in the Gulf of Mexico, the writer uses a topic sentence (highlighted) to state that the extent of the threat is unknown before quoting three sources that illustrate her point.

To date, the full ramifications [of the oil spill] remain a question mark. An August report from the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration estimated that 75 percent of the oil had “either evaporated or been burned, skimmed, recovered from the wellhead, or dispersed.” However, Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution researchers reported that a 1.2-mile-wide, 650-foot-high plume caused by the spill “had and will persist for some time.” And University of Georgia scientists concluded that almost 80 percent of the released oil hadn't been recovered and “remains a threat to the ecosystem.”

—Michele Berger, “Volunteer Army”





Occasionally the topic sentence may be withheld until the end of the paragraph — but only if the earlier sentences hang together so well that readers perceive their direction, if not their exact point.

### Sticking to the point

Sentences that do not support the topic sentence destroy the unity of a paragraph. If the paragraph is otherwise focused, such sentences can simply be deleted or perhaps moved elsewhere. In the following paragraph describing the inadequate facilities in a high school, the information about the chemistry instructor (highlighted) is clearly off the point.

As the result of tax cuts, the educational facilities of Lincoln High School have reached an all-time low. Some of the books date back to 1990 and have long since shed their covers. The few computers in working order must share one printer. The lack of lab equipment makes it necessary for four or five students to work at one table, with most watching rather than performing experiments. Also, the chemistry instructor left to have a baby at the beginning of the semester, and most of the students don't like the substitute. As for the furniture, many of the upright chairs have become recliners, and the desk legs are so unbalanced that they play seesaw on the floor.

**EXERCISE 3-1** Underline the topic sentence in the following paragraph and cross out any material that does not clarify or develop the central idea.

*More practice:*  LaunchPadSolo

Quilt making has served as an important means of social, political, and artistic expression for women. In the nineteenth century, quilting circles provided one of the few opportunities for women to forge social bonds outside of their families. Once a week or more, they came together to sew as well as trade small talk, advice, and news. They used dyed cotton fabrics much like the fabrics quilters use today; surprisingly, quilters' basic materials haven't changed that much over the years. Sometimes the women joined their efforts in support of a political cause, making quilts that would be raffled to raise money for temperance societies, hospitals for sick and wounded soldiers, and the fight against slavery. Quilt making also afforded women a means of artistic expression at a time when they had few other creative outlets. Within their socially acceptable roles as homemakers, many quilters subtly pushed back at the restrictions placed on them by experimenting with color, design, and technique.



### 3b Develop the main point.

Though an occasional short paragraph is fine, particularly if it functions as a transition or emphasizes a point, a series of brief paragraphs suggests inadequate development. How much development is enough? That varies, depending on the writer's purpose and audience.

For example, when health columnist Jane Brody wrote a paragraph attempting to convince readers that it is impossible to lose fat quickly, she knew that she would have to present a great deal of evidence because many dieters want to believe the opposite. She did *not* write only the following:

When you think about it, it's impossible to lose — as many diets suggest — 10 pounds of *fat* in ten days, even on a total fast. Even a moderately active person cannot lose so much weight so fast. A less active person hasn't a prayer.

This three-sentence paragraph is too skimpy to be convincing. But the paragraph that Brody did write contains enough evidence to convince even skeptical readers.

When you think about it, it's impossible to lose — as many . . . diets suggest — 10 pounds of *fat* in ten days, even on a total fast. A pound of body fat represents 3,500 calories. To lose 1 pound of fat, you must expend 3,500 more calories than you consume. Let's say you weigh 170 pounds and, as a moderately active person, you burn 2,500 calories a day. If your diet contains only 1,500 calories, you'd have an energy deficit of 1,000 calories a day. In a week's time that would add up to a 7,000-calorie deficit, or 2 pounds of real fat. In ten days, the accumulated deficit would represent nearly 3 pounds of lost body fat. Even if you ate nothing at all for ten days and maintained your usual level of activity, your caloric deficit would add up to 25,000 calories. . . . At 3,500 calories per pound of fat, that's still only 7 pounds of lost fat.

— Jane Brody, *Jane Brody's Nutrition Book*

### 3c Choose a suitable pattern of organization.

Although paragraphs (and indeed whole essays) may be patterned in any number of ways, certain patterns of organization occur frequently, either alone or in combination: examples and illustrations,



narration, description, process, comparison and contrast, analogy, cause and effect, classification and division, and definition. These patterns (sometimes called *methods of development*) have different uses, depending on the writer's subject and purpose.

### Examples and illustrations

Examples, perhaps the most common pattern of development, are appropriate whenever the reader might be tempted to ask, "For example?" Though examples are just selected instances, not a complete catalog, they are enough to suggest the truth of many topic sentences, as in the following paragraph.

Normally my parents abided scrupulously by "The Budget," but several times a year Dad would dip into his battered black strongbox and splurge on some irrational, totally satisfying luxury. Once he bought over a hundred comic books at a flea market, doled out to us thereafter at the tantalizing rate of two a week. He always got a whole flat of pansies, Mom's favorite flower, for us to give her on Mother's Day. One day a boy stopped at our house selling fifty-cent raffle tickets on a sailboat, and Dad bought every ticket the boy had left — three books' worth.

— Connie Hailey, student

Illustrations are extended examples, frequently presented in story form. Because they require several sentences apiece, they are used more sparingly than examples. When well selected, however, they can be a vivid and effective means of developing a point. The writer of the following paragraph uses illustrations to demonstrate that Harriet Tubman, the underground railroad's most famous conductor, was a genius at eluding her pursuers.

Part of [Harriet Tubman's] strategy of conducting was, as in all battle-field operations, the knowledge of how and when to retreat. Numerous allusions have been made to her moves when she suspected that she was in danger. When she feared the party was closely pursued, she would take it for a time on a train southward bound. No one seeing Negroes going in this direction would for an instant suppose them to be fugitives. Once on her return she was at a railroad station. She saw some men reading a poster and she heard one of them reading it aloud. It was a description of her, offering a reward for her capture. She took a southbound train to avert suspicion. At another time when Harriet heard men talking about her, she pretended to read a book which she carried. One man remarked, "This can't be the woman. The one we want can't read or write." Harriet devoutly hoped the book was right side up.

— Earl Conrad, *Harriet Tubman*

## Narration

A paragraph of narration tells a story or part of a story. Narrative paragraphs are usually arranged in chronological order, but they may also contain flashbacks, interruptions that take the story back to an earlier time. The following paragraph recounts one of the author's experiences in the African wild.

One evening when I was wading in the shallows of the lake to pass a rocky outcrop, I suddenly stopped dead as I saw the sinuous black body of a snake in the water. It was all of six feet long, and from the slight hood and the dark stripes at the back of the neck I knew it to be a Storm's water cobra — a deadly reptile for the bite of which there was, at that time, no serum. As I stared at it an incoming wave gently deposited part of its body on one of my feet. I remained motionless, not even breathing, until the wave rolled back into the lake, drawing the snake with it. Then I leaped out of the water as fast as I could, my heart hammering.

— Jane Goodall, *In the Shadow of Man*

## Description

A descriptive paragraph sketches a portrait of a person, place, or thing by using concrete and specific details that appeal to one or more of our senses — sight, sound, smell, taste, and touch. Consider, for example, the following description of the grasshopper invasions that devastated the midwestern landscape in the United States in the late 1860s.

They came like dive bombers out of the west. They came by the millions with the rustle of their wings roaring overhead. They came in waves, like the rolls of the sea, descending with a terrifying speed, breaking now and again like a mighty surf. They came with the force of a williwaw and they formed a huge, ominous, dark brown cloud that eclipsed the sun. They dipped and touched earth, hitting objects and people like hailstones. But they were not hail. These were *live* demons. They popped, snapped, crackled, and roared. They were dark brown, an inch or longer in length, plump in the middle and tapered at the ends. They had transparent wings, slender legs, and two black eyes that flashed with a fierce intelligence.

— Eugene Boe, "Pioneers to Eternity"

## Process

A process paragraph is structured in chronological order. A writer may choose this pattern either to describe how something

is made or done or to explain to readers, step-by-step, how to do something. Here is a paragraph explaining how to perform a “roll cast,” a popular fly-fishing technique.

Begin by taking up a suitable stance, with one foot slightly in front of the other and the rod pointing down the line. Then begin a smooth, steady draw, raising your rod hand to just above shoulder height and lifting the rod to the 10:30 or 11:00 position. This steady draw allows a loop of line to form between the rod top and the water. While the line is still moving, raise the rod slightly, then punch it rapidly forward and down. The rod is now flexed and under maximum compression, and the line follows its path, bellying out slightly behind you and coming off the water close to your feet. As you power the rod down through the 3:00 position, the belly of line will roll forward. Follow through smoothly so that the line unfolds and straightens above the water.

— *The Dorling Kindersley Encyclopedia of Fishing*

### Comparison and contrast

To compare two subjects is to draw attention to their similarities, although the word *compare* also has a broader meaning that includes a consideration of differences. To contrast is to focus only on differences.

Whether a paragraph stresses similarities or differences, it may be patterned in one of two ways. The two subjects may be presented one at a time, as in the following paragraph of contrast.

So Grant and Lee were in complete contrast, representing two diametrically opposed elements in American life. Grant was the modern man emerging; beyond him, ready to come on the stage, was the great age of steel and machinery, of crowded cities and a restless, burgeoning vitality. Lee might have ridden down from the old age of chivalry, lance in hand, silken banner fluttering over his head. Each man was the perfect champion of his cause, drawing both his strengths and his weaknesses from the people he led.

— Bruce Catton, “Grant and Lee: A Study in Contrasts”

Or a paragraph may proceed point by point, treating the two subjects together, one aspect at a time. The following paragraph uses the point-by-point method to contrast speeches given by Abraham Lincoln in 1860 and Barack Obama in 2008.

Two men, two speeches. The men, both lawyers, both from Illinois, were seeking the presidency, despite what seemed their crippling connection with extremists. Each was young by modern

standards for a president. Abraham Lincoln had turned fifty-one just five days before delivering his speech. Barack Obama was forty-six when he gave his. Their political experience was mainly provincial, in the Illinois legislature for both of them, and they had received little exposure at the national level — two years in the House of Representatives for Lincoln, four years in the Senate for Obama. Yet each was seeking his party's nomination against a New York senator of longer standing and greater prior reputation — Lincoln against Senator William Seward, Obama against Senator Hillary Clinton.

— Garry Wills, “Two Speeches on Race”

### Analogy

Analogies draw comparisons between items that appear to have little in common. Writers turn to analogies for a variety of reasons: to make the unfamiliar seem familiar, to provide a concrete understanding of an abstract topic, to argue a point, or to provoke fresh thoughts or changed feelings about a subject. In the following paragraph, physician Lewis Thomas draws an analogy between the behavior of ants and that of humans.

Ants are so much like human beings as to be an embarrassment. They farm fungi, raise aphids as livestock, launch armies into wars, use chemical sprays to alarm and confuse enemies, capture slaves. The families of weaver ants engage in child labor, holding their larvae like shuttles to spin out the thread that sews the leaves together for their fungus gardens. They exchange information ceaselessly. They do everything but watch television.

— Lewis Thomas, “On Societies as Organisms”

Although analogies can be a powerful tool for illuminating a subject, they should be used with caution in arguments. Just because two things may be alike in one respect, we cannot conclude that they are alike in all respects. (See “false analogy,” p. 94.)

### Cause and effect

When causes and effects are a matter of argument, they are too complex to be reduced to a simple pattern (see p. 95). However, if a writer wishes merely to describe a cause-and-effect relationship that is generally accepted, then the effect may be stated in the topic sentence, with the causes listed in the body of the paragraph.

The fantastic water clarity of the Mount Gambier sinkholes results from several factors. The holes are fed from aquifers holding rainwater that fell decades — even centuries — ago, and that has been filtered through miles of limestone. The high level of calcium that limestone adds causes the silty detritus from dead plants and animals to cling together and settle quickly to the bottom. Abundant bottom vegetation in the shallow sinkholes also helps bind the silt. And the rapid turnover of water prohibits stagnation.

— Hillary Hauser, “Exploring a Sunken Realm in Australia”

Or the paragraph may move from cause to effects, as in this paragraph from a student paper on the effects of the industrial revolution on American farms.

The rise of rail transport in the nineteenth century forever changed American farming — for better and for worse. Farmers who once raised crops and livestock to sustain just their own families could now make a profit by selling their goods in towns and cities miles away. These new markets improved the living standard of struggling farm families and encouraged them to seek out innovations that would increase their profits. On the downside, the competition fostered by the new markets sometimes created hostility among neighboring farm families where there had once been a spirit of cooperation. Those farmers who couldn't compete with their neighbors left farming forever, facing poverty worse than they had ever known.

— Chris Mileski, student

### Classification and division

Classification is the grouping of items into categories according to some consistent principle. For example, an elementary school teacher might classify children's books according to their level of difficulty, but a librarian might group them by subject matter. The principle of classification that a writer chooses ultimately depends on the purpose of the classification. The following paragraph classifies species of electric fish.

Scientists sort electric fishes into three categories. The first comprises the strongly electric species like the marine electric rays or the freshwater African electric catfish and South American electric eel. Known since the dawn of history, these deliver a punch strong enough to stun a human. In recent years, biologists have focused on a second category: weakly electric fish in the

South American and African rivers that use tiny voltages for communication and navigation. The third group contains sharks, nonelectric rays, and catfish, which do not emit a field but possess sensors that enable them to detect the minute amounts of electricity that leak out of other organisms.

— Anne and Jack Rudloe, “Electric Warfare:  
The Fish That Kill with Thunderbolts”

Division takes one item and divides it into parts. As with classification, division should be made according to some consistent principle. The following passage describes the components that make up a baseball.

Like the game itself, a baseball is composed of many layers. One of the delicious joys of childhood is to take apart a baseball and examine the wonders within. You begin by removing the red cotton thread and peeling off the leather cover — which comes from the hide of a Holstein cow and has been tanned, cut, printed, and punched with holes. Beneath the cover is a thin layer of cotton string, followed by several hundred yards of woolen yarn, which makes up the bulk of the ball. Finally, in the middle is a rubber ball, or “pill,” which is a little smaller than a golf ball. Slice into the rubber and you’ll find the ball’s heart — a cork core. The cork is from Portugal, the rubber from southeast Asia, the covers are American, and the balls are assembled in Costa Rica.

— Dan Gutman, *The Way Baseball Works*

## Definition

A definition puts a word or concept into a general class and then provides enough details to distinguish it from others in the same class. In the following paragraph, the writer defines *envy* as a special kind of desire.

Envy is so integral and so painful a part of what animates behavior in market societies that many people have forgotten the full meaning of the word, simplifying it into one of the synonyms of desire. It is that, which may be why it flourishes in market societies: democracies of desire, they might be called, with money for ballots, stuffing permitted. But envy is more or less than desire. It begins with an almost frantic sense of emptiness inside oneself, as if the pump of one’s heart were sucking on air. One has to be blind to perceive the emptiness, of course, but that’s just what envy is, a selective blindness. *Invidia*, Latin for envy, translates as “non-sight,” and Dante has the envious plodding along under



cloaks of lead, their eyes sewn shut with leaden wire. What they are blind to is what they have, God-given and humanly nurtured, in themselves.

— Nelson W. Aldrich Jr., *Old Money*

### 3d Make paragraphs coherent.

When sentences and paragraphs flow from one to another without discernible bumps, gaps, or shifts, they are said to be coherent. Coherence can be improved by strengthening the ties between old information and new. A number of techniques for strengthening those ties are detailed in this section.

#### Linking ideas clearly

Readers expect to learn a paragraph's main point in a topic sentence early in the paragraph. Then, as they move into the body of the paragraph, they expect to encounter specific details, facts, or examples that support the topic sentence—either directly or indirectly.

If a sentence does not support the topic sentence directly, readers expect it to support another sentence in the paragraph and therefore to support the topic sentence indirectly. The following paragraph begins with a topic sentence. The highlighted sentences are direct supports, and the rest of the sentences are indirect supports.

Though the open-space classroom works for many children, it is not practical for my son, David. **First, David is hyperactive.** When he was placed in an open-space classroom, he became distracted and confused. He was tempted to watch the movement going on around him instead of concentrating on his own work. **Second, David has a tendency to transpose letters and numbers, a tendency that can be overcome only by individual attention from the instructor.** In the open classroom he was moved from teacher to teacher, with each one responsible for a different subject. No single teacher worked with David long enough to diagnose the problem, let alone help him with it. **Finally, David is not a highly motivated learner.** In the open classroom, he was graded “at his own level,” not by criteria for a certain grade. He could receive a B in reading and still be a grade level behind, because he was doing satisfactory work “at his own level.”

— Margaret Smith, student

### Repeating key words

Repetition of key words is an important technique for gaining coherence. To prevent repetitions from becoming dull, you can use variations of a key word (*hike, hiker, hiking*), pronouns referring to the word (*gamblers . . . they*), and synonyms (*run, spring, race, dash*). In the following paragraph describing plots among indentured servants in the seventeenth century, historian Richard Hofstadter binds sentences together by repeating the key word *plots* and echoing it with a variety of synonyms (which are highlighted).

**Plots** hatched by several servants to run away together occurred mostly in the plantation colonies, and the few recorded servant **uprisings** were entirely limited to those colonies. Virginia had been forced from its very earliest years to take stringent steps against **mutinous plots**, and severe punishments for **such behavior** were recorded. Most servant **plots** occurred in the seventeenth century: a contemplated **uprising** was nipped in the bud in York County in 1661; apparently led by some left-wing offshoots of the **Great Rebellion**, servants **plotted** an **insurrection** in Gloucester County in 1663, and four leaders were condemned and executed; some discontented servants apparently joined **Bacon's Rebellion** in the 1670's. In the 1680's the planters became newly apprehensive of discontent among the servants "owing to their great necessities and want of clothes," and it was feared they would **rise up** and **plunder** the storehouses and ships; in 1682 there were plant-cutting **riots** in which servants and laborers, as well as some planters, took part.

— Richard Hofstadter, *America at 1750*

### Using parallel structures

Parallel structures are frequently used within sentences to underscore the similarity of ideas (see 9). They may also be used to bind together a series of sentences expressing similar information. In the following passage describing folk beliefs, anthropologist Margaret Mead presents similar information in parallel grammatical form.

Actually, almost every day, even in the most sophisticated home, something is likely to happen that evokes the memory of some old folk belief. The salt spills. A knife falls to the floor. Your nose tickles. Then perhaps, with a slightly embarrassed smile, the person who spilled the salt tosses a pinch over his left shoulder. Or someone recites the old rhyme, "Knife falls, gentleman calls." Or as you rub your nose you think, That means a letter. I wonder who's writing?

— Margaret Mead, "New Superstitions for Old"

## Maintaining consistency

Coherence suffers whenever a draft shifts confusingly from one point of view to another or from one verb tense to another. (See 13.) In addition, coherence can suffer when new information is introduced with the subject of each sentence. As a rule, a sentence's subject should echo a subject or an object in the previous sentence.

## Providing transitions

Transitions help readers move from sentence to sentence; they also alert readers to more global connections of ideas — those between paragraphs or even larger blocks of text.

**Sentence-level transitions** Certain words and phrases signal connections between (or within) sentences. Frequently used transitions are included in the chart on page 63.

Skilled writers use transitional expressions with care, making sure, for example, not to use *consequently* when *also* would be more precise. They are also careful to select transitions with an appropriate tone, perhaps preferring *so* to *thus* in an informal piece, *in summary* to *in short* for a scholarly essay.

In the following paragraph, taken from an argument that dinosaurs had the “right-sized” brains for reptiles of their body size,” biologist Stephen Jay Gould uses transitions (highlighted) with skill.

I don't wish to deny that the flattened, minuscule head of large bodied Stegosaurus houses little brain from our subjective, top-heavy perspective, **but** I do wish to assert that we should not expect more of the beast. **First of all**, large animals have relatively smaller brains than related, small animals. The correlation of brain size with body size among kindred animals (all reptiles, all mammals, **for example**) is remarkably regular. **As** we move from small to large animals, from mice to elephants or small lizards to Komodo dragons, brain size increases, **but** not so fast as body size. **In other words**, bodies grow faster than brains, **and** large animals have low ratios of brain weight to body weight. **In fact**, brains grow only about two-thirds as fast as bodies. **Since** we have no reason to believe that large animals are consistently stupider than their smaller relatives, we must conclude that large animals require relatively less brain to do as well as smaller animals. **If** we do not recognize this relationship, we are likely to underestimate the mental power of very large animals, dinosaurs **in particular**.

— Stephen Jay Gould, “Were Dinosaurs Dumb?”

**Academic English** Choose transitions carefully and vary them appropriately. Each transition has a different meaning (see the chart below). If you do not use a transition with an appropriate meaning, you might confuse your readers.

- ▶ Although taking eight o'clock classes may seem unappealing, coming to school early has its advantages. <sup>For example,</sup> ~~Moreover,~~ students who arrive early typically avoid the worst traffic and find the best parking spaces.

**Paragraph-level transitions** Paragraph-level transitions usually link the *first* sentence of a new paragraph with the *first* sentence of the previous paragraph. In other words, the topic sentences signal global connections.

Look for opportunities to allude to the subject of a previous paragraph (as summed up in its topic sentence) in the topic sentence of the next one. In his essay “Little Green Lies,” Jonathan H. Adler uses this strategy in the following topic sentences, which appear in a passage describing the benefits of plastic packaging.

Consider aseptic packaging, the synthetic packaging for the “juice boxes” so many children bring to school with their lunch. One criticism of aseptic packaging is that it is nearly impossible to recycle, yet on almost every other count, aseptic packaging is environmentally preferable to the packaging alternatives. Not only do aseptic containers not require refrigeration to keep their contents from spoiling, but their manufacture requires less than one-tenth the energy of making glass bottles.

What is true for juice boxes is also true for other forms of synthetic packaging. The use of polystyrene, which is commonly (and mistakenly) referred to as “Styrofoam,” can reduce food waste dramatically due to its insulating properties. (Thanks to these properties, polystyrene cups are much preferred over paper for that morning cup of coffee.) Polystyrene also requires significantly fewer resources to produce than its paper counterpart.



### Common transitions

**TO SHOW ADDITION** and, also, besides, further, furthermore, in addition, moreover, next, too, first, second

**TO GIVE EXAMPLES** for example, for instance, to illustrate, in fact, specifically

**TO COMPARE** also, in the same manner, similarly, likewise

**TO CONTRAST** but, however, on the other hand, in contrast, nevertheless, still, even though, on the contrary, yet, although

**TO SUMMARIZE OR CONCLUDE** in short, in summary, in conclusion, to sum up, therefore

**TO SHOW TIME** after, as, before, next, during, later, finally, meanwhile, then, when, while, immediately

**TO SHOW PLACE OR DIRECTION** above, below, beyond, nearby, opposite, close, to the left

**TO INDICATE LOGICAL RELATIONSHIP** if, so, therefore, consequently, thus, as a result, for this reason, because, since

**Transitions between blocks of text** In long essays, you will need to alert readers to connections between blocks of text that are more than one paragraph long. You can do this by inserting transitional sentences or short paragraphs at key points in the essay. Here, for example, is a transitional paragraph from a student research paper. It announces that the first part of the paper (about how apes demonstrate language skills) has come to a close and the second part (about whether they understand grammar) is about to begin.

Although the great apes have demonstrated significant language skills, one central question remains: Can they be taught to use that uniquely human language tool we call grammar, to learn the difference, for instance, between “ape bite human” and “human bite ape”? In other words, can an ape create a sentence?

Another strategy to help readers move from one block of text to another is to insert headings in your essay. Headings, which usually sit above blocks of text, allow you to announce a new topic boldly, without the need for subtle transitions.

### 3e If necessary, adjust paragraph length.

Most readers feel comfortable reading paragraphs that range between one hundred and two hundred words. Shorter paragraphs require too much starting and stopping, and longer

ones strain readers' attention span. There are exceptions to this guideline, however. Paragraphs longer than two hundred words frequently appear in scholarly writing, where scholars explore complex ideas. Paragraphs shorter than one hundred words occur in newspapers because of narrow columns; in informal essays to quicken the pace; and in business writing and Web sites, where readers routinely skim for main ideas.

In an essay, the first and last paragraphs will ordinarily be the introduction and the conclusion. These special-purpose paragraphs are likely to be shorter than the paragraphs in the body of the essay. Typically, the body paragraphs will follow the essay's outline: one paragraph per point in short essays, several paragraphs per point in longer ones. Some ideas require more development than others, however, so it is best to be flexible. If an idea stretches to a length unreasonable for a paragraph, you should divide the paragraph, even if you have presented comparable points in the essay in single paragraphs.

Paragraph breaks are not always made for strictly logical reasons. Writers use them for the following reasons as well.

#### REASONS FOR BEGINNING A NEW PARAGRAPH

- to mark off the introduction and the conclusion
- to signal a shift to a new idea
- to indicate an important shift in time or place
- to emphasize a point (by placing it at the beginning or the end, not in the middle, of a paragraph)
- to highlight a contrast
- to signal a change of speakers (in dialogue)
- to provide readers with a needed pause
- to break up text that looks too dense

Beware of using too many short, choppy paragraphs, however. Readers want to see how your ideas connect, and they become irritated when you break their momentum by forcing them to pause every few sentences. Here are some reasons you might have for combining some of the paragraphs in a rough draft.

#### REASONS FOR COMBINING PARAGRAPHS

- to clarify the essay's organization
- to connect closely related ideas
- to bind together text that looks too choppy

# Academic Reading, Writing, and Speaking

**4** Reading and writing critically, 66

**STUDENT WRITING: ANALYSIS OF AN ARTICLE, 78**

**5** Reading and writing about multimodal texts, 80

**STUDENT WRITING: ANALYSIS OF AN ADVERTISEMENT, 88**

**6** Reading and writing arguments, 91

**STUDENT WRITING: ARGUMENT, 112**

**7** Speaking confidently, 119

# 4 Reading and writing critically

College writing requires you to become a critical reader — questioning and conversing with the texts you read. When you read critically, you read with an open, curious mind to understand both what is said and why. And when you write critically, you respond to a text, with thoughtful questions and insights, offering your judgment of *how* the parts of a text contribute to its overall effect. The texts you'll be asked to read and analyze may be written — many books, articles, and case studies, for example, convey meaning solely through written words. Or they may be multimodal, combining one or more modes — words, images, and sounds — such as videos, podcasts, advertisements. Whether you're reading and writing about a written text or a multimodal text, many of the same strategies apply. This chapter covers strategies that will help you analyze any text. Chapter 5 offers specific advice for analyzing multimodal texts.

## 4a Read actively.

Reading, like writing, is an active process that happens in steps. Most texts, such as the ones assigned in college, don't yield their meaning with one quick reading. Rather, they require you to read and reread to grasp the main points and to comprehend a text's layers of meaning.

When you read actively, you pay attention to details you would miss if you just skimmed a text. First, you read to understand the main ideas. Then you pay attention to your own reactions by making note of what interests, surprises, or puzzles you. Active readers preview a text, annotate it, and then converse with it.

### Previewing a text

Previewing — looking quickly through a text before you read — helps you understand its basic features and structure. A text's title, for example, may reveal an author's purpose; a text's format or design may reveal what kind of text it is — a book, a report, a policy memo, a video, and so on. As you preview, you can browse for images, scan headings, and gain a sense of the text's subsections



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](https://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

- 4 Reading and writing critically
- > Writing practice: Reading actively
- > LearningCurve: Critical reading



and intended audience. The more you know about a text before you read it, the easier it will be to dig deeper into it.

### Annotating a text

Annotating helps you capture and record your responses to a text. As you annotate, you take notes — jot down questions and reactions in the margins of the text or on electronic or paper sticky notes. You might circle or underline the author’s main points. Or you might develop your own system of annotating by placing question marks, asterisks, or stars by the text’s thesis, message, or major pieces of evidence.

As you annotate and think about a text, you are starting to write about it. Responding with notes helps you frame what *you* want to say about the author’s ideas or questions you want to address in response to the text. On a second or third reading, you may notice contradictions — statements the author makes that, put side-by-side, just don’t seem to make sense — or surprising insights that may lead to further investigation. Each rereading will raise new questions and lead to a better understanding of the text.

The following example shows how one student, Emilia Sanchez, annotated an article from *CQ Researcher*, a newsletter about social and political issues.

#### ANNOTATED ARTICLE

### *Big Box Stores Are Bad for Main Street*

BETSY TAYLOR

There is plenty of reason to be concerned about the proliferation of Wal-Marts and other so-called “big box” stores. The question, however, is not whether or not these types of stores create jobs (although several studies claim they produce a net job loss in local communities) or whether they ultimately save consumers money. The real concern about having a 25-acre slab of concrete with a 100,000 square foot box of stuff land on a town is whether it’s good for a community’s soul.

The worst thing about “big boxes” is that they have a tendency to produce Ross Perot’s famous “big sucking sound” — sucking the life out of cities and small towns across the country. On the other hand, small businesses are great for a community. They offer more personal service; they won’t threaten to pack up and leave town if they don’t get tax breaks, free roads and other blandishments; and small-business owners are much

Opening strategy — the problem is not x, it’s y.

Lumps all big boxes together.

Sentimental — what is a community’s soul? I would think job security and a strong economy are better for a community’s “soul” than small stores that have to lay people off or close.

(Continued)

## ***Big Box Stores Are Bad for Main Street***

***(Continued)***

**Logic problem?**  
**Why couldn't**  
**customer**  
**complain to**  
**store manager?**

more responsive to a customer's needs. (Ever try to complain about bad service or poor quality products to the president of Home Depot?)

**Assumes**  
**all small**  
**businesses are**  
**attentive.**

**Taylor wishes**  
**for a time that**  
**is long gone or**  
**never was.**

Yet, if big boxes are so bad, why are they so successful? One glaring reason is that we've become a nation of hyper-consumers, and the big-box boys know this. Downtown shopping districts comprised of small businesses take some of the efficiency out of overconsumption. There's all that hassle of having to travel from store to store, and having to pull out your credit card so many times. Occasionally, we even find ourselves chatting with the shopkeeper, wandering into a coffee shop to visit with a friend or otherwise wasting precious time that could be spent on acquiring more stuff.

**True?**

**Author's**  
**either/or**  
**thinking isn't**  
**working. Stores**  
**like Home**  
**Depot try to**  
**encourage a**  
**community feel.**

But let's face it — bustling, thriving city centers are fun. They breathe life into a community. They allow cities and towns to stand out from each other. They provide an atmosphere for people to interact with each other that just cannot be found at Target, or Wal-Mart or Home Depot.

**Community vs.**  
**economy. What**  
**about prices?**

Is it anti-American to be against having a retail giant set up shop in one's community? Some people would say so. On the other hand, if you board up Main Street, what's left of America?

**Emotional**  
**appeal seems**  
**too simplistic.**

### **Conversing with a text**

Conversing with a text — responding to a text and its author — helps you move beyond your initial notes to draw conclusions about what you've read. Perhaps you ask additional questions, point out something that doesn't make sense, or explain how the author's points suggest wider implications. As you respond to a text, you look more closely at how the author works through a topic, and you evaluate the author's evidence and conclusions.

Conversing takes your understanding of a text to the next level. For example, student writer Emilia Sanchez noticed on a first reading that her assigned text closed with an emotional appeal to the reader. On a second reading, she started to question whether the emotional appeal was too simplistic.

Many writers use a double-entry notebook to converse with a text and its author and to generate ideas and insights. To create one, draw a line down the center of a notebook page or create a two-column table in your word processing program. On the left

side, record what the author says; include quotations, sentences, and key terms from the text. On the right side, record your observations and questions. With each rereading of a text, you can return to your notebook to add new insights or questions.

A double-entry notebook allows you to begin to see the difference between what a text says and what it means and to visualize the conversation between you and the author as it develops.

Here is an excerpt from student writer Emilia Sanchez's double-entry notebook.

#### IDEAS FROM THE TEXT

"The question, however, is not whether or not these types of stores create jobs (although several studies claim they produce a net job loss in local communities) or whether they ultimately save consumers money" (1011).

"The real concern . . . is whether [big-box stores are] good for a community's soul" (1011).

"[S]mall businesses are great for a community" (1011).

#### MY RESPONSES

*Why are big-box stores bad if they create jobs or save people money? Taylor dismisses these possibilities without acknowledging their importance. My family needs to save money and needs jobs more than "chatting with the shopkeeper" (1011).*

*Taylor is missing something here. Are all big-box stores bad? Are all small businesses great? Would getting rid of big-box stores save the "soul" of America? Is Main Street the "soul" of America? Taylor sounds overly sentimental. She assumes that people spend more money because they shop at big-box stores. And she assumes that small businesses are always better for consumers.*

**USING SOURCES RESPONSIBLY:** Put quotation marks around words you have copied from the source and keep an accurate record of page numbers for quotations and ideas.

### Asking the "So what?" question

As you read and annotate a text, make sure you understand its thesis, or central idea. Ask yourself: "What is the author's thesis?" Then put the author's thesis to the "So what?" test: "Why does this thesis matter? Why does it need to be argued?" Perhaps you'll conclude that the thesis is too obvious and doesn't matter at all—or that it matters so much that you feel the author stopped short and overlooked key details. Or perhaps you'll think that a reasonable person might draw different conclusions about the issue. You'll be in a stronger position to analyze a text after putting its thesis to the "So what?" test.

## Guidelines for active reading

### Preview a written text.

- Who is the author? What are the author's credentials?
- What is the author's purpose: To inform? To persuade? To call to action?
- Who is the expected audience?
- When was the text written? Where was it published?
- What kind of text is it: A book? A report? A scholarly article? A policy memo?

### Annotate a written text.

- What surprises, puzzles, or intrigues you about the text?
- What question does the text attempt to answer? Or what problem does it attempt to solve?
- What is the author's thesis, or central claim?
- What type of evidence does the author provide to support the thesis? How persuasive is this evidence?

### Converse with a written text.

- What are the strengths and limitations of the text?
- Has the author drawn conclusions that you want to question? Do you have a different interpretation of the evidence?
- Does the text raise questions that it does not answer?
- Does the author consider opposing points of view and treat them fairly?

### Ask the "So what?" question.

- Why does the author's thesis need to be argued, explained, or explored? What's at stake?
- What has the author overlooked in presenting this thesis? What's missing?
- Could a reasonable person draw different conclusions about the issue?
- To put an author's thesis to the "So what?" test, use phrases like the following: *The author overlooks this important point: . . .* and *The author's argument is convincing because. . .*

## 4b Outline a text to identify main ideas.

You are probably familiar with using an outline as a planning tool to help you organize your ideas. An outline is a useful tool for reading, too. Outlining a text — identifying its main idea and major parts — can be an important step in your reading process.

As you outline, look closely for a text’s thesis statement (main idea) and topic sentences because they serve as important signposts for readers. A thesis statement often appears in the introduction, usually in the first or second paragraph. Topic sentences often can be found at the beginning of body paragraphs, where they announce a shift to a new idea. (See 1e and 3a.)

Put the author’s thesis and key points in your own words. Here, for example, are the points Emilia Sanchez identified as she prepared to write her summary and analysis of the text printed on page 67. Notice that Sanchez does not simply trace the author’s ideas paragraph by paragraph; instead, she sums up the article’s central points.

### OUTLINE OF “BIG BOX STORES ARE BAD FOR MAIN STREET”

Thesis: Whether or not they take jobs away from a community or offer low prices to consumers, we should be worried about “big-box” stores like Wal-Mart, Target, and Home Depot because they harm communities by taking the life out of downtown shopping districts.

- I. Small businesses are better for cities and towns than big-box stores are.
  - A. Small businesses offer personal service; big-box stores do not.
  - B. Small businesses don’t make demands on community resources as big-box stores do.
  - C. Small businesses respond to customer concerns; big-box stores do not.
- II. Big-box stores are successful because they cater to consumption at the expense of benefits to the community.
  - A. Buying everything in one place is convenient.
  - B. Shopping at small businesses may be inefficient, but it provides opportunities for socializing.
  - C. Downtown shopping districts give each city or town a special identity.

Conclusion: Although some people say that it's anti-American to oppose big-box stores, actually these stores threaten the communities that make up America by encouraging buying at the expense of the traditional interactions of Main Street.

### Reading online

For many college assignments, you will be asked to read online sources. It is tempting to skim and browse online texts rather than read them carefully. When you skim a text, you are less likely to remember what you have read and less inclined to reread to grasp layers of meaning.

The following strategies will help you read critically online.

**Read slowly.** Instead of sweeping your eyes across the page, consciously slow down the pace of your reading to focus on each sentence.

**Avoid multitasking.** Close other applications, especially messaging and social media. If you follow a link for background or the definition of a term, return to the text immediately.

**Annotate electronically.** Use software tools, such as sticky notes, highlighting, and commenting features, to record your thoughts as you read online texts.

**Print the text.** If you prefer to read and annotate printed texts, make a copy for close reading and note taking. Be sure to record information about the online source so that you can find it again, if needed, and cite it properly.

## 4c Summarize to deepen your understanding.

Your goal in summarizing a text is to state the work's main ideas and key points simply, objectively, and accurately in your own words. Writing a summary does not require you to judge the author's ideas; it requires you to *understand* the author's ideas. In summarizing, you condense information, put an author's ideas in your own words, and test your understanding of what a text says. If you have sketched a brief outline of the text (see 4b), refer to it as you draft your summary.

Following is Emilia Sanchez's summary of the article that is printed on page 67.

In her essay "Big Box Stores Are Bad for Main Street," Betsy Taylor argues that chain stores harm communities by taking the life out of downtown shopping districts. Explaining that a community's "soul" is

more important than low prices or consumer convenience, she argues that small businesses are better than stores like Home Depot and Target because they emphasize personal interactions and don't place demands on a community's resources. Taylor asserts that big-box stores are successful because "we've become a nation of hyper-consumers" (1011), although the convenience of shopping in these stores comes at the expense of benefits to the community. She concludes by suggesting that it's not "anti-American" to oppose big-box stores because the damage they inflict on downtown shopping districts extends to America itself.

— Emilia Sanchez, student

### Guidelines for writing a summary

- In the first sentence, mention the title of the text, the name of the author, and the author's thesis.
- Maintain a neutral tone; be objective.
- As you present the author's ideas, use the third-person point of view and the present tense: *Taylor argues*. . . . (If you are writing in APA style, see 60c.)
- Keep your focus on the text. Don't state the author's ideas as if they were your own.
- Put all or most of your summary in your own words; if you borrow a phrase or a sentence from the text, put it in quotation marks and provide the page number in parentheses.
- Limit yourself to presenting the text's key points.
- Be concise; make every word count.

## 4d Analyze to demonstrate your critical reading.

Whereas a summary most often answers the question of *what* a text says, an analysis looks at *how* a text conveys its main idea. As you read and reread a text—previewing, annotating, and conversing—you are asking questions and generating ideas to form a judgment of it. When you analyze a text, you say to readers: "Here's my reading of this text. This is what the text means and why it matters." Assignments calling for an analysis of a text vary widely, but they usually ask you to look at how the text's parts contribute to its central argument or purpose, often with the aim of evaluating its evidence or overall effect.

**NOTE:** Writing about a text often requires you to quote directly from the text. See 55 for guidelines for integrating quotations.

### Balancing summary with analysis

If you have written a summary of a text, you may find it useful to refer to the main points of the summary as you write your analysis. Your readers may or may not be familiar with the text you are analyzing, so you need to summarize the text briefly to help readers understand the basis of your analysis. The following strategies will help you balance summary with analysis.

- Remember that readers are interested in your ideas about a text.
- Pose questions that lead to an interpretation or a judgment of a text rather than to a summary. The questions on page 70 can help steer you away from summary and toward analysis.
- Focus your analysis on the text's thesis and main ideas or some prominent feature of the reading.
- Pay attention to your topic sentences to make sure they signal analysis.
- Ask peer reviewers to give you feedback: Do you summarize too much and need to analyze more?

Here is an example of how student writer Emilia Sanchez balances summary with analysis in her essay about Betsy Taylor's article (see p. 67). Before stating her thesis, Sanchez summarizes the article's purpose and central idea.

Summary

[In her essay "Big Box Stores Are Bad for Main Street," Betsy Taylor focuses not on the economic effects of large chain stores but on the effects these stores have on the "soul" of America. She argues that stores like Home Depot, Target, and Wal-Mart are bad for America because they draw people out of downtown shopping districts and cause them to focus on consumption. In contrast, she believes that small businesses are good for America because they provide personal attention, encourage community interaction, and make each city and town unique.]

Analysis

[But Taylor's argument is unconvincing because it is based on sentimentality—on idealized images of a quaint Main Street—rather than on the roles that businesses play in consumers' lives and communities.]



## Drafting an analytical thesis statement

An effective thesis statement for analytical writing responds to a question about a text or tries to resolve a problem in the text. Remember that your thesis isn't the same as the text's thesis or main idea. Your thesis presents your judgment of the text's argument.

If student writer Emilia Sanchez had started her analysis of “Big Box Stores Are Bad for Main Street” (p. 67) with the following thesis statement, she merely would have repeated the main idea of the article.

### INEFFECTIVE THESIS STATEMENT

Big-box stores such as Wal-Mart and Home Depot promote consumerism by offering endless goods at low prices, but they do nothing to promote community.

Instead, Sanchez wrote the following thesis statement, which offers her judgment of Taylor's argument.

### EFFECTIVE THESIS STATEMENT

By ignoring the complex economic relationship between large chain stores and their communities, Taylor incorrectly assumes that simply getting rid of big-box stores would have a positive effect on America's communities.

As you draft your thesis, try asking *what*, *why*, and *how* questions to form a judgment about a text you are reading.

- What has the text's author overlooked or failed to consider? Why does this matter?
- Why might a reasonable person draw a different set of conclusions about the subject matter?
- How does the text clarify or complicate your understanding of the subject?

**NOTE:** When you analyze a text, you integrate words and ideas from the source into your own writing. For advice on quoting, paraphrasing, and using signal phrases, see 55 (MLA) or 60 (APA).



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhigher.com/rules8e](https://macmillanhigher.com/rules8e)

4 Reading and writing critically

- > Writing practice: Drafting and revising an analytical thesis
- > Writing practice: Analyzing a text
- > Writing practice: Developing an analysis

## Writing guide | Analytical essay

An **analysis** of a text allows you to examine the parts of a text to understand *what* it means and *how* it makes its meaning. Your goal is to offer your judgment of the text and to persuade readers to see it through your analytical perspective. A sample analytical essay begins on page 78.

### Key features

- A **careful and critical reading** of a text reveals what the text says, how it works, and what it means. In an analytical essay, you pay attention to the details of the text, especially its thesis and evidence.
- A **thesis that offers a clear judgment** of a text anchors your analysis. Your thesis might be the answer to a question you have posed about a text or the resolution of a problem you have identified in the text.
- **Support for the thesis** comes from evidence in the text. You summarize, paraphrase, and quote passages that support the claims you make about the text.
- A **balance of summary and analysis** helps readers who may not be familiar with the text you are analyzing. Summary answers the question of *what* a text says; an analysis looks at *how* a text makes its point.

### Writing your analytical essay

#### EXPLORE

Explore ideas by asking questions about the text. Let your questions help you understand what the text says, how it works, and what it means. Look for patterns among your questions to discover what interests you about the text's thesis, evidence, and key passages. Explore ideas for your analysis by asking questions such as the following:

- What is the text about?
- What do you find most interesting, surprising, or puzzling about this text?
- What is the author's thesis or central idea? Put the author's thesis to the "So what?" test. (See p. 69.)
- What do your annotations of the text reveal about your response to it?



## DRAFT

- Draft a working thesis to focus your analysis. Remember that your thesis is not the same as the author's thesis. Your thesis presents *your* judgment and interpretation of the text.
- Draft a plan to organize your paragraphs. Your introductory paragraph will briefly summarize the text and offer your thesis. Your body paragraphs will support your thesis with evidence from the text. Your conclusion will pull together the major points and show the significance of your analysis. (See 1d.)
- Identify specific words, phrases, and sentences as evidence to support your thesis.

## REVISE

Ask your reviewers to give you specific comments. You can use the following questions to guide their feedback.

- Is the introduction effective and engaging?
- Is summary balanced with analysis?
- Does the thesis offer a clear judgment of the text?
- What objections might other writers pose to your analysis?
- Is the analysis well organized? Are there clear topic sentences and transitions?
- Is there sufficient evidence? Is the evidence analyzed?
- Have you cited words, phrases, or sentences that are summarized or quoted?

## 4e Sample student writing: Analysis of an article

Following is Emilia Sanchez's analysis of the article by Betsy Taylor (see p. 67). Sanchez used MLA (Modern Language Association) style to format her paper and cite the source.

Sanchez 1

Emilia Sanchez  
Professor Goodwin  
English 10  
23 October 2014

#### Rethinking Big-Box Stores

In her essay “Big Box Stores Are Bad for Main Street,” Betsy Taylor focuses not on the economic effects of large chain stores but on the effects these stores have on the “soul” of America. She argues that stores like Home Depot, Target, and Wal-Mart are bad for America because they draw people out of downtown shopping districts and cause them to focus on consumption. In contrast, she believes that small businesses are good for America because they provide personal attention, encourage community interaction, and make each city and town unique. But Taylor’s argument is unconvincing because it is based on sentimentality—on idealized images of a quaint Main Street—rather than on the roles that businesses play in consumers’ lives and communities. By ignoring the complex economic relationship between large chain stores and their communities, Taylor incorrectly assumes that simply getting rid of big-box stores would have a positive effect on America’s communities.

Taylor’s use of colorful language reveals that she has a sentimental view of American society and does not understand economic realities. In her first paragraph, Taylor refers to a big-box store as a “25-acre slab of concrete with a 100,000 square foot box of stuff” that “land[s] on a town,” evoking images of a powerful monster crushing the American way of life (1011). But she oversimplifies a complex issue. Taylor does not consider that many

Opening briefly summarizes the article’s purpose and thesis.

Sanchez begins to analyze Taylor’s argument.

Thesis expresses Sanchez’s judgment of Taylor’s article.

Signal phrase introduces quotations from the source; Sanchez uses an MLA in-text citation.

## Sanchez 2

downtown business districts failed long before chain stores moved in, when factories and mills closed and workers lost their jobs. In cities with struggling economies, big-box stores can actually provide much-needed jobs. Similarly, while Taylor blames big-box stores for harming local economies by asking for tax breaks, free roads, and other perks, she doesn't acknowledge that these stores also enter into economic partnerships with the surrounding communities by offering financial benefits to schools and hospitals.

Taylor's assumption that shopping in small businesses is always better for the customer also seems driven by nostalgia for an old-fashioned Main Street rather than by the facts. While she may be right that many small businesses offer personal service and are responsive to customer complaints, she does not consider that many customers appreciate the service at big-box stores. Just as customer service is better at some small businesses than at others, it is impossible to generalize about service at all big-box stores. For example, customers depend on the lenient return policies and the wide variety of products at stores like Target and Home Depot.

Taylor blames big-box stores for encouraging American "hyper-consumerism," but she oversimplifies by equating big-box stores with bad values and small businesses with good values. Like her other points, this claim ignores the economic and social realities of American society today. Big-box stores do not force Americans to buy more. By offering lower prices in a convenient setting, however, they allow consumers to save time and purchase goods they might not be able to afford from small businesses. The existence of more small businesses would not change what

Sanchez identifies and challenges Taylor's assumptions.

Clear topic sentence announces a shift to a new topic.

Sanchez refutes Taylor's claim.

Sanchez 3

most Americans can afford, nor would it reduce their desire to buy affordable merchandise.

Sanchez treats the author fairly.

Taylor may be right that some big-box stores have a negative impact on communities and that small businesses offer certain advantages. But she ignores the economic conditions that support big-box stores as well as the fact that Main Street was in decline before the big-box store arrived. Getting rid of big-box stores will not bring back a simpler America populated by thriving, unique Main Streets; in reality, Main Street will not survive if consumers cannot afford to shop there.

Conclusion returns to the thesis and shows the wider significance of Sanchez's analysis.

Sanchez 4

Work Cited

Work cited page is in MLA style.

Taylor, Betsy. "Big Box Stores Are Bad for Main Street."  
*CQ Researcher*, vol. 9, no. 44, 1999, p. 1011.

## 5 Reading and writing about multimodal texts

In many of your college classes, you'll have the opportunity to read and write about multimodal texts, such as advertisements, maps, videos, and Web sites. These texts are called multimodal because they use written words and images or moving images and sound or some other combination of modes to convey meaning. You might be asked to analyze an advertisement for a composition course, a map for a geology course, or a YouTube video for a sociology course. All texts can be approached in a critical way. You can engage with them by studying how they work to communicate their

message and by discovering within them something that is surprising, interesting, and worthy of interpretation. The strategies and advice offered in Chapter 4 for critically reading and writing about texts apply to multimodal texts. In this chapter, you'll find additional advice specific to analyzing multimodal texts.

## 5a Read actively.

Any multimodal text can be read—that is, examined to understand *what* it says and *how* it communicates its purpose and reaches its audience. As you read, think about the words, images, and sounds separately, and then analyze how they work together.

When you read a multimodal text, you'll find it helpful to preview, annotate, and converse with the text.

### Previewing a multimodal text

Previewing starts when you look at the basic details of a multimodal text and pay attention to first impressions. You ask questions about the text's subject matter and design, its context and composer or creator, and its purpose and intended audience. The more you can gather from a first look, the easier it will be to dig deeper into the meaning of a text. The following questions will help you preview a multimodal text:

- What kind of text is it: Advertisement? Video? Slide show?
- What is your first reaction to the text? Does it elicit an emotional response?
- What strikes you right away about the various modes—words, images (moving or static), or sound? Does one mode seem to stand out more than the others?
- What does the subject matter and design suggest about the intended audience?

### Annotating a multimodal text

Annotating a text—jotting down observations, reactions, and questions—helps you read actively to answer the basic question “What is this text about?” In annotating, you generate ideas by



paying close attention to each mode. You notice what surprises and intrigues you about the text, and you observe what is present and absent. For example, you might question the choice of classical music in an audio essay and wonder what this choice implies about the intended audience. Or in viewing a public service video, you might notice the presence of black-and-white photographs and the absence of words, spoken or written, and question how these design choices serve the video's message.

The following guidelines will help you annotate a multimodal text:

- **Identify the different modes used and examine them separately.** Thinking about each mode on its own is a helpful first step to evaluating the text as a whole. What modes are present — written words, static images, moving images, or sound?
- **Identify the role of each mode within the text.** For example, do written words convey information? Does audio evoke an emotional response?
- **Identify the features of each mode.** How do various features help convey the text's meaning and serve its purpose? For example, if written words are the mode being used, are they boldface or italic, large or small, black or in color? What differences do these features make?
- **Keep track of details.** For example, if you are making notes about an audio or a video file, include a time stamp with each observation so that you can easily find that moment again to check your notes or to include a clip in your analysis: *04:21 The music stops abruptly, and a single word, "Care," appears on-screen.*

The example on page 83 shows how one student, Ren Yoshida, annotated an advertisement.

### Conversing with a multimodal text

Conversing with a text—or responding to a text and its author—helps you move beyond your early notes to form judgments about the text you're examining. You might choose to examine the choice of mode—why the message is conveyed in moving images rather than printed words, for example—or the features of a mode—why the background music becomes much louder at one point. You might point out something that



## ANNOTATED ADVERTISEMENT



*empowering*  
**FARMERS**



When you choose Equal Exchange fairly traded coffee, tea or chocolate, you join a network that empowers farmers in Latin America, Africa, and Asia to:

- Stay on their land
- Care for the environment
- Farm organically
- Support their family
- Plan for the future

[www.equalexchange.coop](http://www.equalexchange.coop)

Photo: José Chapparro/Asca de Guernés  
Coffee Farmer & CUPAC® Cooperator member, Peru

What is being exchanged?

Why is “fairly traded” so difficult to read?

“Empowering” — why in an elegant font? Who is empowering farmers?

“Farmers” in all capital letters — shows strength?

Straightforward design and not much text.

Outstretched hands. Is she giving a gift? Inviting a partnership?

Hands: heart-shaped, foregrounded.

Raw coffee is earthy, natural.

Positive verbs: consumers choose, join, empower; farmers stay, care, farm, support, plan.

What does it mean to join a network?

How do consumers know their money helps farmers stay on their land?

is puzzling, contradictory, or provocative about the interplay between modes or their features. In his annotations to the Equal Exchange ad, Ren Yoshida asks why two words, *empowering* and *farmers*, are in different fonts (see p. 83) and why the farmer's hands are outstretched. As Yoshida moves beyond his annotations to form judgments about the text, he focuses his attention on the contradictions between the ad's emotional and logical appeals. He notices that the ad appeals to consumers' emotions, and yet such appeals raise logical questions about what is being exchanged and who is becoming empowered.

Many writers use a double-entry notebook to converse with a text and generate ideas for writing (see pp. 68–69 for guidelines on creating a double-entry notebook and sample entries). As you record details and features of a multimodal text on the left side of the notebook page and your own responses on the right side, you can visualize the conversation as it develops.

## 5b Outline to identify main ideas.

When you outline a text, you identify its main idea or purpose and its major parts. One approach for outlining a multimodal text is to define its main idea or purpose and sketch a list of its key elements. Because ads, Web sites, and videos may not include an explicit statement of purpose, such as a thesis statement, you may have to puzzle it out from the details in the work.

Here is the informal outline Ren Yoshida developed as he prepared to write an analysis of the advertisement on page 83. Notice that Yoshida makes an attempt to state the ad's purpose and sum up its message.

### INFORMAL OUTLINE OF EQUAL EXCHANGE ADVERTISEMENT

Purpose: To persuade consumers that they can improve the lives of organic farmers and their families by purchasing Equal Exchange coffee.

Key features:

- The farmer's heart-shaped hands are outstretched, offering the viewer partnership and the product of her hard work.
- The raw coffee is surprisingly fruitlike and fresh—natural and healthy looking.
- A variety of fonts are used for emphasis, such as the elegant font for “empowering.”

- Consumer support leads to a higher quality of life for the farmers and for all people, since these farmers care for the environment and plan for the future.
- The simplicity of the design reflects the simplicity of the exchange. The consumer only has to buy a cup of coffee to make a difference.

Conclusion: Equal Exchange is selling more than a product—coffee. It is selling the message that together farmers and consumers hold the future of land, environment, farms, and families in their hands.

## 5c Summarize to deepen your understanding.

Your goal in summarizing a multimodal text is to state the work’s central idea and key points simply, objectively, and accurately, in your own words, and usually in paragraph form. As you present the central idea, use the third-person point of view and the present tense. If you have sketched a brief outline of the text (see 5b), refer to it as you draft your summary.

To summarize a multimodal text, begin with essential information, such as who composed the text and why, who the intended audience is, and when and where the work appeared. Briefly explain the text’s main idea and identify its key features. Divide the summary into a few major and minor ideas. Since a summary must be fairly short, you must make judgments about what is most important.

Here is the summary Ren Yoshida developed as he prepared to write an analysis of the advertisement on page 83. Notice how Yoshida composes the summary in his own words, uses the third-person point of view (“The Equal Exchange advertisement is . . .”), and uses present tense (“The ad suggests . . .”).

The Equal Exchange advertisement is selling the message that together farmers and consumers hold the future of the planet in their hands. At the center of the ad is a farmer whose outstretched hands, full of raw coffee, offer the fruit of her labor and a partnership with consumers. The ad suggests that in a global world producers and consumers are bound together. A cup of coffee is more than just a morning ritual; a cup of coffee is part of an equal exchange that empowers farmers to stay on their land and empowers consumers to do the right thing.

—Ren Yoshida, student

## 5d Analyze to demonstrate your critical reading.

A summary most often answers the question of *what* a text says, whereas an analysis looks at *how* a text conveys its main idea or message. As you read a multimodal text — previewing, annotating, and conversing — you are forming a judgment of it. Your analysis says to readers: “Here’s my reading of this text. This is what the text means and why it matters.” When you are assigned to analyze a multimodal text, you will usually be expected to look at how the different modes (sound, words, moving or static images) and their features (loud or quiet, bold or italic, fast or slow) contribute to its central purpose, often with the aim of judging how effective the text is in achieving its purpose.

### Balancing summary with analysis

If you have written a summary of a text, you may find it useful to refer to the main points of the summary as you write your analysis. Your readers may or may not be familiar with the multimodal text you are analyzing and will need at least some summary to ground your analysis. For example, student writer Ren Yoshida summarizes the Equal Exchange advertisement on page 83 by describing part of the text first, allowing readers to get their bearings, and then moving to an analytical statement about that particular part of the text.

Summary	<p>[A farmer, her hardworking hands full of raw coffee, reaches out from an Equal Exchange advertisement. The hands, in the shape of a heart, offer to consumers the fruit of the farmer’s labor. The ad’s message is straightforward: in choosing Equal Exchange, consumers become global citizens, partnering with farmers to help save the planet.]</p>
Analysis	<p>[Suddenly, a cup of coffee is more than just a morning ritual; a cup of coffee is a moral choice that empowers both consumers and farmers.]</p>



These strategies will help you balance summary with analysis.

- Remember that readers are interested in your ideas about a text.
- Pose questions that lead to an interpretation or a judgment of a text rather than to a summary. Go beyond describing what you see or hear to ask “why” and “how” questions.
- Focus on a few significant features rather than listing every detail. For example, evaluate the size and arrangement of written words or the pitch (high or low) or pace (fast or slow) of the audio.
- Pay attention to the role of each mode within the text. For example, how do images convey information or emotion?
- Ask peer reviewers to give you feedback: Do you summarize too much and need to analyze more?

### Drafting an analytical thesis statement

An effective thesis statement for analytical writing about a multimodal text responds to a question about the text or tries to resolve a problem in the text. Remember that your thesis isn't the same as the text's main idea. Your thesis presents your judgment of the text's argument. If your draft thesis restates the text's message, return to the questions you asked earlier in the process as you revise.

#### INEFFECTIVE THESIS STATEMENT

Consumers who purchase coffee from farmers in the Equal Exchange network are helping farmers stay on their land.

The thesis is ineffective because it summarizes the ad; it doesn't present an analysis. Ren Yoshida focused the thesis by questioning a single detail in the work.

#### QUESTIONS

The ad promises an equal exchange, but is the exchange equal between consumers and farmers? Do the words *equal exchange* and *empowering farmers* appeal to consumers' emotions?

#### EFFECTIVE THESIS STATEMENT

Although the ad works successfully on an emotional level, it is less successful on a logical level because of its promise for an equal exchange between consumers and farmers.



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](https://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

- 5 Reading and writing about multimodal texts
  - > Writing practice: Drafting and revising an analytical thesis (multimodal)
  - > Writing practice: Learning from other writers

## 5e Sample student writing: Analysis of an advertisement

On the following pages is Ren Yoshida's analysis of the Equal Exchange advertisement that appears on page 83.

Yoshida 1

Ren Yoshida  
Professor Marcotte  
English 101  
4 November 2014

Sometimes a Cup of Coffee Is Just a Cup of Coffee

A farmer, her hardworking hands full of coffee

beans, reaches out from an Equal Exchange advertisement ("Empowering"). The hands, in the shape of a heart, offer to consumers the fruit of the farmer's labor. The ad's message is straightforward: in choosing Equal Exchange, consumers become global citizens, partnering with farmers to help save the planet. Suddenly, a cup of coffee is more than just a morning ritual; a cup of coffee is a moral choice that empowers both consumers and farmers. This simple exchange appeals to a consumer's desire to be a good person—to protect the environment and do the right thing. Yet the ad is more complicated than it first seems, and its design raises some logical questions about such an exchange. Although the ad works successfully on an emotional level, it is less successful on a logical level because of its promise for an equal exchange between consumers and farmers.

The source is cited in the text. No page number is available for the online source.

Yoshida summarizes the content of the ad.

Thesis expresses Yoshida's analysis of the ad.

Marginal annotations indicate **MLA-style formatting** and **effective writing**.



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

5 Reading and writing about multimodal texts

- > Sample student writing: Yoshida, "Sometimes a Cup of Coffee Is Just a Cup of Coffee" (analysis of an advertisement)
- > Sample student writing: D'Amato, "Loose Leaf Teas" (Web site); Williamson, "To the Children of America" (video essay)

## Yoshida 2

The focus of the ad is a farmer, Jesus Choqueheranca de Quevero, and, more specifically, her outstretched, cupped hands. Her hands are full of red, raw coffee, her life's work. The ad successfully appeals to consumers' emotions, assuming they will find the farmer's welcoming face and hands, caked with dirt, more appealing than startling statistics about the state of the environment or the number of farmers who lose their land each year. It seems almost rude not to accept the farmer's generous offering since we know her name and, as the ad implies, have the choice to "empower" her. In fact, how can a consumer resist helping the farmer "[c]are for the environment" and "[p]lan for the future," when it is a simple matter of choosing the right coffee? The ad sends the message that our future is a global future in which producers and consumers are bound together.

First impressions play a major role in the success of an advertisement. Consumers are pulled toward a product, or pushed away, by an ad's initial visual and emotional appeal. Here, the intended audience is busy people, so the ad tries to catch viewers' attention and make a strong impression immediately. Yet with a second or third viewing, consumers might start to ask some logical questions about Equal Exchange before buying their morning coffee. Although the farmer extends her heart-shaped hands to consumers, they are not actually buying a cup of coffee or the raw coffee directly from her. In reality, consumers are buying from Equal Exchange, even if the ad substitutes the more positive word *choose* for *buy*. Furthermore, consumers aren't actually empowering the farmer; they are joining "a network that empowers farmers." The idea of a network makes a simple transaction more complicated. How do consumers know their

Details show how the ad appeals to consumers' emotions.

Yoshida interprets details such as the farmer's hands.

Yoshida begins to challenge the logic of the ad.

Yoshida 3

Words from the ad serve as evidence.

Clear topic sentence announces a shift.

Summary of the ad's key features serves Yoshida's analysis.

money helps farmers “[s]tay on their land” and “[p]lan for the future” as the ad promises? They don’t.

The ad’s design elements raise questions about the use of the key terms *equal exchange* and *empowering farmers*. The Equal Exchange logo suggests symmetry and equality, with two red arrows facing each other, but the words of the logo appear almost like an eye exam poster, with each line decreasing in font size and clarity. The words *fairly traded* are tiny. Below the logo, the words *empowering farmers* are presented in contradictory fonts. *Empowering* is written in a flowing, cursive font, almost the opposite of what might be considered empowering, whereas *farmers* is written in a plain, sturdy font. The ad’s varying fonts communicate differently and make it hard to know exactly what is being exchanged and who is becoming empowered.

What is being exchanged? The logic of the ad suggests that consumers will improve the future by choosing Equal Exchange. The first exchange is economic: consumers give one thing—dollars—and receive something in return—a cup of coffee—and the farmer stays on her land. The second exchange is more complicated because it involves a moral exchange. The ad suggests that if consumers don’t choose “fairly traded” products, farmers will be forced off their land and the environment destroyed. This exchange, when put into motion by consumers choosing to purchase products not “fairly traded,” has negative consequences for both consumers and farmers. The message of the ad is that the actual exchange taking place is not economic but moral; after all, nothing is being bought, only chosen. Yet the logic of this exchange quickly falls apart. Consumers aren’t empowered to become global citizens simply by choosing Equal Exchange, and farmers aren’t empowered to plan for the future by



Yoshida 4

consumers' choices. And even if all this empowerment magically happened, there is nothing equal about such an exchange.

Advertisements are themselves about empowerment—encouraging viewers to believe they can become someone or do something by identifying, emotionally or logically, with a product. In the Equal Exchange ad, consumers are emotionally persuaded to identify with a farmer whose face is not easily forgotten and whose heart-shaped hands hold a collective future. On a logical level, though, the ad raises questions because empowerment, although a good concept to choose, is not easily or equally exchanged. Sometimes a cup of coffee is just a cup of coffee.

Yoshida shows why his thesis matters.

Conclusion includes a detail from the introduction.

Conclusion returns to Yoshida's thesis.

Yoshida 5

Work Cited

"Empowering Farmers." *Equal Exchange*, [equalexchange.coop/](http://equalexchange.coop/). Advertisement. Accessed 14 Oct. 2014.

## 6 Reading and writing arguments

Many of your college assignments will ask you to read and write arguments about debatable issues. The questions being debated might be matters of public policy (*Should corporations be allowed to advertise on public school property?* or *What is the least dangerous way to dispose of hazardous waste?*), or they might be scholarly issues (*What role do genes play in determining behavior?* or *What were the causes of the Vietnam War?*). On such questions, reasonable people may disagree.

As you read arguments across the disciplines and enter into academic or public policy debates, pay attention to the questions being asked, the evidence being presented, and the various positions being argued. It's helpful to approach all arguments with an open, curious mind. Reasonable people disagree on topics worth debating, so dive into the center of these disagreements to understand what's at stake in the arguments being debated. You'll find the critical reading strategies introduced in chapter 4 — previewing, annotating, and conversing with texts — to be useful as you ask questions about an argument's logic, evidence, and use of appeals. Many arguments can stand up to critical scrutiny. Sometimes, however, a line of argument that at first seems reasonable turns out to be illogical, unfair, or both.

As you write for various college courses, you'll be asked to take positions in academic debates, propose solutions to problems, and persuade readers to accept your arguments. Just as you evaluate arguments with openness, you'll want to construct arguments with the same openness — acknowledging disagreements and opposing views and presenting your arguments fully and fairly to your readers.

See sections 6a–6c for advice about reading arguments. Sections 6d–6k address writing arguments.

## 6a Distinguish between reasonable and fallacious argumentative tactics.

When you evaluate an argument, look closely at the reasoning and evidence behind it. A number of unreasonable argumentative tactics are known as *logical fallacies*. Most of the fallacies — such as hasty generalizations and false analogies — are misguided or dishonest uses of legitimate strategies. The examples in this section suggest when such strategies are reasonable and when they are not.

### Generalizing (inductive reasoning)

Writers and thinkers generalize all the time. We look at a sample of data and conclude that data we have not observed will most likely conform to what we have seen. From a spoonful of soup, we conclude just how salty the whole bowl will be. After numerous unpleasant experiences with an airline, we decide to book future flights with a competitor.

When we draw a conclusion from an array of facts, we are engaged in inductive reasoning. Such reasoning deals in probability, not certainty. For a conclusion to be highly probable, it

must be based on evidence that is sufficient, representative, and relevant. (See the chart on p. 94.)

**Academic English** Many hasty generalizations contain words such as *all*, *ever*, *always*, and *never*, when qualifiers such as *most*, *many*, *usually*, and *seldom* would be more accurate.

The fallacy known as *hasty generalization* is a conclusion based on insufficient or unrepresentative evidence.

#### HASTY GENERALIZATION

In a single year, scores on standardized tests in California's public schools rose by ten points. Therefore, more children than ever are succeeding in America's public school systems.

Data from one state do not justify a conclusion about the whole United States.

A *stereotype* is a hasty generalization about a group. Here are a few examples.

#### STEREOTYPES

Women are bad bosses.

Politicians are corrupt.

Children are always curious.

Stereotyping is common because of our tendency to perceive selectively. We tend to see what we want to see; we notice evidence confirming our already formed opinions and fail to notice evidence to the contrary. For example, if you have concluded that politicians are corrupt, your stereotype will be confirmed by news reports of legislators being indicted — even though every day the media describe conscientious officials serving the public honestly and well.

### Drawing analogies

An analogy points out a similarity between two things that are otherwise different. Analogies can be an effective means of arguing a point. It is not always easy to draw the line between a



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhigher.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhigher.com/rules8e)

6 Reading and writing arguments

> Writing practice: Evaluating ads for logic and fairness

> LearningCurve: Reading and writing arguments

reasonable and an unreasonable analogy. At times, however, an analogy is clearly off base, in which case it is called a *false analogy*.

#### FALSE ANALOGY

If we can send a spacecraft to Pluto, we should be able to find a cure for the common cold.

The writer has falsely assumed that because two things are alike in one respect, they must be alike in others. Exploring the outer reaches of the solar system and finding a cure for the common cold are both scientific challenges, but the problems confronting medical researchers are quite different from those solved by space scientists.

### Testing inductive reasoning

Though inductive reasoning leads to probable and not absolute truth, you can assess a conclusion's likely probability by asking three questions. This chart shows how to apply those questions to a sample conclusion based on a survey.

<b>CONCLUSION</b>	The majority of students on our campus would volunteer at least five hours a week in a community organization if the school provided a placement service for volunteers.
<b>EVIDENCE</b>	In a recent survey, 723 of 1,215 students questioned said they would volunteer at least five hours a week in a community organization if the school provided a placement service for volunteers.

1. *Is the evidence sufficient?* That depends. On a small campus (say, 3,000 students), the pool of students surveyed would be sufficient for market research, but on a large campus (say, 30,000), 1,215 students are only 4 percent of the population. If that 4 percent were known to be truly representative of the other 96 percent, however, even such a small sample would be sufficient (see question 2).
2. *Is the evidence representative?* The evidence is representative if those responding to the survey reflect the characteristics of the entire student population: age, sex, race, field of study, number of extracurricular commitments, and so on. If most of those surveyed are majors in a field like social work, the researchers should question the survey's conclusion.
3. *Is the evidence relevant?* Yes. The survey results are directly linked to the conclusion. Evidence based on a survey about the number of hours students work for pay would not be relevant because it would not be about *choosing to volunteer*.

## Tracing causes and effects

Demonstrating a connection between causes and effects is rarely simple. For example, to explain why a chemistry course has a high failure rate, you would begin by listing possible causes: inadequate preparation of students, poor teaching, lack of qualified tutors, and so on. Next you would investigate each possible cause. Only after investigating the possible causes would you be able to weigh the relative impact of each cause and suggest appropriate remedies.

Because cause-and-effect reasoning is so complex, it is not surprising that writers frequently oversimplify it. In particular, writers sometimes assume that because one event follows another, the first is the cause of the second. This common fallacy is known as *post hoc*, from the Latin *post hoc, ergo propter hoc*, meaning “after this, therefore because of this.”

### POST HOC FALLACY

Since Governor Cho took office, unemployment among minorities in the state has decreased by 7 percent. Governor Cho should be applauded for reducing unemployment among minorities.

Is the governor solely responsible for the decrease? Are there other reasons? The writer must show that Governor Cho's policies are responsible for the decrease in unemployment; it is not enough to show that the decrease followed the governor's taking office.

## Weighing options

Especially when reasoning about problems and solutions, writers must weigh options. To be fair, a writer should mention the full range of options, showing why one is superior to the others or might work well in combination with others.

It is unfair to suggest that only two alternatives exist when in fact there are more. Writers who set up a false choice between their preferred option and one that is clearly unsatisfactory are guilty of the *either . . . or* fallacy.

### EITHER . . . OR FALLACY

Our current war against drugs has not worked. Either we should legalize drugs or we should turn the drug war over to our armed forces and let them fight it.

Are these the only solutions—legalizing drugs and calling out the army? Other options, such as funding for drug abuse prevention programs, are possible.

### Making assumptions

An assumption is a claim that is taken to be true—without the need of proof. Most arguments are based to some extent on assumptions, since writers rarely have the time and space to prove all the conceivable claims on which their argument is based. For example, someone arguing about the best means of limiting population growth in developing countries might assume that the goal of limiting population growth is worthwhile. For most audiences, there would be no need to articulate this assumption or to defend it.

There is a danger, however, in failing to spell out and prove a claim that is clearly controversial. Consider the following short argument, in which a key claim is missing.

#### ARGUMENT WITH MISSING CLAIM

Violent crime is increasing. Therefore, we should vigorously enforce the death penalty.

The writer seems to be assuming that the death penalty deters violent criminals and that it is a fair punishment—and that most audiences will agree. These are not reasonable assumptions; the writer will need to state and support both claims.

When a missing claim is an assertion that few would agree with, we say that a writer is guilty of a *non sequitur* (Latin for “does not follow”).

#### NON SEQUITUR

Christopher gets plenty of sleep; therefore, he will be a successful student in the university’s pre-med program.

Does it take more than sleep to be a successful student? Few people would agree with the missing claim—that people with good sleep habits always make successful students.

### Deducing conclusions (deductive reasoning)

When we deduce a conclusion, we put things together, like any good detective. We establish that a general principle is true, that a specific case is an example of that principle, and that therefore a particular conclusion about that case is a certainty.

Deductive reasoning can often be structured in a three-step argument called a *syllogism*. The three steps are the major premise, the minor premise, and the conclusion.

1. Anything that increases radiation in the environment is dangerous to public health. (Major premise)
2. Nuclear reactors increase radiation in the environment. (Minor premise)
3. Therefore, nuclear reactors are dangerous to public health. (Conclusion)

The major premise is a generalization. The minor premise is a specific case. The conclusion follows from applying the generalization to the specific case.

Deductive arguments break down if one of the premises is not true or if the conclusion does not follow logically from the premises. In the following argument, the major premise is very likely untrue.

#### UNTRUE PREMISE

The police do not give speeding tickets to people driving less than five miles per hour over the limit. Dominic is driving fifty-nine miles per hour in a fifty-five-mile-per-hour zone. Therefore, the police will not give Dominic a speeding ticket.

The conclusion is true only if the premises are true. If the police sometimes give tickets for driving less than five miles per hour over the limit, Dominic cannot safely conclude that he will avoid a ticket.

In the following argument, both premises might be true, but the conclusion does not follow logically from them.

#### CONCLUSION DOES NOT FOLLOW

All members of our club ran in this year's Boston Marathon. Jay ran in this year's Boston Marathon. Therefore, Jay is a member of our club.

The fact that Jay ran the race is no guarantee that he is a member of the club. Presumably, many runners are nonmembers.

Assuming that both premises are true, the following argument holds up.

#### CONCLUSION FOLLOWS

All members of our club ran in this year's Boston Marathon. Jay is a member of our club. Therefore, Jay ran in this year's Boston Marathon.

## 6b Distinguish between legitimate and unfair emotional appeals.

There is nothing wrong with appealing to readers' emotions. After all, many issues worth arguing about have an emotional as well as a logical dimension. Even the Greek logician Aristotle lists *pathos* (emotion) as a legitimate argumentative tactic. For example, in an essay criticizing big-box stores (see p. 67), writer Betsy Taylor has a good reason for tugging at readers' emotions: Her subject is the decline of city and town life. In her conclusion, Taylor appeals to readers' emotions by invoking their national pride.

### LEGITIMATE EMOTIONAL APPEAL

Is it anti-American to be against having a retail giant set up shop in one's community? Some people would say so. On the other hand, if you board up Main Street, what's left of America?

Emotional appeals, however, are frequently misused. Many of the arguments we see in the media, for instance, strive to win our sympathy rather than our intelligent agreement. A TV commercial suggesting that you will be thin and attractive if you drink a certain diet beverage is making a pitch to emotions. So is a political speech that recommends electing a candidate because he is a devoted husband and father who serves as a volunteer firefighter.

The following passage illustrates several types of unfair emotional appeals.

### UNFAIR EMOTIONAL APPEALS

This progressive proposal to build a ski resort in the state park has been carefully researched by Western Trust, the largest bank in the state; furthermore, it is favored by a majority of the local merchants. The only opposition comes from tree huggers who care more about trees than they do about people. One of their leaders was actually arrested for disturbing the peace several years ago.

Words with strong positive or negative connotations, such as *progressive* and *tree hugger*, are examples of *biased language*. Attacking the people who hold a belief (environmentalists) rather than refuting their argument is called *ad hominem*,





## Evaluating ethical, logical, and emotional appeals as a reader

Ancient Greek rhetoricians distinguished among three kinds of appeals used to influence readers — ethical, logical, emotional. As you evaluate arguments, identify these appeals and question their effectiveness. Are they appropriate for the audience and the argument? Are they balanced and legitimate or lopsided and misleading?

### Ethical appeals (*ethos*)

Ethical arguments call upon a writer's character, knowledge, and authority. Ask questions such as the following when you evaluate the ethical appeal of an argument.

- Is the writer informed and trustworthy? How does the writer establish authority and credibility?
- Is the writer fair-minded and unbiased? How does the writer establish reasonableness?
- Does the writer use sources knowledgeably and responsibly?
- How does the writer describe the views of others and deal with opposing views?

### Logical appeals (*logos*)

Reasonable arguments appeal to readers' sense of logic, rely on evidence, and use inductive and deductive reasoning. Ask questions such as the following to evaluate the logical appeal of an argument.

- Is the evidence sufficient, representative, and relevant?
- Is the reasoning sound?
- Does the argument contain any logical fallacies or unwarranted assumptions?
- Are there any missing or mistaken premises?

### Emotional appeals (*pathos*)

Emotional arguments appeal to readers' beliefs and values. Ask questions such as the following to evaluate the emotional appeal of an argument.

- What values or beliefs does the writer address, either directly or indirectly?
- Are the emotional appeals legitimate and fair?
- Does the writer oversimplify or dramatize an issue?
- Do the emotional arguments highlight or shift attention away from the evidence?

a Latin term meaning “to the man.” Associating a prestigious name (Western Trust) with the writer’s side is called *transfer*. Claiming that an idea should be accepted because a large number of people (the majority of merchants) are in favor is called the *bandwagon appeal*. Bringing in irrelevant issues (the arrest) is a *red herring*, named after a trick used in fox hunts to mislead the dogs by dragging a smelly fish across the trail.



Advertising makes use of ethical, logical, and emotional appeals to persuade consumers to buy a product or embrace a brand. This Patagonia ad makes an ethical appeal with its copy that invites customers to rethink their purchasing practices.

## 6c Judge how fairly a writer handles opposing views.

The way in which a writer deals with opposing views is revealing. Some writers address the arguments of the opposition fairly, conceding points when necessary and countering others, all in a civil spirit. Other writers will do almost anything to win an argument: either ignoring opposing views altogether or misrepresenting such views and attacking their proponents.

Writers build credibility — *ethos* — by addressing opposing arguments fairly. As you read arguments, assess the credibility of your sources by looking at how they deal with views not in agreement with their own.

## Describing the views of others

Some writers and speakers deliberately misrepresent the views of others. One way they do this is by setting up a “straw man,” a character so weak that he is easily knocked down. The *straw man* fallacy consists of an oversimplification or outright distortion of opposing views. For example, in a California debate over attempts to control the mountain lion population, pro-lion groups characterized their opponents as trophy hunters bent on shooting harmless animals. In truth, hunters were only one faction of those who saw a need to control the lion population.

During the District of Columbia’s struggle for voting representation, some politicians set up a straw man, as shown in the following example.

### STRAW MAN FALLACY

Washington, DC, residents are lobbying for statehood. Giving a city such as the District of Columbia the status of a state would be unfair.

The straw man wanted statehood. In fact, most DC citizens lobbied for voting representation in any form, not necessarily through statehood.

## Quoting opposing views

Writers often quote the words of writers who hold opposing views. In general, this is a good idea, for it assures some level of fairness and accuracy. At times, though, both the fairness and the accuracy are an illusion.

A source may be misrepresented when it is quoted out of context. All quotations are to some extent taken out of context, but a fair writer will explain the context to readers. To select a provocative sentence from a source and to ignore the more moderate sentences surrounding it is both unfair and misleading. Sometimes a writer deliberately distorts a source through the device of ellipsis dots. Ellipsis dots tell readers that words have been omitted from the original source. When those words are crucial to an author’s meaning, omitting them is obviously unfair. (See also 39d.)

### ORIGINAL SOURCE

Johnson’s *History of the American West* is riddled with inaccuracies and astonishing in its blatantly racist description of the Indian wars.

—B. R., reviewer

**MISLEADING QUOTATION**

Johnson's *History of the American West* is "astonishing in its . . . description of the Indian wars."

**Checklist for reading and evaluating arguments**

- What is the writer's thesis, or central claim?
- Are there any gaps in reasoning? Does the argument contain any logical fallacies (see 6a)?
- What assumptions does the argument rest on? Are there any unstated assumptions?
- What appeals — ethical, logical, or emotional — does the writer make? Are these appeals effective?
- What evidence does the writer use? Could there be alternative interpretations of the evidence?
- How does the writer handle opposing views?
- If you are not persuaded by the writer's argument, what counter-arguments could you make to the writer?

**EXERCISE 6-1** Explain what is illogical in the following brief arguments. It may be helpful to identify the logical fallacy or fallacies by name. Answers appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

- a. My roommate, who is an engineering major, is taking a course called Structures of Tall Buildings. All engineers have to know how to design tall buildings.
- b. If you're old enough to vote, you're old enough to drink. Therefore, the drinking age should be lowered to eighteen.
- c. If you're not part of the solution, you're part of the problem.
- d. American students could be outperforming students in schools around the globe if it weren't for the outmoded, behind-the-times thinking of many statewide education departments.
- e. Charging a fee for curbside trash pickup will encourage everyone to recycle more because no one in my town likes to spend extra money.



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](https://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

6 Reading and writing arguments

> Writing practice: Evaluating an argument

> Exercise: 6-2

## 6d When writing arguments, consider purpose and context.

Evaluating the arguments of other writers prepares you to construct your own. When you ask questions about the logic and evidence of the arguments you read, you become more aware of such needs in your own writing. And when you pose objections to arguments, you more readily anticipate and counter objections to your own arguments.

In constructing an argument, you take a stand on a debatable issue. Your purpose is to explain your understanding of the truth about a subject or to propose the best solution to a problem, reasonably and logically, without being combative. Your aim is to persuade your readers to reconsider their positions by offering new reasons to question existing viewpoints.

It's best to start by informing yourself about the debate or conversation around a subject—sometimes called its *context*. If you are planning to write about the subject of offshore drilling, you might want to read sources that shed light on the social context (the concerns of consumers, the ideas of lawmakers, the proposals of environmentalists) and sources that may inform you about the intellectual context (scientific or theoretical responses by geologists, oceanographers, or economists) in which the debate is played out. Because your readers may be aware of the social and intellectual contexts in which your issue is grounded, you will be at a disadvantage if you are not informed. Conduct some research before preparing your argument. Consulting even a few sources can help to deepen your understanding of the conversation around the issue.

## 6e View your audience as a panel of jurors.

Do not assume that your audience already agrees with you. Instead, envision skeptical readers who, like a panel of jurors, will make up their minds after listening to all sides of the argument. If you are arguing a public policy issue, aim your paper at readers who represent a variety of positions. In the case of a debate over offshore drilling, for example, imagine a jury that represents those who have a stake in the matter: consumers, policymakers, and environmentalists.

At times, you can deliberately narrow your audience. If you are working within a word limit, for example, you might not have the space in which to address the concerns of all interested



parties. Or you might be primarily interested in reaching just a segment of a larger audience, such as consumers. Once you identify a specific audience, it's helpful to think about what kinds of arguments and evidence will appeal to that audience.

**NOTE:** Your assignment may require a specific audience, or you may be free to identify a broader group of readers. Check with your instructor before you make your case.

### Using ethical, logical, and emotional appeals as a writer

To construct a convincing argument, you must establish your credibility (*ethos*) and appeal to your readers' sense of logic and reason (*logos*) as well as to their values and beliefs (*pathos*). When using these appeals, make sure they are appropriate for your audience and your argument.

#### Ethical appeals (*ethos*)

To accept your argument, a reader must perceive you as trustworthy, fair, and reasonable. When you acknowledge alternative positions, you build common ground with readers and gain their trust by showing that you are knowledgeable. And when you use sources responsibly (summarizing, paraphrasing, or quoting the views of others respectfully), you inspire readers' confidence in your judgment.

#### Logical appeals (*logos*)

To persuade readers, you need to appeal to their sense of logic and sound reasoning. When you provide sufficient evidence, you offer readers logical support for your argument. And when you clarify the assumptions that underlie your arguments and avoid logical fallacies, you appeal to readers' desire for reason.

#### Emotional appeals (*pathos*)

To establish common ground with readers, you need to appeal to their beliefs and values as well as to their minds. When you offer readers vivid examples and illustrations, startling statistics, or compelling visuals, you engage readers and deepen their interest in your argument. And when you balance emotional appeals with logical appeals, you highlight the human dimension of an issue to show readers why they should care about your argument.



**Academic English** Some cultures value writers who argue with force; other cultures value writers who argue subtly or indirectly. Academic audiences in the United States will expect your writing to be assertive and confident — neither aggressive nor passive. You can create an assertive tone by acknowledging different positions and supporting your ideas with specific evidence.

**TOO AGGRESSIVE** Of course only registered organ donors should be eligible for organ transplants. It's selfish and shortsighted to think otherwise.

**TOO PASSIVE** I might be wrong, but I think that maybe people should have to register as organ donors if they want to be considered for a transplant.

**ASSERTIVE TONE** If only registered organ donors are eligible for transplants, more people will register as donors.

If you are uncertain about the tone of your work, ask for help at your school's writing center.

## 6f In your introduction, establish credibility and state your position.

When you are constructing an argument, make sure your introduction includes a thesis statement that establishes your position on the issue you have chosen to debate. In the sentences leading up to the thesis, establish your credibility (*ethos*) with readers by showing that you are knowledgeable and fair-minded. If possible, build common ground (*pathos*) with readers who may not at first agree with your views, and show them why they should consider your thesis. For advice about writing effective thesis statements, see 1c.

In the following introduction, student writer Kevin Smith presents himself as someone worth listening to. Because Smith introduces both sides of the debate, readers are likely to approach his essay with an open mind.

Smith shows that he is familiar with the legal issues surrounding school prayer.

Although the Supreme Court has ruled against prayer in public schools on First Amendment grounds, many people still feel that prayer should be allowed. Such people value prayer as a practice central to their faith and believe that prayer is a way for schools to reinforce moral principles. They also compellingly point out a paradox in the First Amendment itself: at what point does the separation of church and state restrict the freedom of those who wish to practice their religion? What proponents of school prayer fail to realize, however, is that the Supreme Court's decision, although it was made on legal grounds, makes sense on religious grounds as well. Prayer is too important to be trusted to our public schools.

Smith is fair-minded, presenting the views of both sides.

Thesis builds common ground.

— Kevin Smith, student

**TIP:** A good way to test a thesis while drafting and revising is to imagine a counterargument to your argument (see 6i). If you can't think of an opposing point of view, rethink your thesis and ask a classmate or writing center tutor to respond to your argument.

## 6g Back up your thesis with persuasive lines of argument.

Arguments of any complexity contain lines of argument that, when taken together, might reasonably persuade readers that the thesis has merit. The following, for example, are the main lines of argument that student writer Sam Jacobs used in his paper about the shift from print to online news (see pp. 112–17).

### CENTRAL CLAIM

Thesis: The shift from print to online news provides unprecedented opportunities for readers to become more engaged with the news, to hold journalists accountable, and to participate as producers, not simply as consumers.

### SUPPORTING CLAIMS

- Print news has traditionally had a one-sided relationship with its readers, delivering information for passive consumption.
- Online news invites readers to participate in a collaborative process—to question and even contribute to the content.



- Links within news stories provide transparency, allowing readers to move easily from the main story to original sources, related articles, or background materials.
- Technology has made it possible for readers to become news producers—posting text, audio, images, and video of news events.
- Citizen journalists can provide valuable information, sometimes more quickly than traditional journalists can.

If you sum up your main lines of argument, as Jacobs did, you will have a rough outline of your essay. In your paper, you will provide evidence for each of these claims.

## 6h Support your claims with specific evidence.

You will need to support your central claim and any subordinate claims with evidence: facts, statistics, examples and illustrations, visuals (such as graphs or photos), expert opinion, and so on. Debatable topics require that you consult some written sources to establish your *ethos* and to persuade your audience. As you read through or view the sources, you will learn more about the arguments and counterarguments at the center of your debate.

**USING SOURCES RESPONSIBLY:** Whether your sources provide facts or statistics, examples or illustrations, visuals, or expert opinion, remember that you must cite them. Documenting sources gives credit to authors and shows readers how to locate a source in case they want to assess its credibility or explore the issue further. For help citing sources, see 56a and 56b (MLA) and 61a and 61b (APA).

### Using facts and statistics

A fact is something that is known with certainty because it has been objectively verified: The capital of Wyoming is Cheyenne. Carbon has an atomic weight of 12. John F. Kennedy was assassinated on November 22, 1963. Statistics are collections of numerical facts: Alcohol abuse is a factor in nearly 40 percent of traffic fatalities. More than four in ten businesses in the United States are owned by women.



Most arguments are supported, at least to some extent, by facts and statistics. For example, in the following passage the writer uses statistics to show that college students carry unreasonably high credit card debt.

A 2009 study by Sallie Mae revealed that undergraduates are carrying record-high credit card balances and are relying on credit cards more than ever, especially in the economic downturn. The average credit card debt per college undergraduate is more than three thousand dollars, and three-quarters of undergraduates carry balances and incur finance charges each month (Hunter).

Writers often use statistics in selective ways to bolster their own positions. If you suspect that a writer's handling of statistics is not quite fair, track down the original sources for those statistics or read authors with opposing views, who may give you a fuller understanding of the numbers.

### Using examples and illustrations

Examples and illustrations (extended examples, often in story form) rarely prove a point by themselves, but when used in combination with other forms of evidence, they flesh out an argument with details and bring it to life. Because examples are often concrete and sometimes vivid, they can reach readers in ways that statistics and abstract ideas cannot.

In a paper arguing that online news provides opportunities for readers that print does not, Sam Jacobs describes how regular citizens using only cell phones and laptops helped save lives during Hurricane Katrina by sending important updates to the rest of the world.

Citizen reporting made a difference in the wake of Hurricane Katrina in 2005. Armed with cell phones and laptops, regular citizens relayed critical news updates in a rapidly developing crisis, often before traditional journalists were even on the scene.

### Using visuals

Visuals—charts, graphs, diagrams, photographs—can support your argument by providing vivid and detailed evidence and by capturing your readers' attention. Bar or line graphs, for instance, describe and organize complex statistical data; photographs can immediately and evocatively convey abstract ideas. (See pp. 26–27.)

As you consider using visual evidence, ask yourself the following questions:

- Is the visual accurate, credible, and relevant?
- How will the visual appeal to readers: Logically? Ethically? Emotionally?
- How will the visual evidence function? Will it provide background information? Present complex numerical information or convey an abstract idea? Lend authority? Refute counterarguments?

### Citing expert opinion

Although they are no substitute for careful reasoning of your own, the views of an expert can contribute to the force of your argument. For example, to help make the case that print journalism has a one-sided relationship with its readers, student writer Sam Jacobs integrates an expert's key description.

With the rise of the Internet, however, this model has been criticized by journalists such as Dan Gillmor, founder of the Center for Citizen Media, who argues that traditional print journalism treats "news as a lecture," whereas online news is "more of a conversation" (xxiv).

When you rely on expert opinion, make sure that your source is an expert in the field you are writing about. In some cases, you may need to provide credentials showing why your source is worth listening to, such as listing the person's position or title alongside his or her name. When including expert testimony in your paper, you can summarize or paraphrase the expert's opinion or you can quote the expert's exact words. You will, of course, need to document the source, as Jacobs did.

## 6i Anticipate objections; counter opposing arguments.

Readers who already agree with you need no convincing, but skeptical readers may resist your arguments. To be willing to give up a position that seems reasonable, readers need to see that



another position is even more reasonable. In addition to presenting your own case, therefore, you should consider the opposing arguments and attempt to counter them.

### Anticipating and countering objections

To anticipate a possible objection to your argument, consider the following questions.

- Could a reasonable person draw a different conclusion from your facts or examples?
- Might a reader question any of your assumptions or offer an alternative explanation?
- Is there any evidence that might weaken your position?

The following questions may help you respond to a reader's potential objection.

- Can you concede the point to the opposition but challenge the point's importance or usefulness?
- Can you explain why readers should consider a new perspective or question a piece of evidence?
- Should you explain how your position responds to contradictory evidence?
- Can you suggest a different interpretation of the evidence?

When you write, use phrasing to signal to readers that you're about to present an objection. Often the signal phrase can go in the lead sentence of a paragraph.

Critics of this view argue that . . .

Some readers might point out that . . .

Researchers challenge these claims by . . .

It might seem at first that drawing attention to an opposing point of view or contradictory evidence would weaken your argument. But by anticipating and countering objections, you show yourself as a reasonable and well-informed writer who has a thorough understanding of the significance of the issue.

There is no best place in an essay to deal with opposing views. Often it is useful to summarize the opposing position early in your essay. After stating your thesis, but before developing your own arguments, you might have a paragraph that addresses the most important counterargument. Or you can anticipate objections paragraph by paragraph as you develop your case.

Wherever you decide to address opposing arguments, you will enhance your credibility if you explain the arguments of others accurately and fairly.

## 6j Build common ground.

As you counter opposing arguments, try to seek out one or two assumptions you might share with readers who do not initially agree with your views. If you can show that you share their concerns, your readers will be more likely to accept that your argument is valid. For example, to persuade people opposed to controlling the deer population with a regulated hunting season, a state wildlife commission would have to show that it too cares about preserving deer and does not want them to die needlessly. Having established these values in common, the commission might be able to persuade critics that reducing the total number of deer prevents starvation caused by overpopulation.

People believe that intelligence and decency support their side of an argument. To be persuaded, they must see these qualities in your argument. Otherwise, they will persist in their opposition.

## 6k Sample student writing: Argument

In the paper that begins on the next page, student writer Sam Jacobs argues that the shift from print to online news benefits readers by providing them with opportunities to produce news and to think more critically as consumers of news. Notice how he appeals to his readers by presenting opposing views fairly before providing his own arguments.

In writing the paper, Jacobs consulted both print and online sources. When he quotes, summarizes, or paraphrases information from a source, he cites the source with an MLA (Modern Language Association) in-text citation. Citations in the paper refer readers to the list of works cited at the end of the paper. (For more details about citing sources, see 54.)

A guide to writing an argument essay appears on pages 118–19.



Jacobs 1

Sam Jacobs  
 Professor Alperini  
 English 101  
 5 November 2013

From Lecture to Conversation:  
 Redefining What 's "Fit to Print"

"All the news that 's fit to print," the motto of the *New York Times* since 1896, plays with the word *fit*, asserting that a news story must be newsworthy and must not exceed the limits of the printed page. The increase in online news consumption, however, challenges both meanings of the word *fit*, allowing producers and consumers alike to rethink who decides which topics are worth covering and how extensive that coverage should be. Any cultural shift usually means that something is lost, but in this case there are clear gains. The shift from print to online news provides unprecedented opportunities for readers to become more engaged with the news, to hold journalists accountable, and to participate as producers, not simply as consumers.

Guided by journalism's code of ethics—accuracy, objectivity, and fairness—print news reporters have gathered and delivered stories according to what editors decide is fit for their readers. Except for op-ed pages and letters to the editor, print news has traditionally had a one-sided relationship with its readers. The print news media's reputation for objective reporting has been held up as "a stop sign" for readers, sending a clear message that no further inquiry is necessary (Weinberger). With the rise of the Internet, however, this model has been criticized by journalists such as Dan Gillmor, founder of the Center for

In his opening sentences, Jacobs provides background for his thesis.

Thesis states the main point.

Jacobs does not need a citation for common knowledge.

Source is cited in MLA style.

Jacobs 2

Citizen Media, who argues that traditional print journalism treats “news as a lecture,” whereas online news is “more of a conversation” (xxiv). Print news arrives on the doorstep every morning as a fully formed lecture, a product created without participation from its readership. By contrast, online news invites readers to participate in a collaborative process—to question and even help produce the content.

One of the most important advantages online news offers over print news is the presence of built-in hyperlinks, which carry readers from one electronic document to another. If readers are curious about the definition of a term, the roots of a story, or other perspectives on a topic, links provide a path. Links help readers become more critical consumers of information by engaging them in a totally new way. For instance, the link embedded in the story “Credit-Shy: Younger Generation Is More Likely to Stick to a Cash-Only Policy” (Sapin) allows readers to find out more about the financial trends of young adults and provides statistics that confirm the article’s accuracy (see fig. 1). Other links in the article widen the conversation. These kinds of links give readers the opportunity to conduct their own evaluation of the evidence and verify the journalist’s claims.

Links provide a kind of transparency impossible in print because they allow readers to see through online news to the “sources, disagreements, and the personal assumptions and values” that may have influenced a news story (Weinberger). The International Center for Media and the Public Agenda underscores the importance of news organizations letting “customers in on the often tightly held little secrets of journalism.” To do so, they suggest, will lead to “accountability and accountability leads to

Transition moves from Jacobs’s main argument to specific examples.

Jacobs clarifies key terms (*transparency* and *accountability*).

Jacobs 3

credibility" ("Openness"). These tools alone don't guarantee that news producers will be responsible and trustworthy, but they encourage an open and transparent environment that benefits news consumers.

Not only has technology allowed readers to become more critical news consumers, but it also has helped some to become news producers. The Web gives ordinary people the power to report on the day's events. Anyone with an Internet connection can publish on blogs and Web sites, engage in online discussion forums, and contribute video and audio recordings. Citizen journalists with laptops, cell phones, and digital camcorders have become news producers alongside large news organizations.

Not everyone embraces the spread of unregulated news reporting online. Critics point out that citizen journalists are not necessarily trained to be fair or ethical, for example, nor are they subject to editorial oversight. Acknowledging that citizen reporting is more immediate and experimental, critics also question its accuracy and accountability: "While it has its place . . . it really isn't journalism at all, and it opens up information flow to the strong probability of fraud and abuse. . . . Information without journalistic standards is called gossip," writes David Hazinski in the *Atlanta Journal-Constitution* (23A). In his book *Losing the News*, media specialist Alex S. Jones argues that what passes for news today is in fact "pseudo news" and is "far less reliable" than traditional print news (27). Even a supporter like Gillmor is willing to agree that citizen journalists are "nonexperts," but he argues that they are "using technology to make a profound contribution, and a real difference" (140).

Jacobs develops the thesis.

Opposing views are presented fairly.

Jacobs counters opposing arguments.



Jacobs 4

Citizen reporting made a difference in the wake of Hurricane Katrina in 2005. Armed with cell phones and laptops, regular citizens relayed critical news updates in a rapidly developing crisis, often before traditional journalists were even on the scene. In 2006, the enormous

A vivid example helps Jacobs make his point.

The screenshot shows a news article from **THE DENVER POST** with the headline **Credit-shy: Younger generation is more likely to stick to a cash-only policy** by Richard Sapin. Below the headline is an embedded link to a report titled **Young Adults After the Recession: Fewer Homes, Fewer Cars, Less Debt** by Richard Fry. The report includes an overview and a bar chart showing the median total debt of households by age head in 2010 and 2007.

**OVERVIEW**

After running up record debt-to-income ratios during the bubble economy of the 2000s, young adults shed substantially more debt than older adults did during the Great Recession and its immediate aftermath—mainly by virtue of owning fewer houses and cars, according to a new Pew Research Center analysis of

**Median Total Debt of Households, by Age Head, 2007 and 2010**  
in 2011 dollars

Age Group	2010	2007	Percent change
Younger than 35	\$15,473	\$21,912	29% decline
35 and older	\$30,070	\$32,543	8% decline

Note: The median is calculated among all households, including those without any debt.  
Source: Pew Research Center tabulations of Survey of Consumer Finances data

Fig. 1. Links embedded in online news articles allow readers to move from the main story to original sources, related articles, or background materials. The link in this online article (Sapin) points to a statistical report by the Pew Research Center, the original source of the author's data on young adults' spending practices.

Jacobs 5

contributions of citizen journalists were recognized when the New Orleans *Times-Picayune* received the Pulitzer Prize in public service for its online coverage—largely citizen-generated—of Hurricane Katrina. In recognizing the paper’s “meritorious public service,” the Pulitzer Prize board credited the newspaper’s blog for “heroic, multi-faceted coverage of [the storm] and its aftermath” (“2006”). Writing for the *Online Journalism Review*, Mark Glaser emphasizes the role that blog updates played in saving storm victims’ lives. Further, he calls the *Times-Picayune*’s partnership with citizen journalists a “watershed for online journalism.”

Jacobs uses specific evidence for support.

Conclusion echoes the thesis without repeating it.

The Internet has enabled consumers to participate in a new way in reading, questioning, interpreting, and reporting the news. Decisions about appropriate content and coverage are no longer exclusively in the hands of news editors. Ordinary citizens now have a meaningful voice in the conversation—a hand in deciding what’s “fit to print.” Some skeptics worry about the apparent free-for-all and loss of tradition. But the expanding definition of news provides opportunities for consumers to be more engaged with events in their communities, their nations, and the world.

Jacobs 6

## Works Cited

- Gillmor, Dan. *We the Media: Grassroots Journalism by the People, for the People*. O'Reilly Media, 2006.
- Glaser, Mark. "NOLA.com Blogs and Forums Help Save Lives after Katrina." *OJR: The Online Journalism Review*, Knight Digital Media Center, 13 Sept. 2005, [www.ojr.org/050913glaser/](http://www.ojr.org/050913glaser/).
- Hazinski, David. "Unfettered 'Citizen Journalism' Too Risky." *Atlanta Journal-Constitution*, 13 Dec. 2007, p. 23A. *General OneFile*, [go.galegroup.com/ps/](http://go.galegroup.com/ps/).
- Jones, Alex S. *Losing the News: The Future of the News That Feeds Democracy*. Oxford UP, 2009.
- "Openness and Accountability: A Study of Transparency in Global Media Outlets." *ICMPA: International Center for Media and the Public Agenda*, 2006, [www.icmpa.umd.edu/pages/studies/transparency/main.html](http://www.icmpa.umd.edu/pages/studies/transparency/main.html).
- Sapin, Rachel. "Credit-Shy: Younger Generation Is More Likely to Stick to a Cash-Only Policy." *The Denver Post*, 26 Aug. 2013, [www.denverpost.com/ci\\_23929523/credit-shy-younger-generation-stick-cash-only-policy](http://www.denverpost.com/ci_23929523/credit-shy-younger-generation-stick-cash-only-policy).
- "The 2006 Pulitzer Prize Winners: Public Service." *The Pulitzer Prizes*, Columbia U, [www.pulitzer.org/prize-winners-by-year/2006](http://www.pulitzer.org/prize-winners-by-year/2006). Accessed 21 Oct. 2013.
- Weinberger, David. "Transparency Is the New Objectivity." *Joho the Blog*, 19 July 2009, [www.hyperorg.com/blogger/2009/07/19/transparency-is-the-new-objectivity/](http://www.hyperorg.com/blogger/2009/07/19/transparency-is-the-new-objectivity/).

Works cited page uses MLA style.

List is alphabetized by authors' last names (or by title when a work has no author).

Access date is used for a Web source that has no update date.

## Writing guide | Argument essay

Composing an **argument** gives you the opportunity to take a position on a debatable issue. You say to your readers: “Here is my position, here is the evidence that supports the position, and here is my response to other positions on the issue.” A sample argument essay begins on page 112.

### Key features

- **A thesis, stated as a clear position on a debatable issue**, frames an argument essay. The issue is debatable because reasonable people disagree about it.
- **An examination of the issue’s context** indicates why the issue is important, why readers should care about it, or how your position fits into the debates surrounding the topic.
- **Sufficient, representative, and relevant evidence** supports the argument’s claims. Evidence needs to be specific and persuasive; quoted, summarized, or paraphrased fairly and accurately; and cited correctly.
- **Opposing positions are summarized and countered.** By anticipating and countering objections to your position, you establish common ground with readers and show yourself as a reasonable and well-informed writer.

### Writing your argument

#### EXPLORE

Generate ideas by brainstorming responses to questions such as the following.

- What is the debate around your issue? What sources will help you learn more about your issue?
- What position will you take? Why does your position need to be argued?
- What evidence supports your position? What evidence makes you question your position?
- What types of appeals — *ethos*, *logos*, *pathos* — might you use to persuade readers? How will you build common ground with your readers?
- Might a reader question any of your assumptions or offer an alternative perspective? If so, how might you anticipate and counter objections to your position?



## DRAFT

Try to figure out the best way to structure your argument. A typical outline might include the following steps: Capture readers' attention; state your position; give background information; outline your major claims with specific evidence; recognize and respond to opposing points of view; and end by reinforcing your point and why it matters.

As you draft, think about the best order for your claims. You could organize by strength, building to your strongest argument (instead of starting with your strongest), or by concerns your audience might have.

## REVISE

Ask your reviewers for specific feedback. Here are some questions to guide their comments.

- Is the thesis clear? Is the issue debatable?
- Is the evidence persuasive? Is more needed?
- Is your argument organized logically?
- Are there any flaws in your reasoning or assumptions that weaken the argument?
- Have you presented yourself as a knowledgeable, trustworthy writer?
- Does the conclusion pull together your entire argument? How might the conclusion be more effective?

# 7 Speaking confidently

Speaking and writing draw on many of the same skills. Effective speakers, like effective writers, identify their purpose, audience, and context. They project themselves as informed and reasonable, establish common ground with listeners, and use specific, memorable language and techniques to capture their audience's attention.

In many college classes, you'll be assigned to give oral presentations. The more comfortable you become speaking in different settings, the easier it will be when you give a formal presentation.

You can develop informal speaking skills by contributing to class discussions, responding to the comments of fellow students, and playing an active role in team-based learning.

## 7a Identify your purpose, audience, and context.

In planning your presentation, strategize a bit: Identify your purpose (reason) for speaking; your audience (listeners); and the context (situation) in which you will speak.

- PURPOSE** Begin by asking: Why am I speaking? What is my goal? Possible goals might include the following: to inform, persuade, evaluate, recommend, and call to action.
- AUDIENCE** Effective speakers identify the expectations of their audience and shape their material to these expectations. Assess what your audience may already know and believe, what objections you might need to anticipate, and how you might interact with your listeners.
- CONTEXT** Ask: What is the situation for my speech? An assignment for a course? The presentation of a group project? A community meeting? And how much time do I have to speak? The answers to these questions will help you shape the presentation for your particular speaking situation.

## 7b Prepare a presentation.

### Knowing your subject

You need to know your subject well in order to talk about it confidently. Although you can't pack too much material into a short speech, you need to speak knowledgeably to engage your audience. In preparing your speech, do some research to collect evidence — facts, statistics, visuals, expert testimony — that will support your points.

### Developing a clear structure

A good presentation is easily followed because it has a clear beginning, middle, and end. In your introduction, forecast the purpose and structure of your presentation and the question

or problem you are addressing so your audience can anticipate where you are going. Organize the body of an informative speech to help your audience remember key points of information, and conclude your presentation by giving listeners a sense of completion. Restate the key points, and borrow an image or phrasing from your opening to make the speech come full circle.

### Using signposts and repetition

As you speak, use signpost language to remind the audience of your purpose and key points. Signposts guide listeners—“The shift to online news has three important benefits for consumers”—and help them to understand the transition from one point to the next—“The second benefit is. . . .” By repeating phrases, you emphasize the importance of key points and help listeners remember them.

### Writing for the ear, not the eye

Use an engaging, lively style so that the audience will enjoy listening to you. Be sure to use straightforward spoken language that’s easy on the ear, not too complicated or too abstract. Keep your sentences short and direct so that listeners can easily follow your presentation.

### Integrating sources with signal language

If you are using sources, do so responsibly. As you speak, be sure to acknowledge your sources with signal phrases (“According to *New York Times* columnist David Brooks . . .”). If you have slides, signal phrases or citations can be included on the slides.

### Using multimedia purposefully

Well-chosen visuals or audio can enhance your presentation and add variety. A photograph might highlight an environmental problem, a line graph can quickly show a trend over time, and a brief video clip can offer visual evidence to capture listeners’ attention. Multimedia elements can convey information powerfully, but always consider how they support your purpose and how your audience will respond.



## 7c Focus on delivery.

### Establishing a relationship

If you give an audience your full attention, they will return it. Before delivering your speech, make steady eye contact with your listeners, introduce yourself, and help your audience connect with you.

### Starting strong and ending strong

Beginnings and endings of speeches are critical to gain and hold an audience's attention. Plan your opening strategy: Will you pose a question and ask for a show of hands? Will you tell a brief personal story? End strong by looking directly at your audience as you review your key points. Finish by thanking your audience and inviting questions.

### Boosting your confidence

Effective speaking starts with a good script and a clear message. However, pay attention to additional details that will boost your confidence and strengthen your presentation:

- Dress for the occasion.
- Make eye contact; use body language and hand gestures to emphasize points.
- Practice, practice, practice. Speak out loud in front of a mirror or a friend, and practice using visual aids.
- Time your rehearsal.
- Know the setting in which you'll deliver your talk.

**NOTE:** Speakers have the main role in presentations, but audience members have important roles, too. Speakers need encouragement, so look at the speaker, make eye contact, and be ready with a question about an interesting or surprising point.



- > Writing practice: Focusing on your delivery
- > Writing practice: Learning from another speaker (persuasive speech)
- > Writing practice: Learning from another speaker (informative speech)



## 7d Remix an essay for a presentation.

You may be assigned to adapt an essay that you have already written for delivery to a listening audience. Student writer Sam Jacobs revised his essay as he prepared a speaking script. Compare the first paragraph of Jacob's essay (p. 112) with the opening lines for his presentation below.

Good afternoon, everyone. I'm Sam Jacobs.

Friendly opening establishes a relationship with the audience.

Jacobs starts with his key question and engages the audience immediately.

Today I want to explore this question: How do consumers benefit from reading news online?

But first let me have a quick show of hands:

How many of you read news online? If you answered yes, you are part of the 71% of young Americans, ages 18 to 29, who read their news

Jacobs uses a source responsibly and integrates it well.

online, according to the Pew Center. We've grown up in a digital generation, consuming news on every possible mobile device, especially our cell phones. Most of us don't miss the newspaper arriving on the doorstep every morning. And because we expect to read news online, we take it for granted. But if we take it for granted, we might miss the benefits of participating as producers of news, not simply as consumers. The three benefits I want to explore are . . .

Establishes common ground with the audience.

Jacobs repeats words and phrases for emphasis and uses signposts to make it easier for his listeners to follow his ideas.



*this page left intentionally blank*

# Clarity

- 8** Prefer active verbs. 126
- 9** Balance parallel ideas. 129
- 10** Add needed words. 133
- 11** Untangle mixed constructions. 137
- 12** Repair misplaced and dangling modifiers. 140
- 13** Eliminate distracting shifts. 147
- 14** Emphasize key ideas. 152
- 15** Provide some variety. 163
- 16** Tighten wordy sentences. 166
- 17** Choose appropriate language. 170
- 18** Find the exact words. 180

# 8 Prefer active verbs.

As a rule, choose an active verb and pair it with a subject that names the person or thing doing the action. Active verbs express meaning more emphatically and vigorously than their weaker counterparts — verbs in the passive voice or forms of the verb *be*.

<b>PASSIVE</b>	The pumps <i>were destroyed</i> by a surge of power.
<b>BE VERB</b>	A surge of power <i>was</i> responsible for the destruction of the pumps.
<b>ACTIVE</b>	A surge of power <i>destroyed</i> the pumps.

Verbs in the passive voice lack strength because their subjects receive the action instead of doing it. Forms of the verb *be* (*be, am, is, are, was, were, being, been*) lack vigor because they convey no action.

Although passive verbs and the forms of *be* have legitimate uses, choose an active verb whenever possible. Even among active verbs, some are more vigorous and colorful than others. Carefully selected verbs can energize a piece of writing.

- ▶ The goalie crouched low, <sup>swept</sup>reached out his stick, and <sup>hooked</sup>sent the rebound away from the mouth of the net.

**Academic English** Although you may be tempted to avoid the passive voice completely, keep in mind that some writing situations call for it, especially scientific writing. For appropriate uses of the passive voice, see page 127; for advice about forming the passive voice, see 28b and 47c.

## 8a Use the active voice unless you have a good reason for choosing the passive.

In the active voice, the subject does the action; in the passive voice, the subject receives the action (see also 47c). Although both voices are grammatically correct, the active voice is usually more effective because it is clearer and more direct.

ACTIVE	Hernando <i>caught</i> the fly ball.
PASSIVE	The fly ball <i>was caught</i> by Hernando.

Passive sentences often identify the actor in a *by* phrase, as in the preceding example. Sometimes, however, that phrase is omitted, and who or what is responsible for the action becomes unclear: *The fly ball was caught.*

Most of the time, you will want to emphasize the actor, so you should use the active voice. To replace a passive verb with an active one, make the actor the subject of the sentence.

*The settlers stripped the land of timber before realizing*

- ▶ ~~The land was stripped of timber before the settlers realized the~~  
^  
consequences of their actions.

The revision emphasizes the actors (*settlers*) by naming them in the subject.

### Appropriate uses of the passive

The passive voice is appropriate if you want to emphasize the receiver of the action or to minimize the importance of the actor.

APPROPRIATE PASSIVE	Many Hawaiians <i>were forced</i> to leave their homes after the earthquake.
APPROPRIATE PASSIVE	Near harvest time, the tobacco plants <i>are sprayed</i> with a chemical to slow the growth of suckers.

The writer of the first sentence wished to emphasize the receiver of the action, *Hawaiians*. The writer of the second sentence wished to focus on the tobacco plants, not on the people spraying them.

In much scientific writing, the passive voice properly emphasizes the experiment or process being described, not the researcher. Check with your instructor for the preference in your discipline.

## 8b Replace *be* verbs that result in dull or wordy sentences.

Not every *be* verb needs replacing. The forms of *be* (*be, am, is, are, was, were, being, been*) work well when you want to link a subject to a noun that clearly renames it or to an adjective that describes it: *Orchard House was the home of Louisa May Alcott. The harvest will be bountiful after the summer rains.*

*Be* verbs also are essential as helping verbs before present participles (*is flying, are disappearing*) to express ongoing action: *Derrick was fighting the fire when his wife went into labor.* (See 27f.)

If using a *be* verb makes a sentence needlessly dull and wordy, however, consider replacing it. Often a phrase following the verb contains a noun or an adjective (such as *violation, resistant*) that suggests a more vigorous, active verb (*violate, resist*).

- ▶ Burying nuclear waste in Antarctica would <sup>violate</sup> ~~be in violation of~~ an international treaty.

*Violate* is less wordy and more vigorous than *be in violation of*.

- ▶ When Rosa Parks <sup>resisted</sup> ~~was resistant to~~ giving up her seat on the bus, she became a civil rights hero.

*Resisted* is stronger than *was resistant to*.

## 8c As a rule, choose a subject that names the person or thing doing the action.


In weak, unemphatic prose, both the actor and the action may be buried in sentence elements other than the subject and the verb. In the following weak sentence, for example, both the actor and the action appear in prepositional phrases, word groups that do not receive much attention from readers.

WEAK	The institution of the New Deal had the effect of reversing some of the economic inequalities of the Great Depression.
EMPHATIC	The New Deal reversed some of the economic inequalities of the Great Depression.

Consider the subjects and verbs of the two versions — *institution had* versus *New Deal reversed*. The second version expresses the writer's point more emphatically.

- ▶ <sup>P</sup> ~~The use of~~ pure oxygen can <sup>^</sup> ~~cause healing in~~ wounds that are otherwise untreatable.

In the original sentence, the subject and verb — *use can cause* — express the point blandly. *Pure oxygen can heal* makes the point more emphatically and directly.

**EXERCISE 8-1** Revise unemphatic sentences by replacing passive verbs or *be* verbs with active alternatives. You may need to name in the subject the person or thing doing the action. If a sentence is emphatic, do not change it. Possible revisions appear in the back of the book. *More practice:*  LaunchPadSolo

*The ranger doused the campfire before giving us*

~~The campfire was doused by the ranger before we were given a~~

^

ticket for unauthorized use of a campsite.

- The Prussians were victorious over the Saxons in 1745.
- The entire operation is managed by Ahmed, the producer.
- The sea kayaks were expertly paddled by the tour guides.
- At the crack of rocket and mortar blasts, I jumped from the top bunk and landed on my buddy below, who was crawling on the floor looking for his boots.
- There were shouting protesters on the courthouse steps.

## 9 Balance parallel ideas.

If two or more ideas are parallel, they are easier to grasp when expressed in parallel grammatical form. Single words should be balanced with single words, phrases with phrases, clauses with clauses.

A kiss can be a comma, a question mark, or an exclamation point.

— Mistinguett

This novel is not to be tossed lightly aside, but to be hurled with great force.

— Dorothy Parker

In matters of principle, stand like a rock; in matters of taste, swim with the current.

— Thomas Jefferson

Writers often use parallelism to create emphasis. (See 14f.)



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhigher.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhigher.com/rules8e)

8 Active verbs

> Exercises: 8-2 to 8-6

> LearningCurve: Active and passive voice

## 9a Balance parallel ideas in a series.

Readers expect items in a series to appear in parallel grammatical form. When one or more of the items violate readers' expectations, a sentence will be needlessly awkward.

- ▶ Children who study music also learn confidence, discipline, *creativity*, and they are creative.

The revision presents all the items in the series as nouns: *confidence*, *discipline*, and *creativity*.

- ▶ Impressionist painters believed in focusing on ordinary subjects, capturing the effects of light on those subjects, and *using* short brushstrokes.

The revision uses *-ing* forms for all the items in the series: *focusing*, *capturing*, and *using*.

- ▶ Racing to get to work on time, Sam drove down the middle of the road, ran one red light, and *ignored* two stop signs.

The revision adds a verb to make the three items parallel: *drove*, *ran*, and *ignored*.

In headings and lists, aim for as much parallelism as the content allows.

## 9b Balance parallel ideas presented as pairs.

When pairing ideas, underscore their connection by expressing them in similar grammatical form. Paired ideas are usually connected in one of these ways:

- with a coordinating conjunction such as *and*, *but*, or *or*
- with a pair of correlative conjunctions such as *either . . . or* or *not only . . . but also*
- with a word introducing a comparison, usually *than* or *as*



### Parallel ideas linked with coordinating conjunctions

Coordinating conjunctions (*and, but, or, nor, for, so, and yet*) link ideas of equal importance. When those ideas are closely parallel in content, they should be expressed in parallel grammatical form.

- ▶ Emily Dickinson's poetry features the use of dashes and ~~capitalizing~~ <sup>the capitalization of</sup> common words.  
 ^  
 The revision balances the nouns *use* and *capitalization*.
- ▶ Many states are reducing property taxes for home owners and ~~extend~~ <sup>extending</sup> tax credits to renters.  
 ^  
 The revision balances the verb *reducing* with the verb *extending*.

### Parallel ideas linked with correlative conjunctions

Correlative conjunctions come in pairs: *either . . . or, neither . . . nor, not only . . . but also, both . . . and, whether . . . or*. Make sure that the grammatical structure following the second half of the pair is the same as that following the first half.

- ▶ Thomas Edison was not only a prolific inventor but also ~~was a~~ successful entrepreneur.  
 The words *a prolific inventor* follow *not only*, so *a successful entrepreneur* should follow *but also*. Repeating *was* creates an unbalanced effect.
- ▶ The clerk told me either to change my flight ~~or~~ <sup>to</sup> take the train.  
 ^  
 To change my flight, which follows *either*, should be balanced with *to take the train*, which follows *or*.

### Comparisons linked with *than* or *as*

In comparisons linked with *than* or *as*, the elements being compared should be expressed in parallel grammatical structure.

- ▶ It is easier to speak in abstractions than ~~grounding~~ <sup>to ground</sup> one's thoughts in reality.  
 ^  
 To speak is balanced with *to ground*.

Comparisons should also be logical and complete. (See 10c.)

- ▶ In Pueblo culture, according to Silko, <sup>writing</sup> ~~to write~~ down the stories of a tribe is not the same as “keeping track of all the stories” (290).

When you are quoting from a source, parallel grammatical structure — such as *writing . . . keeping* — helps create continuity between your sentence and the words from the source. (See 56a on citing sources in MLA style.)

## 9c Repeat function words to clarify parallels.

Function words such as prepositions (*by, to*) and subordinating conjunctions (*that, because*) signal the grammatical nature of the word groups to follow. Although you can sometimes omit them, be sure to include them whenever they signal parallel structures that readers might otherwise miss.

- ▶ Our study revealed that left-handed students were more likely <sup>that</sup> to have trouble with classroom desks and rearranging desks for exam periods was useful.

A second subordinating conjunction helps readers sort out the two parallel ideas: *that* left-handed students have trouble with classroom desks and *that* rearranging desks was useful.

**EXERCISE 9-1** Edit the following sentences to correct faulty parallelism. Possible revisions appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

Rowena began her workday by pouring a cup of coffee and <sup>checking</sup> checked her e-mail.

- Police dogs are used for finding lost children, tracking criminals, and the detection of bombs and illegal drugs.

- b. Hannah told her rock-climbing partner that she bought a new harness and of her desire to climb Otter Cliffs.
- c. It is more difficult to sustain an exercise program than starting one.
- d. During basic training, I was not only told what to do but also what to think.
- e. Jan wanted to drive to the wine country or at least Sausalito.

## 10 Add needed words.

Sometimes writers leave out words intentionally, and the meaning of the sentence is not affected. But leaving out words can occasionally cause confusion for readers or make the sentence ungrammatical. Readers need to see at a glance how the parts of a sentence are connected.

Languages sometimes differ in the need for certain words. In particular, be alert for missing articles, verbs, subjects, or expletives. See 29, 30a, and 30b.

Multilingual

### 10a Add words needed to complete compound structures.

In compound structures, words are often left out for economy: *Tom is a man who means what he says and [who] says what he means.* Such omissions are acceptable as long as the omitted words are common to both parts of the compound structure.

If a sentence defies grammar or idiom because an omitted word is not common to both parts of the compound structure, the simplest solution is to put the word back in.

- ▶ Advertisers target customers whom they identify through demographic research or have purchased their product in the past.

The word *who* must be included because *whom . . . have purchased* is not grammatically correct.

- ▶ Mayor Davis never has <sup>accepted</sup> and never will accept a bribe.  
 Has . . . *accept* is not grammatically correct.
- ▶ Many South Pacific islanders still believe and live <sup>in</sup> by ancient laws.  
 Believe . . . *by* is not idiomatic in English. (For a list of common idioms, see 18d.)

**NOTE:** Even when the omitted word is common to both parts of the compound structure, occasionally it must be inserted to avoid ambiguity.

*My favorite professor and mentor* influenced my choice of a career.  
 [Professor and mentor are the same person.]

*My favorite professor and my mentor* influenced my choice of a career. [Professor and mentor are two different people; *my* must be repeated.]

## 10b Add the word *that* if there is any danger of misreading without it.

If there is no danger of misreading, the word *that* may be omitted when it introduces a subordinate clause. *The value of a principle is the number of things [that] it will explain.* When a sentence might be misread without *that*, however, include the word.

- ▶ In his famous obedience experiments, psychologist Stanley Milgram discovered <sup>that</sup> ordinary people were willing to inflict physical pain on strangers.  
 Milgram didn't discover ordinary people; he discovered that ordinary people were willing to inflict pain on strangers. The word *that* tells readers to expect a clause, not just *ordinary people*, as the direct object of *discovered*.

## 10c Add words needed to make comparisons logical and complete.

Comparisons should be made between items that are alike. To compare unlike items is illogical and distracting.

- ▶ The forests of North America are much more extensive than <sup>those of</sup> Europe.

Forests must be compared with forests, not with all of Europe.

- ▶ Some say that Ella Fitzgerald's renditions of Cole Porter's <sup>singer's.</sup> songs are better than any other ~~singer.~~

Ella Fitzgerald's renditions cannot logically be compared with a singer. The revision uses the possessive form *singer's*, with the word *renditions* being implied.

Sometimes the word *other* must be inserted to make a comparison logical.

- ▶ Jupiter is larger than any <sup>other</sup> planet in our solar system.

Jupiter is a planet, and it cannot be larger than itself.

Sometimes the word *as* must be inserted to make a comparison grammatically complete.

- ▶ The city of Lowell is as <sup>as</sup> old, if not older than, the neighboring city of Lawrence.

The construction *as old* is not complete without a second *as*: *as old as . . . the neighboring city of Lawrence*.

Comparisons should be complete enough to ensure clarity. The reader should understand what is being compared.

INCOMPLETE    Brand X is less salty.

COMPLETE      Brand X is less salty than Brand Y.

Finally, comparisons should leave no ambiguity for readers. If more than one interpretation is possible, revise the sentence to state clearly which interpretation you intend. In the following ambiguous sentence, two interpretations are possible.

AMBIGUOUS    Ken helped me more than my roommate.

CLEAR          Ken helped me more than *he helped* my roommate.

CLEAR          Ken helped me more than my roommate *did*.

## 10d Add the articles *a*, *an*, and *the* where necessary for grammatical completeness.

It is not always necessary to repeat articles with paired items: *We bought a computer and printer*. However, if one of the items requires *a* and the other requires *an*, both articles must be included.

- ▶ We bought a computer <sup>an</sup> and antivirus program.  
^

Articles are sometimes omitted in recipes and other instructions that are meant to be followed while they are being read. In nearly all other forms of writing, whether formal or informal, such omissions are inappropriate.

### Multilingual

Choosing and using articles can be challenging for multilingual writers. See 29.

**EXERCISE 10-1** Add any words needed for grammatical or logical completeness in the following sentences. Possible revisions appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

The officer feared <sup>that</sup> the prisoner would escape.  
^

- A grapefruit or orange is a good source of vitamin C.
- The women entering the military academy can expect haircuts as short as the male cadets.
- Looking out the family room window, Sarah saw her favorite tree, which she had climbed as a child, was gone.
- The graphic designers are interested and knowledgeable about producing posters for the balloon race.
- The Great Barrier Reef is larger than any coral reef in the world.



# 11 Untangle mixed constructions.

A mixed construction contains sentence parts that do not sensibly fit together. The mismatch may be a matter of grammar or of logic.

## 11a Untangle the grammatical structure.

Once you begin a sentence, your choices are limited by the range of grammatical patterns in English. (See 47 and 48.) You cannot begin with one grammatical plan and switch without warning to another. Often you must rethink the purpose of the sentence and revise.

**MIXED** For most drivers who have a blood alcohol content of .05 percent double their risk of causing an accident.

The writer begins the sentence with a long prepositional phrase and makes it the subject of the verb *double*. But a prepositional phrase can serve only as a modifier; it cannot be the subject of a sentence.

**REVISED** For most drivers who have a blood alcohol content of .05 percent, the risk of causing an accident is doubled.

**REVISED** Most drivers who have a blood alcohol content of .05 percent double their risk of causing an accident.

In the first revision, the writer begins with the prepositional phrase and finishes the sentence with a proper subject and verb (*risk . . . is doubled*). In the second revision, the writer stays with the original verb (*double*) and heads into the sentence another way, making *drivers* the subject of *double*.

### Electing

- ▶ ~~When the country elects a president is the most important~~  
^  
responsibility in a democracy.

The adverb clause *When the country elects a president* cannot serve as the subject of the verb *is*. The revision replaces the adverb clause with a gerund phrase, a word group that can function as a subject. (See 48b and 48e.)

- ▶ Although the United States is a wealthy nation, **but** more than 20 percent of our children live in poverty.

The coordinating conjunction *but* cannot link a subordinate clause (*Although the United States . . .*) with an independent clause (*more than 20 percent of our children live in poverty*).

Occasionally a mixed construction is so tangled that it defies grammatical analysis. When this happens, back away from the sentence, rethink what you want to say, and then rewrite the sentence.

- MIXED** In the whole-word method, children learn to recognize entire words rather than by the phonics method in which they learn to sound out letters and groups of letters.
- REVISED** The whole-word method teaches children to recognize entire words; the phonics method teaches them to sound out letters and groups of letters.

English does not allow double subjects, nor does it allow an object or an adverb to be repeated in an adjective clause. Unlike some other languages, English does not allow a noun and a pronoun to be repeated in a sentence if they have the same grammatical function. See 30c and 30d.

- ▶ My father **he** moved to Peru before **he** met my mother.  
the final exam
- ▶ ~~The final exam~~ I should really study for **it** to pass the course.  
^

## 11b Straighten out the logical connections.

The subject and the predicate (the verb and its modifiers) should make sense together; when they don't, the error is known as *faulty predication*.

- ▶ The court decided that <sup>Tiffany</sup>~~Tiffany's welfare~~ would not be safe living with her abusive parents.  
^

Tiffany, not her welfare, may not be safe.



- ▶ Under the revised plan, the elderly <sup>double personal exemption for the</sup> who now receive a double personal exemption, will be abolished.

The exemption, not the elderly, will be abolished.

An appositive is a noun that renames a nearby noun. When an appositive and the noun it renames are not logically equivalent, the error is known as *faulty apposition*. (See 48c.)

- ▶ <sup>Tax accounting,</sup> The tax accountant, a very lucrative profession, requires intelligence, patience, and attention to mathematical detail.

The tax accountant is a person, not a profession.

## 11c Avoid is when, is where, and reason . . . is because constructions.

In formal English, many readers object to *is when, is where, and reason . . . is because* constructions on either grammatical or logical grounds.

Grammatically, the verb *is* (as well as *are, was, and were*) should be followed by a noun that renames the subject or by an adjective that describes the subject, not by an adverb clause beginning with *when, where, or because*. (See 48b and 48e.) Logically, the words *when, where, or because* suggest relations of time, place, and cause—relations that do not always make sense with *is, are, was, or were*.

- ▶ The reason ~~the experiment failed~~ is because conditions in the lab were not sterile.

The writer might have changed *because* to *that* (*The reason the experiment failed is that conditions in the lab were not sterile*), but the preceding revision is more concise.

- ▶ Anorexia nervosa is <sup>a disorder suffered by people who</sup> where people think they are too fat and diet to the point of starvation.

*Where* refers to places. Anorexia nervosa is a disorder, not a place.

**EXERCISE 11-1** Edit the following sentences to untangle mixed constructions. Possible revisions appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

### Taking

By taking the oath of allegiance made Ling a US citizen.

- Using surgical gloves is a precaution now worn by dentists to prevent contact with patients' blood and saliva.
- A physician, the career my brother is pursuing, requires at least ten years of challenging work.
- The reason the pharaohs had bad teeth was because tiny particles of sand found their way into Egyptian bread.
- Recurring bouts of flu among team members set a record for number of games forfeited.
- In this box contains the key to your future.

## 12 Repair misplaced and dangling modifiers.

Modifiers, whether they are single words, phrases, or clauses, should point clearly to the words they modify. As a rule, related words should be kept together.

### 12a Put limiting modifiers in front of the words they modify.

Limiting modifiers such as *only*, *even*, *almost*, *nearly*, and *just* should appear in front of a verb only if they modify the verb: *At first, I couldn't even touch my toes, much less grasp them.* If they limit the meaning of some other word in the sentence, they should be placed in front of that word.

- ▶ The literature reveals that students ~~only~~ learn new vocabulary words when they are encouraged to read.

*Only* limits the meaning of the *when* clause.



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

11 Mixed constructions

> Exercises: 11-2 to 11-5

- ▶ If you <sup>just</sup> interview chemistry majors, your picture of the student body's response to the new grading policies will be incomplete.

The adverb *just* limits the meaning of *chemistry majors*, not *interview*.

When the limiting modifier *not* is misplaced, the sentence usually suggests a meaning the writer did not intend.

- ▶ In the United States in 1860, all black southerners were <sup>not</sup> slaves.

The original sentence says that no black southerners were slaves. The revision makes the writer's real meaning clear: Some (but not all) black southerners were slaves.

## 12b Place phrases and clauses so that readers can see at a glance what they modify.

Although phrases and clauses can appear at some distance from the words they modify, make sure your meaning is clear. When phrases or clauses are oddly placed, absurd misreadings can result.

**MISPLACED** The soccer player returned to the clinic where he had undergone emergency surgery in 2004 in a limousine sent by Adidas.

**REVISED** Traveling in a limousine sent by Adidas, the soccer player returned to the clinic where he had undergone emergency surgery in 2004.

The revision corrects the false impression that the soccer player underwent emergency surgery in a limousine.

- <sup>On the walls</sup>  
▶ ~~There~~ are many pictures of comedians who have performed at Gavin's. <sup>on the walls</sup>.

The comedians weren't performing on the walls; the pictures were on the walls.

- ▶ The robber was described as a <sup>170-pound,</sup> six-foot-tall man with a heavy mustache. <sup>weighing 170 pounds</sup>.

The robber, not the mustache, weighed 170 pounds.

Occasionally the placement of a modifier leads to an ambiguity—a squinting modifier. In such a case, two revisions will be possible, depending on the writer's intended meaning.

- |           |  |
|-----------|--|
| AMBIGUOUS | The exchange students we met for coffee occasionally questioned us about our latest slang. |
| CLEAR     | The exchange students we occasionally met for coffee questioned us about our latest slang. |
| CLEAR     | The exchange students we met for coffee questioned us occasionally about our latest slang. |

In the original version, it was not clear whether the meeting or the questioning happened occasionally. Both revisions eliminate the ambiguity.

## 12c Move awkwardly placed modifiers.

As a rule, a sentence should flow from subject to verb to object, without lengthy detours along the way. When a long adverbial word group separates a subject from its verb, a verb from its object, or a helping verb from its main verb, the result is often awkward.

- ▶ **Hong Kong**, <sup>A</sup> after more than 150 years of British rule, <sup>Hong Kong</sup> was transferred back to Chinese control in 1997.

There is no reason to separate the subject, *Hong Kong*, from the verb, *was transferred*, with a long phrase.

English does not allow an adverb to appear between a verb and its object. See 30f.

- ▶ Yolanda lifted <sup>easily</sup> the fifty-pound weight.

## 12d Avoid split infinitives when they are awkward.

An infinitive consists of *to* plus the base form of a verb: *to think*, *to breathe*, *to dance*. When a modifier appears between *to* and

the verb, an infinitive is said to be “split”: *to carefully balance, to completely understand*.

When a long word or a phrase appears between the parts of the infinitive, the result is usually awkward.

*If possible, the*

- ▶ **The patient should try to ~~if possible~~ avoid going up and down stairs.**

Attempts to avoid split infinitives can result in equally awkward sentences. When alternative phrasing sounds unnatural, most experts allow—and even encourage—splitting the infinitive.

**AWKWARD** We decided actually to enforce the law.

**BETTER** We decided to actually enforce the law.

At times, neither the split infinitive nor its alternative sounds particularly awkward. In such situations, it is usually better not to split the infinitive, especially in formal writing.

- ▶ **Nursing students learn to ~~accurately~~ record a patient’s vital signs/**

**EXERCISE 12-1** Edit the following sentences to correct misplaced or awkwardly placed modifiers. Possible revisions appear in the back of the book.

*More practice:*  **LaunchPadSolo**

*in a telephone survey*

**Answering questions can be annoying. ~~in a telephone survey~~.**

- More research is needed to effectively evaluate the risks posed by volcanoes in the Pacific Northwest.
- Many students graduate with debt from college totaling more than fifty thousand dollars.
- It is a myth that humans only use 10 percent of their brains.
- A coolhunter is a person who can find in the unnoticed corners of modern society the next wave of fashion.
- All geese do not fly beyond Narragansett for the winter.



**LaunchPadSolo** [macmillanhigher.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhigher.com/rules8e)

12 Modifiers

> Exercises: 12-2 to 12-5

> LearningCurve: Modifiers

## 12e Repair dangling modifiers.

A dangling modifier fails to refer logically to any word in the sentence. Dangling modifiers are easy to repair, but they can be hard to recognize, especially in your own writing.

### Recognizing dangling modifiers

Dangling modifiers are usually word groups (such as verbal phrases) that suggest but do not name an actor. When a sentence opens with such a modifier, readers expect the subject of the next clause to name the actor. If it doesn't, the modifier dangles.

- ▶ Understanding the need to create checks and balances on power, *the framers of* the Constitution divided the government into three branches.

^  
The framers of the Constitution (not the document itself) understood the need for checks and balances.

- ▶ After completing seminary training, *women were often denied* women's access to the priesthood, ~~has often been denied~~.

^  
Women (not their access to the priesthood) complete the training.

The following sentences illustrate four common kinds of dangling modifiers.

DANGLING *Deciding to join the navy*, the recruiter enthusiastically pumped Joe's hand. [Participial phrase]

DANGLING *Upon entering the doctor's office*, a skeleton caught my attention. [Preposition followed by a gerund phrase]

DANGLING *To satisfy her mother*, the piano had to be practiced every day. [Infinitive phrase]

DANGLING *Though not eligible for the clinical trial*, the doctor prescribed the drug for Ethan on compassionate grounds. [Elliptical clause with an understood subject and verb]

These dangling modifiers falsely suggest that the recruiter decided to join the navy, that the skeleton entered the doctor's office, that the piano intended to satisfy the mother, and that the doctor was not eligible for the clinical trial.

Although most readers will understand the writer's intended meaning in such sentences, the inadvertent humor can be distracting.

### Repairing dangling modifiers

To repair a dangling modifier, you can revise the sentence in one of two ways:

- Name the actor in the subject of the sentence.
- Name the actor in the modifier.

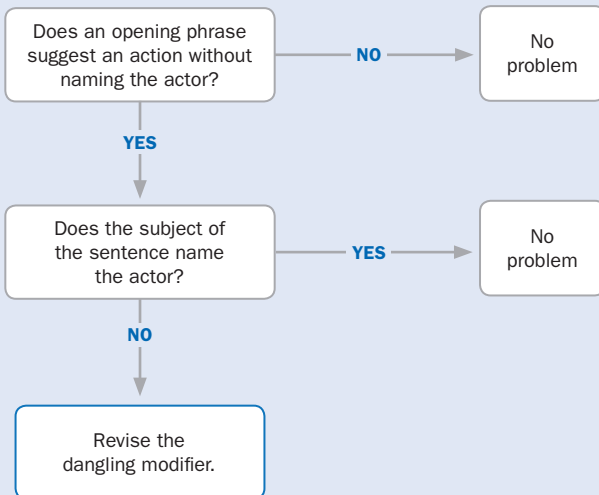
Depending on your sentence, one of these revision strategies may be more appropriate than the other.

#### ACTOR NAMED IN SUBJECT

- ▶ Upon entering the doctor's office, a skeleton <sup>I noticed</sup> ~~caught my~~ attention.

- ▶ To satisfy her mother, <sup>Jing-mei had to practice</sup> the piano ~~had to be~~ practiced every day.

### Checking for dangling modifiers



## ACTOR NAMED IN MODIFIER


*When Joe decided*

- ▶ ~~Deciding to join the navy, the recruiter enthusiastically~~  
 ^ his  
 pumped Joe's hand.

- ▶ ~~Though not eligible for the clinical trial, the doctor prescribed~~  
 ^ Ethan was  
 ^ him  
 the drug for Ethan on compassionate grounds.

**NOTE:** You cannot repair a dangling modifier just by moving it. Consider, for example, the sentence about the skeleton. If you put the modifier at the end of the sentence (*A skeleton caught my attention upon entering the doctor's office*), you are still suggesting — absurdly, of course — that the skeleton entered the office. The only way to avoid the problem is to put the word *I* in the sentence, either as the subject or in the modifier.

- ▶ ~~Upon entering the doctor's office, a skeleton caught my attention.~~  
 I noticed  
 ^ ^
- ▶ ~~Upon entering the doctor's office, a skeleton caught my attention.~~  
 As I entered  
 ^

**EXERCISE 12-6** Edit the following sentences to correct dangling modifiers. Most sentences can be revised in more than one way. Possible revisions appear in the back of the book. *More practice:*  LaunchPadSolo

*a student must complete*  
 To graduate, two science courses. ~~must be completed.~~  
 ^ ^

- To complete an online purchase with a credit card, the expiration date and the security code must be entered.
- Though only sixteen, UCLA accepted Martha's application.
- Settled in the cockpit, the pounding of the engine was muffled only slightly by my helmet.
- After studying polymer chemistry, computer games seemed less complex to Phuong.
- When a young man, my mother enrolled me in tap dance classes.

LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

12 Modifiers

&gt; Exercises: 12-7 to 12-10

&gt; LearningCurve: Modifiers



# 13 Eliminate distracting shifts.

The following sections can help you avoid unnecessary shifts that might distract or confuse your readers: shifts in point of view, in verb tense, in mood or voice, or from indirect to direct questions or quotations.

## 13a Make the point of view consistent in person and number.

The point of view of a piece of writing is the perspective from which it is written: first person (*I* or *we*), second person (*you*), or third person (*he*, *she*, *it*, *one*, *they*, or any noun).

The *I* (or *we*) point of view, which emphasizes the writer, is a good choice for informal letters and writing based primarily on personal experience. The *you* point of view, which emphasizes the reader, works well for giving advice or explaining how to do something. The third-person point of view, which emphasizes the subject, is appropriate in formal academic and professional writing.

Writers who have trouble settling on an appropriate point of view sometimes shift confusingly from one to another. The solution is to choose a suitable perspective and stay with it.

- ▶ Our class practiced rescuing a victim trapped in a wrecked

car. We learned to dismantle the car with the essential tools.

*We*  
^  
*You* were graded on *our* speed and *our* skill in freeing the  
^ ^  
victim.

The writer should have stayed with the *we* point of view. *You* is inappropriate because the writer is not addressing readers directly. *You* should not be used in a vague sense meaning “anyone.” (See 23d.)

*You need*

- ▶ *One* needs a password and a credit card number to access the  
^  
database. *You* will be billed at an hourly rate.

*You* is an appropriate choice because the writer is giving advice directly to readers.

**EXERCISE 13-1** Edit the following paragraph to eliminate distracting shifts in point of view (person and number).

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

When online dating first became available, many people thought that it would simplify romance. We believed that you could type in a list of criteria — sense of humor, college education, green eyes, good job — and a database would select the perfect mate. Thousands of people signed up for services and filled out their profiles, confident that true love was only a few mouse clicks away. As it turns out, however, virtual dating is no easier than traditional dating. I still have to contact the people I find, exchange e-mails and phone calls, and meet him in the real world. Although a database might produce a list of possibilities and screen out obviously undesirable people, you can't predict chemistry. More often than not, people who seem perfect online just don't click in person. Electronic services do help a single person expand their pool of potential dates, but it's no substitute for the hard work of romance.

## 13b Maintain consistent verb tenses.

Consistent verb tenses clearly establish the time of the actions being described. When a passage begins in one tense and then shifts without warning and for no reason to another, readers are distracted and confused.

- ▶ There was no way I could fight the current and win. Just as

I was losing hope, a stranger <sup>jumped</sup> jumps off a passing boat and  
<sup>swam</sup> swims toward me.

The writer thought that the present tense (*jumps*, *swims*) would convey immediacy and drama. But having begun in the past tense (*could fight*, *was losing*), the writer should follow through in the past tense.

Writers often encounter difficulty with verb tenses when writing about literature. Because fictional events occur outside the time frames of real life, the past tense and the present tense may seem equally appropriate. The literary convention is to describe fictional events consistently in the present tense. (See pp. 249–50.)

- The scarlet letter is a punishment sternly placed on Hester's breast by the community, and yet it <sup>is</sup> was a fanciful and <sup>^</sup> imaginative product of Hester's own needlework.

**EXERCISE 13-3** Edit the following paragraphs to eliminate distracting shifts in tense. *More practice:*  LaunchPadSolo

The English colonists who settled in Massachusetts received assistance at first from the local Indian tribes, but by 1675 there had been friction between the English and the Indians for many years. On June 20 of that year, Metacomet, whom the colonists called Philip, leads the Wampanoag tribe in the first of a series of attacks on the colonial settlements. The war, known today as King Philip's War, rages on for more than a year and leaves three thousand Indians and six hundred colonists dead. Metacomet's attempt to retain power in his native land failed. Finally he too is killed, and the victorious colonists sell his wife and children into slavery.

The Indians did not leave records of their encounters with the English settlers, but the settlers recorded some of their experiences at the hands of the Indians. One of the few accounts to survive was written by a captured colonist, Mrs. Mary Rowlandson. She is a minister's wife who is kidnapped by an Indian war party and held captive for eleven weeks in 1676. Her history, *A Narrative of the Captivity and Restoration of Mrs. Mary Rowlandson*, tells the story of her experiences with the Wampanoags. Although it did not paint a completely balanced picture of the Indians, Rowlandson's narrative, which is considered a classic early American text, showed its author to be a keen observer of life in an Indian camp.

## 13c Make verbs consistent in mood and voice.

Unnecessary shifts in the mood of a verb can be distracting and confusing to readers. There are three moods in English: the *indicative*, used for facts, opinions, and questions; the *imperative*, used for orders or advice; and the *subjunctive*, used in certain contexts to express wishes or conditions contrary to fact (see 27g).

The following passage shifts confusingly from the indicative to the imperative mood.

 LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

13 Shifts

- > Exercises: 13-4, 13-9 to 13-11
- > LearningCurve: Shifts

- ▶ The counselor advised us to spread out our core requirements over two or three semesters. *She also suggested that we* Also, pay attention to prerequisites for elective courses.

The writer began by reporting the counselor's advice in the indicative mood (*counselor advised*) and switched to the imperative mood (*pay attention*); the revision puts both sentences in the indicative.

A verb may be in either the active voice (with the subject doing the action) or the passive voice (with the subject receiving the action). (See 8a.) If a writer shifts without warning from one to the other, readers may be left wondering why.

- ▶ Each student completes a self-assessment, *gives it* The self-assessment *exchanges* is then given to the teacher, and a copy is exchanged with a classmate.

Because the passage began in the active voice (*student completes*) and then switched to the passive (*self-assessment is given, copy is exchanged*), readers are left wondering who gives the self-assessment to the teacher and the classmate. The active voice, which is clearer and more direct, leaves no ambiguity.

## 13d Avoid sudden shifts from indirect to direct questions or quotations.

An indirect question reports a question without asking it: *We asked whether we could visit Miriam.* A direct question asks directly: *Can we visit Miriam?* Sudden shifts from indirect to direct questions are awkward. In addition, sentences containing such shifts are impossible to punctuate because indirect questions must end with a period and direct questions must end with a question mark. (See 38b.)

- ▶ I wonder whether Karla knew of the theft and, if so, ~~did she report it to the police?~~ *whether she reported*

The revision poses both questions indirectly. The writer could also ask both questions directly: *Did Karla know of the theft, and, if so, did she report it to the police?*

An indirect quotation reports someone's words without quoting word for word: *Annabelle said that she is a Virgo*. A direct quotation presents the exact words of a speaker or writer, set off with quotation marks: *Annabelle said, "I am a Virgo."* Unannounced shifts from indirect to direct quotations are distracting and confusing, especially when the writer fails to insert the necessary quotation marks, as in the following example.

- ▶ **The patient said she had been experiencing heart palpitations**  
*asked me to*  
**and please run as many tests as possible to identify the problem.**

The revision reports the patient's words indirectly. The writer also could quote the words directly: *The patient said, "I have been experiencing heart palpitations. Please run as many tests as possible to identify the problem."*

**EXERCISE 13-5** Edit the following sentences to make the verbs consistent in mood and voice and to eliminate distracting shifts from indirect to direct questions or quotations. Possible revisions appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

**As a public relations intern, I wrote press releases, managed the**  
*fielded all phone calls.*  
**Web site, and ~~all phone calls were fielded by me.~~**

- An incredibly talented musician, Ray Charles mastered R&B, soul, and gospel styles. Even country music was performed well by him.
- Environmentalists point out that shrimp farming in Southeast Asia is polluting water and making farmlands useless. They warn that action must be taken by governments before it is too late.
- The samples were observed for five days before we detected any growth.
- In his famous soliloquy, Hamlet contemplates whether death would be preferable to his difficult life and, if so, is he capable of committing suicide?
- The lawyer told the judge that Miranda Hale was innocent and allow her to prove the allegations false.



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

13 Shifts

- > Exercises: 13-7, 13-9 to 13-11
- > LearningCurve: Shifts

**EXERCISE 13-6** Edit the following sentences to eliminate distracting shifts. Possible revisions appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

For many first-year engineering students, adjusting to a rigorous course load can be so challenging that <sup>they</sup>you sometimes feel overwhelmed.

- A courtroom lawyer has more than a touch of theater in their blood.
- The interviewer asked if we had brought our proof of citizenship and did we bring our passports?
- The experienced reconnaissance scout knows how to make fast decisions and use sophisticated equipment to keep their team from being detected.
- After the animators finish their scenes, the production designer arranges the clips according to the storyboard. Synchronization notes must also be made for the sound editor and the composer.
- Madame Defarge is a sinister figure in Dickens's *A Tale of Two Cities*. On a symbolic level, she represents fate; like the Greek Fates, she knitted the fabric of individual destiny.

## 14 Emphasize key ideas.

Within each sentence, emphasize your point by expressing it in the subject and verb of an independent clause, the words that receive the most attention from readers (see 14a–14e).

Within longer stretches of prose, you can draw attention to ideas deserving special emphasis by using a variety of techniques, often involving an unusual twist or some element of surprise (see 14f).

### 14a Coordinate equal ideas; subordinate minor ideas.

When combining two or more ideas in one sentence, you have two choices: coordination or subordination. Choose coordination to indicate that the ideas are equal or nearly equal in

importance. Choose subordination to indicate that one idea is less important than another.

## Coordination

Coordination draws attention equally to two or more ideas. To coordinate single words or phrases, join them with a coordinating conjunction or with a pair of correlative conjunctions: *bananas and strawberries*; *not only a lackluster plot but also inferior acting* (see 46g).

To coordinate independent clauses—word groups that express a complete thought and that can stand alone as a sentence—join them with a comma and a coordinating conjunction or with a semicolon:

, and	, but	, or	, nor
, for	, so	, yet	;

The semicolon is often accompanied by a conjunctive adverb such as *moreover*, *furthermore*, *therefore*, or *however* or by a transitional phrase such as *for example*, *in other words*, or *as a matter of fact*. (For a longer list, see p. 154.)

Assume, for example, that your intention is to draw equal attention to the following two ideas.

Social networking Web sites offer ways for people to connect in the virtual world. They do not replace face-to-face forms of social interaction.

To coordinate these ideas, you can join them with a comma and the coordinating conjunction *but* or with a semicolon and the conjunctive adverb *however*.

Social networking Web sites offer ways for people to connect in the virtual world, but they do not replace face-to-face forms of social interaction.

Social networking Web sites offer ways for people to connect in the virtual world; however, they do not replace face-to-face forms of social interaction.

It is important to choose a coordinating conjunction or conjunctive adverb appropriate to your meaning. In the preceding example, the two ideas contrast with each other, calling for *but* or *however*. (For specific coordination strategies, see the chart on p. 154.)

### Using coordination to combine sentences of equal importance

1. Consider using a comma and a coordinating conjunction. (See 32a.)

, and                   , but                   , or                   , nor  
 , for                   , so                   , yet

- ▶ In Orthodox Jewish funeral ceremonies, the shroud is a simple linen vestment,<sup>^</sup> <sup>and the</sup> The coffin is plain wood.

2. Consider using a semicolon with a conjunctive adverb or transitional phrase. (See 34b.)

also	however	next
as a result	in addition	now
besides	in fact	of course
consequently	in other words	otherwise
finally	in the first place	still
for example	meanwhile	then
for instance	moreover	therefore
furthermore	nevertheless	thus

- ▶ Alicia scored well on the SAT;<sup>^</sup> <sup>in addition, she</sup> She also had excellent grades and a record of community service.

3. Consider using a semicolon alone. (See 34a.)

- ▶ In youth we learn;<sup>^</sup> <sup>in</sup> In age we understand.

### Subordination

To give unequal emphasis to two or more ideas, express the major idea in an independent clause and place any minor ideas in subordinate clauses or phrases. (For specific subordination strategies, see the chart on p. 156.)

Let your intended meaning determine which idea you emphasize. Consider the two ideas about social networking Web sites.

Social networking Web sites offer ways for people to connect in the virtual world. They do not replace face-to-face forms of social interaction.



If your purpose is to stress the ways that people can connect in the virtual world rather than the limitations of these connections, subordinate the idea about the limitations.

Although they do not replace face-to-face forms of social interaction, social networking Web sites offer ways for people to connect in the virtual world.

To focus on the limitations of the virtual world, subordinate the idea about the ways people connect on these Web sites.

Although social networking Web sites offer ways for people to connect in the virtual world, they do not replace face-to-face forms of social interaction.

**EXERCISE 14-1** Use the coordination or subordination technique in brackets to combine each pair of independent clauses. Possible revisions appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

Ted Williams was one of the best hitters in the history of baseball, but he baseball. He never won a World Series ring. [Use a comma and a coordinating conjunction.]

- Williams played for the Boston Red Sox from 1939 to 1960. He managed the Washington Senators and the Texas Rangers for several years after retiring as a player. [Use a comma and a coordinating conjunction.]
- In 1941, Williams finished the season with a batting average of .406. No player has hit over .400 for a season since then. [Use a semicolon.]
- Williams acknowledged that Joe DiMaggio was a better all-around player. Williams felt that he was a better hitter than DiMaggio. [Use the subordinating conjunction *although*.]
- Williams was a stubborn man. He always refused to tip his cap to the crowd after a home run because he claimed that fans were fickle. [Use a semicolon and the transitional phrase for example.]
- Williams's relationship with the media was unfriendly at best. He sarcastically called baseball writers the "knights of the keyboard" in his memoir. [Use a semicolon.]



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhigher.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhigher.com/rules8e)

14 Emphasis

> Exercises: 14-3 to 14-7

> LearningCurve: Coordination and subordination

### Using subordination to combine sentences of unequal importance

1. Consider putting the less important idea in a subordinate clause beginning with one of the following words. (See 48e.)

after	before	that	which
although	even though	unless	while
as	if	until	who
as if	since	when	whom
because	so that	where	whose

#### When

- ▶ Elizabeth Cady Stanton proposed a convention to discuss the status of women in America,<sup>^</sup> Lucretia Mott agreed.
- ▶ My sister owes much of her recovery to a yoga program,<sup>^</sup> <sup>that she</sup> She began ~~the program~~ three years ago.
2. Consider putting the less important idea in an appositive phrase. (See 48c.)
- ▶ Karate,<sup>^</sup> is a discipline based on the philosophy of nonviolence,<sup>^</sup> It teaches the art of self-defense.
3. Consider putting the less important idea in a participial phrase. (See 48b.)
- ▶ ~~American essayist Cheryl Peck~~ was encouraged by friends to write about her life,<sup>^</sup> <sup>E</sup> She began combining humor and irony in her essays about being overweight.

## 14b Combine choppy sentences.

Short sentences demand attention, so you should use them primarily for emphasis. Too many short sentences, one after the other, make for a choppy style.

If an idea is not important enough to deserve its own sentence, try combining it with a sentence close by. Put any minor ideas in subordinate structures such as phrases or subordinate clauses. (See 48.)

- ▶ The Parks Department keeps the use of insecticides to a minimum/<sup>*because the*</sup> The city is concerned about the environment.

The writer wanted to emphasize that the Parks Department minimizes its use of chemicals, so she put the reason in a subordinate clause beginning with *because*.

- ▶ The Chesapeake and Ohio Canal, is a 184-mile waterway constructed in the 1800s/<sup>^</sup> It was a major source of transportation for goods during the Civil War.

A minor idea is now expressed in an appositive phrase (*a 184-mile waterway constructed in the 1800s*).

Although subordination is ordinarily the most effective technique for combining short, choppy sentences, coordination is appropriate when the ideas are equal in importance.

- ▶ At 3:30 p.m., Forrest displayed a flag of truce/<sup>*and*</sup> Forrest sent in a demand for unconditional surrender.

Combining two short sentences by joining their predicates (*displayed . . . sent*) is an effective coordination technique.

Unlike some other languages, English does not repeat objects or adverbs in adjective clauses. The relative pronoun (*that, which, whom*) or relative adverb (*where*) in the adjective clause represents the object or adverb. See 30d.

- ▶ The apartment that we rented it needed repairs.

The pronoun *it* cannot repeat the relative pronoun *that*.

**EXERCISE 14-2** Combine the following sentences by subordinating minor ideas or by coordinating ideas of equal importance. You must decide which ideas are minor because the sentences are given out of context. Possible revisions appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

Agnes, ~~was another girl I worked with,~~ ~~She~~ was a hyperactive child.

- The X-Men comic books and Japanese woodcuts of kabuki dancers were part of Marlena's research project on popular culture. They covered the tabletop and the chairs.
- Our waitress was costumed in a kimono. She had painted her face white. She had arranged her hair in a lacquered beehive.
- Students can apply for a spot in the leadership program. The program teaches thinking and communication skills.
- Shore houses were flooded up to the first floor. Beaches were washed away. Brant's Lighthouse was swallowed by the sea.
- Laura Thackray is an engineer at Volvo Car Corporation. She addressed women's safety needs. She designed a pregnant crash-test dummy.

## 14c Avoid ineffective or excessive coordination.

Coordinate structures are appropriate only when you intend to draw readers' attention equally to two or more ideas: *Professor Sakellarios praises loudly, and she criticizes softly*. If one idea is more important than another — or if a coordinating conjunction does not clearly signal the relationship between the ideas — you should subordinate the less important idea.

### INEFFECTIVE COORDINATION

Closets were taxed as rooms, and most colonists stored their clothes in chests or clothespresses.

### IMPROVED WITH SUBORDINATION

Because closets were taxed as rooms, most colonists stored their clothes in chests or clothespresses.

The revision subordinates the less important idea (*closets were taxed as rooms*) by putting it in a subordinate clause. Notice that



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

14 Emphasis

> Exercises: 14-3 to 14-7

> LearningCurve: Coordination and subordination

the subordinating conjunction *Because* signals the relation between the ideas more clearly than the coordinating conjunction *and*.

Because it is so easy to string ideas together with *and*, writers often rely too heavily on coordination in their rough drafts. The cure for excessive coordination is simple: Look for opportunities to tuck minor ideas into subordinate clauses or phrases.

*When shareholders*


- ▶ **Shareholders** exchanged investment tips at the company's annual meeting, **and they** learned that different approaches can yield similar results.

The minor idea has become a subordinate clause beginning with *When*.

*After four hours,*

- ▶ **Four hours** went by, **and** a rescue truck finally arrived, but by that time we had been evacuated in a helicopter.

Three independent clauses were excessive. The least important idea has become a prepositional phrase.

**EXERCISE 14-8** The following sentences show coordinated ideas (ideas joined with a coordinating conjunction or a semicolon). Restructure the sentences by subordinating minor ideas. You must decide which ideas are minor because the sentences are given out of context. Possible revisions appear in the back of the book. *More practice:*  LaunchPadSolo

*where they*

The rowers returned to shore, **and had** a party on the beach to celebrate **and celebrated** the start of the season.

- These particles are known as “stealth liposomes,” and they can hide in the body for a long time without detection.
- Irena is a competitive gymnast and majors in biology; her goal is to apply her athletic experience and her science degree to a career in sports medicine.
- Students, textile workers, and labor unions have loudly protested sweatshop abuses, so apparel makers have been forced to examine their labor practices.



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

14 Emphasis

> Exercises: 14-9

> LearningCurve: Coordination and subordination

- d. IRC (Internet relay chat) was developed in a European university; it was created as a way for a group of graduate students to talk about projects from their dorm rooms.
- e. The cafeteria's new menu has an international flavor, and it includes everything from enchiladas and pizza to pad thai and sauerbraten.

## 14d Do not subordinate major ideas.

If a sentence buries its major idea in a subordinate construction, readers may not give the idea enough attention. Make sure to express your major idea in an independent clause and to subordinate any minor ideas.

- defeated Thomas E. Dewey,*
- ▶ Harry S. Truman, who was the unexpected winner of the 1948 presidential election, ~~defeated Thomas E. Dewey.~~

The writer wanted to focus on Truman's unexpected victory, but the original sentence buried this information in an adjective clause. The revision puts the more important idea in an independent clause and tucks the less important idea into an adjective clause (*who defeated Thomas E. Dewey*).

- As*
- ▶ I was driving home from my new job, heading down Ranchitos Road, ~~when~~ my car suddenly overheated.

The writer wanted to emphasize that the car overheated, not the fact of driving home. The revision expresses the major idea in an independent clause and places the less important idea in an adverb clause (*As I was driving home from my new job*).

## 14e Do not subordinate excessively.

In attempting to avoid short, choppy sentences, writers sometimes go to the opposite extreme, putting more subordinate ideas into a sentence than its structure can bear. If a sentence collapses under its own weight, occasionally it can be restructured. More often, however, such sentences must be divided.

- ▶ In *Animal Liberation*, Peter Singer argues that animals possess nervous systems and can feel pain, <sup>H</sup>and <sup>H</sup>that he believes that “the ethical principle on which human equality rests requires us to extend equal consideration to animals” (1).

Excessive subordination makes it difficult for the reader to focus on the quoted passage. By splitting the original sentence into two separate sentences, the writer draws attention to Peter Singer’s main claim, that humans should give “equal consideration to animals.” (See 56a on citing sources in MLA style.)

**EXERCISE 14–10** In each of the following sentences, the idea that the writer wished to emphasize is buried in a subordinate construction. Restructure each sentence so that the independent clause expresses the major idea, as indicated in brackets, and lesser ideas are subordinated. Possible revisions appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

**Although**

Catherine has weathered many hardships, <sup>^</sup>although she has

rarely become discouraged. [*Emphasize that Catherine has rarely become discouraged.*]

- Gina helped the relief effort, distributing food and medical supplies. [*Emphasize distributing food and medical supplies.*]
- Janbir spent every Saturday learning tabla drumming, noticing with each hour of practice that his memory for complex patterns was growing stronger. [*Emphasize Janbir’s memory.*]
- The rotor hit, gouging a hole about an eighth of an inch deep in my helmet. [*Emphasize that the rotor gouged a hole in the helmet.*]
- My grandfather, who raised his daughters the old-fashioned way, was born eighty years ago in Puerto Rico. [*Emphasize how the grandfather raised his daughters.*]
- The Narcan reversed the depressive effect of the drug, saving the patient’s life. [*Emphasize that the patient’s life was saved.*]



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

14 Emphasis

> Exercises: 14–11 and 14–12

> LearningCurve: Coordination and subordination

## 14f Experiment with techniques for gaining special emphasis.

By experimenting with certain techniques, usually involving some element of surprise, you can draw attention to ideas that deserve special emphasis. Use such techniques sparingly, however, or they will lose their punch. The writer who tries to emphasize everything ends up emphasizing nothing.

### Using sentence endings for emphasis

You can highlight an idea simply by withholding it until the end of a sentence. The technique works something like a punch line. In the following example, the sentence's meaning is not revealed until its very last word.

The only completely consistent people are the dead.

— Aldous Huxley

### Using parallel structure for emphasis

Parallel grammatical structure draws special attention to paired ideas or to items in a series. (See 9.) When parallel ideas are paired, the emphasis falls on words that underscore comparisons or contrasts, especially when they occur at the end of a phrase or clause.

We must *stop talking* about the *American dream* and *start listening* to the *dreams of Americans*.

— Reubin Askew

In a parallel series, the emphasis falls at the end, so it is generally best to end with the most dramatic or climactic item in the series.

Sister Charity enjoyed passing out writing punishments: translate the Ten Commandments into Latin, type a thousand-word essay on good manners, copy the New Testament with a quill pen.

— Marie Visosky, student



# 15 Provide some variety.

When a rough draft is filled with too many sentences that begin the same way or have the same structure, try injecting some variety — as long as you can do so without sacrificing clarity or ease of reading.

## 15a Vary your sentence openings.

Most sentences in English begin with the subject, move to the verb, and continue to the object, with modifiers tucked in along the way or put at the end. For the most part, such sentences are fine. Put too many of them in a row, however, and they become monotonous.

Adverbial modifiers are easily movable when they modify verbs; they can often be inserted ahead of the subject. Such modifiers might be single words, phrases, or clauses.

*Eventually* a

- ▶ <sup>A</sup> few drops of sap **eventually** began to trickle into the bucket.

Like most adverbs, *eventually* does not need to appear close to the verb it modifies (*began*).

*Just as the sun was coming up, a*

- ▶ <sup>A</sup> pair of black ducks flew over the pond. <sup>^</sup> ~~just as the sun was coming up.~~

The adverb clause, which modifies the verb *flew*, is as clear at the beginning of the sentence as it is at the end.

Adjectives and participial phrases can frequently be moved to the beginning of a sentence without loss of clarity.

*Dejected and withdrawn,*

- ▶ <sup>A</sup> Edward, ~~dejected and withdrawn,~~ nearly gave up his search for a job.

- ▶ <sup>A</sup> ~~John and I,~~ <sup>John and I</sup> anticipating a peaceful evening, sat down at the campfire to brew a cup of coffee.

**TIP:** When beginning a sentence with an adjective or a participial phrase, make sure that the subject of the sentence names

the person or thing described in the introductory phrase. If it doesn't, the phrase will dangle. (See 12e.)

## 15b Use a variety of sentence structures.

A writer should not rely too heavily on simple sentences and compound sentences, for the effect tends to be both monotonous and choppy. (See 14b and 14c.) Too many complex or compound-complex sentences, however, can be equally monotonous. If your style tends to one or the other extreme, try to achieve a better mix of sentence types.

The major sentence types are illustrated in the following sentences, all taken from Flannery O'Connor's "The King of the Birds," an essay describing the author's pet peafowl.

<b>SIMPLE</b>	Frequently the cock combines the lifting of his tail with the raising of his voice.
<b>COMPOUND</b>	Any chicken's dusting hole is out of place in a flower bed, but the peafowl's hole, being the size of a small crater, is more so.
<b>COMPLEX</b>	The peacock does most of his serious strutting in the spring and summer when he has a full tail to do it with.
<b>COMPOUND-COMPLEX</b>	The cock's plumage requires two years to attain its pattern, and for the rest of his life, this chicken will act as though he designed it himself.

For a fuller discussion of sentence types, see 49a.

## 15c Try inverting sentences occasionally.


A sentence is inverted if it does not follow the normal subject-verb-object pattern (see 47c). Many inversions sound artificial and should be avoided, except in the most formal contexts. But if an inversion sounds natural, it can provide a welcome touch of variety.

*Set at the top two corners of the stage were huge*

- ▶ **Huge lavender hearts outlined in bright white lights, were set**  
 ^ ^  
**at the top two corners of the stage.**

In the revision, the subject, *hearts*, appears after the verb, *were set*. Notice that the two parts of the verb are also inverted—and separated from each other (*Set . . . were*)—without any awkwardness or loss of meaning.

Inverted sentences are used for emphasis as well as for variety (see 14f).

**EXERCISE 15-1** Improve sentence variety in each of the following sentences by using the technique suggested in brackets. Possible revisions appear in the back of the book. *More practice:*  LaunchPadSolo

To protect endangered marine turtles, fishing

Fishing crews place turtle excluder devices in fishing nets.

to protect endangered marine turtles. [Begin the sentence with the adverbial infinitive phrase.]

- The exhibits for insects and spiders are across the hall from the fossils exhibit. [Invert the sentence.]
- Sayuri becomes a successful geisha after growing up desperately poor. [Move the adverb clause to the beginning of the sentence.]
- Researchers have been studying Mount St. Helens for years. They believe that earthquakes may have caused the 1980 eruption. [Combine the two sentences into a complex sentence.]
- Ice cream typically contains 10 percent milk fat. Premium ice cream may contain up to 16 percent milk fat and has less air in it. [Combine the two sentences as a compound sentence.]
- The economy may recover quickly if home values climb. [Move the adverb clause to the beginning of the sentence.]

**EXERCISE 15-2** Edit the following paragraph to increase sentence variety.

Making architectural models is a skill that requires patience and precision. It is an art that illuminates a design. Architects come up with a grand and intricate vision. Draftspersons convert that vision into blueprints. The model maker follows the blueprints. The model maker builds a miniature version of the structure. Modelers can work in traditional materials like wood and clay and paint. Modelers can work in newer materials like Styrofoam and liquid polymers. Some modelers still use cardboard, paper, and glue. Other modelers prefer glue guns, deformable plastic, and thin aluminum and brass wire. The modeler may seem to be making a small mess in the early stages of model building. In the end the modeler has completed a small-scale structure. Architect Rem Koolhaas has insisted that plans reveal the logic of a design. He has argued that models expose the architect's vision. The model maker's art makes this vision real.



# 16 Tighten wordy sentences.

Long sentences are not necessarily wordy, nor are short sentences always concise. A sentence is wordy if it can be tightened without loss of meaning.

## 16a Eliminate redundancies.

Writers often repeat themselves unnecessarily, thinking that expressions such as *cooperate together*, *yellow in color*, or *basic essentials* add emphasis to their writing. Such redundancies, though, do just the opposite. There is no need to say the same thing twice.

- ▶ Daniel <sup>works</sup> ~~is now employed~~ at a private rehabilitation center ~~working~~ as a registered physical therapist.

Though modifiers ordinarily add meaning to the words they modify, occasionally they are redundant.

- ▶ Sylvia ~~very hurriedly~~ scribbled her name, address, and phone number on a greasy napkin.

The word *scribbled* already suggests that Sylvia wrote *very hurriedly*.

- ▶ Gabriele Muccino's film *The Pursuit of Happyness* tells the story of a single father determined ~~in his mind~~ to pull himself and his son out of homelessness.

The word *determined* contains the idea that his resolution formed in his mind.

## 16b Avoid unnecessary repetition of words.

Though words may be repeated deliberately for effect, repetitions will seem awkward if they are clearly unnecessary. When a more concise version is possible, choose it.

- ▶ Our fifth patient, in room six, is ~~a~~ <sup>mentally ill.</sup> ~~patient.~~
- ▶ The best teachers help each student <sup>grow</sup> ~~become a better student~~ both academically and emotionally.

## 16c Cut empty or inflated phrases.

An empty phrase can be cut with little or no loss of meaning. Common examples are introductory word groups that weaken the writer's authority by apologizing or hedging: *in my opinion, I think that, it seems that, one must admit that*, and so on.

- ▶ ~~In my opinion,~~ <sup>O</sup> our current immigration policy is misguided.  
Readers understand without being told that they are hearing the writer's opinion.

Inflated phrases can be reduced to a word or two without loss of meaning.

### INFLATED

along the lines of  
as a matter of fact  
at all times  
at the present time  
at this point in time  
because of the fact that  
by means of  
by virtue of the fact that  
due to the fact that  
for the purpose of  
for the reason that  
have the ability to  
in light of the fact that  
in order to  
in spite of the fact that  
in the event that

### CONCISE

like  
in fact  
always  
now, currently  
now, currently  
because  
by  
because  
because  
for  
because  
be able to, can  
because  
to  
although, though  
if

## INFLATED

in the final analysis  
 in the nature of  
 in the neighborhood of  
 until such time as

## CONCISE

finally  
 like  
 about  
 until

## 16d Simplify the structure.

If the structure of a sentence is needlessly indirect, try simplifying it. Look for opportunities to strengthen the verb.

- ▶ The financial analyst claimed that because of volatile market conditions she could not ~~make an~~ estimate of the company's future profits.

The verb *estimate* is more vigorous and concise than *make an estimate of*.

The colorless verbs *is*, *are*, *was*, and *were* frequently generate excess words.

- ▶ Investigators <sup>studied</sup> ~~were involved in studying~~ the effect of classical music on unborn babies.

The revision is more direct and concise. The action (*studying*), originally appearing in a subordinate structure, has become a strong verb, *studied*.

The expletive constructions *there is* and *there are* (or *there was* and *there were*) can also lead to wordy sentences. The same is true of expletive constructions beginning with *it*. (See 47c.)

- ▶ <sup>A</sup> ~~There is~~ another module <sup>A</sup> ~~that~~ tells the story of Charles Darwin and introduces the theory of evolution.

Finally, verbs in the passive voice may be needlessly indirect. When the active voice expresses your meaning as effectively, use it. (See 8a.)

- ▶ All too often, athletes with marginal academic skills, <sup>our coaches have recruited</sup> ~~have been recruited by our coaches~~.

## 16e Reduce clauses to phrases, phrases to single words.

Word groups functioning as modifiers can often be made more compact. Look for any opportunities to reduce clauses to phrases or phrases to single words.

- ▶ We took a side trip to Monticello, ~~which was~~ the home of

Thomas Jefferson.

- ▶ In <sup>this</sup> the essay, <sup>that follows</sup>, I argue against Immanuel Kant's <sup>problematic</sup> claim that we should not lie under any circumstances. <sup>^</sup>

~~which is a problematic claim.~~

**EXERCISE 16-1** Edit the following sentences to reduce wordiness. Possible revisions appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

The Wilsons moved into the house <sup>even though</sup> ~~in spite of the fact that the~~ back door was only ten yards from the train tracks.

- Martin Luther King Jr. was a man who set a high standard for future leaders to meet.
- Alice has been deeply in love with cooking since she was little and could first peek over the edge of a big kitchen tabletop.
- In my opinion, Bloom's race for the governorship is a futile exercise.
- It is pretty important in being a successful graphic designer to have technical knowledge and at the same time an eye for color and balance.
- Your task will be the delivery of correspondence to all employees in the company.



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

16 Wordy sentences

> Exercises: 16-3 to 16-7

**EXERCISE 16-2** Edit the following business memo to reduce wordiness.

To: District managers  
From: Margaret Davenport, Vice President  
Subject: Customer database

It has recently been brought to my attention that a percentage of our sales representatives have been failing to log reports of their client calls in our customer database each and every day. I have also learned that some representatives are not checking the database on a routine basis.

Our clients sometimes receive a multiple number of sales calls from us when a sales representative is not cognizant of the fact that the client has been contacted at a previous time. Repeated telephone calls from our representatives annoy our customers. These repeated telephone calls also portray our company as one that is lacking in organization.

Effective as of immediately, direct your representatives to do the following:

- Record each and every customer contact in the customer database at the end of each day, without fail.
- Check the database at the very beginning of each day to ensure that telephone communications will not be initiated with clients who have already been called.

Let me extend my appreciation to you for cooperating in this important matter.

## 17 Choose appropriate language.

Language is appropriate when it suits your subject, engages your audience, and blends naturally with your own voice.

To some extent, your choice of language will be governed by the conventions of the genre in which you are writing. When in doubt about the conventions of a particular genre—lab reports, informal essays, business memos, and so on—consult your instructor or look at models written by experts in the field.



## 17a Stay away from jargon.

Jargon is specialized language used among members of a trade, profession, or group. Use jargon only when readers will be familiar with it and only when plain English will not do as well.

**JARGON** We outsourced the work to an outfit in Ohio because we didn't have the bandwidth to tackle it in-house.

**REVISED** We hired a company in Ohio because we had too few employees to do the work.

Broadly defined, jargon includes puffed-up language designed more to impress readers than to inform them. The following are common examples from business, government, higher education, and the military, with plain English alternatives in parentheses.

ameliorate (improve)	indicator (sign)
commence (begin)	optimal (best, most favorable)
components (parts)	parameters (boundaries, limits)
endeavor (try)	peruse (read, look over)
exit (leave)	prior to (before)
facilitate (help)	utilize (use)
impact (v.) (affect)	viable (workable)

Sentences filled with jargon are hard to read, and they are often wordy as well.

- ▶ The CEO should <sup>talk</sup> dialogue with investors about <sup>working</sup> partnering with clients to <sup>buy</sup> purchase land in <sup>poor neighborhoods.</sup> economically deprived zones.

## 17b Avoid pretentious language, most euphemisms, and “doublespeak.”

Hoping to sound profound or poetic, some writers embroider their thoughts with large words and flowery phrases. Such pretentious language is so ornate and wordy that it obscures the writer's meaning.

- ▶ Taylor's ~~employment of multihued means of expression draws~~ <sup>use of colorful language reveals that she has a</sup> ~~back the curtains and lets slip the nostalgic~~ <sup>view of</sup> ~~from which she observes~~ <sup>vantage point</sup> ~~of comprehension of economic realities.~~ <sup>and does not</sup> ~~as well as her lack~~ <sup>understand</sup> ~~of comprehension of economic realities.~~ <sup>of comprehension of economic realities.</sup>

Euphemisms — nice-sounding words or phrases substituted for words thought to sound harsh or ugly — are sometimes appropriate. Many cultures, for example, accept euphemisms when speaking or writing about excretion (*I have to go to the bathroom*), sexual intercourse (*They did not sleep together*), and the like. Most euphemisms, however, are needlessly evasive or even deceitful. Like pretentious language, they obscure the intended meaning.

EUPHEMISM	PLAIN ENGLISH
adult entertainment	pornography
preowned automobile	used car
economically deprived	poor
negative savings	debts
strategic withdrawal	retreat or defeat
revenue enhancers	taxes
chemical dependency	drug addiction
downsize	lay off, fire
correctional facility	prison

The term *doublespeak* applies to any deliberately evasive or deceptive language, including euphemisms. Doublespeak is especially common in politics and business. A military retreat is described as *tactical redeployment*; *enhanced interrogation* is a euphemism for “torture”; and *downsizing* really means “firing employees.”



**EXERCISE 17-1** Edit the following sentences to eliminate jargon, pretentious or flowery language, euphemisms, and doublespeak. You may need to make substantial changes in some sentences. Possible revisions appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

After two weeks in the legal department, Sue has ~~worked into~~ <sup>mastered</sup> ~~the routine, of the office, and her functional and self-~~ <sup>office</sup> ~~management skills~~ <sup>performance has</sup> ~~have~~ exceeded all expectations.

- In my youth, my family was under the constraints of difficult financial circumstances.
- In order that I may increase my expertise in the area of delivery of services to clients, I feel that participation in this conference will be beneficial.
- The prophetic meteorologist cautioned the general populace regarding the possible deleterious effects of the impending tempest.
- Government-sanctioned investigations into the continued value of after-school programs indicate a perceived need in the public realm at large.
- Passengers should endeavor to finalize the customs declaration form prior to exiting the aircraft.

**EXERCISE 17-2** Edit the following e-mail message to eliminate jargon.

Dear Ms. Jackson:

We members of the Nakamura Reyes team value our external partnering arrangements with Creative Software, and I look forward to seeing you next week at the trade show in Fresno. Per Mr. Reyes, please let me know when you'll have some downtime there so that he and I can conduct a strategizing session with you concerning our production schedule. It's crucial that we all be on the same page re our 2015–2016 product release dates.

Before we have some face time, however, I have some findings to share. Our customer-centric approach to the new products will necessitate that user testing periods trend upward. The enclosed data should help you effectuate any adjustments to your timeline; let me know ASAP if you require any additional information to facilitate the above.

Before we convene in Fresno, Mr. Reyes and I will agendize any further talking points. Thanks for your help.

Sincerely,

Sylvia Nakamura

## 17c In most contexts, avoid slang, regional expressions, and nonstandard English.

Slang is an informal and sometimes private vocabulary that expresses the solidarity of a group such as teenagers, rock musicians, or sports fans; it is subject to more rapid change than Standard English. For example, the slang teenagers use to express approval changes every few years; *cool*, *groovy*, *neat*, *awesome*, *sick*, and *crunk* have replaced one another within the last several decades. Sometimes slang becomes so widespread that it is accepted as standard vocabulary. *Jazz*, for example, started out as slang but is now a standard term for a style of music.

Although slang has a certain vitality, it is a code that not everyone understands, and it is very informal. Therefore, it is inappropriate in most written work.

- ▶ When the server crashed unexpectedly, <sup>we lost</sup> three hours of unsaved data. ~~went down the tubes.~~ ^

- ▶ The government's "filth" guidelines for food will <sup>disgust you.</sup> ~~gross you out.~~ ^

Regional expressions are common to a group in a geographic area. *Let's talk with the bark off* (for *Let's speak frankly*) is an expression in the southern United States, for example. Regional expressions have the same limitations as slang and are therefore inappropriate in most writing.

- ▶ John was four blocks from the house before he remembered to <sup>turn off</sup> ~~cut~~ the headlights. ~~off.~~ ^
- ▶ Seamus wasn't ~~for~~ sure, but he thought the whales might be migrating during his visit to Oregon.

Standard English is the language used in all academic, business, and professional fields. Nonstandard English is spoken by people with a common regional or social heritage. Although nonstandard English may be appropriate when spoken within a close group, it is out of place in most formal and informal writing.

- ▶ The governor said he <sup>doesn't</sup> ~~don't~~ know if he will approve the budget without the clean air provision.

If you speak a nonstandard dialect, try to identify the ways in which your dialect differs from Standard English. Look especially for the following features of nonstandard English, which commonly cause problems in writing.

Misusing verb forms such as *began* and *begun* (See 27a.)

Leaving *-s* endings off verbs (See 27c.)

Leaving *-ed* endings off verbs (See 27d.)

Leaving out necessary verbs (See 27e.)

Using double negatives (See 26e.)

## 17d Choose an appropriate level of formality.

In deciding on a level of formality, consider both your subject and your audience. Does the subject demand a dignified treatment, or is a relaxed tone more suitable? Will readers be put off if you assume too close a relationship with them, or might you alienate them by seeming too distant?

For most college and professional writing, some degree of formality is appropriate. In a job application letter, for example, it is a mistake to sound too breezy and informal.

<b>TOO INFORMAL</b>	I'd like to get that sales job you've got in the paper.
<b>MORE FORMAL</b>	I would like to apply for the position of sales associate advertised in the <i>Peoria Journal Star</i> .

Informal writing is appropriate for private letters, personal e-mail and text messages, and business correspondence between close associates. Like spoken conversation, informal writing allows contractions (*don't*, *I'll*) and colloquial words (*kids*, *kinda*). Vocabulary and sentence structure are rarely complex.

In choosing a level of formality, above all be consistent. When a writer's voice shifts from one level of formality to another, readers receive mixed messages.

- Once a pitcher for the Blue Jays, Jorge shared with me the secrets of his trade. His lesson <sup>began</sup> ~~commenced~~ with his famous curveball, <sup>thrown</sup> ~~implemented~~ by tucking the little finger behind the ball. Next <sup>revealed</sup> ~~he elucidated~~ the mysteries of the sucker pitch, a slow ball coming behind a fast windup.

Words such as *commenced* and *elucidated* are inappropriate for the subject matter, and they clash with informal terms such as *sucker pitch* and *fast windup*.

**EXERCISE 17-5** Revise the following passage so that the level of formality is appropriate for a letter to the editor of a major newspaper.

In pop culture, college grads who return home to live with the folks are seen as good-for-nothing losers who mooch off their families. And many older adults seem to feel that the trend of moving back home after school, which was rare in their day, is becoming too commonplace today. But society must realize that times have changed. Most young adults want to live on their own ASAP, but they graduate with heaps of debt and need some time to get back on their feet. College tuition and the cost of housing have increased way more than salary increases in the past fifty years. Also, the job market is tighter and more jobs require advanced degrees than in the past. So before people go off on college graduates who move back into their parents' house for a spell, they'd better consider all the facts.

## 17e Avoid sexist language.

Sexist language is language that stereotypes or demeans women or men. Using nonsexist language is a matter of courtesy—of respect for and sensitivity to the feelings of others.

### Recognizing sexist language

Some sexist language is easy to recognize because it reflects genuine disdain for women: referring to a woman as a “chick,” for example, or calling a lawyer a “lady lawyer.”

Other forms of sexist language are less blatant. The following practices, while they may not result from conscious sexism, reflect stereotypical thinking: referring to members of one

profession as exclusively male or exclusively female (teachers as women or computer engineers as men, for instance), using different conventions when naming or identifying women and men, or assuming an exclusively male or female audience.

#### STEREOTYPICAL LANGUAGE

After a nursing student graduates, *she* must face a difficult state board examination. [Not all nursing students are women.]

Running for city council are Boris Stotsky, an attorney, and *Mrs.* Cynthia Jones, a professor of English and *mother of three*. [The title *Mrs.* and the phrase *mother of three* are irrelevant.]

Still other forms of sexist language result from outdated traditions. The pronouns *he*, *him*, and *his*, for instance, were traditionally used to refer generically to persons of either sex. Nowadays, to avoid that sexist usage, some writers use *she*, *her*, and *hers* generically or substitute the female pronouns alternately with the male pronouns.

#### GENERIC PRONOUNS

A journalist is motivated by *his* deadline.

A good interior designer treats *her* clients' ideas respectfully.

But both forms are sexist—for excluding one sex entirely and for making assumptions about the members of particular professions.

Similarly, the nouns *man* and *men* were once used to refer generically to persons of either sex. Current usage demands gender-neutral terms for references to both men and women.

#### INAPPROPRIATE

chairman

congressman

fireman

foreman

mailman

to man

mankind

manpower

policeman

weatherman

#### APPROPRIATE

chairperson, moderator, chair, head

member of Congress, representative, legislator

firefighter

supervisor

mail carrier, postal worker, letter carrier

to operate, to staff

people, humans

personnel, staff

police officer

forecaster, meteorologist

## Revising sexist language

When revising sexist language, you may be tempted to substitute *he or she* and *his or her*. These terms are inclusive but wordy; fine in small doses, they can become awkward when repeated throughout an essay. A better revision strategy is to write in the plural; yet another strategy is to recast the sentence so that the problem does not arise.

### SEXIST

A journalist is motivated by *his* deadline.

A good interior designer treats *her* clients' ideas respectfully.

### ACCEPTABLE BUT WORDY

A journalist is motivated by *his or her* deadline.

A good interior designer treats *his or her* clients' ideas respectfully.

### BETTER: USING THE PLURAL

Journalists are motivated by *their* deadlines.

Good interior designers treat *their* clients' ideas respectfully.

### BETTER: RECASTING THE SENTENCE

A journalist is motivated by *a* deadline.

A good interior designer treats clients' ideas respectfully.

For more examples of these revision strategies, see 22.

**EXERCISE 17-6** Edit the following sentences to eliminate sexist language or sexist assumptions. Possible revisions appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

*Scholarship athletes*  
A scholarship athlete must be as concerned about *his*  
^ academic performance as *they are* *their* *he is* about *his* athletic performance.  
^ ^ ^

- Mrs. Gerylyn Farmer, who is the mayor's wife, is the chief surgeon at University Hospital. Dr. Paul Green is her assistant.
- Every applicant wants to know how much he will earn.
- An elementary school teacher should understand the concept of nurturing if she intends to be effective.



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

17 Appropriate language

> Exercises: 17-8 to 17-10

> LearningCurve: Word choice and appropriate language



- d. An obstetrician needs to be available to his patients at all hours.
- e. If man does not stop polluting his environment, mankind will perish.

**EXERCISE 17-7** Eliminate sexist language or sexist assumptions in the following job posting for an elementary school teacher.

We are looking for qualified women for the position of elementary school teacher. The ideal candidate should have a bachelor's degree, a state teaching certificate, and one year of student teaching. She should be knowledgeable in all elementary subject areas, including science and math. While we want our new teacher to have a commanding presence in the classroom, we are also looking for motherly characteristics such as patience and trustworthiness. She must be able to both motivate an entire classroom and work with each student one-on-one to assess his individual needs. She must also be comfortable communicating with the parents of her students. For salary and benefits information, including maternity leave policy, please contact the Martin County School Board. Any qualified applicant should submit her résumé by March 15.

## 17f Revise language that may offend groups of people.

Your writing should be respectful and free of stereotypical, biased, or other offensive language. Be especially careful when describing or labeling people. Labels can become dated, and it is important to recognize when their continued use is not acceptable. When naming groups of people, choose labels that the groups currently use themselves. For example, instead of *Eskimos*, use *Inuit*.

- ▶ North Dakota takes its name from the <sup>Lakota</sup> Indian word meaning “friend” or “ally.”

- ▶ Many <sup>Asian</sup> Oriental immigrants have recently settled in our town.

Negative stereotypes (such as “drives like a teenager” or “sour as a spinster”) are of course offensive. But you should avoid stereotyping a person or a group even if you believe your generalization to be positive.

- ▶ It was no surprise that Greer, <sup>an excellent math and science student,</sup> a Chinese American, was selected for the honors chemistry program.

# 18 Find the exact words.

Two reference works (or their online equivalents) will help you find words to express your meaning exactly: a good dictionary, such as *The American Heritage Dictionary* or *Merriam-Webster* online, and a collection of synonyms and antonyms, such as *Roget's International Thesaurus*.

**TIP:** Do not turn to a thesaurus in search of flowery or impressive words. Look instead for words that exactly express your meaning.

## 18a Select words with appropriate connotations.

In addition to their strict dictionary meanings (or *denotations*), words have *connotations*, emotional colorings that affect how readers respond to them. The word *steel* denotes “commercial iron that contains carbon,” but it also calls up a cluster of images associated with steel. These associations give the word its connotations—cold, hard, smooth, unbending.

If the connotation of a word does not seem appropriate for your purpose, your audience, or your subject matter, you should change the word. When a more appropriate synonym does not come quickly to mind, consult a dictionary or a thesaurus.

- ▶ As I covered the boats with marsh grass, the <sup>sweat</sup>perspiration I had worked up evaporated in the wind, and the cold morning air seemed even colder.

The word *perspiration* is too dainty for the context, which suggests vigorous exercise.

---

**EXERCISE 18-1** Use a dictionary and a thesaurus to find at least four synonyms for each of the following words. Be prepared to explain any slight differences in meaning.

1. decay (verb)
2. difficult (adjective)
3. hurry (verb)
4. pleasure (noun)
5. secret (adjective)
6. talent (noun)

## 18b Prefer specific, concrete nouns.

Unlike general nouns, which refer to broad classes of things, specific nouns point to particular items. *Film*, for example, names a general class, *fantasy film* names a narrower class, and *The Golden Compass* is more specific still. Other examples: *team*, *football team*, *Denver Broncos*; *music*, *symphony*, *Beethoven's Ninth*.

Unlike abstract nouns, which refer to qualities and ideas (*justice*, *beauty*, *realism*, *dignity*), concrete nouns point to immediate, often sensory experience and to physical objects (*steeple*, *asphalt*, *lilac*, *stone*, *garlic*).

Specific, concrete nouns express meaning more vividly than general or abstract ones. Although general and abstract language is sometimes necessary to convey your meaning, use specific, concrete words whenever possible.

- ▶ The senator spoke about the challenges of the future: *pollution, dwindling resources, and terrorism.*  
~~the environment and world peace.~~

Nouns such as *thing*, *area*, *aspect*, *factor*, and *individual* are especially dull and imprecise.

- ▶ Toni Morrison's *Beloved* is about slavery, *motherhood, and memory.*  
~~among other things.~~

## 18c Do not misuse words.

If a word is not in your active vocabulary, you may find yourself misusing it, sometimes with embarrassing consequences. When in doubt, check the dictionary.

- ▶ The fans were ~~migrating~~ <sup>climbing</sup> up the bleachers in search of seats.
- ▶ The Internet has so ~~diffused~~ <sup>permeated</sup> our culture that it touches all segments of society.

Be especially alert for misused word forms—using a noun such as *absence* or *significance*, for example, when your meaning requires the adjective *absent* or *significant*.

- ▶ Most dieters are not <sup>persistent</sup> ~~persistence~~ enough to make a permanent change in their eating habits.

**EXERCISE 18-2** Edit the following sentences to correct misused words. Possible revisions appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

These days the training required for a ballet dancer is

~~all-absorbing.~~

~~all-absorbent.~~

^

- We regret this delay; thank you for your patients.
- Ada's plan is to require education and experience to prepare herself for a position as property manager.
- Serena Williams, the penultimate competitor, has earned millions of dollars just in endorsements.
- Many people take for granite that public libraries have up-to-date computer systems.
- The affect of Gao Xinjian's novels on Chinese exiles is hard to gauge.

## 18d Use standard idioms.

Idioms are speech forms that follow no easily specified rules. The English say “Bernice went *to hospital*,” an idiom strange to American ears, which are accustomed to hearing *the* in front of *hospital*. Native speakers of a language seldom have problems with idioms, but prepositions (such as *with*, *to*, *at*, and *of*) sometimes cause trouble, especially when they follow certain verbs and adjectives. When in doubt, consult a dictionary.

### UNIDIOMATIC

abide with (a decision)

according with

agree to (an idea)

angry at (a person)

capable to

### IDIOMATIC

abide by (a decision)

according to

agree with (an idea)

angry with (a person)

capable of



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)


18 Exact words

> Exercises: 18-3 and 18-4

> LearningCurve: Word choice and appropriate language

comply to	comply with
desirous to	desirous of
different than (a person or thing)	different from (a person or thing)
intend on doing	intend to do
off of	off
plan on doing	plan to do
preferable than	preferable to
prior than	prior to
similar than	similar to
superior than	superior to
sure and	sure to
think on	think of, about
try and	try to
type of a	type of

Because idioms follow no particular rules, you must learn them individually. You may find it helpful to keep a list of idioms that you frequently encounter in conversation and in reading.

**EXERCISE 18-5** Edit the following sentences to eliminate errors in the use of idiomatic expressions. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Revisions appear in the back of the book. *More practice:*  LaunchPadSolo

We agreed to abide <sup>by</sup> ~~with~~ the decision of the judge.  
^

- Queen Anne was so angry at Sarah Churchill that she refused to see her again.
- Jean-Pierre’s ambitious travel plans made it impossible for him to comply with the residency requirement for in-state tuition.



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhigher.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhigher.com/rules8e)

18 Exact words

> Exercises: 18-6 and 18-7

> LearningCurve: Word choice and appropriate language

- c. The parade moved off of the street and onto the beach.
- d. The frightened refugees intend on making the dangerous trek across the mountains.
- e. What type of a wedding are you planning?

## 18e Do not rely heavily on clichés.

The pioneer who first announced that he had “slept like a log” no doubt amused his companions with a fresh and unlikely comparison. Today, however, that comparison is a cliché, a saying that can no longer add emphasis or surprise.

To see just how predictable clichés are, put your hand over the right-hand column in the following list and then finish the phrases on the left.

cool as a	cucumber
beat around	the bush
blind as a	bat
busy as a	bee, beaver
crystal	clear
dead as a	doornail
out of the frying pan and	into the fire
light as a	feather
like a bull	in a china shop
playing with	fire
nutty as a	fruitcake
selling like	hotcakes
starting out at the bottom	of the ladder
water under the	bridge
white as a	sheet, ghost
avoid clichés like the	plague

The solution for clichés is simple: Just delete them or rewrite them.

- ▶ When I received a full scholarship from my second-choice school, I ~~felt pressured to settle for second best.~~ <sup>^</sup> I found myself ~~between a rock and a hard place.~~

Sometimes you can write around a cliché by adding an element of surprise. One student, for example, who had written that she had butterflies in her stomach, revised her cliché like this:

If all of the action in my stomach is caused by butterflies, there must be a horde of them, with horseshoes on.

The image of butterflies wearing horseshoes is fresh and unlikely, not predictable like the original cliché.

## 18f Use figures of speech with care.

A figure of speech is an expression that uses words imaginatively (rather than literally) to make abstract ideas concrete. Most often, figures of speech compare two seemingly unlike things to reveal surprising similarities.

In a *simile*, the writer makes the comparison explicitly, usually by introducing it with *like* or *as*: *By the time cotton had to be picked, Grandfather's neck was as red as the clay he plowed.* In a *metaphor*, the *like* or *as* is omitted, and the comparison is implied. For example, in the Old Testament Song of Solomon, a young woman compares the man she loves to a fruit tree: *With great delight I sat in his shadow, and his fruit was sweet to my taste.*

Although figures of speech are useful devices, writers sometimes use them without thinking through the images they evoke. The result is sometimes a *mixed metaphor*, the combination of two or more images that don't make sense together.

- ▶ Our manager decided to put all controversial issues

~~in a holding pattern~~ on a back burner until after the annual meeting.

Here the writer is mixing airplanes and stoves. Simply deleting one of the images corrects the problem.

- ▶ Crossing Utah's salt flats in a new convertible, my cousin

~~flew under a full head of steam.~~  
at jet speed.

^  
Flew suggests an airplane, whereas under a full head of steam suggests a steamboat or train. To clarify the image, the writer should stick with one comparison or the other.

**EXERCISE 18-8** Edit the following sentences to replace worn-out expressions and clarify mixed figures of speech. Possible revisions appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

*the color drained from his face.*

When he heard about the accident, ~~he turned white as a sheet.~~

^

- John stormed into the room like a bull in a china shop.
- Some people insist that they'll always be there for you, even when they haven't been before.
- The Cubs easily beat the Mets, who were in the soup early in the game today at Wrigley Field.
- We ironed out the sticky spots in our relationship.
- My mother accused me of beating around the bush when in fact I was just talking off the top of my head.





# Grammar

- 19** Repair sentence fragments. 188
- 20** Revise run-on sentences. 195
- 21** Make subjects and verbs agree. 202
- 22** Make pronouns and antecedents agree. 213
- 23** Make pronoun references clear. 218
- 24** Distinguish between pronouns such as *I* and *me*. 222
- 25** Distinguish between *who* and *whom*. 227
- 26** Choose adjectives and adverbs with care. 230
- 27** Choose appropriate verb forms, tenses, and moods. 237

# 19 Repair sentence fragments.

A sentence fragment is a word group that pretends to be a sentence. Sentence fragments are easy to recognize when they appear out of context, like these:

When the cat leaped onto the table.

Running for the bus.

When fragments appear next to related sentences, however, they are harder to spot.

We had just sat down to dinner. When the cat leaped onto the table.

I tripped and twisted my ankle. Running for the bus.

## Recognizing sentence fragments

To be a sentence, a word group must consist of at least one independent clause. An independent clause includes a subject and a verb, and it either stands alone or could stand alone.

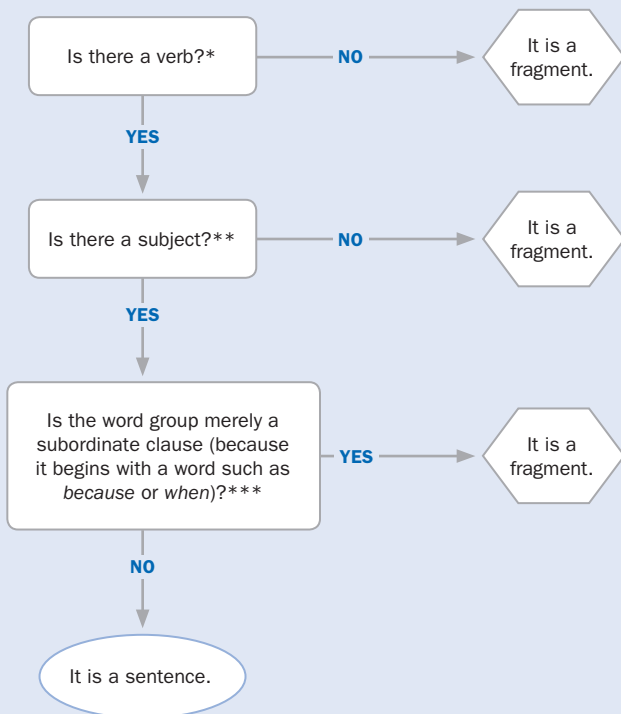
To test whether a word group is a complete sentence or a fragment, use the flowchart on page 189. By using the flowchart, you can see exactly why *When the cat leaped onto the table* is a fragment: It has a subject (*cat*) and a verb (*leaped*), but it begins with a subordinating word (*When*), which makes the word group a dependent clause. *Running for the bus* is a fragment because it lacks a subject and a verb (*Running* is a verbal, not a verb). (See also 48b and 48e.)

## Repairing sentence fragments

You can repair most fragments in one of two ways:

- Pull the fragment into a nearby sentence.
  - Rewrite the fragment as a complete sentence.
- ▶ We had just sat down to dinner, <sup>when</sup> ~~When~~ the cat leaped onto the table.
- <sup>Running for the bus,</sup>
- ▶ I tripped and twisted my ankle. <sup>Running for the bus.</sup>

### Test for fragments



\*Do not mistake verbals for verbs. A verbal is a verb form (such as *walking, to act*) that does not function as a verb of a clause. (See 48b.)

\*\*The subject of a sentence may be *you*, understood but not present in the sentence. (See 47a.)

\*\*\*A sentence may open with a subordinate clause, but the sentence must also include an independent clause. (See 19a and 49a.)

**If you find any fragments, try one of these methods of revision (see 19a–19c):**

1. Attach the fragment to a nearby sentence.
2. Rewrite the fragment as a complete sentence.

Unlike some other languages, English requires a subject and a verb in every sentence (except in commands, where the subject *you* is understood but not present: *Sit down*). See 30a and 30b.

- It is*
- ▶ *Is* often hot and humid during the summer.  
^
- are*
- ▶ Students usually very busy at the end of the semester writing papers  
^  
and taking exams.

## 19a Attach fragmented subordinate clauses or turn them into sentences.

A subordinate clause is patterned like a sentence, with both a subject and a verb, but it begins with a word that marks it as subordinate. The following words commonly introduce subordinate clauses.

after	how	unless	who
although	if	until	whom
as	since	when	whose
as if	so that	where	why
because	than	whether	
before	that	which	
even though	though	while	

Subordinate clauses function within sentences as adjectives, as adverbs, or as nouns. They cannot stand alone. (See 48e.)

Most fragmented clauses beg to be pulled into a sentence nearby.

- ▶ Americans have come to fear the West Nile virus/*because* ~~Because~~ it is  
^  
transmitted by the common mosquito.

*Because* introduces a subordinate clause, so it cannot stand alone. (For punctuation of subordinate clauses appearing at the end of a sentence, see 33f.)

- ▶ Although psychiatrist Peter Kramer expresses concerns about Prozac, <sup>many</sup> Many other doctors believe that the benefits of antidepressants outweigh the risks.

*Although* introduces a subordinate clause, which cannot stand alone. (For punctuation of subordinate clauses at the beginning of a sentence, see 32b.)

If a fragmented clause cannot be attached to a nearby sentence or if you feel that attaching it would be awkward, try turning the clause into a sentence. The simplest way to do this is to delete the opening word or words that mark the clause as subordinate.

- ▶ Population increases and uncontrolled development are taking a deadly toll on the environment. <sup>Across</sup> So that across the globe, fragile ecosystems are collapsing.

## 19b Attach fragmented phrases or turn them into sentences.

Like subordinate clauses, phrases function within sentences as adjectives, as adverbs, or as nouns. They cannot stand alone. Fragmented phrases are often prepositional or verbal phrases; sometimes they are appositives, words or word groups that rename nouns or pronouns. (See 48a, 48b, and 48c.)

Often a fragmented phrase may simply be pulled into a nearby sentence.

- ▶ The archaeologists worked slowly, <sup>examining</sup> Examining and labeling every pottery shard they uncovered.

The word group beginning with *Examining* is a verbal phrase, so it cannot stand alone.

- ▶ The patient displayed symptoms of ALS, <sup>a</sup> A neurodegenerative disease.

*A neurodegenerative disease* is an appositive renaming the noun *ALS*. (For punctuation of appositives, see 32e.)

If a fragmented phrase cannot be pulled into a nearby sentence effectively, turn the phrase into a sentence. You may need to add a subject, a verb, or both.

- ▶ In the training session, Jamie explained how to access our new database. *She also taught us* Also how to submit expense reports and request vendor payments.

The revision turns the fragmented phrase into a sentence by adding a subject and a verb.

## 19c Attach other fragmented word groups or turn them into sentences.

Other word groups that are commonly fragmented include parts of compound predicates, lists, and examples introduced by *for example*, *in addition*, or similar expressions.

### Parts of compound predicates

A predicate consists of a verb and its objects, complements, and modifiers (see 47b). A compound predicate includes two or more predicates joined with a coordinating conjunction such as *and*, *but*, or *or*. Because the parts of a compound predicate have the same subject, they should appear in the same sentence.

- ▶ The woodpecker finch of the Galápagos Islands carefully selects a twig of a certain size and shape *and* then uses this tool to pry out grubs from trees.

The subject is *finch*, and the compound predicate is *selects . . . and . . . uses*. (For punctuation of compound predicates, see 33a.)

### Lists

To correct a fragmented list, often you can attach it to a nearby sentence with a colon or a dash. (See 35a and 39a.)

- ▶ It has been said that there are only three indigenous American art forms: *musical* Musical comedy, jazz, and soap opera.

Sometimes terms like *especially*, *namely*, *like*, and *such as* introduce fragmented lists. Such fragments can usually be attached to the preceding sentence.

- ▶ In the twentieth century, the South produced some great American writers, <sup>such</sup> ~~such~~ as Flannery O'Connor, William Faulkner, Alice Walker, and Tennessee Williams.

### Examples introduced by *for example*, *in addition*, or similar expressions

Other expressions that introduce examples or explanations can lead to unintentional fragments. Although you may begin a sentence with some of the following words or phrases, make sure that what follows has a subject and a verb.

also	for example	mainly
and	for instance	or
but	in addition	that is

Often the easiest solution is to turn the fragment into a sentence.

- ▶ In his memoir, Primo Levi describes the horrors of living in a concentration camp. For example, <sup>he worked</sup> ~~working~~ without food and <sup>suffered</sup> ~~suffering~~ emotional abuse.  
The writer corrected this fragment by adding a subject — *he* — and substituting verbs for the verbals *working* and *suffering*.
- ▶ Deborah Tannen's research reveals that men and women have <sup>Tannen explains</sup> different ideas about communication. For example, <sup>that</sup> a woman "expects her husband to be a new and improved version of her best friend" (441).


A quotation must be part of a complete sentence. *That a woman "expects her husband to be a new and improved version of her best friend"* is a fragment — a subordinate clause. In this case, adding a signal phrase that includes a subject and a verb (*Tannen explains*) corrects the fragment and clarifies that the quotation is from Tannen.

## 19d Exception: A fragment may be used for effect.

Writers occasionally use sentence fragments for special purposes.

FOR EMPHASIS	Following the dramatic Americanization of their children, even my parents grew more publicly confident. <i>Especially my mother.</i> — Richard Rodriguez
TO ANSWER A QUESTION	Are these new drug tests 100 percent reliable? <i>Not in the opinion of most experts.</i>
TRANSITIONS	<i>And now the opposing arguments.</i>
EXCLAMATIONS	<i>Not again!</i>
IN ADVERTISING	<i>Fewer carbs. Improved taste.</i>

Although fragments are sometimes appropriate, writers and readers do not always agree on when they are appropriate. That's why you will find it safer to write in complete sentences.

**EXERCISE 19-1** Repair any fragment by attaching it to a nearby sentence or by rewriting it as a complete sentence. If a word group is correct, write “correct” after it. Possible revisions appear in the back of the book.  
*More practice:*  LaunchPadSolo

One Greek island that should not be missed is Mykonos, <sup>a</sup> ~~A~~ vacation spot for Europeans and a playground for the rich and famous.

- Listening to the CD her sister had sent, Mia was overcome with a mix of emotions. Happiness, homesickness, and nostalgia.
- Cortés and his soldiers were astonished when they looked down from the mountains and saw Tenochtitlán. The magnificent capital of the Aztecs.
- Although my spoken Spanish is not very good, I can read the language with ease.
- There are several reasons for not eating meat. One reason being that dangerous chemicals are used throughout the various stages of meat production.
- To learn how to sculpt beauty from everyday life. This is my intention in studying art and archaeology.



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

19 Sentence fragments

> Exercises: 19-3 to 19-7

> LearningCurve: Sentence fragments



**EXERCISE 19-2** Repair each fragment in the following passage by attaching it to a sentence nearby or by rewriting it as a complete sentence.

Digital technology has revolutionized information delivery. Forever blurring the lines between information and entertainment. Yesterday's readers of books and newspapers are today's readers of e-books and news blogs. Countless readers have moved on from print information entirely. Choosing instead to scroll their way through a text on their Amazon Kindle or in an online forum. Once a nation of people spoon-fed television commercials and the six o'clock evening news. We are now seemingly addicted to YouTube. Remember the family trip when Dad or Mom wrestled with a road map? On the way to St. Louis or Seattle? No wrestling is required with a GPS navigator by the driver's side. Unless it's Mom and Dad wrestling over who gets to program the address. Accessing information now seems to be America's favorite pastime. John Horrigan, associate director for research at the Pew Internet and American Life Project, reports that 31 percent of American adults are "elite" users of technology. Who are "highly engaged" with digital content. As a country, we embrace information and communication technologies. Which include iPads, smartphones, and other handheld devices. Children rely on such devices and the Internet from an early age. For activities like reading, socializing, gaming, and information gathering.

## 20 Revise run-on sentences.

Run-on sentences are independent clauses that have not been joined correctly. An independent clause is a word group that can stand alone as a sentence. (See 49a.) When two independent clauses appear in one sentence, they must be joined in one of these ways:

- with a comma and a coordinating conjunction (*and, but, or, nor, for, so, yet*)
- with a semicolon (or occasionally with a colon or a dash)

### Recognizing run-on sentences

There are two types of run-on sentences. When a writer puts no mark of punctuation and no coordinating conjunction between independent clauses, the result is called a *fused sentence*.

**FUSED** INDEPENDENT CLAUSE Air pollution poses risks to all humans it can be  
INDEPENDENT CLAUSE deadly for asthma sufferers.

A far more common type of run-on sentence is the *comma splice*—two or more independent clauses joined with a comma but without a coordinating conjunction. In some comma splices, the comma appears alone.

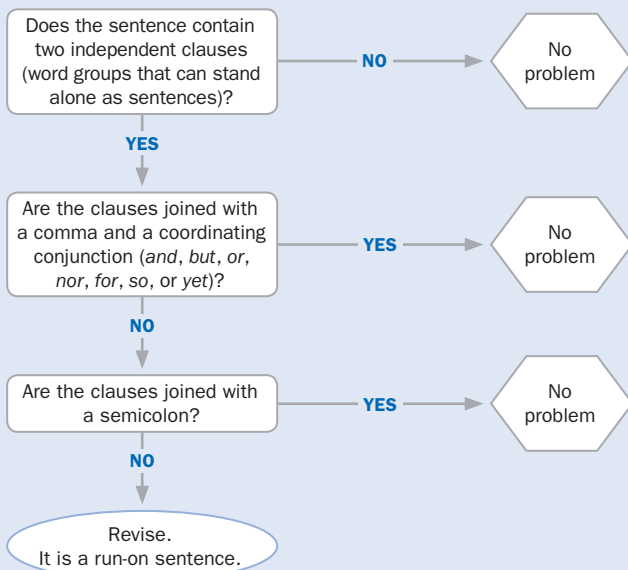
**COMMA SPLICE** Air pollution poses risks to all humans, it can be deadly for asthma sufferers.

In other comma splices, the comma is accompanied by a joining word that is *not* a coordinating conjunction. There are only seven coordinating conjunctions in English: *and*, *but*, *or*, *nor*, *for*, *so*, and *yet*.

**COMMA SPLICE** Air pollution poses risks to all humans, however, it can be deadly for asthma sufferers.

*However* is a transitional expression and cannot be used with only a comma to join two independent clauses (see 20b).

### Recognizing run-on sentences



If you find an error, choose an effective method of revision. See 20a–20d for revision strategies.

## Revising run-on sentences

To revise a run-on sentence, you have four choices.

1. Use a comma and a coordinating conjunction (*and, but, or, nor, for, so, yet*).

▶ Air pollution poses risks to all humans, <sup>but</sup> it can be deadly for people with asthma.

2. Use a semicolon (or, if appropriate, a colon or a dash). A semicolon may be used alone or with a transitional expression.

▶ Air pollution poses risks to all humans; it can be deadly for people with asthma.

▶ Air pollution poses risks to all humans; <sup>however,</sup> it can be deadly for people with asthma.

3. Make the clauses into separate sentences.

▶ Air pollution poses risks to all humans. <sup>It</sup> it can be deadly for people with asthma.

4. Restructure the sentence, perhaps by subordinating one of the clauses.

▶ <sup>Although air</sup> pollution poses risks to all humans, it can be deadly for people with asthma.

One of these revision techniques usually works better than the others for a particular sentence. The fourth technique, the one requiring the most extensive revision, is often the most effective.

## 20a Consider separating the clauses with a comma and a coordinating conjunction.

There are seven coordinating conjunctions in English: *and, but, or, nor, for, so, and yet*. When a coordinating conjunction joins independent clauses, it is usually preceded by a comma. (See 32a.)

- ▶ Some lesson plans include exercises, <sup>but</sup> completing them should not be the focus of all class periods.
- ▶ Many government officials privately admit that the polygraph is <sup>yet</sup> unreliable, ~~however~~, they continue to use it as a security measure.

*However* is a transitional expression, not a coordinating conjunction, so it cannot be used with only a comma to join independent clauses. (See also 20b.)

## 20b Consider separating the clauses with a semicolon (or, if appropriate, with a colon or a dash).

When the independent clauses are closely related and their relation is clear without a coordinating conjunction, a semicolon is an acceptable method of revision. (See 34a.)

- ▶ Tragedy depicts the individual confronted with the fact of death,<sup>;</sup> comedy depicts the adaptability of human society.

A semicolon is required between independent clauses that have been linked with a transitional expression (such as *however*, *therefore*, *moreover*, *in fact*, or *for example*). For a longer list, see 34b.

- ▶ In his film adaptation of the short story “Killings,” director Todd Field changed key details of the plot,<sup>;</sup> in fact, he added whole scenes that do not appear in the story.

A colon or a dash may be more appropriate if the first independent clause introduces the second or if the second clause summarizes or explains the first. (See 35a and 39a.) In formal writing, the colon is usually preferred to the dash.

- ▶ Nuclear waste is hazardous:<sup>This</sup> this is an indisputable fact.
- ▶ The female black widow spider is often a widow of her own making,<sup>—</sup> she has been known to eat her partner after mating.

A colon is an appropriate method of revision if the first independent clause introduces a quoted sentence.

- ▶ Nobel Peace Prize winner Al Gore had this to say about climate change: “The truth is that our circumstances are not only new; they are completely different than they have ever been in all of human history.”

## 20c Consider making the clauses into separate sentences.

- ▶ Why should we spend money on expensive space exploration? We have enough underfunded programs here on Earth.

A question and a statement should be separate sentences.

- ▶ Some studies have suggested that the sexual relationships of bonobos set them apart from common chimpanzees. According to Stanford (1998), these differences have been exaggerated.

Using a comma to join two independent clauses creates a comma splice. In this example, an effective revision is to separate the first independent clause (*Some studies . . .*) from the second independent clause (*these differences . . .*) and to keep the signal phrase with the second clause. (See also 61a on citing sources in APA style.)

**NOTE:** When two quoted independent clauses are divided by explanatory words, make each clause its own sentence.

- ▶ “It’s always smart to learn from your mistakes,” quipped my supervisor. “It’s even smarter to learn from the mistakes of others.”

## 20d Consider restructuring the sentence, perhaps by subordinating one of the clauses.

If one of the independent clauses is less important than the other, turn the less important clause into a subordinate clause or phrase. (For more about subordination, see 14, especially the chart on p. 156.)

- ▶ One of the most famous advertising slogans is Wheaties cereal's "Breakfast of Champions," <sup>which</sup> it was penned in 1933.
- ▶ Mary McLeod Bethune, <sup>^</sup> was the seventeenth child of former slaves, ~~she~~ founded the National Council of Negro Women in 1935.

Minor ideas in these sentences are now expressed in subordinate clauses or phrases.

**EXERCISE 20-1** Revise the following run-on sentences using the method of revision suggested in brackets. Possible revisions appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

*Because*

<sup>^</sup> Daniel had been obsessed with his weight as a teenager, he rarely ate anything sweet. [*Restructure the sentence.*]

- a. The city had one public swimming pool, it stayed packed with children all summer long. [*Restructure the sentence.*]
- b. The building is being renovated, therefore at times we have no heat, water, or electricity. [*Use a comma and a coordinating conjunction.*]
- c. The view was not what the travel agent had described, where were the rolling hills and the shimmering rivers? [*Make two sentences.*]
- d. Walker's coming-of-age novel is set against a gloomy scientific backdrop, the earth's rotation has begun to slow down. [*Use a semicolon.*]
- e. City officials had good reason to fear a major earthquake, most of the business district was built on landfill. [*Use a colon.*]



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

20 Run-on sentences

> Exercises: 20-4 to 20-9

> LearningCurve: Run-on sentences

**EXERCISE 20-2** Revise any run-on sentences using a technique that you find effective. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Possible revisions appear in the back of the book.

Crossing so many time zones on an eight-hour flight, I knew  
but  
I would be tired when I arrived, however, I was too excited to  
^  
sleep on the plane.

- Wind power for the home is a supplementary source of energy, it can be combined with electricity, gas, or solar energy.
- Aidan viewed Sofia Coppola’s *Lost in Translation* three times and then wrote a paper describing the film as the work of a mysterious modern painter.
- In the Middle Ages, the streets of London were dangerous places, it was safer to travel by boat along the Thames.
- “He’s not drunk,” I said, “he’s in a state of diabetic shock.”
- Are you able to endure extreme angle turns, high speeds, frequent jumps, and occasional crashes, then supermoto racing may be a sport for you.

**EXERCISE 20-3** In the following rough draft, revise any run-on sentences.

Some parents and educators argue that requiring uniforms in public schools would improve student behavior and performance. They think that uniforms give students a more professional attitude toward school, moreover, they believe that uniforms help create a sense of community among students from diverse backgrounds. But parents and educators should consider the drawbacks to requiring uniforms in public schools.

Uniforms do create a sense of community, they do this, however, by stamping out individuality. Youth is a time to express originality, it is a time to develop a sense of self. One important way young people express their identities is through the clothes they wear. The self-patrolled dress code of high school students may be stricter than any school-imposed code, nevertheless, trying to control dress habits from above will only lead to resentment or to mindless conformity.

If children are going to act like adults, they need to be treated like adults, they need to be allowed to make their own choices. Telling young people what to wear to school merely prolongs their childhood. Requiring uniforms undermines the educational purpose of public schools, which is not just to teach facts and figures but to help young people grow into adults who are responsible for making their own choices.

# 21 Make subjects and verbs agree.

In the present tense, verbs agree with their subjects in number (singular or plural) and in person (first, second, third): *I sing, you sing, he sings, she sings, we sing, they sing*. Even if your ear recognizes the standard subject-verb combinations presented in 21a, you will no doubt encounter tricky situations such as those described in 21b–21k.

## 21a Learn to recognize the standard subject-verb combinations.

This section describes the basic guidelines for making present-tense verbs agree with their subjects. The present-tense ending *-s* (or *-es*) is used on a verb if its subject is third-person singular (*he, she, it*, and singular nouns); otherwise, the verb takes no ending. Consider, for example, the present-tense forms of the verbs *love* and *try*, given at the beginning of the chart on page 204.


The verb *be* varies from this pattern; it has special forms in *both* the present and the past tense. These forms appear at the end of the chart.

If you aren't sure of the standard forms, use the charts on pages 204 and 205 as you proofread your work for subject-verb agreement. You may also want to look at 27c on *-s* endings of regular and irregular verbs.

## 21b Make the verb agree with its subject, not with a word that comes between.

Word groups often come between the subject and the verb. Such word groups, usually modifying the subject, may contain a noun that at first appears to be the subject. By mentally stripping away such modifiers, you can isolate the noun that is in fact the subject.

The *samples* on the tray in the lab *need* testing.





- ▶ High levels of air pollution causes damage to the respiratory

tract.

The subject is *levels*, not *pollution*. Strip away the phrase *of air pollution* to hear the correct verb: *levels cause*.

- ▶ The slaughter of pandas for their pelts <sup>has</sup> have caused the panda population to decline drastically.

The subject is *slaughter*, not *pandas* or *pelts*.

**NOTE:** Phrases beginning with the prepositions *as well as*, *in addition to*, *accompanied by*, *together with*, and *along with* do not make a singular subject plural.

- ▶ The governor as well as his press secretary <sup>was</sup> were on the plane.

To emphasize that two people were on the plane, the writer could use *and* instead: *The governor and his press secretary were on the plane*.

## 21c Treat most subjects joined with *and* as plural.

A subject with two or more parts is said to be compound. If the parts are connected with *and*, the subject is almost always plural.

  
Leon and Jan often jog together.

- ▶ The Supreme Court's willingness to hear the case and its affirmation of the original decision <sup>have</sup> has set a new precedent.

**EXCEPTION 1:** When the parts of the subject form a single unit or when they refer to the same person or thing, treat the subject as singular.

Fish and chips was a last-minute addition to the menu.

Sue's friend and adviser was surprised by her decision.

### Subject-verb agreement at a glance

#### Present-tense forms of *love* and *try* (typical verbs)

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
FIRST PERSON	I	love	we	love
SECOND PERSON	you	love	you	love
THIRD PERSON	he/she/it*	loves	they**	love

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
FIRST PERSON	I	try	we	try
SECOND PERSON	you	try	you	try
THIRD PERSON	he/she/it*	tries	they**	try

#### Present-tense forms of *have*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
FIRST PERSON	I	have	we	have
SECOND PERSON	you	have	you	have
THIRD PERSON	he/she/it*	has	they**	have

#### Present-tense forms of *do* (including negative forms)

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
FIRST PERSON	I	do/don't	we	do/don't
SECOND PERSON	you	do/don't	you	do/don't
THIRD PERSON	he/she/it*	does/doesn't	they**	do/don't

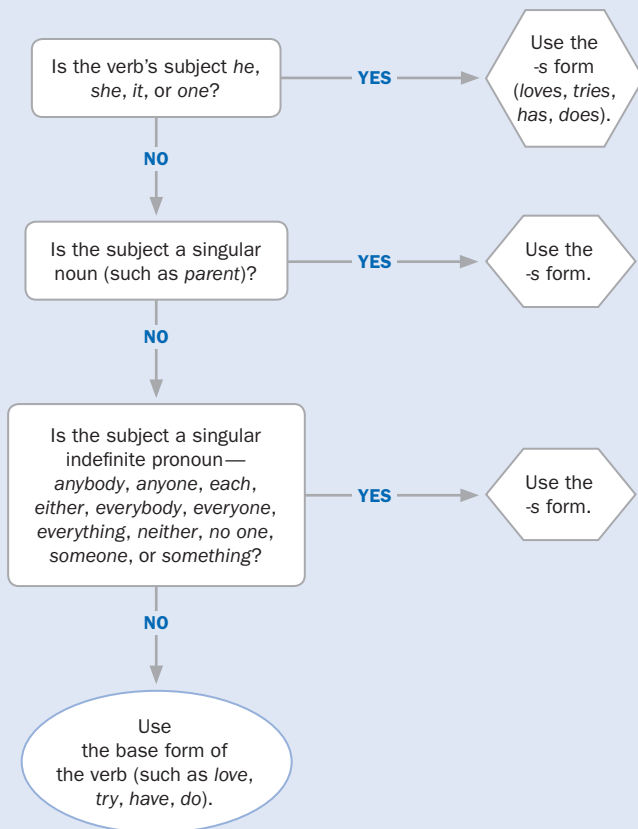
#### Present-tense and past-tense forms of *be*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
FIRST PERSON	I	am/was	we	are/were
SECOND PERSON	you	are/were	you	are/were
THIRD PERSON	he/she/it*	is/was	they**	are/were

\*And singular nouns (*child, Roger*)

\*\*And plural nouns (*children, the Mannings*)

## When to use the -s (or -es) form of a present-tense verb



**EXCEPTION:** Choosing the correct present-tense form of *be* (*am, is, or are*) is not quite so simple. See the chart on the previous page for both present- and past-tense forms of *be*.


**TIP:** Do not use the -s form of a verb if it follows a modal verb such as *can, must, or should* or another helping verb. (See 28c.)


**EXCEPTION 2:** When a compound subject is preceded by *each* or *every*, treat it as singular.

Every car, truck, and van is required to pass inspection.

This exception does not apply when a compound subject is followed by *each*: *Alan and Marcia each have different ideas.*

## 21d With subjects joined with *or* or *nor* (or with *either . . . or* or *neither . . . nor*), make the verb agree with the part of the subject nearer to the verb.

A driver's *license* or credit *card*  is required.

A driver's *license* or two credit *cards*  are required.

▶ If an infant or a child <sup>has</sup> ~~have~~ a high fever, call a doctor.

▶ Neither the chief financial officer nor the marketing managers <sup>were</sup> ~~was~~ able to convince the client to reconsider.

The verb must be matched with the part of the subject closer to it: *child has* in the first sentence, *managers were* in the second.

**NOTE:** If one part of the subject is singular and the other is plural, put the plural one last to avoid awkwardness.

## 21e Treat most indefinite pronouns as singular.

Indefinite pronouns are pronouns that do not refer to specific persons or things. The following commonly used indefinite pronouns are singular.

anybody	each	everyone	nobody	somebody
anyone	either	everything	no one	someone
anything	everybody	neither	nothing	something

Many of these words appear to have plural meanings, and they are often treated as such in casual speech. In formal written English, however, they are nearly always treated as singular.

*Everyone* on the team *supports* the coach.

▶ Each of the essays <sup>has</sup> ~~have~~ been graded.

▶ Nobody who participated in the clinical trials <sup>was</sup> ~~were~~ given a placebo.

The subjects of these sentences are *Each* and *Nobody*. These indefinite pronouns are third-person singular, so the verbs must be *has* and *was*.

A few indefinite pronouns (*all*, *any*, *none*, *some*) may be singular or plural depending on the noun or pronoun they refer to.

SINGULAR    *Some* of our *luggage* *was* lost.

*None* of his *advice* *makes* sense.

PLURAL      *Some* of the *rocks* *are* slippery.

*None* of the *eggs* *were* broken.

**NOTE:** When the meaning of *none* is emphatically “not one,” *none* may be treated as singular: *None* [meaning “Not one”] *of the eggs was broken*. Using *not one* instead is sometimes clearer: *Not one of the eggs was broken*.

## 21f Treat collective nouns as singular unless the meaning is clearly plural.

Collective nouns such as *jury*, *committee*, *audience*, *crowd*, *troop*, *family*, and *couple* name a class or a group. In American English, collective nouns are nearly always treated as singular: They emphasize the group as a unit. Occasionally, when there

is some reason to draw attention to the individual members of the group, a collective noun may be treated as plural. (See also 22b.)

SINGULAR The *class respects* the teacher.

PLURAL The *class are* debating among themselves.

To underscore the notion of individuality in the second sentence, many writers would add a clearly plural noun.

PLURAL The class *members are* debating among themselves.

- ▶ The board of trustees *meets* in Denver twice a year.

The board as a whole meets; there is no reason to draw attention to its individual members.

- ▶ A young couple *were* arguing about politics while holding hands.

The meaning is clearly plural. Only separate individuals can argue and hold hands.

**NOTE:** The phrase *the number* is treated as singular, *a number* as plural.

SINGULAR *The number* of school-age children *is* declining.

PLURAL *A number* of children *are* attending the wedding.

**NOTE:** In general, when fractions or units of measurement are used with a singular noun, treat them as singular; when they are used with a plural noun, treat them as plural.

SINGULAR *Three-fourths* of the salad *has* been eaten.

*Twenty inches* of wallboard *was* covered with mud.

PLURAL *One-fourth* of the drivers *were* texting.

*Two pounds* of blueberries *were* used to make the pie.

## 21g Make the verb agree with its subject even when the subject follows the verb.

Verbs ordinarily follow subjects. When this normal order is reversed, it is easy to become confused. Sentences beginning with *there is* or *there are* (or *there was* or *there were*) are inverted; the subject follows the verb.

There <sup>are</sup> surprisingly few *honeybees* left in southern China.

were

- ▶ There <sup>was</sup> a social worker and a journalist at the meeting.

The subject, *worker and journalist*, is plural, so the verb must be *were*.

Occasionally, you may decide to invert a sentence for variety or effect. When you do so, check to make sure that your subject and verb agree.

are

- ▶ Of particular concern <sup>is</sup> penicillin and tetracycline, antibiotics

used to make animals more resistant to disease.

The subject, *penicillin and tetracycline*, is plural, so the verb must be *are*.

## 21h Make the verb agree with its subject, not with a subject complement.

One basic sentence pattern in English consists of a subject, a linking verb, and a subject complement: *Jack is a lawyer*. Because the subject complement (*lawyer*) names or describes the subject (*Jack*), it is sometimes mistaken for the subject. (See 47b on subject complements.)

These *exercises are* a way to test your ability to perform under pressure.

are

- ▶ A tent and a sleeping bag <sup>is</sup> the required equipment.

*Tent and bag* is the subject, not *equipment*.

- ▶ A major force in today's economy <sup>is</sup> ~~are~~ children — as consumers, <sup>^</sup> decision makers, and trend spotters.

*Force* is the subject, not *children*. If the corrected version seems too awkward, make *children* the subject: *Children are a major force in today's economy — as consumers, decision makers, and trend spotters.*

## 21i Who, which, and that take verbs that agree with their antecedents.

Like most pronouns, the relative pronouns *who*, *which*, and *that* have antecedents, nouns or pronouns to which they refer. Relative pronouns used as subjects of subordinate clauses take verbs that agree with their antecedents.



Take a *course that prepares* you for classroom management.

### One of the

Constructions such as *one of the students who* [or *one of the things that*] cause problems for writers. Do not assume that the antecedent must be *one*. Instead, consider the logic of the sentence.

- ▶ Our ability to use language is one of the things that <sup>is</sup> ~~sets~~ us apart from animals.

The antecedent of *that* is *things*, not *one*. Several things set us apart from animals.

### Only one of the

When the phrase *the only* comes before *one*, you are safe in assuming that *one* is the antecedent of the relative pronoun.

- ▶ Veronica was the only one of the first-year Spanish students <sup>was</sup> ~~were~~ fluent enough to apply for the exchange program. <sup>^</sup>

The antecedent of *who* is *one*, not *students*. Only one student was fluent enough.



## 21j Words such as *athletics*, *economics*, *mathematics*, *physics*, *politics*, *statistics*, *measles*, and *news* are usually singular, despite their plural form.

- ▶ Politics <sup>is</sup> are among my mother's favorite pastimes.  
^

**EXCEPTION:** Occasionally some of these words, especially *economics*, *mathematics*, *politics*, and *statistics*, have plural meanings: *Office politics often sway decisions about hiring and promotion. The economics of the building plan are prohibitive.*

## 21k Titles of works, company names, words mentioned as words, and gerund phrases are singular.

- ▶ *Lost Cities* <sup>describes</sup> describe the discoveries of fifty ancient civilizations.  
^
- ▶ Delmonico Brothers <sup>specializes</sup> specialize in organic produce.  
^
- ▶ *Controlled substances* <sup>is</sup> are a euphemism for illegal drugs.  
^

A gerund phrase consists of an *-ing* verb form followed by any objects, complements, or modifiers (see 48b). Treat gerund phrases as singular.

- ▶ Encountering long hold times <sup>makes</sup> make customers impatient with telephone tech support.  
^

**EXERCISE 21-1** Edit the following sentences to eliminate problems with subject-verb agreement. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Answers appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

Jack's first days in the infantry <sup>were</sup> was grueling.  
^

- One of the main reasons for elephant poaching are the profits received from selling the ivory tusks.

- b. Not until my interview with Dr. Hwang were other possibilities opened to me.
- c. A number of students in the seminar was aware of the importance of joining the discussion.
- d. Batik cloth from Bali, blue and white ceramics from Delft, and a bocce ball from Turin has made Angelie's room the talk of the dorm.
- e. The board of directors, ignoring the wishes of the neighborhood, has voted to allow further development.

**EXERCISE 21-2** For each sentence in the following passage, underline the subject (or compound subject) and then select the verb that agrees with it. (If you have trouble identifying the subject, consult 47a.)

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

Loggerhead sea turtles (migrate / migrates) thousands of miles before returning to their nesting location every two to three years. The nesting season for loggerhead turtles (span / spans) the hottest months of the summer. Although the habitat of Atlantic loggerheads (range / ranges) from Newfoundland to Argentina, nesting for these turtles (take / takes) place primarily along the southeastern coast of the United States. Female turtles that have reached sexual maturity (crawl / crawls) ashore at night to lay their eggs. The cavity that serves as a nest for the eggs (is / are) dug out with the female's strong flippers. Deposited into each nest (is / are) anywhere from fifty to two hundred spherical eggs, also known as a *clutch*. After a two-month incubation period, all eggs in the clutch (begin / begins) to hatch, and within a few days the young turtles attempt to make their way into the ocean. A major cause of the loggerhead's decreasing numbers (is / are) natural predators such as raccoons, birds, and crabs. Beach erosion and coastal development also (threaten / threatens) the turtles' survival. For example, a crowd of curious humans or lights from beachfront residences (is / are) enough to make the female abandon her nesting plans and return to the ocean. Since only one in one thousand loggerheads survives to adulthood, special care should be taken to protect this threatened species.



## 22 Make pronouns and antecedents agree.

A pronoun is a word that substitutes for a noun. (See 46b.) Many pronouns have antecedents, nouns or pronouns to which they refer. A pronoun and its antecedent agree when they are both singular or both plural.

SINGULAR    *Dr. Ava Berto* finished *her* rounds.

PLURAL      The hospital *interns* finished *their* rounds.

The pronouns *he*, *his*, *she*, *her*, *it*, and *its* must agree in gender (masculine, feminine, or neuter) with their antecedents, not with the words they modify.

Steve visited *his* [not *her*] sister in Seattle.

### 22a Do not use plural pronouns to refer to singular antecedents.

Writers are frequently tempted to use plural pronouns to refer to two kinds of singular antecedents: indefinite pronouns and generic nouns.

#### Indefinite pronouns

Indefinite pronouns refer to nonspecific persons or things. Even though some of the following indefinite pronouns may seem to have plural meanings, treat them as singular in formal English.

anybody	each	everyone	nobody	somebody
anyone	either	everything	no one	someone
anything	everybody	neither	nothing	something

*Everyone* performs at *his or her* [not *their*] own fitness level.

When a plural pronoun refers mistakenly to a singular indefinite pronoun, you can usually choose one of three options for revision:

1. Replace the plural pronoun with *he or she* (or *his or her*).
2. Make the antecedent plural.
3. Rewrite the sentence so that no problem of agreement exists.

▶ When ~~someone~~ travels outside the United States for the first time, ~~they~~ need to apply for a passport.

*he or she needs*

*people travel*

▶ When ~~someone~~ travels outside the United States for the first time, they need to apply for a passport.

*Anyone who*

▶ ~~When someone~~ travels outside the United States for the first time, ~~they~~ need to apply for a passport.

*needs*

Because the *he or she* construction is wordy, often the second or third revision strategy is more effective. Using *he* (or *his*) to refer to persons of either sex, while less wordy, is considered sexist, as is using *she* (or *her*) for all persons. Some writers alternate male and female pronouns throughout a text, but the result is often awkward. See 17e and the chart on page 216 for strategies that avoid sexist language.

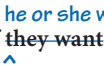
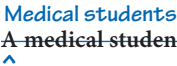
**NOTE:** If you change a pronoun from singular to plural (or vice versa), check to be sure that the verb agrees with the new pronoun (see 21e).

### Generic nouns

A generic noun represents a typical member of a group, such as a typical student, or any member of a group, such as any lawyer. Although generic nouns may seem to have plural meanings, they are singular.

Every runner must train rigorously if *he or she* wants [not *they want*] to excel.

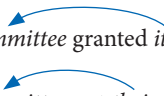
When a plural pronoun refers mistakenly to a generic noun, you will usually have the same three revision options as mentioned at the top of this page for indefinite pronouns.

- ▶ A medical student must study hard if ~~they want~~ <sup>he or she wants</sup> to succeed.  

- ▶ <sup>Medical students</sup> A ~~medical student~~ must study hard if they want to succeed.  

- ▶ A medical student must study hard if ~~they want~~ to succeed.


## 22b Treat collective nouns as singular unless the meaning is clearly plural.

Collective nouns such as *jury*, *committee*, *audience*, *crowd*, *class*, *troop*, *family*, *team*, and *couple* name a group. Ordinarily the group functions as a unit, so the noun should be treated as singular; if the members of the group function as individuals, however, the noun should be treated as plural. (See also 21f.)

AS A UNIT	The <i>committee</i> granted <i>its</i> permission to build.
AS INDIVIDUALS	The <i>committee</i> put <i>their</i> signatures on the document.




When treating a collective noun as plural, many writers prefer to add a clearly plural antecedent such as *members* to the sentence: *The members of the committee put their signatures on the document.*

- ▶ Defense attorney Clarence Darrow surprisingly urged the jury to find his client, John Scopes, guilty so that he could appeal the case to a higher court. The jury complied, returning <sup>its</sup> ~~their~~ verdict in only nine minutes.  


There is no reason to draw attention to the individual members of the jury, so *jury* should be treated as singular.

## 22c Treat most compound antecedents joined with *and* as plural.

In 1987, Reagan and Gorbachev held a summit where *they* signed the Intermediate-Range Nuclear Forces Treaty.  


### Choosing a revision strategy that avoids sexist language

Because many readers object to sexist language, avoid using *he*, *him*, and *his* (or *she*, *her*, and *hers*) to refer to both men and women. Also try to avoid the wordy expressions *he or she* and *his or her*. More graceful alternatives are usually possible.

Use an occasional *he or she* (or *his or her*).

- ▶ In our office, everyone works at <sup>his or her</sup> their own pace.

Make the antecedent plural.

- ▶ <sup>Employees</sup> An ~~employee~~ on extended disability leave may continue their life insurance.

Recast the sentence.

- ▶ The amount of vacation time a federal worker may accrue depends on their length of service.
- ▶ <sup>A</sup> If a child is born to parents who are both tall, <sup>has</sup> they have a high chance of being tall.
- ▶ In his autobiography, Benjamin Franklin suggests that anyone <sup>by living</sup> can achieve success as long as they live <sup>working</sup> a virtuous life and work hard.

## 22d With compound antecedents joined with *or* or *nor* (or with *either . . . or* or *neither . . . nor*), make the pronoun agree with the nearer antecedent.

Either *Bruce* or *Tom* should receive first prize for *his* poem.

Neither the *mouse* nor the *rats* could find *their* way through the maze.

**NOTE:** If one of the antecedents is singular and the other plural, as in the second example, put the plural one last to avoid awkwardness.

**EXCEPTION:** If one antecedent is male and the other female, do not follow the traditional rule. The sentence *Either Bruce or Elizabeth should receive first prize for her short story* makes no sense. The best solution is to recast the sentence: *The prize for best short story should go to either Bruce or Elizabeth.*

**EXERCISE 22-1** Edit the following sentences to eliminate problems with pronoun-antecedent agreement. Most of the sentences can be revised in more than one way, so experiment before choosing a solution. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Possible revisions appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

### Recruiters

~~The recruiter~~ may tell the truth, but there is much that they  
^  
choose not to tell.

- Every presidential candidate must appeal to a wide variety of ethnic and social groups if they want to win the election.
- David lent his motorcycle to someone who allowed their friend to use it.
- The aerobics teacher motioned for everyone to move their arms in wide, slow circles.
- The parade committee was unanimous in its decision to allow all groups and organizations to join the festivities.
- The applicant should be bilingual if they want to qualify for this position.

**EXERCISE 22-2** Edit the following paragraph to eliminate problems with pronoun-antecedent agreement or sexist language.

A common practice in businesses is to put each employee in their own cubicle. A typical cubicle resembles an office, but their walls don't reach the ceiling. Many office managers feel that a cubicle floor plan has its advantages. Cubicles make a large area feel spacious. In addition, they can be moved around so that each new employee can be accommodated in his own work area. Of course, the cubicle model also has problems. The typical employee is not as happy with a cubicle



as they would be with a traditional office. Also, productivity can suffer. Neither a manager nor a frontline worker can ordinarily do their best work in a cubicle because of noise and lack of privacy. Each worker can hear his neighbors tapping on computer keyboards, making telephone calls, and muttering under their breath.

## 23 Make pronoun references clear.

Pronouns substitute for nouns; they are a kind of shorthand. In a sentence like *After Andrew intercepted the ball, he kicked it as hard as he could*, the pronouns *he* and *it* substitute for the nouns *Andrew* and *ball*. The word a pronoun refers to is called its *antecedent*.

### 23a Avoid ambiguous or remote pronoun reference.

Ambiguous pronoun reference occurs when a pronoun could refer to two possible antecedents.

- The pitcher broke when Gloria set it*
- ▶ ~~When Gloria set the pitcher on the glass-topped table, it broke.~~  
<sup>^</sup> <sup>^</sup>
  - ▶ Tom told James, <sup>“You have</sup> ~~that he had~~ won the lottery.”  
<sup>^</sup> <sup>^</sup>

What broke — the pitcher or the table? Who won the lottery — Tom or James? The revisions eliminate the ambiguity.

Remote pronoun reference occurs when a pronoun is too far away from its antecedent for easy reading.

- ▶ After the court ordered my ex-husband to pay child support, he refused. Eight months later, the judge ordered him to make payments directly to the court, which would in turn pay me.



After six months, payments stopped. Again <sup>my ex-husband</sup> he was summoned to  
 ^  
 appear in court; he did not respond.

The pronoun *he* was too distant from its antecedent, *ex-husband*, which appeared several sentences earlier.

## 23b Generally, avoid broad reference of *this*, *that*, *which*, and *it*.

For clarity, the pronouns *this*, *that*, *which*, and *it* should ordinarily refer to specific antecedents rather than to whole ideas or sentences. When a pronoun's reference is needlessly broad, either replace the pronoun with a noun or supply an antecedent to which the pronoun clearly refers.

- ▶ By advertising on television, pharmaceutical companies gain exposure for their prescription drugs. Patients respond to <sup>the ads</sup> this by  
 ^  
 requesting drugs they might not need.

For clarity, the writer substituted the noun *ads* for the pronoun *this*, which referred broadly to the idea expressed in the preceding sentence.

- ▶ Romeo and Juliet were both too young to have acquired much <sup>a fact</sup> wisdom, and that accounts for their rash actions.  
 ^

The writer added an antecedent (*fact*) that the pronoun *that* clearly refers to.

## 23c Do not use a pronoun to refer to an implied antecedent.

A pronoun should refer to a specific antecedent, not to a word that is implied but not present in the sentence.

- ▶ After braiding Ann's hair, Sue decorated <sup>the braids</sup> them with ribbons.  
 ^

The pronoun *them* referred to Ann's braids (implied by the term *braiding*), but the word *braids* did not appear in the sentence.

Modifiers, such as possessives, cannot serve as antecedents. A modifier may strongly imply the noun that a pronoun might logically refer to, but it is not itself that noun.

- ▶ In ~~Jamaica Kincaid's~~ <sup>Jamaica Kincaid</sup> “Girl,” ~~she~~ <sup>^</sup> describes the advice a mother gives her daughter, including the mysterious warning not to be “the kind of woman who the baker won’t let near the bread” (454).

Using the possessive form of an author’s name to introduce a source leads to a problem later in this sentence: The pronoun *she* cannot refer logically to a possessive modifier (*Jamaica Kincaid’s*). The revision substitutes the noun *Jamaica Kincaid* for the pronoun *she*, thereby eliminating the problem. (For more on writing with sources in MLA style, see 55.)

## 23d Avoid the indefinite use of *they*, *it*, and *you*.

Do not use the pronoun *they* to refer indefinitely to persons who have not been specifically mentioned. *They* should always refer to a specific antecedent.

- ▶ In June, <sup>the board</sup> ~~they~~ <sup>^</sup> voted to charge a fee for students to participate in sports and music programs.

The word *it* should not be used indefinitely in constructions such as *It is said on television . . .* or *In the article, it says that. . .*

- ▶ <sup>The</sup> ~~In the~~ encyclopedia ~~it~~ <sup>^</sup> states ~~that~~ <sup>a guest</sup> male moths can smell female moths from several miles away.

The pronoun *you* is appropriate only when the writer is addressing the reader directly: *Once you have kneaded the dough, let it rise in a warm place*. Except in informal contexts, however, *you* should not be used to mean “anyone in general.” Use a noun instead.

- ▶ Ms. Pickersgill’s *Guide to Etiquette* stipulates that <sup>a guest</sup> ~~you~~ <sup>^</sup> should not arrive at a party too early or leave too late.

## 23e To refer to persons, use *who*, *whom*, or *whose*, not *which* or *that*.

In most contexts, use *who*, *whom*, or *whose* to refer to persons, *which* or *that* to refer to animals or things. *Which* is reserved only for animals or things; it is impolite to use it to refer to persons.

- ▶ All thirty-two women in the study, half of <sup>whom</sup> ~~which~~ were unemployed for more than six months, reported higher self-esteem after job training.

Although *that* is sometimes used to refer to persons, many readers will find such references dehumanizing. It is more polite to use a form of *who* — a word reserved only for people.

- ▶ During the two-day festival El Día de los Muertos (Day of the Dead), Mexican families celebrate loved ones <sup>who</sup> ~~that~~ have died.

**EXERCISE 23-1** Edit the following sentences to correct errors in pronoun reference. In some cases, you will need to decide on an antecedent that the pronoun might logically refer to. Possible revisions appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

Although Apple makes the most widely recognized smartphone, other companies have gained a share of the market. <sup>The competition</sup> ~~This~~ has kept prices from skyrocketing.

- a. They say that engineering students should have hands-on experience with dismantling and reassembling machines.
- b. She had decorated her living room with posters from chamber music festivals. This led her date to believe that she was interested in classical music. Actually, she preferred rock.
- c. In my high school, you didn't need to get all A's to be considered a success; you just needed to work to your ability.



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhigher.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhigher.com/rules8e)

23 Pronoun reference

> Exercises: 23-3 to 23-6

> LearningCurve: Pronoun agreement and pronoun reference

- d. Marianne told Jenny that she was worried about her mother's illness.
- e. Though Lewis cried for several minutes after scraping his knee, eventually it subsided.

**EXERCISE 23-2** Edit the following passage to correct errors in pronoun reference. In some cases, you will need to decide on an antecedent that the pronoun might logically refer to.

Since its launch in the 1980s, the Internet has grown to be one of the largest communications forums in the world. The Internet was created by a team of academics who were building on a platform that government scientists had started developing in the 1950s. They initially viewed it as a noncommercial enterprise that would serve only the needs of the academic and technical communities. But with the introduction of user-friendly browser technology in the 1990s, it expanded tremendously. By the late 1990s, many businesses were connecting to the Internet with high-speed broadband and fiber-optic connections, which is also true of many home users today. Accessing information, shopping, and communicating are easier than ever before. This, however, can lead to some possible drawbacks. You forfeit privacy when you search, shop, and communicate. They say that avoiding disclosure of personal information and routinely adjusting your privacy settings on social media sites are the best ways to protect yourself on the Internet.

## 24 Distinguish between pronouns such as *I* and *me*.

The personal pronouns in the following chart change what is known as *case form* according to their grammatical function in a sentence. Pronouns functioning as subjects or subject complements appear in the *subjective* case; those functioning as objects appear in the *objective* case; and those showing ownership appear in the *possessive* case.

	SUBJECTIVE CASE	OBJECTIVE CASE	POSSESSIVE CASE
SINGULAR	I	me	my
	you	you	your
	he/she/it	him/her/it	his/her/its

	SUBJECTIVE CASE	OBJECTIVE CASE	POSSESSIVE CASE
PLURAL	we	us	our
	you	you	your
	they	them	their

Pronouns in the subjective and objective cases are frequently confused. Most of the rules in this section specify when to use one or the other of these cases. Section 24g explains a special use of pronouns and nouns in the possessive case.

## 24a Use the subjective case (*I, you, he, she, it, we, they*) for subjects and subject complements.

When personal pronouns are used as subjects, ordinarily your ear will tell you the correct pronoun. Problems sometimes arise, however, with compound word groups containing a pronoun, so it is not always safe to trust your ear.

- ▶ Joel ran away because his stepfather and <sup>he</sup>him had quarreled.

*His stepfather and he* is the subject of the verb *had quarreled*. If we strip away the words *his stepfather and*, the correct pronoun becomes clear: *he had quarreled* (not *him had quarreled*).

When a pronoun is used as a subject complement (a word following a linking verb), your ear may mislead you, since the incorrect form is frequently heard in casual speech. (See “subject complements,” 47b.)

- ▶ During the Lindbergh trial, Bruno Hauptmann repeatedly denied that the kidnapper was <sup>he</sup>him.

If *kidnapper was he* seems too stilted, rewrite the sentence: . . . *Bruno Hauptmann repeatedly denied that he was the kidnapper.*

## 24b Use the objective case (*me, you, him, her, it, us, them*) for all objects.

When a personal pronoun is used as a direct object, an indirect object, or the object of a preposition, ordinarily your ear will lead

you to the correct pronoun. When an object is compound, however, you may occasionally become confused.

- ▶ Janice was indignant when she realized that the salesclerk was <sup>her.</sup>insulting her mother and ~~she~~.

*Her mother and her* is the direct object of the verb *was insulting*. Strip away the words *her mother and* to hear the correct pronoun: *was insulting her* (not *was insulting she*).

- ▶ The most traumatic experience for her father and <sup>me</sup>I occurred long after her operation.

*Her father and me* is the object of the preposition *for*. Strip away the words *her father and* to test for the correct pronoun: *for me* (not *for I*).

When in doubt about the correct pronoun, some writers try to avoid making the choice by using a reflexive pronoun such as *myself*. Using a reflexive pronoun in such situations is nonstandard.

- ▶ Nidra gave my cousin and <sup>me</sup>myself some good tips on traveling in New Delhi.

*My cousin and me* is the indirect object of the verb *gave*. For correct uses of *myself*, see the glossary of usage in the appendixes.

## 24c Put an appositive and the word to which it refers in the same case.

Appositives are noun phrases that rename nouns or pronouns. A pronoun used as an appositive has the same function (usually subject or object) as the word(s) it renames.

- ▶ The managers, Dr. Bell and <sup>I,</sup>~~me~~, could not agree on a plan.

The appositive *Dr. Bell and I* renames the subject, *managers*. Test: *I could not agree* (not *me could not agree*).

- ▶ The reporter interviewed only two witnesses, the bicyclist and <sup>me.</sup>~~I~~.

The appositive *the bicyclist and me* renames the direct object, *witnesses*. Test: *interviewed me* (not *interviewed I*).

## 24d Following *than* or *as*, choose the pronoun that expresses your meaning.

When a comparison begins with *than* or *as*, your choice of a pronoun will depend on your intended meaning. To test for the correct pronoun, mentally complete the sentence: *My roommate likes football more than I [do]*.

- ▶ In our report on nationalized health care in the United States,

we argued that Canadians are much better off than <sup>we.</sup> ~~us.~~

*We* is the subject of the verb *are*, which is understood: *Canadians are much better off than we [are]*. If the correct English seems too formal, you can always add the verb.

- ▶ We respected no other candidate for the city council as much

<sup>her.</sup> ~~she.~~

This sentence means that we respected no other candidate as much as *we respected her*. *Her* is the direct object of the understood verb *respected*.

## 24e For *we* or *us* before a noun, choose the pronoun that would be appropriate if the noun were omitted.

- ▶ <sup>We</sup> ~~Us~~ tenants would rather fight than move.

- ▶ Management is shortchanging <sup>us</sup> ~~we~~ tenants.

No one would say *Us would rather fight than move* or *Management is shortchanging we*.

## 24f Use the objective case for subjects and objects of infinitives.

An infinitive is the word *to* followed by the base form of a verb. (See 48b.) Subjects of infinitives are an exception to the rule that subjects must be in the subjective case. Whenever an infinitive

has a subject, it must be in the objective case. Objects of infinitives also are in the objective case.

- ▶ Sue asked John and <sup>me</sup>I to drive the senator and <sup>her</sup>she to the airport.

*John and me* is the subject of the infinitive *to drive*; *senator and her* is the direct object of the infinitive.

## 24g Use the possessive case to modify a gerund.

A pronoun that modifies a gerund or a gerund phrase should be in the possessive case (*my, our, your, his, her, its, their*). A gerund is a verb form ending in *-ing* that functions as a noun. Gerunds frequently appear in phrases; when they do, the whole gerund phrase functions as a noun. (See 48b.)


- ▶ The chances of <sup>your</sup>you being hit by lightning are about two million to one.

*Your* modifies the gerund phrase *being hit by lightning*.

Nouns as well as pronouns may modify gerunds. To form the possessive case of a noun, use an apostrophe and an *-s* (*victim's*) or just an apostrophe (*victims'*). (See 36a.)

- ▶ The old order in France paid a high price for the <sup>aristocracy's</sup>aristocraey exploiting the lower classes.

The possessive noun *aristocracy's* modifies the gerund phrase *exploiting the lower classes*.

**EXERCISE 24-1** Edit the following sentences to eliminate errors in pronoun case. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Answers appear in the back of the book. *More practice:*  LaunchPadSolo

Papa chops wood for neighbors much younger than <sup>he.</sup>him.



- a. Rick applied for the job even though he heard that other candidates were more experienced than he.
- b. The volleyball team could not believe that the coach was she.
- c. She appreciated him telling the truth in such a difficult situation.
- d. The director has asked you and I to draft a proposal for a new recycling plan.
- e. Five close friends and myself rented a station wagon, packed it with food, and drove two hundred miles to Mardi Gras.

**EXERCISE 24-2** In the following paragraph, choose the correct pronoun in each set of parentheses.

We may blame television for the number of products based on characters in children's TV shows — from Big Bird to SpongeBob — but in fact merchandising that capitalizes on a character's popularity started long before television. Raggedy Ann began as a child's rag doll, and a few years later books about (she / her) and her brother, Raggedy Andy, were published. A cartoonist named Johnny Gruelle painted a cloth face on a family doll and applied for a patent in 1915. Later Gruelle began writing and illustrating stories about Raggedy Ann, and in 1918 (he / him) and a publisher teamed up to publish the books and sell the dolls. He was not the only one to try to sell products linked to children's stories. Beatrix Potter published the first of many Peter Rabbit picture books in 1902, and no one was better than (she / her) at making a living from spin-offs. After Peter Rabbit and Benjamin Bunny became popular, Potter began putting pictures of (they / them) and their little animal friends on merchandise. Potter had fans all over the world, and she understood (them / their) wanting to see Peter Rabbit not only in books but also on teapots and plates and lamps and other furnishings for the nursery. Potter and Gruelle, like countless others before and since, knew that entertaining children could be a profitable business.

## 25 Distinguish between *who* and *whom*.

The choice between *who* and *whom* (or *whoever* and *whomever*) occurs primarily in subordinate clauses and in questions. *Who* and *whoever*, subjective-case pronouns, are used for subjects and subject complements. *Whom* and *whomever*, objective-case pronouns, are used for objects. (See 25a and 25b.)

An exception to this general rule occurs when the pronoun functions as the subject of an infinitive (see 25c). See also 24f.

## 25a Use *who* and *whom* correctly in subordinate clauses.

When *who* and *whom* (or *whoever* and *whomever*) introduce subordinate clauses, their case is determined by their function *within the clause they introduce*.

In the following two examples, the pronouns *who* and *whoever* function as the subjects of the clauses they introduce.

- ▶ First prize goes to the runner <sup>who</sup> ~~whom~~ earns the most points.

The subordinate clause is *who earns the most points*. The verb of the clause is *earns*, and its subject is *who*.

- ▶ Maya Angelou's *I Know Why the Caged Bird Sings* should be read by <sup>whoever</sup> ~~whomever~~ is interested in the effects of racial prejudice on children.

The writer selected the pronoun *whomever*, thinking that it was the object of the preposition *by*. However, the object of the preposition is the entire subordinate clause *whoever is interested in the effects of racial prejudice on children*. The verb of the clause is *is*, and the subject of the verb is *whoever*.

When functioning as an object in a subordinate clause, *whom* (or *whomever*) also appears out of order, before the subject and verb. To choose the correct pronoun, you can mentally restructure the clause.

- ▶ You will work with our senior traders, <sup>whom</sup> ~~who~~ you will meet later.

The subordinate clause is *whom you will meet later*. The subject of the clause is *you*, and the verb is *will meet*. *Whom* is the direct object of the verb. The correct choice becomes clear if you mentally restructure the clause: *you will meet whom*.

When functioning as the object of a preposition in a subordinate clause, *whom* is often separated from its preposition.

- ▶ The tutor <sup>whom</sup> ~~who~~ I was assigned to was very supportive.

*Whom* is the object of the preposition *to*. In this sentence, the writer might choose to drop *whom*: *The tutor I was assigned to was very supportive*.

**NOTE:** Inserted expressions such as *they know*, *I think*, and *she says* should be ignored in determining whether to use *who* or *whom*.

- ▶ The speech pathologist reported a particularly difficult session with a stroke patient <sup>who</sup> ~~whom~~ she knew was suffering from aphasia.  
<sup>^</sup>  
*Who* is the subject of *was suffering*, not the object of *knew*.

## 25b Use *who* and *whom* correctly in questions.

When *who* and *whom* (or *whoever* and *whomever*) are used to open questions, their case is determined by their function within the question. In the following example, *who* functions as the subject of the question.

- <sup>Who</sup>  
▶ ~~Whom~~ was responsible for creating that computer virus?  
<sup>^</sup>  
*Who* is the subject of the verb *was*.

When *whom* functions as the object of a verb or the object of a preposition in a question, it appears out of normal order. To choose the correct pronoun, you can mentally restructure the question.

- <sup>Whom</sup>  
▶ ~~Who~~ did the Democratic Party nominate in 2008?  
<sup>^</sup>  
*Whom* is the direct object of the verb *did nominate*. This becomes clear if you restructure the question: *The Democratic Party did nominate whom in 2008?*

## 25c Use *whom* for subjects or objects of infinitives.

An infinitive is the word *to* followed by the base form of a verb. (See 48b.) Subjects of infinitives are an exception to the rule that subjects must be in the subjective case. The subject of an infinitive must be in the objective case. Objects of infinitives also are in the objective case.

- ▶ When it comes to money, I know <sup>whom</sup> ~~who~~ to believe.  
<sup>^</sup>  
 The infinitive phrase *whom to believe* is the direct object of the verb *know*, and *whom* is the subject of the infinitive *to believe*.

**NOTE:** In spoken English, *who* is frequently used when the correct *whom* sounds too stuffy. Although some readers will accept constructions like *Who* [not *Whom*] *did Senator Boxer replace?* in informal written English, it is safer to use *whom* in formal writing.

**EXERCISE 25-1** Edit the following sentences to eliminate errors in the use of *who* and *whom* (or *whoever* and *whomever*). If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Answers appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

What is the address of the artist <sup>whom</sup>~~who~~ Antonio hired?  
^

- Arriving late for rehearsal, we had no idea who was supposed to dance with whom.
- The environmental policy conference featured scholars who I had never heard of.
- Whom did you support in last month's election for student government president?
- Daniel always gives a holiday donation to whomever needs it.
- So many singers came to the audition that Natalia had trouble deciding who to select for the choir.

## 26 Choose adjectives and adverbs with care.

Adjectives modify nouns or pronouns. They usually come before the word they modify; occasionally they function as complements following the word they modify. Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs. (See 46d and 46e.)

Many adverbs are formed by adding *-ly* to adjectives (*normal, normally; smooth, smoothly*). But don't assume that all words ending in *-ly* are adverbs or that all adverbs end in *-ly*. Some adjectives end in *-ly* (*lovely, friendly*), and some adverbs don't (*always, here, there*). When in doubt, consult a dictionary.



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

25 *Who* and *whom*

> Exercises: 25-2 and 25-3

> Exercises: 24/25-6 and 24/25-7 (pronoun review)

Placement of adjectives and adverbs can be a tricky matter for multilingual writers. See 30f and 30h.

## 26a Use adjectives to modify nouns.

Adjectives ordinarily precede the nouns they modify. But they can also function as subject complements or object complements, following the nouns they modify.

In English, adjectives are not pluralized to agree with the words they modify:

- ▶ The <sup>red</sup>reds roses were a surprise.  
^

### Subject complements

A subject complement follows a linking verb and completes the meaning of the subject. (See 47b.) When an adjective functions as a subject complement, it describes the subject.

*Justice is blind.*

Problems can arise with verbs such as *smell*, *taste*, *look*, and *feel*, which sometimes, but not always, function as linking verbs. If the word following one of these verbs describes the subject, use an adjective; if the word following the verb modifies the verb, use an adverb.

ADJECTIVE    The detective looked *cautious*.

ADVERB      The detective looked *cautiously* for fingerprints.

The adjective *cautious* describes the detective; the adverb *cautiously* modifies the verb *looked*.

Linking verbs suggest states of being, not actions. Notice, for example, the different meanings of *looked* in the preceding examples. To look cautious suggests the state of being cautious; to look cautiously is to perform an action in a cautious way.

- ▶ The lilacs in our backyard smell especially <sup>sweet</sup> ~~sweetly~~ this year.

The verb *smell* suggests a state of being, not an action. Therefore, it should be followed by an adjective, not an adverb.

- ▶ The drawings looked <sup>good</sup> ~~well~~ after the architect made a few changes.

The verb *looked* is a linking verb suggesting a state of being, not an action. The adjective *good* is appropriate following the linking verb to describe *drawings*. (See also 26c.)

### Object complements

An object complement follows a direct object and completes its meaning. (See 47b.) When an adjective functions as an object complement, it describes the direct object.

Sorrow makes <sup>↪</sup> *us wise*.

Object complements occur with verbs such as *call*, *consider*, *create*, *find*, *keep*, and *make*. When a modifier follows the direct object of one of these verbs, use an adjective to describe the direct object; use an adverb to modify the verb.

ADJECTIVE    The referee called the plays *perfect*.

ADVERB        The referee called the plays *perfectly*.

The first sentence means that the referee considered the plays to be perfect; the second means that the referee did an excellent job of calling the plays.

## 26b Use adverbs to modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs.

When adverbs modify verbs (or verbals), they nearly always answer the question When? Where? How? Why? Under what conditions? How often? or To what degree? When adverbs modify

adjectives or other adverbs, they usually qualify or intensify the meaning of the word they modify. (See 46e.)

Adjectives are often used incorrectly in place of adverbs in casual or nonstandard speech.

- ▶ The travel arrangement worked out <sup>perfectly</sup> ~~perfect~~ for everyone.
- ▶ The manager must see that the office runs <sup>smoothly</sup> ~~smooth~~ and <sup>efficiently</sup> ~~efficient~~.

The adverb *perfectly* modifies the verb *worked out*; the adverbs *smoothly* and *efficiently* modify the verb *runs*.

- ▶ The chance of recovering any lost property looks <sup>really</sup> ~~real~~ slim.

Only adverbs can modify adjectives or other adverbs. *Really* intensifies the meaning of the adjective *slim*.

## 26c Distinguish between *good* and *well*, *bad* and *badly*.

*Good* is an adjective (*good performance*). *Well* is an adverb when it modifies a verb (*speak well*). The use of the adjective *good* in place of the adverb *well* to modify a verb is nonstandard and especially common in casual speech.

- ▶ We were glad that Sanya had done <sup>well</sup> ~~good~~ on the CPA exam.

The adverb *well* modifies the verb *had done*.

Confusion can arise because *well* is an adjective when it modifies a noun or pronoun and means “healthy” or “satisfactory” (*The babies were well and warm*).

- ▶ Adrienne did not feel <sup>well,</sup> ~~good~~, but she performed anyway.

As an adjective following the linking verb *did feel*, *well* describes Adrienne’s health.

*Bad* is always an adjective and should be used to describe a noun; *badly* is always an adverb and should be used to modify a verb. The adverb *badly* is often used inappropriately to describe a noun, especially following a linking verb.

*bad*

- ▶ The sisters felt <sup>*bad*</sup> **badly** when they realized they had left their brother out of the planning.

The adjective *bad* is used after the linking verb *felt* to describe the noun *sisters*.

## 26d Use comparatives and superlatives with care.

Most adjectives and adverbs have three forms: the positive, the comparative, and the superlative.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
soft	softer	softest
fast	faster	fastest
careful	more careful	most careful
bad	worse	worst
good	better	best

### Comparative versus superlative

Use the comparative to compare two things, the superlative to compare three or more.

- ▶ Which of these two low-carb drinks is <sup>*better?*</sup> **best**?
- ▶ Though Shaw and Jackson are impressive, Zhao is the <sup>*most*</sup> **more** qualified of the three candidates running for mayor.

### Forming comparatives and superlatives

To form comparatives and superlatives of most one- and two-syllable adjectives, use the endings *-er* and *-est*: *smooth*, *smoother*, *smoothest*; *easy*, *easier*, *easiest*. With longer adjectives, use *more* and *most* (or *less* and *least* for downward comparisons): *exciting*, *more exciting*, *most exciting*; *helpful*, *less helpful*, *least helpful*.

Some one-syllable adverbs take the endings *-er* and *-est* (*fast*, *faster*, *fastest*), but longer adverbs and all of those ending in *-ly* form the comparative and superlative with *more* and *most* (or *less* and *least*).



The comparative and superlative forms of some adjectives and adverbs are irregular: *good, better, best; well, better, best; bad, worse, worst; badly, worse, worst*.

- ▶ The Kirov is the <sup>most talented</sup>talentedest ballet company we have seen.  
^
- ▶ According to our projections, sales at local businesses will be <sup>worse</sup>worser than those at the chain stores this winter.  
^

### Double comparatives or superlatives

Do not use double comparatives or superlatives. When you have added *-er* or *-est* to an adjective or adverb, do not also use *more* or *most* (or *less* or *least*).

- ▶ Of all her family, Julia is the **most** happiest about the move.
- ▶ All the polls indicated that Gore was more <sup>likely</sup>likelier to win than Bush.  
^

### Absolute concepts

Avoid expressions such as *more straight*, *less perfect*, *very round*, and *most unique*. Either something is unique or it isn't. It is illogical to suggest that absolute concepts come in degrees.

- ▶ That is the most <sup>unusual</sup>unique wedding gown I have ever seen.  
^
- ▶ The painting is even more <sup>valuable</sup>priceless because it is signed.  
^

## 26e Avoid double negatives.

Standard English allows two negatives only if a positive meaning is intended: *The orchestra was not unhappy with its performance* (meaning that the orchestra was happy). Using a double negative to emphasize a negative meaning is nonstandard.

Negative modifiers such as *never*, *no*, and *not* should not be paired with other negative modifiers or with negative words such as *neither*, *none*, *no one*, *nobody*, and *nothing*.

- ▶ The county is not doing <sup>anything</sup> ~~nothing~~ to see that the trash is picked up.

The double negative *not . . . nothing* is nonstandard.

The modifiers *hardly*, *barely*, and *scarcely* are considered negatives in standard English, so they should not be used with negatives such as *not*, *no one*, or *never*.

- ▶ Maxine is so weak that she <sup>can</sup> ~~can't~~ hardly climb stairs.

**EXERCISE 26-1** Edit the following sentences to eliminate errors in the use of adjectives and adverbs. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Answers appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

We weren't surprised by how <sup>well</sup> ~~good~~ the sidecar racing team  
flowed through the tricky course.

- Do you expect to perform good on the exam next week?
- With the budget deadline approaching, our office hasn't hardly had time to handle routine correspondence.
- Some flowers smell surprisingly bad.
- The customer complained that he hadn't been treated nice by the agent on the phone.
- Of all the smart people in my family, Aunt Ida is the most cleverest.

**EXERCISE 26-2** Edit the following passage to eliminate errors in the use of adjectives and adverbs.

Doctors recommend that to give skin the most fullest protection from ultraviolet rays, people should use plenty of sunscreen, limit sun exposure, and wear protective clothing. The commonest sunscreens today are known as “broad spectrum” because they block out both UVA and UVB rays. These lotions don't feel any differently on the skin from the old UVA-only types, but they work best at preventing premature aging and skin cancer. Many sunscreens claim to be waterproof, but they won't hardly



provide adequate coverage after extended periods of swimming or perspiring. To protect good, even waterproof sunscreens should be reapplied liberal and often. All areas of exposed skin, including ears, backs of hands, and tops of feet, need to be coated good to avoid burning or damage. Some people's skin reacts bad to PABA, or para-aminobenzoic acid, so PABA-free (hypoallergenic) sunscreens are widely available. In addition to recommending sunscreen, doctors almost unanimously agree that people should stay out of the sun when rays are the most strongest — between 10:00 a.m. and 3:00 p.m. — and should limit time in the sun. They also suggest that people wear long-sleeved shirts, broad-brimmed hats, and long pants whenever possible.

## 27 Choose appropriate verb forms, tenses, and moods in Standard English.

In speech, some people use verb forms and tenses that match a home dialect or variety of English. In writing, use Standard English verb forms unless you are quoting nonstandard speech or using alternative forms for literary effect. (See 17c.)

Except for the verb *be*, all verbs in English have five forms. The following list shows the five forms and provides a sample sentence in which each might appear.

BASE FORM	Usually I ( <i>walk, ride</i> ).
PAST TENSE	Yesterday I ( <i>walked, rode</i> ).
PAST PARTICIPLE	I have ( <i>walked, ridden</i> ) many times before.
PRESENT PARTICIPLE	I am ( <i>walking, riding</i> ) right now.
-S FORM	He/she/it ( <i>walks, rides</i> ) regularly.

The verb *be* has eight forms instead of the usual five: *be, am, is, are, was, were, being, been*.

### 27a Choose Standard English forms of irregular verbs.

For all regular verbs, the past-tense and past-participle forms are the same (ending in *-ed* or *-d*), so there is no danger of

confusion. This is not true, however, for irregular verbs, such as the following.

BASE FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
go	went	gone
break	broke	broken
fly	flew	flown
sing	sang	sung

The past-tense form always occurs alone, without a helping verb. It expresses action that occurred entirely in the past: *I rode to work yesterday. I walked to work last Tuesday.* The past participle is used with a helping verb. It forms the perfect tenses with *has, have, or had*; it forms the passive voice with *be, am, is, are, was, were, being, or been.* (See 46c for a complete list of helping verbs and 27f for a survey of tenses.)

PAST TENSE	Last July, we <i>went</i> to Paris.
HELPING VERB + PAST PARTICIPLE	We <i>have gone</i> to Paris twice.

The list of common irregular verbs beginning below will help you distinguish between the past tense and the past participle. Choose the past-participle form if the verb in your sentence requires a helping verb; choose the past-tense form if the verb does not require a helping verb. (See verb tenses in 27f.)

- ▶ Yesterday we <sup>saw</sup> **seen** a documentary about Isabel Allende.  
 ^  
 The past-tense *saw* is required because there is no helping verb.

- ▶ The truck was apparently <sup>stolen</sup> **stole** while the driver ate lunch.  
 ^

- ▶ By Friday, the stock market had <sup>fallen</sup> **fell** two hundred points.  
 ^  
 Because of the helping verbs *was* and *had*, the past-participle forms are required: *was stolen, had fallen.*

### Common irregular verbs

BASE FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
arise	arose	arisen
awake	awoke, awaked	awaked, awoke, awoken
be	was, were	been

BASE FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
beat	beat	beaten, beat
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bend	bent	bent
bite	bit	bitten, bit
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
burst	burst	burst
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
cling	clung	clung
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
deal	dealt	dealt
dig	dug	dug
dive	dived, dove	dived
do	did	done
drag	dragged	dragged
draw	drew	drawn
dream	dreamed, dreamt	dreamed, dreamt
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten, forgot
freeze	froze	frozen
get	got	gotten, got

*(continued)*

BASE FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grew	grown
hang (execute)	hanged	hanged
hang (suspend)	hung	hung
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
lay (put)	laid	laid
lead	led	led
lend	lent	lent
let (allow)	let	let
lie (recline)	lay	lain
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
prove	proved	proved, proven
read	read	read
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise (get up)	rose	risen
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
send	sent	sent
set (place)	set	set
shake	shook	shaken
shoot	shot	shot
shrink	shrank	shrunk
sing	sang	sung
sink	sank	sunk

BASE FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
sit (be seated)	sat	sat
slay	slew	slain
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spin	spun	spun
spring	sprang	sprung
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
sting	stung	stung
strike	struck	struck, stricken
swear	swore	sworn
swim	swam	swum
swing	swung	swung
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
throw	threw	thrown
wake	woke, waked	waked, woken
wear	wore	worn
wring	wrung	wrung
write	wrote	written

## 27b Distinguish among the forms of *lie* and *lay*.

Writers and speakers frequently confuse the various forms of *lie* (meaning “to recline or rest on a surface”) and *lay* (meaning “to put or place something”). *Lie* is an intransitive verb; it does not take a direct object: *The forms lie on the table.* The verb *lay* is transitive; it takes a direct object: *Please lay the forms on the table.* (See 47b.)

In addition to confusing the meaning of *lie* and *lay*, writers and speakers are often unfamiliar with the Standard English forms of these verbs.

BASE FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
lie (recline)	lay	lain	lying
lay (put)	laid	laid	laying

- ▶ Sue was so exhausted that she <sup>lay</sup> laid down for a nap.

The past-tense form of *lie* (“to recline”) is *lay*.

- ▶ The patient had <sup>lain</sup> laid in an uncomfortable position all night.


The past-participle form of *lie* (“to recline”) is *lain*. If the correct English seems too stilted, recast the sentence: *The patient had been lying in an uncomfortable position all night.*

- ▶ The prosecutor <sup>laid</sup> lay the pistol on a table close to the jurors.

The past-tense form of *lay* (“to place”) is *laid*.

- ▶ Letters dating from 1915 were <sup>lying</sup> laying in a corner of the chest.

The present participle of *lie* (“to rest on a surface”) is *lying*.

**EXERCISE 27-1** Edit the following sentences to eliminate problems with irregular verbs. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Answers appear in the back of the book. *More practice:*  LaunchPadSolo

The ranger <sup>saw</sup> seen the forest fire ten miles away.

- When I get the urge to exercise, I lay down until it passes.
- Grandmother had drove our new hybrid to the sunrise church service, so we were left with the station wagon.
- A pile of dirty rags was laying at the bottom of the stairs.
- How did the game know that the player had went from the room with the blue ogre to the hall where the gold was heaped?
- Abraham Lincoln took good care of his legal clients; the contracts he drew for the Illinois Central Railroad could never be broke.

## 27c Use -s (or -es) endings on present-tense verbs that have third-person singular subjects.

All singular nouns (*child*, *tree*) and the pronouns *he*, *she*, and *it* are third-person singular; indefinite pronouns such as *everyone*



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

27 Verb forms, tenses, and moods

> Exercises: 27-2 to 27-4

> LearningCurve: Verbs



and *neither* are also third-person singular. When the subject of a sentence is third-person singular, its verb takes an *-s* or *-es* ending in the present tense. (See also 21.)

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
FIRST PERSON	I	know	we	know
SECOND PERSON	you	know	you	know
THIRD PERSON	he/she/it	knows	they	know
	child	knows	parents	know
	everyone	knows		

- ▶ My neighbor <sup>drives</sup> ~~drive~~ to Marco Island every weekend.
- ▶ Sulfur dioxide <sup>turns</sup> ~~turn~~ leaves yellow, <sup>dissolves</sup> ~~dissolve~~ marble, and <sup>eats</sup> ~~eat~~ away iron and steel.

The subjects *neighbor* and *sulfur dioxide* are third-person singular, so the verbs must end in *-s*.

**TIP:** Do not add the *-s* ending to the verb if the subject is not third-person singular. The writers of the following sentences, knowing they sometimes dropped *-s* endings from verbs, over-corrected by adding the endings where they don't belong.

- ▶ I ~~prepares~~ program specifications and logic diagrams for every installation.

The writer mistakenly concluded that the *-s* ending belongs on present-tense verbs used with *all* singular subjects, not just *third-person* singular subjects. The pronoun *I* is first-person singular, so its verb does not require the *-s*.

- ▶ The dirt floors ~~requires~~ continual sweeping.

The writer mistakenly thought that the verb needed an *-s* ending because of the plural subject. But the *-s* ending is used only on present-tense verbs with third-person *singular* subjects.

### Has versus have

In the present tense, use *has* with third-person singular subjects; all other subjects require *have*.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
FIRST PERSON	I	have	we	have
SECOND PERSON	you	have	you	have
THIRD PERSON	he/she/it	has	they	have

- ▶ This respected musician almost always <sup>has</sup> ~~have~~ a message to convey in his work.

The subject *musician* is third-person singular, so the verb should be *has*.

- ▶ My law classes <sup>have</sup> ~~has~~ helped me understand contracts.

The subject of this sentence — *classes* — is third-person plural, so Standard English requires *have*. *Has* is used only with third-person singular subjects.

### Does versus do and doesn't versus don't

In the present tense, use *does* and *doesn't* with third-person singular subjects; all other subjects require *do* and *don't*.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
FIRST PERSON	I	do/don't	we	do/don't
SECOND PERSON	you	do/don't	you	do/don't
THIRD PERSON	he/she/it	does/doesn't	they	do/don't

- ▶ Grandfather really <sup>doesn't</sup> ~~don't~~ have a place to call home.

*Grandfather* is third-person singular, so the verb should be *doesn't*.

### Am, is, and are; was and were

The verb *be* has three forms in the present tense (*am*, *is*, *are*) and two in the past tense (*was*, *were*).

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
FIRST PERSON	I	am/was	we	are/were
SECOND PERSON	you	are/were	you	are/were
THIRD PERSON	he/she/it	is/was	they	are/were

- ▶ Did you think you <sup>were</sup> ~~was~~ going to drown?

The subject *you* is second-person singular, so the verb should be *were*.

## 27d Do not omit -ed endings on verbs.

Speakers who do not fully pronounce *-ed* endings sometimes omit them unintentionally in writing. Failure to pronounce *-ed* endings is common in many dialects and in informal speech, even in Standard English. In the following frequently used words and phrases, for example, the *-ed* ending is not always fully pronounced.

advised	developed	prejudiced	supposed to
asked	fixed	pronounced	used to
concerned	frightened	stereotyped	

When a verb is regular, both the past tense and the past participle are formed by adding *-ed* (or *-d*) to the base form of the verb.

### Past tense

Use the ending *-ed* or *-d* to express the past tense of regular verbs. The past tense is used when the action occurred entirely in the past.

- ▶ Over the weekend, Ed <sup>fixed</sup> ~~fix~~ his brother's skateboard and tuned up his mother's 1991 Fiat.
- ▶ Last summer, my counselor <sup>advised</sup> ~~advise~~ me to ask my chemistry instructor for help.

### Past participles

Past participles are used in three ways: (1) following *have*, *has*, or *had* to form one of the perfect tenses; (2) following *be*, *am*, *is*, *are*, *was*, *were*, *being*, or *been* to form the passive voice; and (3) as adjectives modifying nouns or pronouns. The perfect tenses are listed on page 248, and the passive voice is discussed in 8a. For a discussion of participles as adjectives, see 48b.

- ▶ Robin has <sup>asked</sup> ~~ask~~ for more housing staff for next year.

*Has asked* is present perfect tense (*have* or *has* followed by a past participle).

- ▶ Though it is not a new phenomenon, domestic violence is now **publicized** **publicize** more than ever.

^

*Is publicized* is a verb in the passive voice (a form of *be* followed by a past participle).

- ▶ All kickboxing classes end in a cool-down period to stretch **tightened** **tighten** muscles.

^

The past participle *tightened* functions as an adjective modifying the noun *muscles*.

## 27e Do not omit needed verbs.

Although Standard English allows some linking verbs and helping verbs to be contracted in informal contexts, it does not allow them to be omitted.

Linking verbs, used to link subjects to subject complements, are frequently a form of *be*: *be*, *am*, *is*, *are*, *was*, *were*, *being*, *been*. (See 47b.) Some of these forms may be contracted (*I'm*, *she's*, *we're*, *you're*, *they're*), but they should not be omitted altogether.

- ▶ When <sup>are</sup> we quiet in the evening, we can hear the crickets.

^

Helping verbs, used with main verbs, include forms of *be*, *do*, and *have* and the modal verbs *can*, *will*, *shall*, *could*, *would*, *should*, *may*, *might*, and *must*. (See 46c.) Some helping verbs may be contracted (*he's leaving*, *we'll celebrate*, *they've been told*), but they should not be omitted altogether.

- ▶ We <sup>have</sup> been in Chicago since last Thursday.

^

- ▶ Do you know someone who <sup>would</sup> be good for the job?

^

Some languages do not require a linking verb between a subject and its complement. English, however, requires a verb in every sentence. See 30a.

- ▶ Every night, I read a short book to my daughter. When I <sup>am</sup> too busy, my husband reads to her.

^

**EXERCISE 27-5** Edit the following sentences to eliminate problems with *-s* and *-ed* verb forms and with omitted verbs. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Answers appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

The Pell Grant sometimes <sup>covers</sup> ~~cover~~ the student's full tuition.  
^

- The glass sculptures of the Swan Boats was prominent in the brightly lit lobby.
- Visitors to the glass museum were not suppose to touch the exhibits.
- Our church has all the latest technology, even a closed-circuit television.
- Christos didn't know about Marlo's promotion because he never listens. He always talking.
- Most psychologists agree that no one performs well under stress.

## 27f Choose the appropriate verb tense.

Tenses indicate the time of an action in relation to the time of the speaking or writing about that action.

The most common problem with tenses—shifting confusingly from one tense to another—is discussed in section 13. Other problems with tenses are detailed in this section, after the following survey of tenses.

### Survey of tenses

Tenses are classified as present, past, and future, with simple, perfect, and progressive forms for each.

**Simple tenses** The simple tenses indicate relatively simple time relations. The *simple present* tense is used primarily for actions occurring at the same time they are being discussed or for actions occurring regularly. The *simple past* tense is used for actions completed in the past. The *simple future* tense is used for actions that will occur in the future. In the following table, the simple tenses



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhigherred.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhigherred.com/rules8e)

27 Verb forms, tenses, and moods

> Exercises: 27-6 to 27-8

> LearningCurve: Verbs

are given for the regular verb *walk*, the irregular verb *ride*, and the highly irregular verb *be*.

**SIMPLE PRESENT  
SINGULAR**

I	walk, ride, am
you	walk, ride, are
he/she/it	walks, rides, is

**PLURAL**

we	walk, ride, are
you	walk, ride, are
they	walk, ride, are

**SIMPLE PAST  
SINGULAR**

I	walked, rode, was
you	walked, rode, were
he/she/it	walked, rode, was

**PLURAL**

we	walked, rode, were
you	walked, rode, were
they	walked, rode, were

**SIMPLE FUTURE**

I, you, he/she/it, we, they	will walk, ride, be
-----------------------------	---------------------

**Perfect tenses** More complex time relations are indicated by the perfect tenses. A verb in one of the perfect tenses (a form of *have* plus the past participle) expresses an action that was or will be completed at the time of another action.

**PRESENT PERFECT**

I, you, we, they	have walked, ridden, been
he/she/it	has walked, ridden, been

**PAST PERFECT**

I, you, he/she/it, we, they	had walked, ridden, been
-----------------------------	--------------------------

**FUTURE PERFECT**

I, you, he/she/it, we, they	will have walked, ridden, been
-----------------------------	--------------------------------

**Progressive forms** The simple and perfect tenses have progressive forms that describe actions in progress. A progressive verb consists of a form of *be* followed by a present participle. The progressive forms are not normally used with certain verbs, such as *believe*, *know*, *hear*, *seem*, and *think*.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I	am walking, riding, being
he/she/it	is walking, riding, being
you, we, they	are walking, riding, being

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

I, he/she/it	was walking, riding, being
you, we, they	were walking, riding, being

**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**

I, you, he/she/it, we, they	will be walking, riding, being
-----------------------------	--------------------------------

**PRESENT PERFECT PROGRESSIVE**

I, you, we, they	have been walking, riding, being
he/she/it	has been walking, riding, being

**PAST PERFECT PROGRESSIVE**

I, you, he/she/it, we, they	had been walking, riding, being
-----------------------------	---------------------------------

**FUTURE PERFECT PROGRESSIVE**

I, you, he/she/it, we, they	will have been walking, riding, being
-----------------------------	---------------------------------------

See 28a for more specific examples of verb tenses that can be challenging for multilingual writers.

**Special uses of the present tense**

Use the present tense when expressing general truths, when writing about literature, and when quoting, summarizing, or paraphrasing an author's views.

General truths or scientific principles should appear in the present tense unless such principles have been disproved.

- ▶ Galileo taught that the earth <sup>revolves</sup> ~~revolved~~ around the sun.

Because Galileo's teaching has not been discredited, the verb should be in the present tense. The following sentence, however, is acceptable:  
*Ptolemy taught that the sun revolved around the earth.*

When writing about a work of literature, you may be tempted to use the past tense. The convention, however, is to describe fictional events in the present tense.

- In Masuji Ibuse's *Black Rain*, a child <sup>reaches</sup>reached for a pomegranate in his mother's garden, and a moment later he <sup>is</sup>was dead, killed by the blast of the atomic bomb.

When you are quoting, summarizing, or paraphrasing the author of a nonliterary work, use present-tense verbs such as *writes*, *reports*, *asserts*, and so on to introduce the source. This convention is usually followed even when the author is dead (unless a date or the context specifies the time of writing).

- Dr. Jerome Groopman <sup>argues</sup>argued that doctors are “susceptible to the subtle and not so subtle efforts of the pharmaceutical industry to sculpt our thinking” (9).

In MLA style, signal phrases are written in the present tense, not the past tense. (See also 55c.)

**APA NOTE:** When you are documenting a paper with the APA (American Psychological Association) style of in-text citations, use past tense verbs such as *reported* or *demonstrated* or present perfect verbs such as *has reported* or *has demonstrated* to introduce the source. (See also 60c.)

E. Wilson (1994) reported that positive reinforcement alone was a less effective teaching technique than a mixture of positive reinforcement and constructive criticism.

### The past perfect tense

The past perfect tense consists of a past participle preceded by *had* (*had worked*, *had gone*). This tense is used for an action already completed by the time of another past action or for an action already completed at some specific past time.

Everyone *had spoken* by the time I arrived.

I pleaded my case, but Paula *had made up* her mind.

Writers sometimes use the simple past tense when they should use the past perfect.



- ▶ We built our cabin high on a pine knoll, forty feet above an abandoned quarry that <sup>had been</sup> was flooded in 1920 to create a lake.

The building of the cabin and the flooding of the quarry both occurred in the past, but the flooding was completed before the time of building.

- ▶ By the time dinner was served, the guest of honor <sup>had</sup> left.

The past perfect tense is needed because the action of leaving was already completed at a specific past time (when dinner was served).

Some writers tend to overuse the past perfect tense. Do not use the past perfect if two past actions occurred at the same time.

- ▶ When Ernest Hemingway lived in Cuba, he <sup>wrote</sup> had written *For Whom the Bell Tolls*.

### Sequence of tenses with infinitives and participles

An infinitive is the base form of a verb preceded by *to*. (See 48b.) Use the present infinitive to show action at the same time as or later than the action of the verb in the sentence.

- ▶ Sonia had hoped to <sup>pay</sup> have paid the bill by May 1.

The action expressed in the infinitive (*to pay*) occurred later than the action of the sentence's verb (*had hoped*).

Use the perfect form of an infinitive (*to have* followed by the past participle) for an action occurring earlier than that of the verb in the sentence.

- ▶ Dan would like to <sup>have joined</sup> join the navy, but he went to college first.

The liking occurs in the present; the joining would have occurred in the past.

Like the tense of an infinitive, the tense of a participle is governed by the tense of the sentence's verb. Use the present participle (ending in *-ing*) for an action occurring at the same time as that of the sentence's verb.

*Hiking* the Appalachian Trail, we spotted many wildflowers.

Use the past participle (such as *given* or *helped*) or the present perfect participle (*having* plus the past participle) for an action occurring before that of the verb.

*Discovered* off the coast of Florida, the Spanish galleon yielded many treasures.

*Having worked* her way through college, Lee graduated debt-free.

## 27g Use the subjunctive mood in the few contexts that require it.

There are three moods in English: the *indicative*, used for facts, opinions, and questions; the *imperative*, used for orders or advice; and the *subjunctive*, used in certain contexts to express wishes, requests, or conditions contrary to fact. For many writers, the subjunctive causes the most problems.

### Forms of the subjunctive

In the subjunctive mood, present-tense verbs do not change form to indicate the number and person of the subject (see 21). Instead, the subjunctive uses the base form of the verb (*be*, *drive*, *employ*) with all subjects.

It is important that you *be* [not *are*] prepared for the interview.

We asked that she *drive* [not *drives*] more slowly.

Also, in the subjunctive mood, there is only one past-tense form of *be*: *were* (never *was*).

If I *were* [not *was*] you, I'd try a new strategy.

### Uses of the subjunctive

The subjunctive mood appears only in a few contexts: in contrary-to-fact clauses beginning with *if* or expressing a wish; in *that* clauses following verbs such as *ask*, *insist*, *recommend*, *request*, and *suggest*; and in certain set expressions.

**In contrary-to-fact clauses beginning with *if*** When a subordinate clause beginning with *if* expresses a condition contrary to fact, use the subjunctive *were* in place of *was*.

▶ If I <sup>were</sup> ~~was~~ a member of the management team, I would organize more social events for employees.

▶ The astronomers would be able to see the moons of Jupiter tonight if the weather <sup>were</sup> ~~was~~ clearer.

The verbs in these sentences express conditions that do not exist: The writer is not a member of Congress, and the weather is not clear.

Do not use the subjunctive mood in *if* clauses expressing conditions that exist or may exist.

If Dana *wins* the contest, she will leave for Barcelona in June.

**In contrary-to-fact clauses expressing a wish** In formal English, use the subjunctive *were* in clauses expressing a wish or desire.

INFORMAL I wish that Dr. Vaughn *was* my professor.


FORMAL I wish that Dr. Vaughn *were* my professor.

**In that clauses following verbs such as ask, insist, request, and suggest** Because requests have not yet become reality, they are expressed in the subjunctive mood.

▶ Professor Moore insists that her students <sup>be</sup> ~~are~~ on time for every class.

▶ We recommend that Mrs. Lambert <sup>file</sup> ~~files~~ form 1050 as soon as possible.

**In certain set expressions** The subjunctive mood, once more widely used, remains in certain set expressions: *Be that as it may, as it were, far be it from me*, and so on.

**EXERCISE 27-9** Edit the following sentences to eliminate errors in verb tense or mood. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Answers appear in the back of the book. *More practice:*  LaunchPadSolo

*had been*

After the path ~~was~~ plowed, we were able to walk in the park.

^

- The palace of Knossos in Crete is believed to have been destroyed by fire around 1375 BCE.
- Watson and Crick discovered the mechanism that controlled inheritance in all life: the workings of the DNA molecule.
- When city planners proposed rezoning the waterfront, did they know that the mayor promised to curb development in that neighborhood?
- Tonight’s concert begins at 9:30. If it was earlier, I’d consider going.
- The math position was filled by the woman who had been running the tutoring center.



# Multilingual Writers and ESL Challenges

- 28** Verbs, 256
- 29** Articles (*a, an, the*) and types of nouns, 270
- 30** Sentence structure, 279
- 31** Prepositions and idiomatic expressions, 288

This section of *Rules for Writers* is primarily for multilingual writers. You may find this section helpful if you learned English as a second language (ESL) or if you speak a language other than English with your friends and family.

## 28 Verbs

Both native and nonnative speakers of English encounter challenges with verbs. Section 28 focuses on specific challenges that multilingual writers sometimes face. You can find more help with verbs in other sections in the book:

- making subjects and verbs agree (21)
- using irregular verb forms (27a, 27b)
- leaving off verb endings (27c, 27d)
- choosing the correct verb tense (27f)
- avoiding inappropriate uses of the passive voice (8a)

### 28a Use the appropriate verb form and tense.

This section offers a brief review of English verb forms and tenses. For additional help, see 27 and 46c.

#### Basic verb forms

Every main verb in English has five forms, which are used to create all of the verb tenses in standard English. The chart at the top of page 257 shows these forms for the regular verb *help* and the irregular verbs *give* and *be*. See 27a for the forms of other common irregular verbs.

#### Verb tenses

Section 27f describes all the verb tenses in English, showing the forms of a regular verb, an irregular verb, and the verb *be* in each tense. The chart on pages 257–59 provides more details about the tenses commonly used in the active voice in writing; the chart on page 260 gives details about tenses commonly used in the passive voice.

### Basic verb forms

	REGULAR VERB <i>HELP</i>	IRREGULAR VERB <i>GIVE</i>	IRREGULAR VERB <i>BE</i> *
BASE FORM	help	give	be
PAST TENSE	helped	gave	was, were
PAST PARTICIPLE	helped	given	been
PRESENT PARTICIPLE	helping	giving	being
-S FORM	helps	gives	is

\**Be* also has the forms *am* and *are*, which are used in the present tense.

### Verb tenses commonly used in the active voice

For descriptions and examples of all verb tenses, see 27f. For verb tenses commonly used in the passive voice, see the chart on page 260.

#### Simple tenses

*For general facts, states of being, habitual actions*

##### Simple present

- general facts
- states of being
- habitual, repetitive actions
- scheduled future events

##### Base form or -s form

College students often *study* late at night.

Water *becomes* steam at 100 degrees centigrade.

We *donate* to a different charity each year.

The train *arrives* tomorrow at 6:30 p.m.

NOTE: For uses of the present tense in writing about literature, see page 249.

##### Simple past

- completed actions at a specific time in the past
- facts or states of being in the past

##### Base form + -ed or -d or irregular form

The storm *destroyed* their property. She *drove* to Montana three years ago.

When I *was* young, I usually *walked* to school with my sister.

##### Simple future

- future actions, promises, or predictions

##### will + base form

I *will exercise* tomorrow. The snowfall *will begin* around midnight.



## Verb tenses commonly used in the active voice, continued

### Simple progressive forms

For continuing actions

#### Present progressive

- actions in progress at the present time, not continuing indefinitely
- future actions (with *leave, go, come, move, etc.*)

#### am, is, are + present participle

The students *are taking* an exam in Room 105.  
The valet *is parking* the car.  
I *am leaving* tomorrow morning.

#### Past progressive

- actions in progress at a specific time in the past
- *was going to, were going to* for past plans that did not happen

#### was, were + present participle

They *were swimming* when the storm struck.  
We *were going to* drive to Florida for spring break, but the car broke down.

NOTE: Some verbs are not normally used in the progressive: *appear, believe, belong, contain, have, hear, know, like, need, see, seem, taste, understand, and want.*

#### want

- ▶ I ~~am wanting~~ to see August Wilson's *Radio Golf*.

### Perfect tenses

For actions that happened or will happen before another time

#### Present perfect

- repetitive or constant actions that began in the past and continue to the present
- actions that happened at an unknown or unspecified past time

#### has, have + past participle

I *have loved* cats since I was a child.  
Alicia *has worked* in Kenya for ten years.  
Stephen *has visited* Wales three times.

#### Past perfect

- actions that began or occurred before another time in the past

#### had + past participle

She *had just crossed* the street when the runaway car crashed into the building.

NOTE: For more discussion of uses of the past perfect, see 27f. For uses of the past perfect in conditional sentences, see 28e.





## Verb tenses commonly used in the active voice, continued

### Perfect progressive forms

For continuous past actions before another time

#### Present perfect progressive

- continuous actions that began in the past and continue to the present

**has, have + been + present participle**

Yolanda *has been trying* to get a job in Boston for five years.

#### Past perfect progressive

- actions that began and continued in the past until another past action

**had + been + present participle**

By the time I moved to Georgia, I *had been supporting* myself for five years.

## 28b To write a verb in the passive voice, use a form of *be* with the past participle.

When a sentence is written in the passive voice, the subject receives the action instead of doing it. (See “Passive transformations” in 47c.)

The solution *was measured* by the lab assistant.

To form the passive voice, use a form of *be* — *am, is, are, was, were, being, be, or been* — followed by the past participle of the main verb: *was chosen, are remembered*. (Sometimes a form of *be* follows another helping verb: *will be considered, could have been broken*.)

- ▶ *Dreaming in Cuban* was <sup>written</sup> ~~writing~~ by Cristina García.

In the passive voice, the past participle *written*, not the present participle *writing*, must follow *was* (the past tense of *be*).

- ▶ The child is being <sup>tested</sup> ~~test~~.

The past participle *tested*, not the base form *test*, must be used with *is being* to form the passive voice.

For details on forming the passive in various tenses, consult the chart on page 260. (For appropriate uses of the passive voice, see 8a.)

## Verb tenses commonly used in the passive voice

For details about verb tenses in the active voice, see pages 257–59.

### Simple tenses (passive voice)

#### Simple present

- general facts
- habitual, repetitive actions

#### **am, is, are + past participle**

Breakfast *is served* daily.  
The receipts *are counted* every night.

#### Simple past

- completed past actions

#### **was, were + past participle**

He *was rewarded* for being on time.

#### Simple future

- future actions, promises, or predictions

#### **will be + past participle**

The decision *will be made* by the committee next week.

### Simple progressive forms (passive voice)

#### Present progressive

- actions in progress at the present time
- future actions (with *leave, go, come, move*, etc.)

#### **am, is, are + being + past participle**

The new stadium *is being built* with private money.  
Jo *is being promoted* to a new job next month.

#### Past progressive

- actions in progress at a specific time in the past

#### **was, were + being + past participle**

We thought we *were being followed*.

### Perfect tenses (passive voice)

#### Present perfect

- actions that began in the past and continue to the present
- actions that happened at an unknown or unspecified time in the past

#### **has, have + been + past participle**

The flight *has been delayed* because of storms in the Midwest.  
Wars *have been fought* throughout history.

#### Past perfect

- actions that began or occurred before another time in the past

#### **had + been + past participle**

He *had been given* all the hints he needed to complete the puzzle.

**NOTE:** Future progressive, future perfect, and perfect progressive forms are not used in the passive voice.

**NOTE:** Only transitive verbs, those that take direct objects, may be used in the passive voice. Intransitive verbs such as *occur*, *happen*, *sleep*, *die*, *become*, and *fall* are not used in the passive. (See 47b.)

- ▶ The accident was happened suddenly.

**EXERCISE 28-1** Revise the following sentences to correct errors in verb forms and tenses in the active and the passive voice. You may need to look at 27a for the correct form of some irregular verbs and at 27f for help with tenses. Answers appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

The meeting <sup>begins</sup> ~~begin~~ tonight at 7:30.  
^

- a. In the past, tobacco companies deny any connection between smoking and health problems.
- b. The volunteer's compassion has touch many lives.
- c. I am wanting to register for a summer tutoring session.
- d. By the end of the year, the state will have test 139 birds for avian flu.
- e. The golfers were prepare for all weather conditions.

## 28c Use the base form of the verb after a modal.

The modal verbs are *can*, *could*, *may*, *might*, *must*, *shall*, *should*, *will*, and *would*. (*Ought to* is also considered a modal verb.) The modals are used with the base form of a verb to show ability, certainty, necessity, permission, obligation, or possibility.

Modals and the verbs that follow them do not change form to indicate tense. For a summary of modals and their meanings, see the chart on pages 262–63. (See also 27e.)

- ▶ The art museum will <sup>launch</sup> ~~launches~~ its fundraising campaign next month.  
^

The modal *will* must be followed by the base form *launch*, not the present tense *launches*.



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

28 Verbs

- > Exercises: 28-2, 28-3, and 28-13 (verb review)
- > LearningCurve: Verbs for multilingual writers

## Modals and their meanings

### can

- general ability (present)      Ants *can survive* anywhere, even in space. Jorge *can run* a marathon faster than his brother.
- informal requests or permission      *Can you tell* me where the light is? Sandy *can borrow* my calculator.

### could

- general ability (past)      Lea *could read* when she was only three years old.
- polite, informal requests or permission      *Could you give* me that pen?

### may

- formal requests or permission      *May I see* the report? Students *may park* only in the yellow zone.
- possibility      I *may try* to finish my homework tonight, or I *may wake up* early and *finish* it tomorrow.

### might

- possibility      Funding for the language lab *might double* by 2019.

NOTE: *Might* usually expresses a stronger possibility than *may*.

### must

- necessity (present or future)      To be effective, welfare-to-work programs *must provide* access to job training.
- strong probability      Amy *must be* nervous. [She is probably nervous.]
- near certainty (present or past)      I *must have left* my wallet at home. [I almost certainly left my wallet at home.]

### should

- suggestions or advice      Diabetics *should drink* plenty of water every day.
- obligations or duties      The government *should protect* citizens' rights.
- expectations      The books *should arrive* soon. [We expect the books to arrive soon.]

**will**

- certainty If you don't leave now, you *will be* late for your rehearsal.
- requests *Will you help* me study for my psychology exam?
- promises and offers Jonah *will arrange* the carpool.

**would**

- polite requests *Would you help* me carry these books? I *would like* some coffee. [*Would like* is more polite than *want*.]
- habitual or repeated actions (past) Whenever Elena needed help with sewing, she *would call* her aunt.

- ▶ The translator could <sup>↑</sup>*speak* many languages, so the ambassador hired her for the European tour.

The modal *could* must be followed by the base form *speak*, not the past tense *spoke*.

**TIP:** Do not use *to* in front of a main verb that follows a modal.

- ▶ Gina can ~~to~~ drive us home if we miss the last train.

For the use of modals in conditional sentences, see 28e.

**EXERCISE 28-4** Edit the following sentences to correct errors in the use of verb forms with modals. You may find it helpful to consult the chart on pages 262–63. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Answers appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

We should ~~to~~ order pizza for dinner.

- a. A major league pitcher can to throw a baseball more than ninety-five miles per hour.



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhigher.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhigher.com/rules8e)

28 Verbs

> Exercises: 28-5 and 28-6

> LearningCurve: Verbs for multilingual writers

- b. The writing center tutor will helps you revise your essay.
- c. A reptile must adjusted its body temperature to its environment.
- d. In some states, individuals may renew a driver's license online.
- e. My uncle, a cartoonist, could sketched a face in less than two minutes.

## 28d To make negative verb forms, add *not* in the appropriate place.

If the verb is the simple present or past tense of *be* (*am, is, are, was, were*), add *not* after the verb.

Gianna *is not* a member of the club.

For simple present-tense verbs other than *be*, use *do* or *does* plus *not* before the base form of the verb. (For the correct forms of *do* and *does*, see the chart on p. 204.)

- ▶ Mariko <sup>does not</sup> ~~no~~ want more dessert.  
^
- ▶ Mariko ~~does not want~~ more dessert.

For simple past-tense verbs other than *be*, use *did* plus *not* before the base form of the verb.

- ▶ They ~~did not planted~~ <sup>plant</sup> corn this year.  
^

In a verb phrase consisting of one or more helping verbs and a present or past participle (*is watching, were living, has played, could have been driven*), use the word *not* after the first helping verb.

- ▶ Inna should ~~have not~~ <sup>not</sup> gone dancing last night.  
^
- ▶ Bonnie ~~is no~~ <sup>not</sup> singing this weekend.  
^

**NOTE:** English allows only one negative in an independent clause to express a negative idea; using more than one is an error known as a *double negative* (see 26e).

- ▶ We could ~~not find no~~ <sup>any</sup> books about the history of our school.  
^

## 28e In a conditional sentence, choose verb tenses according to the type of condition expressed in the sentence.

Conditional sentences contain two clauses: a subordinate clause (usually starting with *if*, *when*, or *unless*) and an independent clause. The subordinate clause (sometimes called the *if* or *unless* clause) states the condition or cause; the independent clause states the result or effect. In each example in this section, the subordinate clause (*if* clause) is marked SUB, and the independent clause is marked IND. (See 48e on subordinate clauses.)

### Factual

Factual conditional sentences express relationships based on facts. If the relationship is a scientific truth, use the present tense in both clauses.

┌────────── SUB ─────────┐ ┌── IND ──┐  
If water *cools* to 32 degrees Fahrenheit, it *freezes*.

If the sentence describes a condition that is (or was) habitually true, use the same tense in both clauses.

┌────────── SUB ─────────┐ ┌── IND ──┐  
When Sue *jogs* along the canal, her dog *runs* ahead of her.

┌────────── SUB ─────────┐ ┌── IND ──┐  
Whenever the coach *asked* for help, I *volunteered*.

### Predictive

Predictive conditional sentences are used to predict the future or to express future plans or possibilities. To form a predictive sentence, use a present-tense verb in the subordinate clause; in the independent clause, use the modal *will*, *can*, *may*, *should*, or *might* plus the base form of the verb.

┌────────── SUB ─────────┐ ┌── IND ──┐  
If you *practice* regularly, your tennis game *should improve*.

┌────────── IND ─────────┐ ┌── SUB ──┐  
We *will lose* our remaining wetlands unless we *act* now.

**TIP:** In all types of conditional sentences (factual, predictive, and speculative), *if* or *unless* clauses do not use the modal verb *will*.

- ▶ If Jenna <sup>passes</sup> ~~will pass~~ her history test, she will graduate this year.

## Speculative

Speculative conditional sentences express unlikely, contrary-to-fact, or impossible conditions. English uses the past or past perfect tense in the *if* clause, even for conditions in the present or the future.

**Unlikely possibilities** If the condition is possible but unlikely in the present or the future, use the past tense in the subordinate clause; in the independent clause, use *would*, *could*, or *might* plus the base form of the verb.

SUB
IND

If I *won* the lottery, I *would travel* to Egypt.

The writer does not expect to win the lottery. Because this is a possible but unlikely present or future situation, the past tense is used in the subordinate clause.

**Conditions contrary to fact** In conditions that are currently unreal or contrary to fact, use the past-tense verb *were* (not *was*) in the *if* clause for all subjects. (See also 27g on the subjunctive mood.)

*were*

- ▶ If I *was* president, I *would make* children's issues a priority.

^

The writer is not president, so *were* is correct in the *if* clause.

**Events that did not happen** In a conditional sentence that speculates about an event that did not happen or was impossible in the past, use the past perfect tense in the *if* clause; in the independent clause, use *would have*, *could have*, or *might have* with the past participle. (See also past perfect tense, p. 258.)

SUB
IND

If I *had saved* more money, I *would have visited* Laos last year.


The writer did not save more money and did not travel to Laos. This sentence shows a possibility that did not happen.

SUB
IND

If Aunt Grace *had been* alive for your graduation, she *would have been* very proud.

Aunt Grace was not alive at the time of the graduation. This sentence shows an impossible situation in the past.



**EXERCISE 28-7** Edit the following sentences to correct problems with verbs. In some cases, more than one revision is possible. Possible revisions appear in the back of the book. *More practice:*  LaunchPadSolo

had  
 If I **have** time, I would study both French and Russian next  
 ^  
 semester.

- The electrician might have discovered the broken circuit if she went through the modules one at a time.
- If Verena wins a scholarship, she would go to graduate school.
- Whenever a rainbow appears after a storm, everybody came out to see it.
- Sarah did not understood the terms of her internship.
- If I live in Budapest with my cousin Szusza, she would teach me Hungarian cooking.

## 28f Become familiar with verbs that may be followed by gerunds or infinitives.

A gerund is a verb form that ends in *-ing* and is used as a noun: *sleeping, dreaming*. (See 48b on verbal phrases.) An infinitive is the word *to* plus the base form of the verb: *to sleep, to dream*. The word *to* is an infinitive marker, not a preposition, in this use. (See 48b on infinitive phrases.)

A few verbs may be followed by either a gerund or an infinitive; others may be followed by a gerund but not by an infinitive; still others may be followed by an infinitive but not by a gerund.

### Verb + gerund or infinitive (no change in meaning)

The following commonly used verbs may be followed by a gerund or an infinitive, with little or no difference in meaning:

begin	hate	love
continue	like	start

I love *skiing*. I love *to ski*.



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhigher.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhigher.com/rules8e)

28 Verbs

- > Exercises: 28-8, 28-9, and 28-13 (verb review)
- > LearningCurve: Verbs for multilingual writers

**Verb + gerund or infinitive (change in meaning)**

With a few verbs, the choice of a gerund or an infinitive changes the meaning dramatically:

forget      remember      stop      try

She stopped *speaking* to Lucia. [She no longer spoke to Lucia.]

She stopped *to speak* to Lucia. [She paused so that she could speak to Lucia.]

**Verb + gerund**

These verbs may be followed by a gerund but not by an infinitive:

admit	discuss	imagine	put off	risk
appreciate	enjoy	miss	quit	suggest
avoid	escape	postpone	recall	tolerate
deny	finish	practice	resist	

Bill enjoys *playing* [not *to play*] the piano.

Jamie quit *smoking*.

**Verb + infinitive**

These verbs may be followed by an infinitive but not by a gerund:

agree	decide	manage	plan	wait
ask	expect	mean	pretend	want
beg	help	need	promise	wish
claim	hope	offer	refuse	would like

Jill has offered *to water* [not *watering*] the plants while we are away.

Joe finally managed *to find* a parking space.

A few of these verbs may be followed either by an infinitive directly or by a noun or pronoun plus an infinitive:

ask	help	promise	would like
expect	need	want	

We asked *to speak* to the congregation.

We asked *Rabbi Abrams to speak* to our congregation.

### Verb + noun or pronoun + infinitive

With certain verbs in the active voice, a noun or pronoun must come between the verb and the infinitive that follows it. The noun or pronoun usually names a person who is affected by the action of the verb.

advise	convince	order	tell
allow	encourage	persuade	urge
cause	have (own)	remind	warn
command	instruct	require	

V            N    r   INF   ʃ

The class encouraged Luis to tell the story of his escape.

The counselor *advised Haley to take* four courses instead of five.

### Verb + noun or pronoun + unmarked infinitive

An unmarked infinitive is an infinitive without *to*. A few verbs (often called *causative verbs*) may be followed by a noun or pronoun and an unmarked infinitive.

have (cause)	let (allow)
help	make (force)

Jorge *had the valet park* his car.

► Rose had the attendant ~~to~~ wash the windshield.

► Frank made me ~~to~~ carry his book for him.

**NOTE:** *Help* can be followed by a noun or pronoun and either an unmarked or a marked infinitive.

Emma *helped Brian wash* the dishes.

Emma *helped Brian to wash* the dishes.

**NOTE:** The infinitive is used in some typical constructions with *too* and *enough*.

**TOO + ADJECTIVE + INFINITIVE**

The gift is *too large to wrap*.

**ENOUGH + NOUN + INFINITIVE**

Our emergency pack has *enough bottled water to last* a week.

**ADJECTIVE + ENOUGH + INFINITIVE**

Some of the hikers felt *strong enough to climb* another thousand feet.

**EXERCISE 28–10** Form sentences by adding gerund or infinitive constructions to the following sentence openings. In some cases, more than one kind of construction is possible. Possible answers appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

Please remind your sister to call me.

- I enjoy
- The tutor told Samantha
- The team hopes
- Ricardo and his brothers miss
- Jon remembered

## 29 Articles

Articles (*a, an, the*) are part of a category of words known as *noun markers* or *determiners*.

### 29a Be familiar with articles and other noun markers.

Standard English uses noun markers to help identify the nouns that follow. In addition to articles (*a, an, and the*), noun markers include the following:

- possessive nouns, such as *Elena's* (See 36a.)
- possessive pronoun/adjectives: *my, your, his, her, its, our, their* (See 46b.)
- demonstrative pronoun/adjectives: *this, that, these, those* (See 46b.)
- quantifiers: *all, any, each, either, every, few, many, more, most, much, neither, several, some*, and so on (See 29d.)
- numbers: *one, twenty-three*, and so on



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

28 Verbs

- > Exercises: 28-11 to 28-13 (verb review)
- > LearningCurve: Verbs for multilingual writers

## Using articles and other noun markers

Articles and other noun markers always appear before nouns; sometimes other modifiers, such as adjectives, come between a noun marker and a noun.

ART N  
Felix is reading a book about mythology.

ART ADJ N  
We took an exciting trip to Alaska last summer.

NOUN  
MARKER ADV ADJ N  
That very delicious meal was expensive.

In most cases, do not use an article with another noun marker.

- ▶ **The** Natalie's older brother lives in Wisconsin.

Expressions like *a few*, *the most*, and *all the* are exceptions: *a few potatoes*, *all the rain*. See also 29d.

## Types of articles and types of nouns

To choose an appropriate article for a noun, you must first determine whether the noun is *common* or *proper*, *count* or *noncount*, *singular* or *plural*, and *specific* or *general*. The chart on pages 273–74 describes the types of nouns.

Articles are classified as *indefinite* and *definite*. The indefinite articles, *a* and *an*, are used with general nouns. The definite article, *the*, is used with specific nouns. (The last section of the chart on pp. 273–74 explains general and specific nouns.)

*A* and *an* both mean “one” or “one among many.” Use *a* before a consonant sound: *a banana*, *a vacation*, *a picture*, *a happy child*, *a united family*. Use *an* before a vowel sound: *an eggplant*, *an occasion*, *an uncle*, *an honorable person*. (See also *a*, *an* in the glossary of usage.)

*The* shows that a noun is specific; use *the* with one or more than one specific thing: *the newspaper*, *the soldiers*.

## 29b Use *the* with most specific common nouns.

The definite article, *the*, is used with most nouns—both count and noncount—that the reader can identify specifically. Usually the identity will be clear to the reader for one of the six reasons on pages 272–74. (See also the chart on p. 275.)

1. The noun has been previously mentioned.

- ▶ A truck cut in front of our van. When <sup>the</sup> truck skidded a few seconds later, we almost crashed into it.

The article *A* is used before *truck* when the noun is first mentioned. When the noun is mentioned again, it needs the article *the* because readers can now identify which truck skidded—the one that cut in front of the van.

2. A phrase or clause following the noun restricts its identity.

- ▶ Bryce warned me that <sup>the</sup> GPS in his car was not working.

The phrase *in his car* identifies the specific GPS.

**NOTE:** Descriptive adjectives do not necessarily make a noun specific. A specific noun is one that readers can identify within a group of nouns of the same type.

- ▶ If I win the lottery, I will buy <sup>a</sup> the brand-new bright red sports car.

The reader cannot identify which specific brand-new bright red sports car the writer will buy. Even though *car* has many adjectives in front of it, it is a general noun in this sentence.

3. A superlative adjective such as *best* or *most intelligent* makes the noun's identity specific. (See also 26d on comparatives and superlatives.)

- ▶ Our petite daughter dated <sup>the</sup> tallest boy in her class.

The superlative *tallest* makes the noun *boy* specific. Although there might be several tall boys, only one boy can be the tallest.

4. The noun describes a unique person, place, or thing.

- ▶ During an eclipse, one should not look directly at <sup>the</sup> sun.

There is only one sun in our solar system, so its identity is clear.

5. The context or situation makes the noun's identity clear.

- ▶ Please don't slam <sup>the</sup> door when you leave.

Both the speaker and the listener know which door is meant.

## Types of nouns

### Common or proper

#### Common nouns

- name general persons, places, things, or ideas
- begin with lowercase

#### Examples

religion	beauty
knowledge	student
rain	country

#### Proper nouns

- name specific persons, places, things, or ideas
- begin with capital letter

#### Examples

Hinduism	President Adams
Philip	Blue Mosque
Vietnam	Renaissance

### Count or noncount (common nouns only)

#### Count nouns

- name persons, places, things, or ideas that can be counted
- have plural forms

#### Examples

girl, girls
city, cities
goose, geese
philosophy, philosophies

#### Noncount nouns

- name things or abstract ideas that cannot be counted
- cannot be made plural

#### Examples

water	patience
silver	knowledge
furniture	air

NOTE: See the chart on page 276 for commonly used noncount nouns.

### Singular or plural (both common and proper)

#### Singular nouns

##### (count and noncount)

- represent one person, place, thing, or idea

#### Examples

backpack	rain
country	beauty
woman	Nile River
achievement	Block Island

#### Plural nouns (count only)

- represent more than one person, place, thing, or idea
- must be count nouns

#### Examples

backpacks	Ural Mountains
countries	Falkland Islands
women	achievements



**Types of nouns**, continued**Specific (definite) or general (indefinite) (count and noncount)****Specific nouns**

- name persons, places, things, or ideas that can be identified within a group of the same type

**Examples**

*The students* in Professor Martin's *class* should study.

*The airplane* carrying *the senator* was late.

*The furniture* in *the truck* was damaged.

**General nouns**

- name categories of persons, places, things, or ideas (often plural)

**Examples**

*Students* should study.

*Books* bridge *gaps* between *cultures*.

*The airplane* has made commuting between *cities* easy.

6. The noun is singular and refers to a scientific class or category of items (most often animals, musical instruments, and inventions).

**The tin**

- ▶ **Tin** whistle is common in traditional Irish music.

^

The writer is referring to the tin whistle as a class of musical instruments.

## 29c Use *a* (or *an*) with common singular count nouns that refer to “one” or “any.”

If a count noun refers to one unspecified item (not a whole category), use the indefinite article, *a* or *an*. *A* and *an* usually mean “one among many” but can also mean “any one.” (See the chart on p. 275.)

- ▶ My English professor asked me to bring <sup>a</sup> dictionary to class.

The noun *dictionary* refers to “one unspecified dictionary” or “any dictionary.”



- ▶ We want to <sup>an</sup>rent apartment close to the lake.

The noun *apartment* refers to “any apartment close to the lake,” not a specific apartment.

### Choosing articles for common nouns

#### Use *the*

- if the reader has enough information to identify the noun specifically
  - COUNT:** Please turn on *the lights*. We're going to *the lake* tomorrow.
  - NONCOUNT:** *The food* throughout Italy is excellent.

#### Use *a* or *an*

- if the noun refers to one item
  - COUNT:** Bring *a pencil* to class. Charles wrote *an essay* about his first job.
- if the item is singular but not specific

**NOTE:** Do not use *a* or *an* with plural or noncount nouns.

#### Use a quantifier (*enough, many, some, etc.*)

- if the noun represents an unspecified amount of something
  - COUNT (plural):** Amir showed us *some photos* of India. *Many turtles* return to the same nesting site each year.
- if the amount is more than one but not all items in a category
  - NONCOUNT:** We didn't get *enough rain* this summer.

**NOTE:** Sometimes no article conveys an unspecified amount: *Amir showed us photos of India.*

#### Use no article

- if the noun represents all items in a category
  - COUNT (plural):** *Students* can attend the show for free.
- if the noun represents a category in general
  - NONCOUNT:** *Coal* is a natural resource.

**NOTE:** *The* is occasionally used when a singular count noun refers to all items in a class or a specific category: *The bald eagle* is no longer endangered in the United States.

**Commonly used noncount nouns****Food and drink**

beef, bread, butter, candy, cereal, cheese, cream, meat, milk, pasta, rice, salt, sugar, water, wine

**Nonfood substances**

air, cement, coal, dirt, gasoline, gold, paper, petroleum, plastic, rain, silver, snow, soap, steel, wood, wool

**Abstract nouns**

advice, anger, beauty, confidence, courage, employment, fun, happiness, health, honesty, information, intelligence, knowledge, love, poverty, satisfaction, wealth

**Use no article**

biology (and other areas of study), clothing, equipment, furniture, homework, jewelry, luggage, machinery, mail, money, news, poetry, pollution, research, scenery, traffic, transportation, violence, weather, work

**NOTE:** A few noncount nouns (such as *love*) can also be used as count nouns: *He had two loves: music and archery.*

## 29d Use a quantifier such as *some* or *more*, not *a* or *an*, with a noncount noun to express an approximate amount.

Do not use *a* or *an* with noncount nouns. Also do not use numbers or words such as *several* or *many*; they must be used with plural nouns, and noncount nouns do not have plural forms. (See the chart above for a list of commonly used noncount nouns.)

- ▶ Dr. Snyder gave us **an** information about the Peace Corps.
- ▶ Do you have **many** money with you?

You can use quantifiers such as *enough*, *less*, and *some* to suggest approximate amounts or nonspecific quantities of noncount

nouns: *a little salt, any homework, enough wood, less information, much pollution.*

- ▶ Vincent's mother told him that she had <sup>some</sup> a news that would surprise him.

## 29e Do not use articles with nouns that refer to all of something or something in general.

When a noncount noun refers to all of its type or to a concept in general, it is not marked with an article.

### Kindness

- ▶ ~~The~~ kindness is a virtue.

^  
The noun represents kindness in general; it does not represent a specific type of kindness, such as *the kindness he showed me after my mother's death.*

- ▶ In some parts of the world, ~~the~~ rice is preferred to all other grains.

The noun *rice* represents rice in general. To refer to a specific type or serving of rice, the definite article is appropriate: *The rice my husband served last night is the best I've ever tasted.*

In most cases, when you use a count noun to represent a general category, make the noun plural. Do not use unmarked singular count nouns to represent whole categories.

### Fountains are

- ▶ ~~Fountain~~ is an expensive element of landscape design.

^  
*Fountains* is a count noun that represents fountains in general.

**EXCEPTION:** In some cases, *the* can be used with singular count nouns to represent a class or specific category: *The Chinese alligator is smaller than the American alligator.* See also number 6 in 29b.

## 29f Do not use articles with most singular proper nouns. Use *the* with most plural proper nouns.


Since singular proper nouns are already specific, they typically do not need an article: *Prime Minister Cameron, Jamaica, Lake Huron, Mount Etna.*

There are, however, many exceptions. In most cases, if the proper noun consists of a common noun with modifiers (adjectives or an *of* phrase), use *the* with the proper noun.

- ▶ We visited <sup>the</sup> Great Wall of China last year.
- ▶ Rob wants to be a translator for <sup>the</sup> Central Intelligence Agency.

*The* is used with most plural proper nouns: *the McGregors*, *the Bahamas*, *the Finger Lakes*, *the United States*.

Geographic names create problems because there are so many exceptions to the rules. When in doubt, consult the chart on page 279, check a dictionary, or ask a native speaker.

**EXERCISE 29-1** Edit the following sentences for proper use of articles and nouns. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Answers appear in the back of the book. *More practice:*  LaunchPadSolo

~~The~~ Josefina’s dance routine was flawless.

- a. Doing volunteer work often brings a satisfaction.
- b. As I looked out the window of the plane, I could see the Cape Cod.
- c. Melina likes to drink her coffees with lots of cream.
- d. Recovering from abdominal surgery requires patience.
- e. I completed the my homework assignment quickly.

**EXERCISE 29-2** Articles have been omitted from the following description of winter weather. Insert the articles *a, an,* and *the* where English requires them and be prepared to explain the reasons for your choices.

Many people confuse terms *hail*, *sleet*, and *freezing rain*. Hail normally occurs in thunderstorm and is caused by strong updrafts that lift growing chunks of ice into clouds. When chunks of ice, called hailstones, become too heavy to be carried by updrafts, they fall to ground. Hailstones can cause damage to crops, windshields, and people. Sleet occurs during winter storms and is caused by snowflakes falling from layer of cold air into warm layer, where they become raindrops, and then into another cold layer. As they



fall through last layer of cold air, raindrops freeze and become small ice pellets, forming sleet. When it hits car windshield or windows of house, sleet can make annoying racket. Driving and walking can be hazardous when sleet accumulates on roads and sidewalks. Freezing rain is basically rain that falls onto ground and then freezes after it hits ground. It causes icy glaze on trees and any surface that is below freezing.

### Using *the* with geographic nouns

#### When to omit *the*

streets, squares, parks	Ivy Street, Union Square, Denali National Park
cities, states, counties	Miami, New Mexico, Bee County
most countries, continents	Italy, Nigeria, China, South America, Africa
bays, single lakes	Tampa Bay, Lake Geneva
single mountains, islands	Mount Everest, Crete

#### When to use *the*

country names with <i>of</i> phrase	the United States (of America), the People's Republic of China
large regions, deserts	the East Coast, the Sahara
peninsulas	the Baja Peninsula, the Sinai Peninsula
oceans, seas, gulfs	the Pacific Ocean, the Dead Sea, the Persian Gulf
canals and rivers	the Panama Canal, the Amazon
mountain ranges	the Rocky Mountains, the Alps
groups of islands	the Solomon Islands

# 30

## Sentence structure

Although their structure can vary widely, sentences in English generally flow from subject to verb to object or complement: *Bears eat fish*. This section focuses on the major challenges that



There is

- ▶ Is an apple pie in the refrigerator.

^

there are

- ▶ As you know, many religious sects in India.

^

Notice that the verb agrees with the subject that follows it: *apple pie is, sects are.* (See 21g.)

Sometimes an inverted sentence has an infinitive (*to work*) or a noun clause (*that she is intelligent*) as the subject. In such sentences, the placeholder *it* is needed before the verb. (See also 48b and 48e.)

EXP V

┌ S ─┐

┌ S ─┐

V

It is important to study daily. (To study daily is important.)

it

- ▶ Because the road is flooded, is necessary to change our route.

^

**TIP:** The words *here* and *there* are not used as subjects. When they mean “in this place” (*here*) or “in that place” (*there*), they are adverbs, not nouns.

- ▶ I just returned from a vacation in Japan. There is very

beautiful.

^

This school

- ▶ Here offers a master’s degree in physical therapy; there has

^

only a bachelor’s program.

### 30c Do not use both a noun and a pronoun to perform the same grammatical function in a sentence.

English does not allow a subject to be repeated in its own clause.

- ▶ The doctor she advised me to cut down on salt.

The pronoun *she* cannot repeat the subject, *doctor*.

Do not add a pronoun even when a word group comes between the subject and the verb.

- ▶ The watch that I lost on vacation it was in my backpack.

The pronoun *it* cannot repeat the subject, *watch*.

Some languages allow “topic fronting,” placing a word or phrase (a “topic”) at the beginning of a sentence and following it with an independent clause that explains something about the topic. This form is not allowed in English because the sentence seems to start with one subject but then introduces a new subject in an independent clause.

INCORRECT      TOPIC      IND CLAUSE  
 The seeds I planted them last fall.

The sentence can be corrected by bringing the topic (*seeds*) into the independent clause.

- ▶ ~~The seeds~~ I planted <sup>the seeds</sup> ~~them~~ last fall.  
 ^

### 30d Do not repeat a subject, an object, or an adverb in an adjective clause.

Adjective clauses begin with relative pronouns (*who*, *whom*, *whose*, *which*, *that*) or relative adverbs (*when*, *where*). Relative pronouns usually serve as subjects or objects in the clauses they introduce; another word in the clause cannot serve the same function. Relative adverbs should not be repeated by other adverbs later in the clause.

ADJ CLAUSE  
 The cat ran under the car that was parked on the street.

- ▶ ~~The cat ran under the car that it was parked on the street.~~

The relative pronoun *that* is the subject of the adjective clause, so the pronoun *it* cannot be added as a subject.

- ▶ ~~Myrna enjoyed the investment seminars that she attended them last week.~~

The relative pronoun *that* is the object of the verb *attended*. The pronoun *them* cannot also serve as an object.

Sometimes the relative pronoun is understood but not present in the sentence. In such cases, do not add another word with the same function as the omitted pronoun.




- ▶ Myrna enjoyed the seminars she attended ~~them~~ last week.

The relative pronoun *that* is understood after *seminars* even though it is not present in the sentence.

If the clause begins with a relative adverb, do not use another adverb with the same meaning later in the clause.

- ▶ The office where I work ~~there~~ is one hour from the city.

The adverb *there* cannot repeat the relative adverb *where*.

**EXERCISE 30-1** In the following sentences, add needed subjects or expletives and delete any repeated subjects, objects, or adverbs. Answers appear in the back of the book. *More practice:*  LaunchPadSolo

The new geology professor is the one whom we saw ~~him~~ on TV this morning.

- Are some cartons of ice cream in the freezer.
- I don't use the subway because am afraid.
- The prime minister she is the most popular leader in my country.
- We tried to get in touch with the same manager whom we spoke to him earlier.
- Recently have been a number of earthquakes in Turkey.

## 30e Avoid mixed constructions beginning with *although* or *because*.

A word group that begins with *although* cannot be linked to a word group that begins with *but* or *however*. The result is an error called a *mixed construction* (see also 11a). Similarly, a word group that begins with *because* cannot be linked to a word group that begins with *so* or *therefore*.

If you want to keep *although* or *because*, drop the other linking word (see the examples on p. 284).



- ▶ Although Nikki Giovanni is best known for her poetry for adults, **but** she has written several books for children.
- ▶ Because German and Dutch are related languages, **therefore** tourists from Berlin can usually read a few signs in Amsterdam.

If you want to keep the other linking word, omit *although* or *because*.

- ▶ ~~Although~~ Nikki Giovanni is best known for her poetry for adults, but she has written several books for children.
- ▶ ~~Because~~ German and Dutch are related languages<sup>,</sup>; ~~therefore~~<sup>,</sup> tourists from Berlin can usually read a few signs in Amsterdam.

For advice about using commas and semicolons with linking words, see 32a and 34b.

### 30f Do not place an adverb between a verb and its direct object.

Adverbs modifying verbs can appear in various positions: at the beginning or end of a sentence, before or after a verb, or between a helping verb and its main verb.

*Slowly*, we drove along the rain-slick road.

Mia handled the teapot very *carefully*.

Martin *always* wins our tennis matches.

Christina is *rarely* late for our lunch dates.

My daughter has *often* spoken of you.

The election results were being *closely* followed by analysts.

However, an adverb cannot appear between a verb and its direct object.

- ▶ Mother wrapped <sup>*carefully*</sup> ~~carefully~~ the gift.

The adverb *carefully* cannot appear between the verb, *wrapped*, and its direct object, *the gift*.

**EXERCISE 30–4** Edit the following sentences for proper sentence structure. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Answers appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

She peeled ~~slowly~~ the banana/ <sup>slowly.</sup>  
^

- Although freshwater freezes at 32 degrees Fahrenheit, however ocean water freezes at 28 degrees Fahrenheit.
- Because we switched cable packages, so our channel lineup has changed.
- The competitor mounted confidently his skateboard.
- My sister performs well the *legong*, a Balinese dance.
- Because product development is behind schedule, we will have to launch the product next spring.

## 30g Distinguish between present participles and past participles used as adjectives.

Both present and past participles may be used as adjectives. The present participle always ends in *-ing*. Past participles usually end in *-ed*, *-d*, *-en*, *-n*, or *-t*. (See 27a.)

PRESENT PARTICIPLES     confusing, speaking, boring

PAST PARTICIPLES         confused, spoken, bored

Like all other adjectives, participles can come before nouns; they also can follow linking verbs, in which case they describe the subject of the sentence. (See 47b.)

Use a present participle to describe a person or thing *causing or stimulating an experience*.

The *boring lecture* put us to sleep. [The lecture caused boredom.]

Use a past participle to describe a person or thing *undergoing an experience*.

The *audience was bored* by the lecture. [The audience experienced boredom.]



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhigher.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhigher.com/rules8e)

30 Sentence structure

> Exercises: 30–5 and 30–6

> LearningCurve: Sentence structure for multilingual writers

Participles that describe emotions or mental states often cause the most confusion.

annoying/annoyed	exhausting/exhausted
boring/bored	fascinating/fascinated
confusing/confused	frightening/frightened
depressing/depressed	satisfying/satisfied
exciting/excited	surprising/surprised

- Our afternoon hike to Thundering Brook Falls was **exhausting**.  
**exhausted**.

^  
*Exhausting* suggests that the hike caused exhaustion.

*exhausted*

- The **exhausting** hikers reached the campground just before midnight.

^  
*Exhausted* describes how the hikers felt.

**EXERCISE 30-7** Edit the following sentences for proper use of present and past participles. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Answers appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

Danielle and Monica were very **exciting** to be going to a Broadway show for the first time.

- Listening to everyone’s complaints all day was irritated.
- The long flight to Singapore was exhausted.
- His skill at chess is amazing.
- After a great deal of research, the scientist made a fascinated discovery.
- Surviving that tornado was one of the most frightened experiences I’ve ever had.



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

30 Sentence structure

> Exercises: 30-8 and 30-9

> LearningCurve: Sentence structure for multilingual writers

## 30h Place cumulative adjectives in an appropriate order.

Adjectives usually come before the nouns they modify and may also come after linking verbs. (See 46d and 47b.)

ADJ      N                                  V    ADJ

Janine wore a new necklace. Janine's necklace was new.

Cumulative adjectives, which cannot be joined by the word *and* or separated by commas, must come in a particular order. If you use cumulative adjectives before a noun, see the chart on this page. The chart is only a guide; don't be surprised if you encounter exceptions. (See also 33d.)

- ▶ My dorm room has only a desk and a <sup>stained red plastic</sup> plastic ~~red stained~~ chair.

### Order of cumulative adjectives

FIRST	ARTICLE OR OTHER NOUN MARKER	a, an, the, her, Joe's, two, many, some
	EVALUATIVE WORD	attractive, dedicated, delicious, ugly, disgusting
	SIZE	large, enormous, small, little
	LENGTH OR SHAPE	long, short, round, square
	AGE	new, old, young, antique
	COLOR	yellow, blue, crimson
	NATIONALITY	French, Peruvian, Vietnamese
	RELIGION	Catholic, Protestant, Jewish, Muslim
	MATERIAL	silver, walnut, wool, marble
	↓	
LAST	NOUN/ADJECTIVE	tree (as in <i>tree</i> house), kitchen (as in <i>kitchen</i> table)
	THE NOUN MODIFIED	house, coat, bicycle, bread, woman, coin

*My large blue wool coat is in the attic.*  
 Joe's collection includes *two small antique silver* coins.



**At, on, and in to show time and place****Showing time**

- AT** at a specific time: *at 7:20, at dawn, at dinner*
- ON** on a specific day or date: *on Tuesday, on June 4*
- IN** in a part of a 24-hour period: *in the afternoon, in the daytime [but at night]*  
 in a year or month: *in 2008, in July*  
 in a period of time: *finished in three hours*

**Showing place**

- AT** at a meeting place or location: *at home, at the club*  
 at the edge of something: *sitting at the desk*  
 at the corner of something: *turning at the intersection*  
 at a target: *throwing the snowball at Lucy*
- ON** on a surface: *placed on the table, hanging on the wall*  
 on a street: *the house on Spring Street*  
 on an electronic medium: *on television, on the Internet*
- IN** in an enclosed space: *in the garage, in an envelope*  
 in a geographic location: *in San Diego, in Texas*  
 in a print medium: *in a book, in a magazine*

**EXERCISE 31-1** In the following sentences, replace prepositions that are not used correctly. You may need to refer to the chart on this page. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Answers appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

The play begins <sup>at</sup> ~~on~~ 7:20 p.m.  
 ^

- Whenever we eat at the Centerville Café, we sit at a small table on the corner of the room.
- In the 1990s, entrepreneurs created new online businesses in record numbers.
- In Thursday, Nancy will attend her first home repair class at the community center.



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhigherred.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhigherred.com/rules8e)

31 Prepositions and idiomatic expressions

> Exercises: 31-2 and 31-3

> LearningCurve: Prepositions for multilingual writers

- d. Alex began looking for her lost mitten in another location.
- e. We decided to go to a restaurant because there was no fresh food on the refrigerator.

### 31b Use nouns (including -ing forms) after prepositions.

In a prepositional phrase, use a noun (not a verb) after the preposition. Sometimes the noun will be a gerund, the *-ing* verb form that functions as a noun (see 48b).

- ▶ Our student government is good at <sup>saving</sup> save money.

Distinguish between the preposition *to* and the infinitive marker *to*. If *to* is a preposition, it should be followed by a noun or a gerund.

- ▶ We are dedicated to <sup>helping</sup> help the poor.

If *to* is an infinitive marker, it should be followed by the base form of the verb.

- ▶ We want to <sup>help</sup> helping the poor.

To test whether *to* is a preposition or an infinitive marker, insert a word that you know is a noun after the word *to*. If the noun makes sense in that position, *to* is a preposition. If the noun does not make sense after *to*, then *to* is an infinitive marker.

Zoe is addicted to \_\_\_\_\_.

They are planning to \_\_\_\_\_.

In the first sentence, a noun (such as *magazines*) makes sense after *to*, so *to* is a preposition and should be followed by a noun or a gerund: Zoe is addicted *to magazines*. Zoe is addicted *to running*.

In the second sentence, a noun (such as *magazines*) does not make sense after *to*, so *to* is an infinitive marker and must be followed by the base form of the verb: They are planning *to build* a new school.



### 31c Become familiar with common adjective + preposition combinations.

Some adjectives appear only with certain prepositions. These expressions are idiomatic and may be different from the combinations used in your native language.

- ▶ Paula is married <sup>to</sup> with Jon.

Check an ESL dictionary for combinations that are not listed in the chart at the bottom of this page.

### 31d Become familiar with common verb + preposition combinations.

Many verbs and prepositions appear together in idiomatic phrases. Pay special attention to the combinations that are different from the combinations used in your native language.

- ▶ Your success depends <sup>on</sup> of your effort.

Check an ESL dictionary for combinations that are not listed in the chart on page 292.

#### Adjective + preposition combinations

accustomed to	connected to	guilty of	preferable to
addicted to	covered with	interested in	proud of
afraid of	dedicated to	involved in	responsible
angry with	devoted to	involved with	for
ashamed of	different from	known as	satisfied with
aware of	engaged in	known for	scared of
committed to	engaged to	made of ( <i>or</i>	similar to
concerned	excited about	made from)	tired of
about	familiar with	married to	worried
concerned with	full of	opposed to	about

**Verb + preposition combinations**

agree with	compare with	forget about	speak to (or
apply to	concentrate on	happen to	speak with)
approve of	consist of	hope for	stare at
arrive at	count on	insist on	succeed at
arrive in	decide on	listen to	succeed in
ask for	depend on	participate in	take advantage of
believe in	differ from	rely on	take care of
belong to	disagree with	reply to	think about
care about	dream about	respond to	think of
care for	dream of	result in	wait for
compare to	feel like	search for	wait on

# Punctuation

- 32** The comma, 294
- 33** Unnecessary commas, 308
- 34** The semicolon, 313
- 35** The colon, 317
- 36** The apostrophe, 319
- 37** Quotation marks, 323
- 38** End punctuation, 330
- 39** Other punctuation marks, 332

# 32 The comma

The comma was invented to help readers. Without it, sentence parts can collide into one another unexpectedly, causing misreadings.

**CONFUSING** If you cook Elmer will do the dishes.

**CONFUSING** While we were eating a rattlesnake approached our campsite.

Add commas in the logical places (after *cook* and *eating*), and suddenly all is clear. No longer is Elmer being cooked, the rattlesnake being eaten.

Various rules have evolved to prevent such misreadings and to speed readers along through complex grammatical structures. Those rules are detailed in this section. (Section 33 explains when not to use commas.)

## 32a Use a comma before a coordinating conjunction joining independent clauses.

When a coordinating conjunction connects two or more independent clauses — word groups that could stand alone as separate sentences — a comma must precede it. There are seven coordinating conjunctions in English: *and*, *but*, *or*, *nor*, *for*, *so*, and *yet*.

A comma tells readers that one independent clause has come to a close and that another is about to begin.

- ▶ The department sponsored a seminar on college survival skills, and it also hosted a barbecue for new students.

**EXCEPTION:** If the two independent clauses are short and there is no danger of misreading, the comma may be omitted.

The plane took off and we were on our way.

**TIP:** As a rule, do *not* use a comma with a coordinating conjunction that joins only two words, phrases, or subordinate clauses. (See 33a.)

- ▶ A good money manager controls expenses, and invests surplus dollars to meet future needs.

The word group following *and* is not an independent clause; it is the second half of a compound predicate (*controls . . . and invests*).

## 32b Use a comma after an introductory clause or phrase.

The most common introductory word groups are clauses and phrases functioning as adverbs. Such word groups usually tell when, where, how, why, or under what conditions the main action of the sentence occurred. (See 48a, 48b, and 48e.)

A comma tells readers that the introductory clause or phrase has come to a close and that the main part of the sentence is about to begin.

- ▶ When Irwin was ready to iron, his cat tripped on the cord.

Without the comma, readers may have Irwin ironing his cat. The comma signals that *his cat* is the subject of a new clause, not part of the introductory one.

- ▶ Near a small stream at the bottom of the canyon, the park rangers discovered an abandoned mine.


The comma tells readers that the introductory prepositional phrase has come to a close.

**EXCEPTION:** The comma may be omitted after a short adverb clause or phrase if there is no danger of misreading: *In no time we were at 2,800 feet.*

Sentences also frequently begin with participial phrases that function as adjectives, describing the noun or pronoun immediately following them. The comma tells readers that they are about to learn the identity of the person or thing described; therefore, the comma is usually required even when the phrase is short. (See 48b.)

- ▶ Buried under layers of younger rocks, the earth's oldest rocks contain no fossils.

**NOTE:** Other introductory word groups include transitional expressions and absolute phrases (see 32f).

**EXERCISE 32-1** Add or delete commas where necessary in the following sentences. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Answers appear in the back of the book. *More practice:*  LaunchPadSolo

Because we had been saving molding for a few weeks, we had enough wood to frame all thirty paintings.

- Alisa brought the injured bird home, and fashioned a splint out of Popsicle sticks for its wing.
- Considered a classic of early animation *The Adventures of Prince Achmed* used hand-cut silhouettes against colored backgrounds.
- If you complete the evaluation form and return it within two weeks you will receive a free breakfast during your next stay.
- After retiring from the New York City Ballet in 1965, legendary dancer Maria Tallchief went on to found the Chicago City Ballet.
- Roger had always wanted a handmade violin but he couldn't afford one.

**EXERCISE 32-2** Add or delete commas where necessary in the following sentences. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Answers appear in the back of the book.

The car had been sitting idle for a month, so the battery was completely dead.

- J. R. R. Tolkien finished writing his draft of *The Lord of the Rings* trilogy in 1949 but the first book in the series wasn't published until 1954.
- In the first two minutes of its ascent the space shuttle had broken the sound barrier and reached a height of over twenty-five miles.
- German shepherds can be gentle guide dogs or they can be fierce attack dogs.
- Some former professional cyclists claim that the use of performance-enhancing drugs is widespread in cycling and they argue that no rider can be competitive without doping.
- As an intern, I learned most aspects of the broadcasting industry but I never learned about fundraising.



### 32c Use a comma between all items in a series.

When three or more items are presented in a series, those items should be separated from one another with commas. Items in a series may be single words, phrases, or clauses.

- ▶ Langston Hughes's poetry is concerned with racial pride, social justice, and the diversity of the African American experience.
- ▶ Bubbles of air, leaves, ferns, bits of wood, and insects are often found trapped in amber.

Although some writers view the last comma in a series as optional, most experts advise using the comma because its omission can result in ambiguity or misreading.

- ▶ My uncle willed me all of his property, houses, and boats.  
Did the uncle will his property *and* houses *and* boats — or simply his property, consisting of houses and boats? If the former meaning is intended, a comma is necessary to prevent ambiguity.
- ▶ The activities include touring the White House, visiting the Air and Space Museum, attending a lecture about the Founding Fathers, and kayaking on the Potomac River.  
Without the comma, the activities might seem to include a lecture about kayaking, not participating in kayaking. The comma makes it clear that *kayaking on the Potomac River* is a separate item in the series.

### 32d Use a comma between coordinate adjectives not joined with *and*. Do not use a comma between cumulative adjectives.

When two or more adjectives each modify a noun separately, they are coordinate.

Roberto is a *warm, gentle, affectionate* father.

If the adjectives can be joined with *and*, the adjectives are coordinate, so you should use commas: *warm and gentle* and *affectionate (warm, gentle, affectionate)*.

Adjectives that do not modify the noun separately are cumulative.

*Three large gray shapes* moved slowly toward us.

Beginning with the adjective closest to the noun *shapes*, these modifiers lean on one another, piggyback style, with each modifying a larger word group. *Gray* modifies *shapes*, *large* modifies *gray shapes*, and *three* modifies *large gray shapes*. Cumulative adjectives cannot be joined with *and* (not *three and large and gray shapes*).

#### COORDINATE ADJECTIVES


- ▶ Should patients with severe, irreversible brain damage be put on life support systems?

Adjectives that can be connected with *and* are coordinate: *severe and irreversible*.

#### CUMULATIVE ADJECTIVES

- ▶ Ira ordered a rich/chocolate/layer cake.

Ira didn't order a cake that was rich and chocolate and layer: He ordered a *layer cake* that was *chocolate*, a *chocolate layer cake* that was *rich*.

**EXERCISE 32-5** Add or delete commas where necessary in the following sentences. If a sentence is correct, write "correct" after it. Answers appear in the back of the book. *More practice:*  LaunchPadSolo

We gathered our essentials, took off for the great outdoors, and ignored the fact that it was Friday the 13th.

- a. The cold impersonal atmosphere of the university was unbearable.
- b. An ambulance threaded its way through police cars, fire trucks and irate citizens.
- c. The *1812 Overture* is a stirring, magnificent piece of music.





- d. After two broken arms, three cracked ribs and one concussion, Ken quit the varsity football team.
- e. My cat's pupils had constricted to small black shining slits.

**EXERCISE 32-6** Add or delete commas where necessary in the following sentences. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Answers appear in the back of the book.

Good social workers excel in patience, diplomacy, and positive thinking.

- a. NASA's rovers on Mars are equipped with special cameras that can take close-up high-resolution pictures of the terrain.
- b. A baseball player achieves the triple crown by having the highest batting average, the most home runs, and the most runs batted in during the regular season.
- c. If it does not get enough sunlight, a healthy green lawn can turn into a shriveled brown mess within a matter of days.
- d. Love, vengeance, greed and betrayal are common themes in Western literature.
- e. Many experts believe that shark attacks on surfers are a result of the sharks' mistaking surfboards for small, injured seals.

## 32e Use commas to set off nonrestrictive (nonessential) elements. Do not use commas to set off restrictive (essential) elements.

Certain word groups that modify nouns or pronouns can be restrictive or nonrestrictive — that is, essential or not essential to the meaning of a sentence. These word groups are usually adjective clauses, adjective phrases, or appositives.

### Restrictive elements

A restrictive element defines or limits the meaning of the word it modifies; it is therefore essential to the meaning of the sentence and is not set off with commas. If you remove a restrictive modifier from a sentence, the meaning changes significantly, becoming more general than you intended.

**RESTRICTIVE (NO COMMAS)**

The campers need clothes *that are durable*.

Scientists *who study the earth's structure* are called geologists.

The first sentence does not mean that the campers need clothes in general. The intended meaning is more limited: The campers need durable clothes. The second sentence does not mean that scientists in general are called geologists; only those scientists who specifically study the earth's structure are called geologists. The italicized word groups are essential and are therefore not set off with commas.

**Nonrestrictive elements**

A nonrestrictive modifier describes a noun or pronoun whose meaning has already been clearly defined or limited. Because the modifier contains nonessential or parenthetical information, it is set off with commas. If you remove a nonrestrictive element from a sentence, the meaning does not change dramatically. Some meaning may be lost, but the defining characteristics of the person or thing described remain the same.

**NONRESTRICTIVE (WITH COMMAS)**

The campers need sturdy shoes, *which are expensive*.

The scientists, *who represented eight different universities*, met to review applications for the Advancements in Science Award.

In the first sentence, the campers need sturdy shoes, and the shoes happen to be expensive. In the second sentence, the scientists met to review applications for the award; that they represented eight different universities is informative but not critical to the meaning of the sentence. The nonessential information in both sentences is set off with commas.

**NOTE:** Often it is difficult to tell whether a word group is restrictive or nonrestrictive without seeing it in context and considering the writer's meaning. Both of the following sentences are grammatically correct, but their meaning is slightly different.

The dessert made with fresh raspberries was delicious.

The dessert, made with fresh raspberries, was delicious.

In the first example, the phrase *made with fresh raspberries* tells readers which of two or more desserts the writer is referring to. In the example with commas, the phrase merely adds information about the dessert.

## Adjective clauses

Adjective clauses are patterned like sentences, containing subjects and verbs, but they function within sentences as modifiers of nouns or pronouns. They always follow the word they modify, usually immediately. Adjective clauses begin with a relative pronoun (*who*, *whom*, *whose*, *which*, *that*) or with a relative adverb (*where*, *when*). (See also 48e.)

Nonrestrictive adjective clauses are set off with commas; restrictive adjective clauses are not.

### NONRESTRICTIVE CLAUSE (WITH COMMAS)

- ▶ Ed's house, which is located on thirteen acres, was completely furnished with bats in the rafters and mice in the kitchen.

The adjective clause *which is located on thirteen acres* does not restrict the meaning of *Ed's house*; the information is nonessential and is therefore set off with commas.

### RESTRICTIVE CLAUSE (NO COMMAS)

- ▶ The giant panda that was born at the San Diego Zoo in 2003, was sent to China in 2007.

Because the adjective clause *that was born at the San Diego Zoo in 2003* identifies one particular panda out of many, the information is essential and is therefore not set off with commas.

**NOTE:** Use *that* only with restrictive (essential) clauses. Many writers prefer to use *which* only with nonrestrictive (nonessential) clauses, but usage varies.

## Adjective phrases

Prepositional or verbal phrases functioning as adjectives may be restrictive or nonrestrictive. Nonrestrictive phrases are set off with commas; restrictive phrases are not.

### NONRESTRICTIVE PHRASE (WITH COMMAS)

- ▶ The helicopter, with its million-candlepower spotlight illuminating the area, circled above.

The *with* phrase is nonessential because its purpose is not to specify which of two or more helicopters is being discussed. The phrase is not required for readers to understand the meaning of the sentence.

## RESTRICTIVE PHRASE (NO COMMAS)

- ▶ One corner of the attic was filled with newspapers/dating

from the early 1900s.

*Dating from the early 1900s* restricts the meaning of *newspapers*, so the comma should be omitted.

- ▶ The bill/proposed by the Illinois representative/would

lower taxes for middle-income families.

*Proposed by the Illinois representative* identifies exactly which bill is meant.

## Appositives

An appositive is a noun or noun phrase that renames a nearby noun. Nonrestrictive appositives are set off with commas; restrictive appositives are not.

## NONRESTRICTIVE APPOSITIVE (WITH COMMAS)


- ▶ Darwin's most important book, *On the Origin of Species*,  
was the result of many years of research.

*Most important* restricts the meaning to one book, so the appositive *On the Origin of Species* is nonrestrictive and should be set off with commas.

## RESTRICTIVE APPOSITIVE (NO COMMAS)

- ▶ The song/“Viva la Vida,” was blasted out of huge amplifiers.

Once they've read *song*, readers still don't know precisely which song the writer means. The appositive following *song* restricts its meaning, so the appositive should not be set off with commas.

**EXERCISE 32-9** Add or delete commas where necessary in the following sentences. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Answers appear in the back of the book. *More practice:*  LaunchPadSolo

My sister, who plays center on the Sparks, now lives at

The Sands, a beach house near Los Angeles.

- a. Choreographer Alvin Ailey's best-known work *Revelations* is more than just a crowd-pleaser.
- b. Twyla Tharp's contemporary ballet *Push Comes to Shove* was made famous by the Russian dancer Baryshnikov. [*Tharp has written more than one contemporary ballet.*]
- c. The glass sculptor sifting through hot red sand explained her technique to the other glassmakers. [*There is more than one glass sculptor.*]
- d. A member of an organization, that provides job training for teens, was also appointed to the education commission.
- e. Brian Eno who began his career as a rock musician turned to meditative compositions in the late 1970s.

## 32f Use commas to set off transitional and parenthetical expressions, absolute phrases, and word groups expressing contrast.

### Transitional expressions

Transitional expressions serve as bridges between sentences or parts of sentences. They include conjunctive adverbs such as *however*, *therefore*, and *moreover* and transitional phrases such as *for example*, *as a matter of fact*, and *in other words*. (For complete lists of these expressions, see 34b.)

When a transitional expression appears between independent clauses in a compound sentence, it is preceded by a semicolon and is usually followed by a comma. (See 34b.)

- ▶ Minh did not understand our language; moreover, he was unfamiliar with our customs.

When a transitional expression appears at the beginning of a sentence or in the middle of an independent clause, it is usually set off with commas.

- ▶ As a matter of fact, American football was established in the mid-nineteenth century by fans who wanted to play a more organized game of rugby.



- ▶ Natural foods are not always salt free; celery, for example, contains more sodium than most people would imagine.

**EXCEPTION:** If a transitional expression blends smoothly with the rest of the sentence, calling for little or no pause in reading, it does not need to be set off with a comma. Expressions such as *also*, *at least*, *certainly*, *consequently*, *indeed*, *of course*, *moreover*, *no doubt*, *perhaps*, *then*, and *therefore* do not always call for a pause.

Alice's bicycle is broken; *therefore* you will need to borrow Sue's.

### Parenthetical expressions

Expressions that are distinctly parenthetical, providing only supplemental information, should be set off with commas. They interrupt the flow of a sentence or appear at the end as afterthoughts.

- ▶ Evolution, as far as we know, doesn't work this way.

### Absolute phrases

An absolute phrase, which modifies the whole sentence, usually consists of a noun followed by a participle or participial phrase. (See 48d.) Absolute phrases may appear at the beginning or at the end of a sentence and should be set off with commas.

ABSOLUTE PHRASE

N PARTICIPLE

The sun appearing for the first time in a week, we were at last able to begin the archaeological dig.

- ▶ Elvis Presley made music industry history in the 1950s, his records having sold more than ten million copies.

**NOTE:** Do not insert a comma between the noun and the participle in an absolute construction.

- ▶ The next contestant, being five years old, the host adjusted the height of the microphone.

### Word groups expressing contrast

Sharp contrasts beginning with words such as *not*, *never*, and *unlike* are set off with commas.

- ▶ The Epicurean philosophers sought mental, not bodily, pleasures.
- ▶ Unlike Robert, Rae Marie enjoyed managing the household budget.

### 32g Use commas to set off nouns of direct address, the words *yes* and *no*, interrogative tags, and mild interjections.

- ▶ Forgive me, Angela, for forgetting your birthday.
- ▶ Yes, the loan will probably be approved.
- ▶ The film was faithful to the book, wasn't it?
- ▶ Well, cases like these are difficult to decide.

### 32h Use commas with expressions such as *he said* to set off direct quotations.

- ▶ In his “Letter from Birmingham Jail,” Martin Luther King Jr. wrote, “We know through painful experience that freedom is never voluntarily given by the oppressor; it must be demanded by the oppressed” (225).

See 37 on the use of quotation marks and pages 467–68 on citing literary sources in MLA style.

## 32i Use commas with dates, addresses, titles, and numbers.

### Dates

In dates, set off the year from the rest of the sentence with a pair of commas.

- ▶ On December 12, 1890, orders were sent out for the arrest of Sitting Bull.

**EXCEPTIONS:** Commas are not needed if the date is inverted or if only the month and year are given.

The security alert system went into effect on 15 April 2009.  
February 2015 was an extremely snowy month.

### Addresses

The elements of an address or a place name are separated with commas. A zip code, however, is not preceded by a comma.

- ▶ John Lennon was born in Liverpool, England, in 1940.
- ▶ Please send the package to Greg Tarvin at 708 Spring Street, Washington, IL 61571.

### Titles

If a title follows a name, set off the title from the rest of the sentence with a pair of commas.

- ▶ Ann Hall, MD, has been appointed to the board of trustees.

### Numbers

In numbers more than four digits long, use commas to separate the numbers into groups of three, starting from the right. In numbers four digits long, a comma is optional.

3,500 [or 3500]  
100,000  
5,000,000



**EXCEPTIONS:** Do not use commas in street numbers, zip codes, telephone numbers, or years with four or fewer digits.

## 32j Use a comma to prevent confusion.

In certain situations, a comma is necessary to prevent confusion. If the writer has intentionally left out a word or phrase, for example, a comma may be needed to signal the omission.

- ▶ To err is human; to forgive, divine.

If two words in a row echo each other, a comma may be needed for ease of reading.

- ▶ The catastrophe that we had feared might happen, happened.

Sometimes a comma is needed to prevent readers from grouping words in ways that do not match the writer's intention.

- ▶ Patients who can, walk up and down the halls every day.

**EXERCISE 32-11** This exercise covers the major uses of the comma described in 32a–32e. Add or delete commas where necessary. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Answers appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

Even though our brains actually can't focus on two tasks

at a time, many people believe they can multitask.

- Cricket which originated in England is also popular in Australia, South Africa and India.
- At the sound of the starting pistol the horses surged forward toward the first obstacle, a sharp incline three feet high.
- After seeing an exhibition of Western art Gerhard Richter escaped from East Berlin, and smuggled out many of his notebooks.
- Corrie's new wet suit has an intricate, blue pattern.
- We replaced the rickety, old, spiral staircase with a sturdy, new ladder.



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhigher.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhigher.com/rules8e)

32 The comma

> Exercises: 32-13 to 32-17

> LearningCurve: Commas

**EXERCISE 32–12** This exercise covers all uses of the comma. Add or delete commas where necessary in the following sentences. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Answers appear in the back of the book.

“Yes, neighbors, we must work together to save the community center,” urged Mr. Owusu.

- On January 15, 2008 our office moved to 29 Commonwealth Avenue, Mechanicsville VA 23111.
- The coach having bawled us out thoroughly, we left the locker room with his harsh words ringing in our ears.
- Ms. Carlson you are a valued customer whose satisfaction is very important to us.
- Mr. Mundy was born on July 22, 1939 in Arkansas, where his family had lived for four generations.
- Her board poised at the edge of the half-pipe, Nina waited her turn to drop in.

## 33 Unnecessary commas

Many common misuses of the comma result from a misunderstanding of the major comma rules presented in 32.

### 33a Do not use a comma with a coordinating conjunction that joins only two words, phrases, or subordinate clauses.

Though a comma should be used before a coordinating conjunction joining independent clauses (see 32a) or with a series of three or more elements (see 32c), these rules should not be extended to other compound word groups.

- ▶ Ron discovered a leak, and came back to fix it.

The coordinating conjunction *and* links two verbs in a compound predicate: *discovered* and *came*.

- ▶ We knew that she had won, but that the election was close.

The coordinating conjunction *but* links two subordinate clauses, each beginning with *that*.

### 33b Do not use a comma to separate a verb from its subject or object.

A sentence should flow from subject to verb to object without unnecessary pauses. Commas may appear between these major sentence elements only when a specific rule calls for them.

- ▶ Zoos large enough to give the animals freedom to roam, are becoming more popular.

The comma should not separate the subject, *Zoos*, from the verb, *are becoming*.

### 33c Do not use a comma before the first or after the last item in a series.

Though commas are required between items in a series (32c), do not place them either before or after the whole series.

- ▶ Other causes of asthmatic attacks are, stress, change in temperature, and cold air.
- ▶ Ironically, even novels that focus on horror, evil, and alienation, often have themes of spiritual renewal and redemption as well.

### 33d Do not use a comma between cumulative adjectives, between an adjective and a noun, or between an adverb and an adjective.

Commas are required between coordinate adjectives (those that can be joined with *and*), but they do not belong between

cumulative adjectives (those that cannot be joined with *and*). (For a full discussion, see 32d.)

- ▶ In the corner of the closet, we found an old/maroon hatbox.

A comma should never be used between an adjective and the noun that follows it.

- ▶ It was a senseless, dangerous/mission.

Nor should a comma be used between an adverb and an adjective that follows it.

- ▶ The Hillside is a good home for severely/disturbed youths.

### 33e Do not use commas to set off restrictive elements.

Restrictive elements are modifiers or appositives that restrict the meaning of the nouns they follow. Because they are essential to the meaning of the sentence, they are not set off with commas. (For a full discussion of restrictive and nonrestrictive elements, see 32e.)

- ▶ Drivers/who think they own the road/make cycling a

dangerous sport.

The modifier *who think they own the road* restricts the meaning of *Drivers* and is essential to the meaning of the sentence. Putting commas around the *who* clause falsely suggests that all drivers think they own the road.

- ▶ Margaret Mead's book/Coming of Age in Samoa/stirred up

considerable controversy when it was published in 1928.

Since Mead wrote more than one book, the appositive contains information essential to the meaning of the sentence.

### 33f Do not use a comma to set off a concluding adverb clause that is essential for meaning.

When adverb clauses introduce a sentence, they are nearly always followed by a comma (see 32b). When they conclude a sentence,

however, they are not set off by commas if their content is essential to the meaning of the earlier part of the sentence. Adverb clauses beginning with *after*, *as soon as*, *because*, *before*, *if*, *since*, *unless*, *until*, and *when* are usually essential.

- ▶ Don't visit Paris at the height of the tourist season/~~unless~~

you have booked hotel reservations.

Without the *unless* clause, the meaning of the sentence might at first seem broader than the writer intended.

When a concluding adverb clause is nonessential, it should be preceded by a comma. Clauses beginning with *although*, *even though*, *though*, and *whereas* are usually nonessential.

- ▶ The lecture seemed to last only a short time, although the  
clock said it had gone on for more than an hour.

### 33g Do not use a comma after a phrase that begins an inverted sentence.

Though a comma belongs after most introductory phrases (see 32b), it does not belong after phrases that begin an inverted sentence. In an inverted sentence, the subject follows the verb, and a phrase that ordinarily would follow the verb is moved to the beginning (see 47c).

- ▶ At the bottom of the hill/~~sat~~ the stubborn mule.

### 33h Avoid other common misuses of the comma.

Do not use a comma in the following situations.

AFTER A COORDINATING CONJUNCTION (*AND*, *BUT*, *OR*, *NOR*, *FOR*, *SO*, *YET*)

- ▶ Occasionally TV talk shows are performed live, but/~~more~~ often they are taped.

AFTER *SUCH AS* OR *LIKE*

- ▶ Shade-loving plants such as/ begonias, impatiens, and coleus can add color to a shady garden.

AFTER *ALTHOUGH*

- ▶ Although/ the air was balmy, the water was too cold for swimming.

## BEFORE A PARENTHESIS

- ▶ Though Sylvia's ACT score was low/ (only 15), her admissions essay was superior.

## TO SET OFF AN INDIRECT (REPORTED) QUOTATION

- ▶ Samuel Goldwyn once said/ that a verbal contract isn't worth the paper it's written on.

## WITH A QUESTION MARK OR AN EXCLAMATION POINT

- ▶ "Why don't you try it?/" she coaxed. "You can't do any worse than the rest of us."

**EXERCISE 33-1** Delete any unnecessary commas in the following sentences. If a sentence is correct, write "correct" after it. Answers appear in the back of the book.

*More practice:*  LaunchPadSolo

In his Silk Road Project, Yo-Yo Ma incorporates work by musicians such as/ Kayhan Kalhor and Richard Danielpour.

- After the morning rains cease, the swimmers emerge from their cottages.
- Tricia's first artwork was a bright, blue, clay dolphin.



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

33 Unnecessary commas

> Exercises: 33-3 to 33-5

> LearningCurve: Commas

- c. Some modern musicians, (trumpeter John Hassell is an example) blend several cultural traditions into a unique sound.
- d. Myra liked hot, spicy foods such as, chili, kung pao chicken, and buffalo wings.
- e. On the display screen, was a soothing pattern of light and shadow.

**EXERCISE 33-2** Delete unnecessary commas in the following passage.

Each spring since 1970, New Orleans has hosted the Jazz and Heritage Festival, an event that celebrates the music, food, and culture, of the region. Although, it is often referred to as “Jazz Fest,” the festival typically includes a wide variety of musical styles such as, gospel, Cajun, blues, zydeco, and, rock and roll. Famous musicians who have appeared regularly at Jazz Fest, include Dr. John, B. B. King, and Aretha Franklin. Large stages are set up throughout the fairgrounds in a way, that allows up to ten bands to play simultaneously without any sound overlap. Food tents are located throughout the festival, and offer popular, local dishes like crawfish Monica, jambalaya, and fried, green tomatoes. Following Hurricane Katrina in 2005, Jazz Fest revived quickly, and attendance has steadily increased each year. Fans, who cannot attend the festival, still enjoy the music by downloading songs, and watching performances online.

## 34 The semicolon

The semicolon is used to connect major sentence elements of equal grammatical rank.

### 34a Use a semicolon between closely related independent clauses not joined with a coordinating conjunction.

When two independent clauses appear in one sentence, they are usually linked with a comma and a coordinating conjunction (*and, but, or, nor, for, so, yet*). The coordinating conjunction signals the relation between the clauses. If the clauses are closely

related and the relation is clear without a conjunction, they may be linked with a semicolon instead.

In film, a low-angle shot makes the subject look powerful; a high-angle shot does just the opposite.

A semicolon must be used whenever a coordinating conjunction has been omitted between independent clauses. To use merely a comma creates a type of run-on sentence known as a *comma splice*. (See 20.)

- ▶ In 1800, a traveler needed six weeks to get from New York City to Chicago; in 1860, the trip by railroad took only two days.

### 34b Use a semicolon between independent clauses linked with a transitional expression.

Transitional expressions include conjunctive adverbs and transitional phrases.

#### CONJUNCTIVE ADVERBS

accordingly	furthermore	moreover	still
also	hence	nevertheless	subsequently
anyway	however	next	then
besides	incidentally	nonetheless	therefore
certainly	indeed	now	thus
consequently	instead	otherwise	
conversely	likewise	similarly	
finally	meanwhile	specifically	

#### TRANSITIONAL PHRASES

after all	even so	in fact
as a matter of fact	for example	in other words
as a result	for instance	in the first place
at any rate	in addition	on the contrary
at the same time	in conclusion	on the other hand

When a transitional expression appears between independent clauses, it is preceded by a semicolon and usually followed by a comma.



- ▶ Many corals grow very gradually<sup>;</sup> in fact, the creation of a coral reef can take centuries.

When a transitional expression appears in the middle or at the end of the second independent clause, the semicolon goes *between the clauses*.

- ▶ Biologists have observed laughter in primates other than humans<sup>;</sup> chimpanzees, however, sound more like they are panting than laughing.

Transitional expressions should not be confused with the coordinating conjunctions *and*, *but*, *or*, *nor*, *for*, *so*, and *yet*, which are preceded by a comma when they link independent clauses. (See 32a.)

### 34c Use a semicolon between items in a series containing internal punctuation.

- ▶ Classic science fiction sagas are *Star Trek*, with Mr. Spock<sup>;</sup> *Battlestar Galactica*, with its Cylons<sup>;</sup> and *Star Wars*, with Han Solo, Luke Skywalker, and Darth Vader.

Without the semicolons, the reader would have to sort out the major groupings, distinguishing between important and less important pauses according to the logic of the sentence. By inserting semicolons at the major breaks, the writer does this work for the reader.

### 34d Avoid common misuses of the semicolon.

Do not use a semicolon in the following situations.

BETWEEN A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE AND THE REST OF THE SENTENCE

- ▶ Although children's literature was added to the National Book Awards in 1969<sup>;</sup> it has had its own award, the Newbery Medal, since 1922.

## BETWEEN AN APPOSITIVE AND THE WORD IT REFERS TO

- ▶ The scientists were fascinated by the species *Argyroneta aquatica*; a spider that lives underwater.


## TO INTRODUCE A LIST

- ▶ Some of my favorite celebrities have been animal rights advocates; Betty White, Casey Affleck, and Dave Navarro.

## BETWEEN INDEPENDENT CLAUSES JOINED BY AND, BUT, OR, NOR, FOR, SO, OR YET

- ▶ Five of the applicants had worked with spreadsheets; but only one was familiar with database management.

**EXCEPTIONS:** If one or both of the independent clauses contain a comma, you may use a semicolon with a coordinating conjunction between the clauses.

**EXERCISE 34-1** Add commas or semicolons where needed in the following well-known quotations. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Answers appear in the back of the book. *More practice:*  LaunchPadSolo

If an animal does something, we call it instinct; if we do the same thing, we call it intelligence. — Will Cuppy

- Do not ask me to be kind just ask me to act as though I were. — Jules Renard
- When men talk about defense they always claim to be protecting women and children but they never ask the women and children what they think. — Pat Schroeder
- When I get a little money I buy books if any is left I buy food and clothes. — Desiderius Erasmus
- America is a country that doesn't know where it is going but is determined to set a speed record getting there. — Laurence J. Peter
- Wit has truth in it wisecracking is simply calisthenics with words. — Dorothy Parker



**EXERCISE 34–2** Edit the following sentences to correct errors in the use of the comma and the semicolon. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Answers appear in the back of the book.

Love is blind; envy has its eyes wide open.  
^

- Strong black coffee will not sober you up, the truth is that time is the only way to get alcohol out of your system.
- Margaret was not surprised to see hail and vivid lightning, conditions had been right for violent weather all day.
- There is often a fine line between right and wrong; good and bad; truth and deception.
- My mother always says that you can't learn common sense; either you're born with it or you're not.
- Severe, unremitting pain is a ravaging force; especially when the patient tries to hide it from others.

## 35 The colon

The colon is used primarily to call attention to the words that follow it. In addition, the colon has some conventional uses.

### 35a Use a colon after an independent clause to direct attention to a list, an appositive, a quotation, or a summary or an explanation.

#### A LIST

The daily routine should include at least the following: twenty knee bends, fifty sit-ups, and five minutes of running in place.

#### AN APPOSITIVE

My roommate is guilty of two of the seven deadly sins: gluttony and sloth.

#### A QUOTATION

Consider the words of Benjamin Franklin: “There never was a good war or a bad peace.”

**A SUMMARY OR AN EXPLANATION**

Faith is like love: It cannot be forced.

The novel is clearly autobiographical: The author even gives his own name to the main character.

**NOTE:** For other ways of introducing quotations, see “Introducing quoted material” on pages 327–28. When an independent clause follows a colon, begin with a capital letter. Some disciplines use a lowercase letter instead. See 45f for variations.

## 35b Use a colon according to convention.

**SALUTATION IN A LETTER** Dear Sir or Madam:

**HOURS AND MINUTES** 5:30 p.m.

**PROPORTIONS** The ratio of women to men was 2:1.

**TITLE AND SUBTITLE** *The Glory of Hera: Greek Mythology and the Greek Family*

**BIBLIOGRAPHIC ENTRIES** Boston: Bedford, 2014

**CHAPTER AND VERSE IN SACRED TEXT** Luke 2:14, Qur’an 67:3

## 35c Avoid common misuses of the colon.

A colon must be preceded by a full independent clause. Therefore, avoid using it in the following situations.

### BETWEEN A VERB AND ITS OBJECT OR COMPLEMENT

- ▶ Some important vitamins found in vegetables are/vitamin A, thiamine, niacin, and vitamin C.

### BETWEEN A PREPOSITION AND ITS OBJECT

- ▶ The heart’s two pumps each consist of/an upper chamber, or atrium, and a lower chamber, or ventricle.

### AFTER *SUCH AS*, *INCLUDING*, OR *FOR EXAMPLE*

- ▶ The NCAA regulates college athletic teams, including/basketball, baseball, softball, and football.

**EXERCISE 35-1** Edit the following sentences to correct errors in the use of the comma, the semicolon, or the colon. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Answers appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

Lifting the cover gently, Luca found the source of the odd

sound; a marble in the gears.

- We always looked forward to Thanksgiving in Vermont: It was our only chance to see our Grady cousins.
- If we have come to fight, we are far too few, if we have come to die, we are far too many.
- The travel package includes: a round-trip ticket to Athens, a cruise through the Cyclades, and all hotel accommodations.
- The news article portrays the land use proposal as reckless; although 62 percent of the town's residents support it.
- Psychologists Kindlon and Thompson (2000) offer parents a simple starting point for raising male children, “Teach boys that there are many ways to be a man” (p. 256).

# 36 The apostrophe

## 36a Use an apostrophe to indicate that a noun is possessive.

Possessive nouns usually indicate ownership, as in *Tim's hat*, *the lawyer's desk*. Frequently, however, ownership is only loosely implied: *the tree's roots*, *a day's work*. If you are not sure whether a noun is possessive, try turning it into an *of* phrase: *the roots of the tree*, *the work of a day*. (Pronouns also have possessive forms. See 36b and 36e.)

### When to add -'s

- If the noun does not end in -s, add -'s.

Luck often propels a rock musician's career.



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhigher.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhigher.com/rules8e)

35 The colon

> Exercises: 35-2 and 35-3

> LearningCurve: Semicolons and colons

The Children's Defense Fund is a nonprofit organization that supports programs for poor and minority children.

2. If the noun is singular and ends in *-s* or an *s* sound, add *-s* to indicate possession.

Lois's sister spent last year in India.

Her article presents an overview of Marx's teachings.

**NOTE:** To avoid potentially awkward pronunciation, some writers use only the apostrophe with a singular noun ending in *-s*: *Sophocles'*.

### When to add only an apostrophe

If the noun is plural and ends in *-s*, add only an apostrophe.

Both diplomats' briefcases were searched by guards.

### Joint possession

To show joint possession, use *-s* or *(-s')* with the last noun only; to show individual possession, make all nouns possessive.

Have you seen Joyce and Greg's new camper?

John's and Marie's expectations of marriage couldn't have been more different.

Joyce and Greg jointly own one camper. John and Marie individually have different expectations.

### Compound nouns

If a noun is compound, use *-s* (or *-s'*) with the last element.

My father-in-law's memoir about his childhood in Sri Lanka was published in October.

## 36b Use an apostrophe and *-s* to indicate that an indefinite pronoun is possessive.

Indefinite pronouns refer to no specific person or thing: *everyone*, *someone*, *no one*, *something*. (See 46b.)

Someone's raincoat has been left behind.

### 36c Use an apostrophe to mark omissions in contractions and numbers.

In a contraction, the apostrophe takes the place of one or more missing letters. *It's* stands for *it is*, *can't* for *cannot*.

It's a shame that Frank can't go on the tour.

The apostrophe is also used to mark the omission of the first two digits of a year (*the class of '08*) or years (*the '60s generation*).

### 36d Do not use an apostrophe in certain situations.

An apostrophe typically is not used to pluralize numbers, letters, abbreviations, and words mentioned as words. Note the few exceptions and be consistent throughout your paper.

#### Plural of numbers

Do not use an apostrophe in the plural of any numbers.

Oksana skated nearly perfect figure 8s.

The 1920s are known as the Jazz Age.

#### Plural of letters

Italicize the letter and use roman (regular) font style for the -s ending. Do not italicize academic grades.

Two large *P*s were painted on the door.

He received two *D*s for the first time in his life.

**EXCEPTIONS:** To avoid misreading, use an apostrophe to form the plural of lowercase letters and the capital letters *A* and *I*.

Beginning readers often confuse *b*'s and *d*'s.

Students with straight *A*'s earn high honors.

**MLA NOTE:** MLA recommends using an apostrophe for the plural of single capital and lowercase letters: *H*'s, *p*'s.

### Plural of abbreviations

Do not use an apostrophe to pluralize an abbreviation.

Harriet has thirty DVDs on her desk.

Marco earned two PhDs before his thirtieth birthday.

### Plural of words mentioned as words

Generally, omit the apostrophe to form the plural of words mentioned as words. If the word is italicized, the *-s* ending appears in roman (regular) type.

We've heard enough *maybes*.

Words mentioned as words may also appear in quotation marks. When you choose this option, use the apostrophe.

We've heard enough "mayb<sup>e</sup>'s."

## 36e Avoid common misuses of the apostrophe.

Do not use an apostrophe with nouns that are not possessive or with the possessive pronouns *its*, *whose*, *his*, *hers*, *ours*, *yours*, and *theirs*.


- ▶ Some <sup>outpatients</sup> ~~outpatient's~~ have special parking permits.

- ▶ Each area has <sup>its</sup> ~~it's~~ own conference room.

*It's* means "it is." The possessive pronoun *its* contains no apostrophe despite the fact that it is possessive.

- ▶ We attended a reading by Junot Díaz, <sup>whose</sup> ~~who's~~ work focuses on the Dominican immigration experience.

*Who's* means "who is." The possessive pronoun is *whose*.

**EXERCISE 36-1** Edit the following sentences to correct errors in the use of the apostrophe. If a sentence is correct, write "correct" after it. Answers appear in the back of the book. *More practice:*  LaunchPadSolo

Our favorite barbecue restaurant is Poor <sup>Richard's</sup> ~~Richards~~ Ribs.

- This diet will improve almost anyone's health.



- b. The innovative shoe fastener was inspired by the designers young son.
- c. Each days menu features a different European country's dish.
- d. Sue worked overtime to increase her families earnings.
- e. Ms. Jacobs is unwilling to listen to students complaints about computer failures.

**EXERCISE 36-2** Edit the following passage to correct errors in the use of the apostrophe.

Its never too soon to start holiday shopping. In fact, some people choose to start shopping as early as January, when last seasons leftover's are priced at their lowest. Many stores try to lure customers in with promise's of savings up to 90 percent. Their main objective, of course, is to make way for next years inventory. The big problem with postholiday shopping, though, is that there isn't much left to choose from. Store's shelves have been picked over by last-minute shoppers desperately searching for gifts. The other problem is that its hard to know what to buy so far in advance. Next year's hot items are anyones guess. But proper timing, mixed with lot's of luck and determination, can lead to good purchases at great price's.

## 37 Quotation marks

Writers use quotation marks primarily to enclose direct quotations of another person's spoken or written words. You will also find these other uses and exceptions:

- for quotations within quotations (single quotation marks: 37b)
- for titles of short works (37c)
- for words used as words (37d)
- with other marks of punctuation (37e)
- with brackets and ellipsis marks (39c, 39d)
- no quotation marks for indirect quotations, paraphrases, and summaries (p. 324)
- no quotation marks for long quotations (p. 324)



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

36 The apostrophe

> Exercises: 36-3 to 36-5

> LearningCurve: Apostrophes

## 37a Use quotation marks to enclose direct quotations.

Direct quotations of a person's words, whether spoken or written, must be in quotation marks.

“Twitter,” according to social media researcher Jameson Brown, “is the best social network for brand to customer engagement.”

In dialogue, begin a new paragraph to mark a change in speaker.

“Mom, his name is Willie, not William. A thousand times I’ve told you, it’s *Willie*.”

“Willie is a derivative of William, Lester. Surely his birth certificate doesn’t have Willie on it, and I like calling people by their proper names.”

“Yes, it does, ma’am. My mother named me Willie K. Mason.”

—Gloria Naylor

If a single speaker utters more than one paragraph, introduce each paragraph with a quotation mark, but do not use a closing quotation mark until the end of the speech.

### Exception: Indirect quotations

Do not use quotation marks around indirect quotations. An indirect quotation reports someone's ideas without using that person's exact words. In academic writing, indirect quotation is called *paraphrase* or *summary*. (See pp. 412–14.)

Social media researcher Jameson Brown claims that Twitter is the best social media tool for companies that want to reach their consumers.

### Exception: Long quotations

Long quotations of prose or poetry are generally set off from the text by indenting. Quotation marks are not used because the indented format tells readers that the quotation is taken word-for-word from the source.

After making an exhaustive study of the historical record, James Horan evaluates Billy the Kid like this:

The portrait that emerges of [the Kid] from the thousands of pages of affidavits, reports, trial transcripts, his letters,

his testimony is neither the mythical Robin Hood nor the stereotyped adenoidal moron and pathological killer. Rather Billy appears as a disturbed, lonely young man, honest, loyal to his friends, dedicated to his beliefs, and betrayed by our institutions and the corrupt, ambitious, and compromising politicians in his time. (158)

The long quotation and the page number in parentheses are handled according to MLA style. (See 56a.)

MLA and APA have specific guidelines for what constitutes a long quotation and how it should be indented (see pp. 449 and 541, respectively).

### **37b** Use single quotation marks to enclose a quotation within a quotation.

Megan Marshall notes that Elizabeth Peabody's school focused on "not merely 'teaching' but 'educating children morally and spiritually as well as intellectually from the first'" (107).

### **37c** Use quotation marks around the titles of short works.

Short works include newspaper and magazine articles, poems, short stories, songs, episodes of television and radio programs, and chapters or subdivisions of books.

James Baldwin's story "Sonny's Blues" tells the story of two brothers who come to understand each other's suffering.

**NOTE:** Titles of long works such as books, plays, television and radio programs, films, magazines, and newspapers are put in italics. (See 42a.)

### **37d** Quotation marks may be used to set off words used as words.

Although words used as words are ordinarily italicized (see 42d), quotation marks are also acceptable. Be consistent throughout your paper.

The words “accept” and “except” are frequently confused.  
The words *accept* and *except* are frequently confused.

### 37e Use punctuation with quotation marks according to convention.

This section describes the conventions American publishers use in placing various marks of punctuation inside or outside quotation marks. It also explains how to punctuate when introducing quoted material. (For the use of quotation marks in MLA and APA styles, see 56a and 61a, respectively. The examples in this section show MLA style.)

#### Periods and commas

Place periods and commas inside quotation marks.

“I’m here as part of my service-learning project,” I told the classroom teacher. “I’m hoping to become a reading specialist.”

This rule applies to single quotation marks as well as double quotation marks. (See 37b.) It also applies to all uses of quotation marks: for quoted material, for titles of works, and for words used as words.

**EXCEPTION:** In MLA and APA styles of parenthetical in-text citations, the period follows the citation in parentheses.

James M. McPherson comments, approvingly, that the Whigs “were not averse to extending the blessings of American liberty, even to Mexicans and Indians” (48).

#### Colons and semicolons

Put colons and semicolons outside quotation marks.

Harold wrote, “I regret that I am unable to attend the fundraiser for AIDS research”; his letter, however, came with a donation.

#### Question marks and exclamation points

Put question marks and exclamation points inside quotation marks unless they apply to the whole sentence.

Dr. Abram’s first question was “What are your goals?”  
Have you heard the old proverb “Do not climb the hill until you reach it”?

In the first sentence, the question mark applies only to the quoted question. In the second sentence, the question mark applies to the whole sentence.

**NOTE:** In MLA and APA styles for a quotation that ends with a question mark or an exclamation point, the parenthetical citation and a period should follow the entire quotation.

Rosie Thomas asks, “Is nothing in life ever straight and clear, the way children see it?” (77).

### Introducing quoted material

After a word group introducing a quotation, choose a colon, a comma, or no punctuation at all, whichever is appropriate in context.

**Formal introduction** If a quotation is formally introduced, a colon is appropriate. A formal introduction is a full independent clause, not just an expression such as *he said* or *she remarked*.

Thomas Friedman provides a challenging yet optimistic view of the future: “We need to get back to work on our country and on our planet. The hour is late, the stakes couldn’t be higher, the project couldn’t be harder, the payoff couldn’t be greater” (25).

**Expression such as *he writes*** If a quotation is introduced with an expression such as *he writes* or *she remarked* — or if it is followed by such an expression — a comma is needed.

“With regard to air travel,” Stephen Ambrose notes, “Jefferson was a full century ahead of the curve” (53).

“Unless another war is prevented it is likely to bring destruction on a scale never before held possible and even now hardly conceived,” Albert Einstein wrote in the aftermath of the atomic bomb (29).

**Blended quotation** When a quotation is blended into the writer’s own sentence, either a comma or no punctuation is appropriate, depending on the way in which the quotation fits into the sentence structure.

The future champion could, as he put it, “float like a butterfly and sting like a bee.”

Virginia Woolf wrote in 1928 that “a woman must have money and a room of her own if she is to write fiction” (4).

**Beginning of sentence** If a quotation appears at the beginning of a sentence, use a comma after it unless the quotation ends with a question mark or an exclamation point.

“I’ve always thought of myself as a reporter,” American poet Gwendolyn Brooks once stated (162).

“What is it?” she asked, bracing herself.

**Interrupted quotation** If a quoted sentence is interrupted by explanatory words, use commas to set off the explanatory words. If two successive quoted sentences from the same source are interrupted by explanatory words, use a comma before the explanatory words and a period after them.

“Everyone agrees journalists must tell the truth,” Bill Kovach and Tom Rosenstiel write. “Yet people are befuddled about what ‘the truth’ means” (37).

## 37f Avoid common misuses of quotation marks.

Do not use quotation marks to draw attention to familiar slang, to disown trite expressions, or to justify an attempt at humor.

- ▶ The economist estimated that single-family home prices would decline another 5 percent by the end of the year, emphasizing that this was only a “ballpark figure.”

Do not use quotation marks around the title of your own essay.

**EXERCISE 37-1** Add or delete quotation marks as needed and make any other necessary changes in punctuation in the following sentences. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Answers appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

Gandhi once said, “An eye for an eye only ends up making the whole world blind.”



- a. As for the advertisement “Sailors have more fun”, if you consider chip-ping paint and swabbing decks fun, then you will have plenty of it.
- b. Even after forty minutes of discussion, our class could not agree on an interpretation of Robert Frost’s poem “The Road Not Taken.”
- c. After winning the lottery, Juanita said that “she would give half the money to charity.”
- d. After the movie, Vicki said, “The reviewer called this flick “trash of the first order.” I guess you can’t believe everything you read.”
- e. “Cleaning your house while your kids are still growing,” said Phyllis Diller, “is like shoveling the walk before it stops snowing.”

**EXERCISE 37-2** Add or delete quotation marks as needed and make any other necessary changes in punctuation in the following passage. Citations should conform to MLA style (see 54b).

In his article *The Moment of Truth*, former vice president Al Gore argues that global warming is a genuine threat to life on Earth and that we must act now to avoid catastrophe. Gore calls our situation a “true *planetary emergency*” and cites scientific evidence of the greenhouse effect and its consequences (170-71). “What is at stake, Gore insists, is the survival of our civilization and the habitability of the Earth (197).” With such a grim predicament at hand, Gore questions why so many political and economic leaders are reluctant to act. “Is it simply more convenient to ignore the warnings,” he asks (171)?

The crisis, of course, will not go away if we just pretend it isn’t there. Gore points out that in Chinese two symbols form the character for the word crisis. The first of those symbols means “danger”, and the second means “opportunity.” The danger we face, he claims, is accompanied by “unprecedented opportunity.” (172) Gore contends that throughout history we have won battles against seemingly unbeatable evils such as slavery and fascism and that we did so by facing the truth and choosing the moral high ground. Gore’s final appeal is to our humanity:

“Ultimately, [the fight to end global warming] is not about any scientific discussion or political dialogue; it is about who we are as human beings. It is about our capacity to transcend our limitations, to rise to this new occasion. To see with our hearts, as well as our heads, the response that is now called for.” (244)

Gore feels that the fate of our world rests in our own hands, and his hope is that we will make the choice to save the planet.

Source of quotations: Gore, Al. “The Moment of Truth.” *Vanity Fair*, May 2006, pp. 170+.

# 38 End punctuation

## 38a The period

Use a period to end all sentences except direct questions or genuine exclamations. Also use periods in abbreviations according to convention.

### To end sentences

Most sentences should end with a period. A sentence that reports a question instead of asking it directly, (an indirect question) should end with a period, not a question mark.

- ▶ The professor asked whether talk therapy was more beneficial than antidepressants?<sup>^</sup>.

If a sentence is not a genuine exclamation, it should end with a period, not an exclamation point. (See also 38c.)

- ▶ After years of working her way through school, Geeta finally graduated with high honors!<sup>^</sup>.

### In abbreviations

A period is conventionally used in abbreviations of titles and Latin words or phrases, including the time designations for morning and afternoon.

Mr.	i.e.	a.m. (or AM)
Ms.	e.g.	p.m. (or PM)
Dr.	etc.	

**NOTE:** If a sentence ends with a period marking an abbreviation, do not add a second period.

Do not use a period with US Postal Service abbreviations for states: MD, TX, CA.



Current usage is to omit the period in abbreviations of organization names, academic degrees, and designations for eras.

NATO	UNESCO	UCLA	BS	BC
IRS	AFL-CIO	NIH	PhD	BCE

## 38b The question mark

A direct question should be followed by a question mark.

What is the horsepower of a 777 engine?

**TIP:** Do not use a question mark after an indirect question, one that is reported rather than asked directly. Use a period instead.

- ▶ He asked me who was teaching the math course this

year?  
^

## 38c The exclamation point

Use an exclamation point after a word group or sentence to express exceptional feeling or to provide special emphasis. The exclamation point is rarely appropriate in academic writing.

When Gloria entered the room, I switched on the lights, and we all yelled, "Surprise!"

**TIP:** Do not overuse the exclamation point.

- ▶ In the fisherman's memory, the fish lives on, increasing in

length and weight with each passing year, until at last it is

big enough to shade a fishing boat!  
^

This sentence doesn't need to be pumped up with an exclamation point. It is emphatic enough without it.

**EXERCISE 38–1** Add appropriate end punctuation in the following paragraph.

Although I am generally rational, I am superstitious I never walk under ladders or put shoes on the table If I spill the salt, I go into frenzied calisthenics picking up the grains and tossing them over my left shoulder As a result of these curious activities, I've always wondered whether knowing the roots of superstitions would quell my irrational responses Superstition has it, for example, that one should never place a hat on the bed This superstition arises from a time when head lice were common and placing a guest's hat on the bed stood a good chance of spreading lice through the host's bed Doesn't this make good sense And doesn't it stand to reason that, if I know that my guests don't have lice, I shouldn't care where their hats go Of course it does It is fair to ask, then, whether I have changed my ways and place hats on beds Are you kidding I wouldn't put a hat on a bed if my life depended on it

## 39 Other punctuation marks

### 39a The dash

When typing, use two hyphens to form a dash (--). Do not put spaces before or after the dash. If your word processing program has what is known as an “em-dash” (—), you may use it instead, with no space before or after it.

Use a dash to set off parenthetical material that deserves emphasis.

Everything that went wrong — from the peeping Tom at her window last night to my head-on collision today — we blamed on our move.

Use a dash to set off appositives that contain commas. An appositive is a noun or noun phrase that renames a nearby noun. Ordinarily, most appositives are set off with commas (32e), but when the appositive itself contains commas, a pair of dashes helps readers see the relative importance of all the pauses.

In my hometown, people's basic needs — food, clothing, and shelter — are less costly than in a big city like Los Angeles.

A dash can also introduce a list, a restatement, an amplification, or a dramatic shift in tone or thought.

Along the wall are the bulk liquids — sesame seed oil, honey, safflower oil, and that half-liquid “peanuts only” peanut butter.

In his last semester, Peter tried to pay more attention to his priorities — applying to graduate school and getting financial aid.

Everywhere we looked there were little kids — a bag of Skittles in one hand and their mommy or daddy’s sleeve in the other.

Kiere took a few steps back, came running full speed, kicked a mighty kick — and missed the ball.

In the first two examples, the writer could also use a colon. (See 35a.) The colon is more formal than the dash and not quite as dramatic.

**TIP:** Unless there is a specific reason for using the dash, avoid it. Unnecessary dashes create a choppy effect.

## 39b Parentheses

Use parentheses to enclose supplemental material, minor digressions, and afterthoughts.

Nurses record patients’ vital signs (temperature, pulse, and blood pressure) several times a day.

Use parentheses to enclose letters or numbers labeling items in a series.

Regulations stipulated that only the following equipment could be used on the survival mission: (1) a knife, (2) thirty feet of parachute line, (3) a book of matches, (4) two ponchos, (5) an E tool, and (6) a signal flare.

**TIP:** Rough drafts are likely to contain unnecessary parentheses. As writers head into a sentence, they often think of additional details, using parentheses to work them in as best they can. Such sentences usually can be revised to include the details without parentheses.

- ▶ Researchers have said that <sup>from</sup>seventeen million ~~(estimates run~~  
<sup>to</sup>as high as <sup>^</sup>twenty-three million) <sup>^</sup>Americans have diabetes.

## 39c Brackets

Use brackets to enclose any words or phrases that you have inserted into an otherwise word-for-word quotation.

*Audubon* reports that “if there are not enough young to balance deaths, the end of the species [California condor] is inevitable” (4).

The sentence quoted from the *Audubon* article did not contain the words *California condor* (since the context of the full article made clear what species was meant), so the writer needed to add the name in brackets.

The Latin word “sic” in brackets indicates that an error in a quoted sentence appears in the original source.

According to the review, Nelly Furtado’s performance was brilliant, “exceeding [sic] the expectations of even her most loyal fans.”

Do not overuse “sic,” however, since calling attention to others’ mistakes can appear snobbish. The preceding quotation, for example, might have been paraphrased instead: *According to the review, even Nelly Furtado’s most loyal fans were surprised by the brilliance of her performance.*

## 39d The ellipsis mark

The ellipsis mark consists of three spaced periods. Use an ellipsis mark to indicate that you have deleted words from an otherwise word-for-word quotation.

Shute (2010) acknowledges that treatment for autism can be expensive: “Sensory integration therapy . . . can cost up to \$200 an hour” (82).

If you delete a full sentence or more in the middle of a quoted passage, use a period before the three ellipsis dots.

“If we don’t properly train, teach, or treat our growing prison population,” says longtime reform advocate Luis Rodríguez, “somebody else will. . . . This may well be the safety issue of the new century” (16).

**TIP:** Ordinarily, do not use the ellipsis mark at the beginning or at the end of a quotation. Readers will understand that the quoted material is taken from a longer passage. If you have cut



- a. A client left his/her cell phone in our conference room after the meeting.
- b. The films we made of Kilauea — on our trip to Hawaii Volcanoes National Park — illustrate a typical spatter cone eruption.
- c. Although he was confident in his course selections, Greg chose the pass/fail option for Chemistry 101.
- d. Of three engineering fields, chemical, mechanical, and materials, Keegan chose materials engineering for its application to toy manufacturing.
- e. The writer Chitra Divakaruni explained her work with other Indian American immigrants: “Many women who came to Maitri [a women’s support group in San Francisco] needed to know simple things like opening a bank account or getting citizenship. . . . Many women in Maitri spoke English, but their English was functional rather than emotional. They needed someone who understands their problems and speaks their language.”

# Mechanics

**40** Abbreviations, 338

**41** Numbers, 341

**42** Italics, 343

**43** Spelling, 345

**44** The hyphen, 353

**45** Capitalization, 356

# 40 Abbreviations

Use abbreviations only when they are clearly appropriate and universally understood (such as *Dr.*, *a.m.*, *PhD*, and so on). This section provides details about common abbreviations and about how to handle abbreviations that might not be familiar to your audience.

## 40a Use standard abbreviations for titles immediately before and after proper names.

### TITLES BEFORE PROPER NAMES

Mr. Rafael Zabala

Ms. Nancy Linehan

Dr. Margaret Simmons

Rev. John Stone

### TITLES AFTER PROPER NAMES

William Albert Sr.

Thomas Hines Jr.

Robert Simkowski, MD

Margaret Chin, LLD

Do not abbreviate a title if it is not used with a proper name.

- ▶ My history <sup>professor</sup>prof. is an expert on race relations in South Africa.

Avoid redundant titles such as *Dr. Amy Day, MD*. Choose one title or the other: *Dr. Amy Day* or *Amy Day, MD*.

## 40b Use abbreviations only when you are sure your readers will understand them.

Familiar abbreviations for the names of organizations, companies, countries, academic degrees, and common terms, written without periods, are generally acceptable.

CIA	FBI	MD	NAACP
NBA	CEO	PhD	DVD
YMCA	CBS	USA	ESL

Talk show host Conan O'Brien is a Harvard graduate with a BA in history.

The YMCA has opened a new gym close to my office.



When using an unfamiliar abbreviation (such as NASW for National Association of Social Workers) or a potentially ambiguous abbreviation (such as *AMA*, which might refer to the American Medical Association or the American Management Association), write the full name followed by the abbreviation in parentheses at the first mention of the name. Then use just the abbreviation throughout the rest of the paper.

**NOTE:** An abbreviation that can be pronounced as a word is called an *acronym*: *NATO*, *MADD*, *OPEC*.

### 40c Use *BC*, *AD*, *a.m.*, *p.m.*, *No.*, and *\$* only with specific dates, times, numbers, and amounts.

The abbreviation *BC* (“before Christ”) follows a date, and *AD* (“*anno Domini*”) precedes a date. Acceptable alternatives are *BCE* (“before the common era”) and *CE* (“common era”), both of which follow a date.

40 BC (or 40 BCE)	4:00 a.m. (or AM)	No. 12 (or no. 12)
AD 44 (or 44 CE)	6:00 p.m. (or PM)	\$150

Avoid using *a.m.*, *p.m.*, *No.*, or *\$* when not accompanied by a specific numeral: *in the morning* (not *in the a.m.*).

## 40d Units of measurement

The following are typical abbreviations for units of measurement. Most social sciences and related fields use metric units (*km*, *mg*), but in other fields and in everyday use, US standard units (*mi*, *lb*) are typical. As a general rule, use the abbreviations for units when they appear with numerals; spell out the units when they are used alone or when they are used with spelled-out numbers (see also 41a).

METRIC UNITS	US STANDARD UNITS
m, cm, mm	yd, ft, in.
km, kph	mi, mph
kg, g, mg	lb, oz

Results were measured in pounds.

Runners in the 5-km race had to contend with a stiff headwind.

Use no periods after abbreviations for units of measurement, except for the abbreviation for “inch” (*in.*), to distinguish it from the preposition *in*.

## 40e Be sparing in your use of Latin abbreviations.

Latin abbreviations are acceptable in footnotes and bibliographies.

- cf. (Latin *confer*, “compare”)
- e.g. (Latin *exempli gratia*, “for example”)
- et al. (Latin *et alia*, “and others”)
- etc. (Latin *et cetera*, “and so forth”)
- i.e. (Latin *id est*, “that is”)
- N.B. (Latin *nota bene*, “note well”)

In most academic writing, use the appropriate English phrases.

- ▶ Many obsolete laws remain on the books. A law in *for example*, Vermont, ~~e.g.~~ forbids an unmarried man and woman to sit closer than six inches apart on a park bench.

## 40f Plural of abbreviations

To form the plural of most abbreviations, add *-s*, without an apostrophe: *PhDs*, *DVDs*. Do not add *-s* to indicate the plural of units of measurement: *mm* (not *mms*), *lb* (*lbs*), *in.* (not *ins.*).

## 40g Avoid inappropriate abbreviations.

In academic writing, abbreviations for the following are not commonly accepted.

- PERSONAL NAMES Charles (not Chas.)
- DAYS OF THE WEEK Monday (not Mon.)
- HOLIDAYS Christmas (not Xmas)
- MONTHS January, February, March (not Jan., Feb., Mar.)
- COURSES OF STUDY political science (not poli. sci.)


**DIVISIONS OF WRITTEN WORKS** chapter, page (not ch., p.)

**STATES AND COUNTRIES** Massachusetts (not MA or Mass.)

**PARTS OF A BUSINESS NAME** Adams Lighting Company (not Adams Lighting Co.); Kim and Brothers (not Kim and Bros.)

**NOTE:** Use abbreviations for units of measurement when they are preceded by numerals (*13 cm*). Do not abbreviate them when they are used alone. (See 40d.)

**EXCEPTION:** Abbreviate states and provinces in complete addresses, and always abbreviate *DC* when used with *Washington*.

**EXERCISE 40-1** Edit the following sentences to correct errors in abbreviations. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Answers appear in the back of the book. *More practice:*  LaunchPadSolo

This year <sup>Christmas</sup>Xmas will fall on a <sup>Tuesday</sup>Tues.

- Since its inception, the BBC has maintained a consistently high standard of radio and television broadcasting.
- Some combat soldiers are trained by govt. diplomats to be sensitive to issues of culture, history, and religion.
- Mahatma Gandhi has inspired many modern leaders, including Martin Luther King Jr.
- How many lb. have you lost since you began running four miles a day?
- Denzil spent all night studying for his psych. exam.

# 41 Numbers

## 41a Follow the conventions in your discipline for spelling out or using numerals to express numbers.

In the humanities, which generally follow Modern Language Association (MLA) style, use numerals only for specific numbers above one hundred: 353, 1,020. Spell out numbers one hundred and below and large round numbers: *eleven, thirty-five, sixty, fifteen million*.



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

40 Abbreviations

> Exercises: 40-2 and 40-3

The social sciences and other disciplines that follow American Psychological Association (APA) style use numerals for all but the numbers one through nine. Spell out numbers from one to nine even when they are used with related numerals in a passage: *The survey found that nine of the 157 respondents had not taken a course on alcohol use.* (An exception is the abstract of a paper, where numerals are used for all numbers. See 62a on APA manuscript format.)

If a sentence begins with a number, spell out the number or rewrite the sentence.

*One hundred fifty*

- ▶ 150 children in our program need expensive dental treatment.

^  
Rewriting the sentence may be less awkward if the number is long: *In our program, 150 children need expensive dental treatment.*

## 41b Use numerals according to convention in dates, addresses, and so on.

**DATES** July 4, 1776; 56 BC; AD 30

**ADDRESSES** 77 Latches Lane, 519 West 42nd Street

**PERCENTAGES** 55 percent (or 55%)

**FRACTIONS, DECIMALS**  $\frac{7}{8}$ , 0.047

**SCORES** 7 to 3, 21–18

**STATISTICS** average age 37, average weight 180

**SURVEYS** 4 out of 5


**EXACT AMOUNTS OF MONEY** \$105.37, \$106,000

**DIVISIONS OF BOOKS** volume 3, chapter 4, page 189

**DIVISIONS OF PLAYS** act 3, scene 3 (or act III, scene iii)

**TIME OF DAY** 4:00 p.m., 1:30 a.m.

**NOTE:** When not using *a.m.* or *p.m.*, write out the time in words (*two o'clock in the afternoon, twelve noon, seven in the morning*).

**EXERCISE 41-1** Edit the following sentences to correct errors in the use of numbers. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Answers appear in the back of the book. *More practice:*  LaunchPadSolo

By the end of the evening, Ashanti had only <sup>\$3.06</sup> ~~three dollars~~  
^  
and six cents left.

- The carpenters located 3 maple timbers, 21 sheets of cherry, and 10 oblongs of polished ebony for the theater set.
- The program's cost is well over one billion dollars.
- The score was tied at 5–5 when the momentum shifted and carried the Standards to a decisive 12–5 win.
- 8 students in the class had been labeled “learning disabled.”
- The Vietnam Veterans Memorial in Washington, DC, had fifty-eight thousand one hundred thirty-two names inscribed on it when it was dedicated in 1982.

## 42 Italics

This section describes conventional uses for italics. (If your instructor requires underlining, simply substitute underlining for italics in the examples in this section.)

Some software applications do not allow for italics. To indicate words that should be italicized, you can use underscore marks or asterisks before and after the words.

I will write my senior thesis on And the Mountains Echoed.

**NOTE:** Excessive use of italics to emphasize words or ideas, especially in academic writing, is distracting and should be avoided.

### 42a Italicize the titles of works according to convention.

Titles of the following types of works should be italicized.

**TITLES OF BOOKS** *The Color Purple, The Round House*

**MAGAZINES** *Time, Scientific American, Slate*

**NEWSPAPERS** *the Baltimore Sun, the Orlando Sentinel Online*

**PAMPHLETS** *Common Sense, Facts about Marijuana*

**LONG POEMS** *The Waste Land, Paradise Lost*

**PLAYS** *Night Mother, Wicked*

**FILMS** *Casablanca, Argo*



- TELEVISION PROGRAMS *The Voice, Frontline*  
 RADIO PROGRAMS *All Things Considered*  
 MUSICAL COMPOSITIONS *Porgy and Bess*  
 CHOREOGRAPHIC WORKS *Brief Fling*  
 WORKS OF VISUAL ART *American Gothic*  
 DATABASES [MLA] *ProQuest*  
 WEB SITES *Salon, Google*  
 COMPUTER SOFTWARE OR APPS [MLA] *Photoshop, Instagram*

The titles of other works—including short stories, essays, episodes of radio and television programs, songs, and short poems—are enclosed in quotation marks. (See 37c.)

**NOTE:** Do not use italics when referring to the Bible, titles of books in the Bible (Genesis, not *Genesis*), or titles of legal documents (the Constitution, not the *Constitution*).

## 42b Italicize the names of specific ships, spacecraft, and aircraft.

*Queen Mary 2, Endeavour, Wright Flyer*

The success of the Soviets' *Sputnik* energized the US space program.

## 42c Italicize foreign words used in an English sentence.

Shakespeare's Falstaff is a comic character known for both his excessive drinking and his general *joie de vivre*.

**EXCEPTION:** Do not italicize foreign words that have become a standard part of the English language—"laissez-faire," "fait accompli," "modus operandi," and "per diem," for example.

## 42d Italicize words mentioned as words, letters mentioned as letters, and numbers mentioned as numbers.

Tomás assured us that the chemicals could probably be safely mixed, but his *probably* stuck in our minds.

Some toddlers have trouble pronouncing the letters *f* and *s*.

A big *3* was painted on the stage door.

**NOTE:** Quotation marks may be used instead of italics to set off words mentioned as words. (See 37d.)

**EXERCISE 42-1** Edit the following sentences to correct errors in the use of italics. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Answers appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

The lecture was about Gini Alhadeff’s memoir *The Sun at*

*Midday*. **Correct**

- Howard Hughes commissioned the Spruce Goose, a beautifully built but thoroughly impractical wooden aircraft.
- The old man *screamed* his anger, *shouting* to all of us, “I will not leave my money to you worthless layabouts!”
- I learned the Latin term *ad infinitum* from an old nursery rhyme about fleas: “Great fleas have little fleas upon their back to bite ‘em, / Little fleas have lesser fleas and so on *ad infinitum*.”
- Cinema audiences once gasped at hearing the word *damn* in *Gone with the Wind*.
- Neve Campbell’s lifelong interest in ballet inspired her involvement in the film “The Company,” which portrays a season with the Joffrey Ballet.

## 43 Spelling

You learned to spell from repeated experience with words in both reading and writing. As you proofread, you can probably tell if a word doesn’t look quite right. In such cases, the solution is simple: Look up the word in the dictionary. (See 43b.)

### 43a Become familiar with the major spelling rules.

#### *i* before *e* except after *c*

In general, use *i* before *e* except after *c* and except when sounded like *ay*, as in *neighbor* and *weigh*.



<b>I BEFORE E</b>	relieve, believe, sieve, niece, fierce, frieze
<b>E BEFORE I</b>	receive, deceive, sleigh, freight, eight
<b>EXCEPTIONS</b>	seize, either, weird, height, foreign, leisure

## Suffixes

**Final silent -e** Generally, drop a final silent *-e* when adding a suffix that begins with a vowel. Keep the final *-e* if the suffix begins with a consonant.

combine, combination	achieve, achievement
desire, desiring	care, careful
prude, prudish	entire, entirety
remove, removable	gentle, gentleness

Words such as *changeable*, *judgment*, *argument*, and *truly* are exceptions.

**Final -y** When adding *-s* or *-d* to words ending in *-y*, ordinarily change *-y* to *-ie* when the *-y* is preceded by a consonant but not when it is preceded by a vowel.

comedy, comedies	monkey, monkeys
dry, dried	play, played

With proper names ending in *-y*, however, do not change the *-y* to *-ie* even if it is preceded by a consonant: *the Doughertys* (*the Dougherty family*).

**Final consonants** If a final consonant is preceded by a single vowel *and* the consonant ends a one-syllable word or a stressed syllable, double the consonant when adding a suffix beginning with a vowel.

bet, betting	occur, occurrence
commit, committed	

## Plurals

**-s or -es** Add *-s* to form the plural of most nouns; add *-es* to singular nouns ending in *-s*, *-sh*, *-ch*, and *-x*.

table, tables	church, churches
paper, papers	dish, dishes



Ordinarily add *-s* to nouns ending in *-o* when the *-o* is preceded by a vowel. Add *-es* when it is preceded by a consonant.

radio, radios	hero, heroes
video, videos	tomato, tomatoes

**Other plurals** To form the plural of a hyphenated compound word, add *-s* to the chief word even if it does not appear at the end.

mother-in-law, mothers-in-law

English words derived from other languages such as Latin, Greek, or French sometimes form the plural as they would in their original language.

medium, media	chateau, chateaux
criterion, criteria	

Spelling varieties among English-speaking countries can cause confusion. Following is a list of some common words with different American and British spellings. Consult a dictionary for others.

AMERICAN	BRITISH
canceled, traveled	cancelled, travelled
color, humor	colour, humour
judgment	judgement
check	cheque
realize, apologize	realise, apologise
defense	defence
anemia, anesthetic	anaemia, anaesthetic
theater, center	theatre, centre
fetus	foetus
mold, smolder	mould, smoulder
civilization	civilisation
connection, inflection	connexion, inflexion
licorice	liquorice

## 43b Become familiar with your dictionary.

A good dictionary, whether print or online — such as *The Random House College Dictionary* or *Merriam-Webster* online — is an indispensable writer's aid.

A sample print dictionary entry, taken from *The American Heritage Dictionary*, appears at the bottom of this page.

A sample online dictionary entry, taken from *Merriam-Webster* online, appears on page 349.

## Spelling, word division, pronunciation

The main entry (*re-gard* in the sample entries) shows the correct spelling of the word. When there are two correct spellings of a word (as in *collectible*, *collectable*, for example), both are given, with the preferred spelling usually appearing first.

### PRINT DICTIONARY ENTRY

Pronunciation

Grammatical label

Word division      Part of speech label      Word endings (inflections)      Usage label

**Spelling** — **re•gard** (rĭ-gărd') v. **-gard•ed, -gard•ing, -gards** —tr. **1.** To look at attentively; observe closely. **2.** To look upon or consider in a particular way: *I regard him as a fool.* **3.** To hold in esteem or respect: *She regards her teachers highly.* **4.** To relate or refer to; concern: *This item regards their liability.* **5.** To take into account; consider. **6.** *Obsolete* To take care of. —*intr.* **1.** To look or gaze. **2.** To give heed; pay attention. ♦ *n.* **1.** A look or gaze. **2.** Careful thought or attention; heed: *She gives little regard to her sister's teasing.* **3a.** Respect, affection, or esteem: *He has high regard for your work.* **b. regards** Good wishes expressing such sentiment: *Give the family my best regards.* **4.** A particular point or aspect; respect: *She was lucky in that regard.* **5.** Basis for action; motive. **6.** *Obsolete* Appearance or aspect. —**idioms:** **as regards** Concerning. **in (or with) regard to** With respect to. [Middle English *regarden*, from Old French *regarder*: *re-*, *re-* + *garder*, to guard (of Germanic origin; see **GUARD**).]

**Meanings** —

**Idioms** —

**Synonyms** — **Synonyms** *regard, esteem, admiration, respect* These nouns refer to a feeling based on perception of and approval for the worth of a person or thing. *Regard* is the most general: "I once thought you had a kind of regard for her" (George Borrow). *Esteem* connotes considered appraisal and positive regard: "The near-unanimity of esteem he enjoyed during his lifetime has by no means been sustained since" (Will Crutchfield). *Admiration* is a feeling of keen approbation: "Greatness is a spiritual condition worthy to excite love, interest, and admiration" (Matthew Arnold). *Respect* implies appreciative, often deferential regard resulting from careful assessment: "I have a great respect for any man who makes his own way in life" (Winston Churchill). See also synonyms at **consider**.

**Usage note** — **Usage Note** *Regard* is traditionally used in the singular in the phrase *in regard* (not *in regards*) *to*. *Regarding* and *as regards* are also standard in the sense "with reference to." In the same sense *with respect to* is acceptable, but *respecting* is not. ♦ *Respects* is sometimes considered preferable to *regards* in the sense of "particulars": *In some respects* (not *regards*) *the books are alike*.

Word origin (etymology)

## ONLINE DICTIONARY ENTRY

The screenshot shows the Merriam-Webster online dictionary entry for the word "regard". The page includes the Merriam-Webster logo, navigation tabs for "Dictionary", "Thesaurus", "Spanish-English", and "Medical", and a search bar containing the word "regard".

The main entry for "regard" is highlighted, showing its part of speech as "noun" and its pronunciation as "/rɪ-ˈɡɑːrd/". The entry is annotated with several labels:

- Alternative entries:** Points to the list of three entries found: "1) regard (noun)", "2) regard (verb)", and "self-regard (noun)".
- Part of speech label:** Points to the word "noun" in the main entry.
- Audio pronunciation link:** Points to the pronunciation symbol "46" next to the main entry.
- Pronunciation:** Points to the phonetic transcription "/rɪ-ˈɡɑːrd/".
- Usage label:** Points to the "1" in the first definition, "1 archaic: APPEARANCE".
- Meanings (synonyms shown as hyperlinks):** Points to the numbered definitions: "2 a: ATTENTION, CONSIDERATION", "b: a protective interest", "3: LOOK, GAZE", and "4 a: the worth or estimation", "b (1): a feeling of respect and affection", and "b (2) plural: friendly greetings".
- Idioms:** Points to the phrases "in regard to" and "with regard to".
- Link for multilingual writers:** Points to the note "See regard defined for English-language learners".
- Word origin (etymology):** Points to the "Origin of REGARD" section, which states: "Middle English, from Anglo-French, from *regarder* / First Known Use: 14th century".

The dot between *re* and *gard* separates the two syllables and indicates where the word should be divided if it can't fit at the end of a line of type (see 44f). When a word is compound, the main entry shows how to write it: as one word (*crossroad*), as a hyphenated word (*cross-stitch*), or as two words (*cross section*).

The word's pronunciation is given just after the main entry. The accents indicate which syllables are stressed; the other marks are explained in the dictionary's pronunciation key. Many online entries include an audio link to a voice pronouncing the word.

### Word endings and grammatical labels

When a word takes endings to indicate grammatical functions (called *inflections*), the endings are listed in boldface, as with *-garded*, *-garding*, and *-gards* in the sample print entry (p. 348).

Labels for the parts of speech and for other grammatical terms are sometimes abbreviated, as they are in the print entry. The most commonly used abbreviations are these:

n.	noun	adj.	adjective
pl.	plural	adv.	adverb
sing.	singular	pron.	pronoun
v.	verb	prep.	preposition
tr.	transitive verb	conj.	conjunction
intr.	intransitive verb	interj.	interjection

### Meanings, word origin, synonyms, and antonyms

Sometimes a word can be used as more than one part of speech (*regard*, for instance, can be used as either a verb or a noun). In such a case, all the meanings for one part of speech are given before all the meanings for another, as in the sample entries.

The origin of the word, called its *etymology*, appears in brackets after all the meanings in the print and online versions.

Synonyms, words similar in meaning to the main entry, are frequently listed. In the sample print entry, the dictionary draws distinctions in meaning among the various synonyms. In the online entry, synonyms appear as hyperlinks. Antonyms, which do not appear in the sample entries, are words having a meaning opposite from that of the main entry.

### Usage

Usage labels indicate when, where, or under what conditions a particular meaning for a word is appropriately used. Common labels are *informal* (or *colloquial*), *slang*, *archaic*, *poetic*, *non-standard*, *dialect*, *obsolete*, and *British*. In the sample print entry

(p. 348), two meanings of *regard* are labeled *obsolete* because they are no longer in use. The sample online entry (p. 349) has one meaning labeled *archaic*.

Dictionaries sometimes include usage notes as well. Advice in the notes is based on the opinions of many experts and on actual usage in current publications.

### 43c Discriminate between words that sound alike but have different meanings.

Words that sound alike or nearly alike but have different meanings and spellings are called *homophones*. The following sets of words are commonly confused. (See also the glossary of usage in the appendixes.)

affect (verb: to exert an influence)

effect (verb: to accomplish; noun: result)

its (possessive pronoun: of or belonging to it)

it's (contraction of *it is* or *it has*)

loose (adjective: free, not securely attached)

lose (verb: to fail to keep, to be deprived of)

principal (adjective: most important; noun: head of a school)

principle (noun: a fundamental guideline or truth)

their (possessive pronoun: belonging to them)

they're (contraction of *they are*)

there (adverb: that place or position)

who's (contraction of *who is* or *who has*)

whose (possessive form of *who*)

your (possessive pronoun: belonging to you)

you're (contraction of *you are*)

### 43d Be alert to commonly misspelled words.

absence	acquaintance	answer	arrangement
academic	acquire	apparently	ascend
accidentally	address	appearance	athlete
accommodate	all right	arctic	athletics
achievement	amateur	argument	attendance
acknowledge	analyze	arithmetic	basically

beautiful	environment	maintenance	quizzes
beginning	especially	maneuver	receive
believe	exaggerated	marriage	recognize
benefited	exercise	mathematics	referred
bureau	exhaust	mischievous	restaurant
business	existence	necessary	rhythm
calendar	extraordinary	noticeable	roommate
candidate	extremely	occasion	sandwich
cemetery	familiar	occurred	schedule
changeable	fascinate	occurrence	seize
column	February	pamphlet	separate
commitment	foreign	parallel	sergeant
committed	forty	particularly	siege
committee	fourth	pastime	similar
competitive	friend	permanent	sincerely
completely	government	permissible	sophomore
conceivable	grammar	perseverance	strictly
conscience	guard	phenomenon	subtly
conscientious	harass	physically	succeed
conscious	height	playwright	surprise
criticism	humorous	practically	thorough
criticize	incidentally	precede	tomorrow
decision	incredible	preference	tragedy
definitely	independence	preferred	transferred
descendant	indispensable	prejudice	tries
desperate	inevitable	presence	truly
dictionary	intelligence	prevalent	unnecessarily
different	irrelevant	privilege	usually
disastrous	irresistible	proceed	vacuum
eighth	knowledge	professor	vengeance
eligible	library	pronunciation	villain
embarrass	license	publicly	weird
emphasize	lightning	quiet	whether
entirely	loneliness	quite	writing

**EXERCISE 43-1** The following memo has been run through a spell checker. Proofread it carefully, editing the spelling and typographical errors that remain.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

November 3, 2014

To: Patricia Wise  
From: Constance Mayhew  
Subject: Express Tours annual report

Thank you for agreeing to draft the annual report for Express Tours. Before you begin your work, let me outline the initial steps.

First, it's essential for you to include brief profiles of top management. Early next week, I'll provide profiles for all managers except Samuel Heath, whose biographical information is being revised. You should edit these profiles carefully and then format them according to the enclosed instructions. We may ask you to include other employees' profiles at some point.

Second, you should arrange to get complete financial information for fiscal year 2014 from our comptroller, Richard Chang. (Helen Boyes, too, can provide the necessary figures.) When you get this information, precede according to the plans we discuss in yesterday's meeting. By the way, you will notice from the figures that the sale of our Charterhouse division did not significantly affect net profits.

Third, you should e-mail a first draft of the report by December 15. Of course, you should proofread your writing.

I am quite pleased that you can take on this project. If I can answer questions, don't hesitate to call.

## 44 The hyphen

In addition to the guidelines in this section, a dictionary will help you make decisions about hyphenation.

### 44a Consult the dictionary to determine how to treat a compound word.

The dictionary shows whether to treat a compound word as a hyphenated compound (*water-repellent*), one word (*waterproof*),

or two words (*water table*). If the compound word is not in the dictionary, treat it as two words.

- ▶ The prosecutor chose not to cross-examine any witnesses.
- ▶ All students are expected to record their data in a small notebook.
- ▶ Alice walked through the looking-glass into a backward world.

## 44b Hyphenate two or more words used together as an adjective before a noun.

- ▶ Many teachers use Web-delivered content in the classroom.

- ▶ Richa Gupta is not yet a well-known candidate.

*Web-delivered* in the first example and *well-known* in the second example are adjectives used before the nouns *content* and *candidate*.

Generally, do not use a hyphen when such compounds follow the noun.

- ▶ After our television campaign, Richa Gupta will be well-known.

Do not use a hyphen to connect *-ly* adverbs to the words they modify.

- ▶ A slowly-moving truck tied up traffic.

**NOTE:** When two or more hyphenated adjectives in a row modify the same noun, you can suspend the hyphens. *Do you prefer first-, second-, or third-class tickets?*

## 44c Hyphenate fractions and certain numbers when they are spelled out.

For numbers written as words, use a hyphen in all fractions (*two-thirds*) and in all forms of compound numbers from twenty-one to ninety-nine (*thirty-five, sixty-seventh*).

- ▶ One-fourth of my income goes to pay my child care expenses.



## 44d Use a hyphen with the prefixes *all-*, *ex-* (meaning “former”), and *self-* and with the suffix *-elect*.

- ▶ The private foundation is funneling more money into self-help projects.  
^
- ▶ The Student Senate bylaws require the president-elect to attend all senate meetings between the election and the official transfer of office.  
^

## 44e Use a hyphen to clarify certain words.

Without the hyphen, there would be no way to distinguish between words such as *re-creation* and *recreation*.

Bicycling in the city is my favorite form of recreation.

The film was praised for its astonishing re-creation of nineteenth-century London.

Hyphens are sometimes used to separate awkward double or triple letters in compound words (*anti-intellectual*, *cross-stitch*).

## 44f Check for correct word breaks when words must be divided at the end of a line.


Some word processing programs and other computer applications automatically generate word breaks at the ends of lines. For academic writing, it's best to disable automatic hyphenation. This setting will ensure that only words already containing a hyphen (such as *long-distance*, *pre-Roman*) will be hyphenated at the ends of lines.

E-mail addresses and URLs need special attention when they occur at the end of a line of text or in bibliographic citations. You can't rely on your word processor to divide these terms correctly, so you must make a decision in each case. Do not insert a hyphen to divide electronic addresses. Instead, break an e-mail address

after the @ symbol or before a period. It is common practice to break a URL before most punctuation marks. (For variations in MLA and APA styles, see 57a and 62a, respectively.)

I repeatedly e-mailed Janine at janine.r.rose@dunbaracademy.org before I gave up and called her cell phone.

To avoid standing in line, I now order stamps online at <http://www.usps.com>.

**EXERCISE 44–1** Edit the following sentences to correct errors in hyphenation. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Answers appear in the back of the book. *More practice:*  LaunchPadSolo

Émile Zola’s first readers were scandalized by his slice-of-life novels. <sup>^</sup> <sup>^</sup>

- Gold is the seventy-ninth element in the periodic table.
- The swiftly-moving tugboat pulled alongside the barge and directed it away from the oil spill in the harbor.
- The Moche were a pre-Columbian people who established a sophisticated culture in ancient Peru.
- Your dog is well-known in our neighborhood.
- Road-blocks were set up along all the major highways leading out of the city.

## 45 Capitalization

In addition to the rules in this section, a good dictionary can tell you when to use capital letters.

### 45a Capitalize proper nouns and words derived from them; do not capitalize common nouns.

Proper nouns are the names of specific persons, places, and things. All other nouns are common nouns. The following types of words are usually capitalized: names of deities, religions,



religious followers, sacred books; words of family relationship used as names; particular places; nationalities and their languages, races, tribes; educational institutions, departments, degrees, particular courses; government departments, organizations, political parties; historical movements, periods, events, documents; and trade names.

**PROPER NOUNS**

God (used as a name)  
 Book of Common Prayer  
 Uncle Pedro  
 Father (used as a name)  
 Lake Superior  
 the Capital Center  
 the South  
 Wrigley Field  
 University of Wisconsin  
 Geology 101  
 Environmental Protection  
 Agency  
 the Democratic Party  
 the Enlightenment  
 the Treaty of Versailles  
 Advil

**COMMON NOUNS**

a god  
 a sacred book  
 my uncle  
 my father  
 a picturesque lake  
 a center for advanced studies  
 a southern state  
 a baseball stadium  
 a state university  
 geology  
 a federal agency  
 a political party  
 the eighteenth century  
 a treaty  
 a painkiller

Months, holidays, and days of the week are treated as proper nouns; the seasons and numbers of the days of the month are not.

Our academic year begins on a Tuesday in early September, right after Labor Day.

Graduation is in late spring, on the second of June.

**EXCEPTION:** Capitalize Fourth of July (or July Fourth) when referring to the holiday.

Names of school subjects are capitalized only if they are names of languages. Names of particular courses are capitalized.

This semester Lee is taking math, geography, geology, French, and English.

Professor Obembe offers Modern American Fiction 501 to undergraduate students.

The terms *Web* and *Internet* are typically capitalized, but related common nouns are not: *home page*, *operating system*. Usage varies widely, however, so check with your instructor about whether you should follow the guidelines for MLA or APA style (57a or 62a, respectively).

**CAUTION:** Do not capitalize common nouns to make them seem important.

## 45b Capitalize titles of persons when used as part of a proper name but usually not when used alone.

Professor Margaret Barnes; Dr. Sinyee Sein; John Scott Williams Jr.  
District Attorney Marshall was reprimanded for badgering the witness.  
The district attorney was elected for a two-year term.

Usage varies when the title of an important public figure is used alone: *The president* [or *President*] *vetoed the bill*.

## 45c Capitalize the first, last, and all major words in titles and subtitles of works such as books, articles, songs, and online documents.

In both titles and subtitles of works mentioned in the text of a paper, major words such as nouns, pronouns, verbs, adjectives, and adverbs should be capitalized. Minor words such as articles, prepositions, and coordinating conjunctions are not capitalized unless they are the first or last word of a title or subtitle.

Capitalize the second part of a hyphenated term in a title if it is a major word but not if it is a minor word. Capitalize chapter titles and the titles of other major divisions of a work following the same guidelines used for titles of complete works.

*Seizing the Enigma: The Race to Break the German U-Boat Codes*  
*A River Runs through It*  
"I Want to Hold Your Hand"  
*The Canadian Green Page*

To see why some of the titles in the list are italicized and some are put in quotation marks, see 42a and 37c.



Clinical trials called into question the safety profile of the drug: A high percentage of participants reported hypertension and kidney problems.

Preferences vary among academic disciplines. See 57a and 62a.

Always use lowercase for a list or an appositive that follows a colon (see 35a).

Students were divided into two groups: residents and commuters.

**EXERCISE 45-1** Edit the following sentences to correct errors in capitalization. If a sentence is correct, write “correct” after it. Answers appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

On our trip to the West, we visited the <sup>G</sup>grand <sup>C</sup>canyon and the  
<sup>G</sup>great <sup>S</sup>salt <sup>D</sup>desert.

- Assistant dean Shirin Ahmadi recommended offering more world language courses.
- We went to the Mark Taper Forum to see a production of *Angels in America*.
- Kalindi has an ambitious semester, studying differential calculus, classical hebrew, brochure design, and greek literature.
- Lydia’s Aunt and Uncle make modular houses as beautiful as modernist works of art.
- We amused ourselves on the long flight by discussing how Spring in Kyoto stacks up against Summer in London.



# Grammar Basics

- 46** Parts of speech, 362
- 47** Sentence patterns, 375
- 48** Subordinate word groups, 383
- 49** Sentence types, 392

# 46 Parts of speech

Traditional grammar recognizes eight parts of speech: noun, pronoun, verb, adjective, adverb, preposition, conjunction, and interjection. Many words can function as more than one part of speech. For example, depending on its use in a sentence, the word *paint* can be a noun (*The paint is wet*) or a verb (*Please paint the ceiling next*).

## 46a Nouns

A noun is the name of a person, place, thing, or concept.

The <sup>N</sup>lion in the <sup>N</sup>cage growled at the <sup>N</sup>zookeeper.

Nouns sometimes function as adjectives modifying other nouns. Because of their dual roles, nouns used in this manner may be called *noun/adjectives*.

The <sup>N/ADJ</sup>leather notebook was tucked in the <sup>N/ADJ</sup>student's backpack.

Nouns are classified in a variety of ways. *Proper* nouns are capitalized, but *common* nouns are not (see 45a). For clarity, writers choose between *concrete* and *abstract* nouns (see 18b). The distinction between *count* nouns and *noncount* nouns can be especially helpful to multilingual writers (see 29a). Most nouns have singular and plural forms; *collective* nouns may be either singular or plural, depending on how they are used (see 21f and 22b). *Possessive* nouns require an apostrophe (see 36a).

**EXERCISE 46-1** Underline the nouns (and noun/adjectives) in the following sentences. Answers appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

The best part of dinner was the chef's newest dessert.

 LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

46 Parts of speech

> Exercises: 46-2 to 46-4, 46-19, 46-20

> LearningCurve: Nouns and pronouns



- The stage was set for a confrontation of biblical proportions.
- The courage of the mountain climber was an inspiration to the rescuers.
- The need to arrive before the guest of honor motivated us to navigate the thick fog.
- The defense attorney made a final appeal to the jury.
- A national museum dedicated to women artists opened in 1987.

## 46b Pronouns

A pronoun is a word used in place of a noun. Usually the pronoun substitutes for a specific noun, known as its *antecedent*.

ANT  PN  
When the *battery* wears down, we recharge *it*.

Although most pronouns function as substitutes for nouns, some can function as adjectives modifying nouns. Such pronouns may be called *pronoun/adjectives*.

PN/ADJ  
*That* bird was at the same window yesterday morning.

Pronouns are classified as personal, possessive, intensive and reflexive, relative, interrogative, demonstrative, indefinite, and reciprocal.

**Personal pronouns** Personal pronouns refer to specific persons or things. They always function as substitutes for nouns.

*Singular:* I, me, you, she, her, he, him, it

*Plural:* we, us, you, they, them

**Possessive pronouns** Possessive pronouns indicate ownership.

*Singular:* my, mine, your, yours, her, hers, his, its

*Plural:* our, ours, your, yours, their, theirs

Some of these possessive pronouns function as adjectives modifying nouns: *my, your, his, her, its, our, their*.

**Intensive and reflexive pronouns** Intensive pronouns emphasize a noun or another pronoun (The senator *herself* met us at the door). Reflexive pronouns name a receiver of an action identical with the doer of the action (Paula cut *herself*).

*Singular:* myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself

*Plural:* ourselves, yourselves, themselves

**Relative pronouns** Relative pronouns introduce subordinate clauses functioning as adjectives (The writer *who won the award* refused to accept it). The relative pronoun, in this case *who*, also points back to a noun or pronoun that the clause modifies (*writer*). (See 48e.)

who, whom, whose, which, that

The pronouns *whichever*, *whoever*, *whomever*, *what*, and *whatever* are sometimes considered relative pronouns. These words introduce noun clauses, however; they do not point back to a noun or pronoun. (See “Noun clauses” in 48e.)

**Interrogative pronouns** Interrogative pronouns introduce questions (*Who* is expected to win the election?).

who, whom, whose, which, what

**Demonstrative pronouns** Demonstrative pronouns identify or point to nouns. Frequently they function as adjectives (*This* chair is my favorite), but they may also function as substitutes for nouns (*This* is my favorite chair).

this, that, these, those

**Indefinite pronouns** Indefinite pronouns refer to nonspecific persons or things. Most are always singular (*everyone*, *each*); some are always plural (*both*, *many*); a few may be singular or plural (see 21e). Most indefinite pronouns function as substitutes for nouns (*Something* is burning), but some can also function as adjectives (*All* campers must check in at the lodge).

all	anything	everyone	nobody	several
another	both	everything	none	some
any	each	few	no one	somebody
anybody	either	many	nothing	someone
anyone	everybody	neither	one	something

**Reciprocal pronouns** Reciprocal pronouns refer to individual parts of a plural antecedent (By turns, the penguins fed *one another*).

each other, one another

**NOTE:** See also pronoun-antecedent agreement (22), pronoun reference (23), distinguishing between pronouns such as *I* and *me* (24), and distinguishing between *who* and *whom* (25).

**EXERCISE 46-5** Underline the pronouns (and pronoun/adjectives) in the following sentences. Answers appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

We were intrigued by the video that the fifth graders produced as their final project.

- The governor's loyalty was his most appealing trait.
- In the fall, the geese that fly south for the winter pass through our town in huge numbers.
- As Carl Sandburg once said, even he himself did not understand some of his poetry.
- I appealed my parking ticket, but you did not get one.
- Angela did not mind gossip as long as no one gossiped about her.

## 46c Verbs

The verb of a sentence usually expresses action (*jump*, *think*) or being (*is*, *become*). It is composed of a main verb possibly preceded by one or more helping verbs.

MV

The horses *exercise* every day.

HV                      MV

The task force report *was* not *completed* on schedule.

HV    HV                      MV

No one *has been defended* with more passion than our mayor.



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

46 Parts of speech

> Exercises: 46-6 to 46-8, 46-19, 46-20

> LearningCurve: Nouns and pronouns

Notice that words, usually adverbs, can intervene between the helping verb and the main verb (was *not* completed). (See 46e.)

### Helping verbs

There are twenty-three helping verbs in English: forms of *have*, *do*, and *be*, which may also function as main verbs; and nine modals, which function only as helping verbs. *Have*, *do*, and *be* change form to indicate tense; the nine modals do not.

#### FORMS OF HAVE, DO, AND BE

have, has, had

do, does, did

be, am, is, are, was, were, being, been

#### MODALS

can, could, may, might, must, shall, should, will, would

The verb phrase *ought to* is often classified as a modal as well.

### Main verbs

The main verb of a sentence is always the kind of word that would change form if put into these test sentences:

BASE FORM	Usually I ( <i>walk, ride</i> ).
PAST TENSE	Yesterday I ( <i>walked, rode</i> ).
PAST PARTICIPLE	I have ( <i>walked, ridden</i> ) many times before.
PRESENT PARTICIPLE	I am ( <i>walking, riding</i> ) right now.
-S FORM	Usually he/she/it ( <i>walks, rides</i> ).

If a word doesn't change form when slipped into the test sentences, you can be certain that it is not a main verb. For example, the noun *revolution*, though it may seem to suggest an action, can never function as a main verb. Just try to make it behave like one (*Today I revolution . . . Yesterday I revolutioned . . .*) and you'll see why.

When both the past-tense and the past-participle forms of a verb end in *-ed*, the verb is regular (*walked, walked*). Otherwise, the verb is irregular (*rode, ridden*). (See 27a.)

The verb *be* is highly irregular, having eight forms instead of the usual five: the base form *be*; the present-tense forms *am*, *is*, and *are*; the past-tense forms *was* and *were*; the present participle

*being*; and the past participle *been*. Helping verbs combine with main verbs to create tenses. For a survey of tenses, see 28a.

**NOTE:** Some verbs are followed by *particles*, words that look like prepositions but that are actually part of the verbs. Common verb-particle combinations include *bring up*, *call off*, *drop off*, *give in*, *look up*, *run into*, and *take off*.

Sharon *packed up* her broken laptop and *sent it off* to the repair shop.

**TIP:** For more information about using verbs, see these sections: active verbs (8), subject-verb agreement (21), Standard English verb forms (27), verb tense and mood (27f and 27g), and multilingual/ESL challenges with verbs (28).

**EXERCISE 46-9** Underline the verbs in the following sentences, including helping verbs and particles. If a verb is part of a contraction (such as *is* in *isn't* or *would* in *I'd*), underline only the letters that represent the verb. Answers appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

The ground under the pine trees wasn't wet from the rain.

- My grandmother always told me a soothing story before bed.
- There were fifty apples on the tree before the frost killed them.
- Morton brought down the box of letters from the attic.
- Stay on the main road and you'll arrive at the base camp before us.
- The fish struggled vigorously but was trapped in the net.

## 46d Adjectives

An adjective is a word used to modify, or describe, a noun or pronoun. An adjective usually answers one of these questions: Which one? What kind of? How many?

<sup>ADJ</sup>  
the *frisky* horse [Which horse?]

<sup>ADJ</sup> <sup>ADJ</sup>  
*cracked old* plates [What kind of plates?]

 LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhigher.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhigher.com/rules8e)

46 Parts of speech

> Exercises: 46-10 to 46-12, 46-19, 46-20

> LearningCurve: Verbs, adjectives, and adverbs

ADJ

*nine* months [How many months?]

ADJ

*qualified* applicants [What kind of applicants?]

Adjectives usually precede the words they modify. They may also follow linking verbs, in which case they describe the subject. (See 47b.)

ADJ

The decision was *unpopular*.

The definite article *the* and the indefinite articles *a* and *an* are also classified as adjectives.

ART

ART

ART

A defendant should be judged on *the* evidence provided to *the* jury, not on hearsay.

Some possessive, demonstrative, and indefinite pronouns can function as adjectives: *their*, *its*, *this*, *all* (see 46b). And nouns can function as adjectives when they modify other nouns: *apple pie* (the noun *apple* modifies the noun *pie*; see 46a).

**TIP:** You can find more details about using adjectives in 26. If you are a multilingual writer, you may find help with articles and specific uses of adjectives in 29, 30g, and 30h.

## 46e Adverbs

An adverb is a word used to modify, or qualify, a verb (or verbal), an adjective, or another adverb. It usually answers one of these questions: When? Where? How? Why? Under what conditions? To what degree?

Pull *firmly* on the emergency handle. [Pull how?]

Read the text *first* and *then* complete the exercises. [Read when? Complete when?]

Adverbs modifying adjectives or other adverbs usually intensify or limit the intensity of the word they modify.

ADV

Be *extremely* kind, and you will have many friends.


ADV

We proceeded *very* cautiously in the dark house.

The words *not* and *never* are classified as adverbs.

A word such as *cannot* contains the helping verb *can* and the adverb *not*. The word *can't* contains the helping verb *can* and a contracted form of *not* (see 36c).

**TIP:** You can find more details about using adverbs in 26b–26d. Multilingual writers can find more about the placement of adverbs in 30f.

**EXERCISE 46–13** Underline the adjectives and circle the adverbs in the following sentences. If a word is a noun or pronoun functioning as an adjective, underline it and mark it as a noun/adjective or pronoun/adjective. Also treat the articles *a*, *an*, and *the* as adjectives. Answers appear in the back of the book. *More practice:*  LaunchPadSolo

### Finding an available room during the convention

was (not) easy.

- Generalizations lead to weak, unfocused essays.
- The Spanish language is wonderfully flexible.
- The wildflowers smelled especially fragrant after the steady rain.
- I'd rather be slightly hot than bitterly cold.
- The cat slept soundly in its wicker basket.

## 46f Prepositions

A preposition is a word placed before a noun or pronoun to form a phrase that modifies another word in the sentence. The prepositional phrase nearly always functions as an adjective or as an adverb.

The road <sup>P</sup> to the summit travels <sup>P</sup> *past* craters <sup>P</sup> *from* an extinct volcano.

*To the summit* functions as an adjective modifying the noun *road*; *past craters* functions as an adverb modifying the verb *travels*;

*from an extinct volcano* functions as an adjective modifying the noun *craters*. (For more on prepositional phrases, see 48a.)

English has a limited number of prepositions. The most common are included in the following list.

about	beside	from	outside	toward
above	besides	in	over	under
across	between	inside	past	underneath
after	beyond	into	plus	unlike
against	but	like	regarding	until
along	by	near	respecting	unto
among	concerning	next	round	up
around	considering	of	since	upon
as	despite	off	than	with
at	down	on	through	within
before	during	onto	throughout	without
behind	except	opposite	till	
below	for	out	to	

Some prepositions are more than one word long. *Along with*, *as well as*, *in addition to*, *next to*, and *rather than* are common examples.

**TIP:** Prepositions are used in idioms such as *capable of* and *dig up* (see 18d). For specific issues for multilingual writers, see 31.

## 46g Conjunctions

Conjunctions join words, phrases, or clauses, and they indicate the relation between the elements joined.

**Coordinating conjunctions** A coordinating conjunction is used to connect grammatically equal elements. (See 9b and 14a.) The coordinating conjunctions are *and*, *but*, *or*, *nor*, *for*, *so*, and *yet*.

The sociologist interviewed children *but* not their parents.

Write clearly, *and* your readers will appreciate your efforts.

In the first sentence, *but* connects two noun phrases; in the second, *and* connects two independent clauses.

**Correlative conjunctions** Correlative conjunctions come in pairs; they connect grammatically equal elements.



either . . . or                      whether . . . or  
neither . . . nor                  both . . . and  
not only . . . but also

*Either* the painting was brilliant *or* it was a forgery.

**Subordinating conjunctions** A subordinating conjunction introduces a subordinate clause and indicates the relation of the clause to the rest of the sentence. (See 48e.) The most common subordinating conjunctions are *after, although, as, as if, because, before, if, in order that, once, since, so that, than, that, though, unless, until, when, where, whether, and while*. (For a complete list, see p. 390.)

*When* the fundraiser ends, we will have raised a million dollars.

**Conjunctive adverbs** Conjunctive adverbs connect independent clauses and indicate the relation between the clauses. They can be used with a semicolon to join two independent clauses in one sentence, or they can be used alone with an independent clause. The most common conjunctive adverbs are *finally, furthermore, however, moreover, nevertheless, similarly, then, therefore, and thus*. (For a complete list, see p. 374.)

The photographer failed to take a light reading; *therefore*, all the pictures were underexposed.

During the day, the kitten sleeps peacefully. *However*, when night falls, the kitten is wide awake and ready to play.

Conjunctive adverbs can appear at the beginning or in the middle of a clause.

When night falls, *however*, the kitten is wide awake and ready to play.

**TIP:** Recognizing conjunctive adverbs and coordinating conjunctions will help you avoid run-on sentences and make punctuation decisions (see 20, 32a, and 32f). Recognizing subordinating conjunctions will help you avoid sentence fragments (see 19).

## 46h Interjections

An interjection is a word used to express surprise or emotion (*Oh! Hey! Wow!*).



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

46 Parts of speech

> Exercises: 46-19 and 46-20 (all parts of speech)

> LearningCurve: Prepositions and conjunctions



(The forms of *be*, *have*, and *do* may also function as main verbs.)

- A **main verb** shows action or a state of being.

MV

The novel *opens* with a tense description of a grim murder, but  
 the author *does not maintain* the initial level of suspense.

HV                  MV

A main verb will always change form when put into these positions in sentences:

Usually I \_\_\_\_\_. (walk, ride)  
 Yesterday I \_\_\_\_\_. (walked, rode)  
 I have \_\_\_\_\_ many times before. (walked, ridden)  
 I am \_\_\_\_\_ right now. (walking, riding)  
 Usually he \_\_\_\_\_. (walks, rides)

The highly irregular verb *be* has eight forms: *be*, *am*, *is*, *are*, *was*, *were*, *being*, *been*.

- An **adjective** modifies a noun or pronoun, usually answering one of these questions: Which one? What kind of? How many? The articles *a*, *an*, and *the* are also adjectives.

PN/ADJ N/ADJ ADJ ADJ PN/ADJ

*Our family's strong ties gave us welcome comfort in our grief.*

- An **adverb** modifies a verb, an adjective, or an adverb, usually answering one of these questions: When? Where? Why? How? Under what conditions? To what degree?

ADV                          ADV

Young people *often* approach history *skeptically*.

- A **preposition** indicates the relationship between the noun or pronoun that follows it and another word in the sentence.

P                                  P

A journey *of* a thousand miles begins *with* a single step.



## Parts of speech, continued

### COMMON PREPOSITIONS

about	besides	like	since
above	between	near	than
across	beyond	next	through
after	but	next to	throughout
against	by	of	till
along	concerning	off	to
along with	considering	on	toward
among	despite	onto	under
around	down	opposite	underneath
as	during	out	unlike
as well as	except	outside	until
at	for	over	unto
because of	from	past	up
before	in	plus	upon
behind	in addition to	rather than	with
below	inside	regarding	within
beside	into	respecting	without

- A **conjunction** connects words or word groups.

**COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS:** and, but, or, nor, for, so, yet

**SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS:** after, although, as, as if, because, before, even though, if, in order that, once, since, so that, than, that, though, unless, until, when, where, whether, while

**CORRELATIVE CONJUNCTIONS:** either . . . or; neither . . . nor; not only . . . but also; both . . . and; whether . . . or

**CONJUNCTIVE ADVERBS:** accordingly, also, anyway, besides, certainly, consequently, conversely, finally, furthermore, hence, however, incidentally, indeed, instead, likewise, meanwhile, moreover, nevertheless, next, nonetheless, now, otherwise, similarly, specifically, still, subsequently, then, therefore, thus

- An **interjection** expresses surprise or emotion (*Oh! Wow! Hooray!*).

# 47 Sentence patterns

The vast majority of sentences in English conform to one of these five patterns:

subject/verb/subject complement

subject/verb/direct object

subject/verb/indirect object/direct object

subject/verb/direct object/object complement

subject/verb

Adverbial modifiers (single words, phrases, or clauses) may be added to any of these patterns, and they may appear nearly anywhere — at the beginning, in the middle, or at the end.

*Predicate* is the grammatical term given to the verb plus its objects, complements, and adverbial modifiers.

For a quick-reference chart of sentence patterns, see page 380.

## 47a Subjects

The subject of a sentence names whom or what the sentence is about. The simple subject is always a noun or pronoun; the complete subject consists of the simple subject and any words or word groups modifying the simple subject.

### The complete subject

To find the complete subject, ask Who? or What?, insert the verb, and finish the question. The answer is the complete subject.

\_\_\_\_\_ COMPLETE SUBJECT \_\_\_\_\_

The devastating effects of famine can last for many years.

Who or what can last for many years? *The devastating effects of famine.*

\_\_\_\_\_ COMPLETE SUBJECT \_\_\_\_\_

Adventure novels that contain multiple subplots are often made into successful movies.

Who or what are often made into movies? *Adventure novels that contain multiple subplots.*

COMPLETE  
SUBJECT

In our program, student teachers work full-time for ten months.

Who or what works full-time for ten months? *Student teachers.* Notice that *In our program, student teachers* is not a sensible answer to the question. (It is not safe to assume that the subject must always appear first in a sentence.)

### The simple subject

To find the simple subject, strip away all modifiers in the complete subject. This includes single-word modifiers such as *the* and *devastating*, phrases such as *of famine*, and subordinate clauses such as *that contain multiple subplots*.

SS

*The devastating effects of famine* can last for many years.

SS

*Adventure novels that contain multiple subplots* are often made into successful movies.

A sentence may have a compound subject containing two or more simple subjects joined with a coordinating conjunction such as *and*, *but*, or *or*.

SS

SS

*Great commitment and a little luck* make a successful actor.

### Understood subjects

In imperative sentences, which give advice or issue commands, the subject is understood but not actually present in the sentence. The subject of an imperative sentence is understood to be *you*.

[*You*] Put your hands on the steering wheel.

### Subject after the verb

Although the subject ordinarily comes before the verb (*The planes took off*), occasionally it does not. When a sentence begins with *There is* or *There are* (or *There was* or *There were*), the subject

follows the verb. In such inverted constructions, the word *There* is an expletive, an empty word serving merely to get the sentence started.

┌ SS ┐  
There are *eight planes* waiting to take off.

Occasionally a writer will invert a sentence for effect.

┌ SS ┐  
*Joyful* is the child whose school closes for snow.

*Joyful* is an adjective, so it cannot be the subject. Turn this sentence around and its structure becomes obvious.

The *child* whose school closes for snow is joyful.

In questions, the subject frequently appears between the helping verb and the main verb.

HV                  ┌ SS ─ ─ ┐                  MV  
Do *Kenyan marathoners* train year-round?

**TIP:** The ability to recognize the subject of a sentence will help you edit for fragments (19), subject-verb agreement (21), pronouns such as *I* and *me* (24), missing subjects (30b), and repeated subjects (30c).

---

**EXERCISE 47-1** In the following sentences, underline the complete subject and write SS above the simple subject(s). If the subject is an understood *you*, insert *you* in parentheses. Answers appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

┌ SS ┐                          ┌ SS ┐  
Parents and their children often look alike.

- The hills and mountains seemed endless, and the snow atop them glistened.
- In foil fencing, points are scored by hitting an electronic target.
- Do not stand in the aisles or sit on the stairs.
- There were hundreds of fireflies in the open field.
- The evidence against the defendant was staggering.

## 47b Verbs, objects, and complements

Section 46c explains how to find the verb of a sentence. A sentence's verb is classified as linking, transitive, or intransitive, depending on the kinds of objects or complements the verb can (or cannot) take.

### Linking verbs and subject complements

Linking verbs connect the subject to a subject complement, a word or word group that completes the meaning of the subject by renaming or describing it.

If the subject complement renames the subject, it is a noun or noun equivalent (sometimes called a *predicate noun*).

┌────────── S ─────────┐
┌── V ─┐
┌── SC ─┐

An e-mail requesting personal information may be a scam.

If the subject complement describes the subject, it is an adjective or adjective equivalent (sometimes called a *predicate adjective*).

┌────────── S ─────────┐
┌── V ─┐
┌── SC ─┐

Last month's temperatures were mild.

Whenever they appear as main verbs (rather than helping verbs), the forms of *be*—*be*, *am*, *is*, *are*, *was*, *were*, *being*, *been*—usually function as linking verbs. In the preceding examples, for instance, the main verbs are *be* and *were*.

Verbs such as *appear*, *become*, *feel*, *grow*, *look*, *make*, *seem*, *smell*, *sound*, and *taste* are linking when they are followed by a word or word group that renames or describes the subject.

┌── S ─┐
┌── V ─┐
┌── SC ─┐

As it thickens, the sauce will look unappealing.

### Transitive verbs and direct objects

A transitive verb takes a direct object, a word or word group that names a receiver of the action.

┌── S ─┐
┌── V ─┐
┌── DO ─┐

The hungry cat clawed the bag of dry food.

The simple direct object is always a noun or pronoun, in this case *bag*. To find it, simply strip away all modifiers.



Transitive verbs usually appear in the active voice, with the subject doing the action and a direct object receiving the action. Active-voice sentences can be transformed into the passive voice, with the subject receiving the action instead. (See 47c.)

### Transitive verbs, indirect objects, and direct objects

The direct object of a transitive verb is sometimes preceded by an indirect object, a noun or pronoun telling to whom or for whom the action of the sentence is done.

S      V      IO      DO      S      V      IO      DO  
 You give her some yarn, and she will knit you a scarf.

The simple indirect object is always a noun or pronoun. To test for an indirect object, insert the word *to* or *for* before the word or word group in question. If the sentence makes sense, the word or word group is an indirect object.

You give [to] *her* some yarn, and she will knit [for] *you* a scarf.

An indirect object may be turned into a prepositional phrase using *to* or *for*: *You give some yarn to her, and she will knit a scarf for you.*

Only certain transitive verbs take indirect objects. Some examples are *ask, bring, find, get, give, hand, lend, make, offer, pay, promise, read, send, show, teach, tell, throw, and write.*

### Transitive verbs, direct objects, and object complements

The direct object of a transitive verb is sometimes followed by an object complement, a word or word group that renames or describes the object.

S                      V                      DO                      OC  
 People often consider chivalry a thing of the past.

S                      V                      DO                      OC  
 The kiln makes clay firm and strong.

When the object complement renames the direct object, it is a noun or pronoun (such as *thing*). When it describes the direct object, it is an adjective (such as *firm* and *strong*).

**Intransitive verbs**

Intransitive verbs take no objects or complements.

┌── S ──┐ V  
The audience laughed.

┌── S ──┐ V  
The driver accelerated in the straightaway.

Nothing receives the actions of laughing and accelerating in these sentences, so the verbs are intransitive. Notice that such verbs may or may not be followed by adverbial modifiers. In the second sentence, *in the straightaway* is an adverbial prepositional phrase modifying *accelerated*.

**Sentence patterns****Subject / linking verb / subject complement**

S V SC  
Acting is art. [*Art* renames *Acting*.]

┌── S ──┐ V SC  
Good researchers are curious. [*Curious* describes *researchers*.]

**Subject / transitive verb / direct object**

┌── S ──┐ ┌── V ──┐ ┌── DO ──┐  
An antihistamine may prevent an allergic reaction.

**Subject / transitive verb / indirect object / direct object**

┌── S ──┐ V IO ┌── DO ──┐  
The elevator's rapid ascent gave Irina an attack of vertigo.

**Subject / transitive verb / direct object / object complement**

┌── S ──┐ V ┌── DO ──┐ ┌── OC ──┐  
The reviewer called the film a masterpiece. [*Masterpiece* renames *film*.]

┌── S ──┐ V ┌── DO ──┐ OC  
The new double-glazed windows made the house warmer.  
[*Warmer* describes *house*.]

**Subject / intransitive verb**

┌── S ──┐ V  
The kettle whistles.

**NOTE:** The dictionary will tell you whether a verb is transitive or intransitive. Some verbs have both transitive and intransitive functions.

**TRANSITIVE** Sandra *flew* her small plane over the canyon.

**INTRANSITIVE** A flock of migrating geese *flew* overhead.

In the first example, *flew* has a direct object that receives the action: *her small plane*. In the second example, the verb is followed by an adverb (*overhead*), not by a direct object.

**EXERCISE 47-5** Label the subject complements and direct objects in the following sentences, using the labels *SC* and *DO*. If a subject complement or direct object consists of more than one word, bracket and label all of it. Answers appear in the back of the book.

┌── DO ──┐  
The sharp right turn confused most drivers.

- Textbooks are expensive.
- Samurai warriors never fear death.
- Successful coaches always praise their players' efforts.
- St. Petersburg was the capital of the Russian Empire for two centuries.
- The medicine tasted bitter.

**EXERCISE 47-6** Each of the following sentences has either an indirect object followed by a direct object or a direct object followed by an object complement. Label the objects and complements, using the labels *IO*, *DO*, and *OC*. If an object or a complement consists of more than one word, bracket and label all of it. Answers appear in the back of the book.

*More practice:*  LaunchPadSolo

┌── DO ──┐ ┌ OC ─┐  
Most people consider their own experience normal.

- Stress can make adults and children weary.
- The dining hall offered students healthy meal choices.
- Consider the work finished.
- We showed the agent our tickets, and she gave us boarding passes.
- Zita has made community service her priority this year.



## 47c Pattern variations

Although most sentences follow one of the five patterns in the chart on page 380, variations of these patterns commonly occur in questions, commands, sentences with delayed subjects, and passive transformations.

### Questions and commands

Questions are sometimes patterned in normal word order, with the subject preceding the verb.

S    V  
Who will have the most hits this season?

Sometimes the pattern of a question is inverted, with the subject appearing between the helping verb and the main verb or after the verb.

HV   S   MV  
Will he have the most hits this season?

V    S  
Why is the number of hits an important statistic?

In commands, the subject of the sentence is an understood *you*.

S    V  
[You] Pay attention to the road.

### Sentences with delayed subjects

Writers sometimes choose to delay the subject of a sentence to achieve a special effect such as suspense or humor.

V    S  
Behind the phony tinsel of Hollywood lies the real tinsel.

The subject of the sentence is also delayed in sentences opening with the expletive *There* or *It*. When used as expletives, the words *There* and *It* have no strict grammatical function; they serve merely to get the sentence started.

V    S  
There are thirty thousand spectators in the stadium.

V    S  
It is best to avoid trans fats.

The subject in the second example is an infinitive phrase. (See 48b.)

## Passive transformations

Transitive verbs, those that can take direct objects, usually appear in the active voice. In the active voice, the subject does the action, and a direct object receives the action.

ACTIVE       $\overbrace{\text{The fireworks display}}^{\text{S}}$   $\overbrace{\text{dazzled}}^{\text{V}}$   $\overbrace{\text{the viewers on the Esplanade.}}^{\text{DO}}$

Sentences in the active voice may be transformed into the passive voice, with the subject receiving the action instead.

PASSIVE       $\overbrace{\text{The viewers on the Esplanade}}^{\text{S}}$   $\overbrace{\text{were}}^{\text{HV}}$   $\overbrace{\text{dazzled}}^{\text{MV}}$   $\overbrace{\text{by the fireworks display.}}$

What was once the direct object (*the viewers on the Esplanade*) has become the subject in the passive-voice transformation, and the original subject appears in a prepositional phrase beginning with *by*. The *by* phrase is frequently omitted in passive-voice constructions.

PASSIVE      The viewers on the Esplanade were dazzled.

Verbs in the passive voice can be identified by their form alone. The main verb is always a past participle, such as *dazzled* (see 46c), preceded by a form of *be* (*be, am, is, are, was, were, being, been*): *were dazzled*. Sometimes adverbs intervene (*were usually dazzled*).

**TIP:** Avoid using the passive voice when the active voice would be more appropriate (see 8a).

# 48 Subordinate word groups

Subordinate word groups include phrases and clauses. Phrases are subordinate because they lack a subject and a verb; they are classified as prepositional, verbal, appositive, and absolute (see 48a–48d). Subordinate clauses have a subject and a verb, but they begin with a word (such as *although, that, or when*) that marks them as subordinate (see 48e).

## 48a Prepositional phrases

A prepositional phrase begins with a preposition such as *at*, *by*, *for*, *from*, *in*, *of*, *on*, *to*, or *with* (see 46f) and usually ends with a noun or noun equivalent: *on the table*, *for him*, *by sleeping late*. The noun or noun equivalent is known as the *object of the preposition*.

Prepositional phrases function either as adjectives or as adverbs. When functioning as an adjective, a prepositional phrase nearly always appears immediately following the noun or pronoun it modifies.

The hut had *walls of mud*.



Adjective phrases usually answer one or both of the questions Which one? and What kind of? If we ask Which walls? or What kind of walls? we get a sensible answer: *walls of mud*.

Adverbial prepositional phrases usually modify the verb, but they can also modify adjectives or other adverbs. When a prepositional phrase modifies the verb, it can appear nearly anywhere in a sentence.

James *walked* his dog *on a leash*.



Sabrina *in time* *adjusted* to life in Ecuador.



*During a mudslide*, the terrain *can change* drastically.



If a prepositional phrase is movable, you can be certain that it is adverbial.

*In the cave*, the explorers found well-preserved prehistoric drawings.

The explorers found well-preserved prehistoric drawings *in the cave*.

Adverbial word groups usually answer one of these questions: When? Where? How? Why? Under what conditions? To what degree?

James walked his dog *how*? *On a leash*.

Sabrina adjusted to life in Ecuador *when*? *In time*.

The terrain can change drastically *under what conditions*?

*During a mudslide*.

In questions and subordinate clauses, a preposition may appear after its object.

*What are you afraid of?*

We avoided the bike trail *that* John had warned us *about*.

**EXERCISE 48-1** Underline the prepositional phrases in the following sentences. Tell whether each one is an adjective phrase or an adverb phrase and what it modifies in the sentence. Answers appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

**Flecks of mica glittered in the new granite floor.** (*Adjective phrase modifying “Flecks”; adverb phrase modifying “glittered”*)

- In northern Italy, we met many people who speak German as their first language.
- William completed the three-mile hike through the thick forest with ease.
- To my boss’s dismay, I was late for work again.
- The traveling exhibit of Mayan artifacts gave viewers new insight into pre-Columbian culture.
- In 2002, the euro became the official currency in twelve European countries.

## 48b Verbal phrases

A verbal is a verb form that does not function as the verb of a clause. Verbals include infinitives (the word *to* plus the base form of the verb), present participles (the *-ing* form of the verb), and past participles (the verb form usually ending in *-d*, *-ed*, *-n*, *-en*, or *-t*). (See 27a and 46c.)

INFINITIVE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	PAST PARTICIPLE
to dream	dreaming	dreamed
to choose	choosing	chosen
to build	building	built
to grow	growing	grown



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhigher.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhigher.com/rules8e)

48 Subordinate word groups

> Exercises: 48-2 to 48-5

> LearningCurve: Coordination and subordination

Instead of functioning as the verb of a clause, a verbal functions as an adjective, a noun, or an adverb.

ADJECTIVE	<i>Broken</i> promises cannot be fixed.
NOUN	Constant <i>complaining</i> becomes wearisome.
ADVERB	Can you wait <i>to celebrate</i> ?

Verbals with objects, complements, or modifiers form verbal phrases.

In my family, *singing loudly* is more appreciated than *singing well*.

Governments exist *to protect the rights of minorities*.


Like verbals, verbal phrases function as adjectives, nouns, or adverbs. Verbal phrases are ordinarily classified as participial, gerund, and infinitive.

### Participial phrases

Participial phrases always function as adjectives. Their verbals are either present participles (such as *dreaming*, *asking*) or past participles (such as *stolen*, *reached*).


Participial phrases frequently appear immediately following the noun or pronoun they modify.

Congress shall make no *law abridging the freedom of speech or of the press*.




Participial phrases are often movable. They can precede the word they modify.

*Being a weight-bearing joint*, the *knee* is among the most frequently injured.



They may also appear at some distance from the word they modify.

Last night we saw a *play* that affected us deeply, *written with profound insight into the lives of immigrants*.



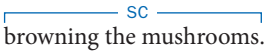
### Gerund phrases

Gerund phrases are built around present participles (verb forms that end in *-ing*), and they always function as nouns: usually as




subjects, subject complements, direct objects, or objects of a preposition.

 Rationalizing a fear can eliminate it.

The key to a good sauce is  browning the mushrooms.

Lizards usually enjoy  sunning themselves.

The American Heart Association has documented the benefits of diet and exercise in  reducing the risk of heart attack.

### Infinitive phrases

Infinitive phrases, usually constructed around *to* plus the base form of the verb (*to call*, *to drink*), can function as nouns, as adjectives, or as adverbs. When functioning as a noun, an infinitive phrase may appear in almost any noun slot in a sentence, usually as a subject, subject complement, or direct object.


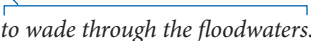
 To live without health insurance is risky.

Infinitive phrases functioning as adjectives usually appear immediately following the noun or pronoun they modify.

The Nineteenth Amendment gave women the  *right to vote*.

The infinitive phrase modifies the noun *right*. Which *right*? *The right to vote*.

Adverbial infinitive phrases usually qualify the meaning of the verb, telling when, where, how, why, under what conditions, or to what degree an action occurred.

Volunteers  *rolled up* their pants  *to wade through the floodwaters*.

Why did they roll up their pants? *To wade through the floodwaters*.

**NOTE:** In some constructions, the infinitive is unmarked; that is, the *to* does not appear. (See 28f.)

Graphs and charts can help researchers [*to*] *present complex data*.

**EXERCISE 48-6** Underline the verbal phrases in the following sentences. Tell whether each phrase is participial, gerund, or infinitive and how each is used in the sentence. Answers appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPadSolo

**Do you want to watch that documentary?** (Infinitive phrase used as direct object of “Do want”)

- Updating your software will fix the computer glitch.
- The challenge in decreasing the town budget is identifying nonessential services.
- Cathleen tried to help her mother by raking the lawn.
- Understanding little, I had no hope of passing my biology final.
- Working with animals gave Steve a sense of satisfaction.

## 48c Appositive phrases

Appositive phrases describe nouns or pronouns. Instead of modifying nouns or pronouns, however, appositive phrases rename them. In form they are nouns or noun equivalents.

Bloggers, *conversationalists at heart*, are the online equivalent of radio talk show hosts.

Appositives are said to be “in apposition to” the nouns or pronouns they rename. *Conversationalists at heart* is in apposition to the noun *Bloggers*.

## 48d Absolute phrases

An absolute phrase modifies a whole clause or sentence, not just one word. It consists of a noun or noun equivalent usually followed by a participial phrase.

*Her words reverberating in the hushed arena*, the senator urged the crowd to support her former opponent.

 LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

48 Subordinate word groups

> Exercises: 48-7 to 48-9

> LearningCurve: Coordination and subordination

## 48e Subordinate clauses

Subordinate clauses are patterned like sentences, having subjects and verbs and sometimes objects or complements. But they function within sentences as adjectives, adverbs, or nouns. They cannot stand alone as complete sentences.

A subordinate clause usually begins with a subordinating conjunction or a relative pronoun. The chart on page 390 classifies these words according to the kinds of clauses (adjective, adverb, or noun) they introduce.


### Adjective clauses

Adjective clauses modify nouns or pronouns, usually answering the question Which one? or What kind of? Most adjective clauses begin with a relative pronoun (*who*, *whom*, *whose*, *which*, or *that*). In addition to introducing the clause, the relative pronoun points back to the noun that the clause modifies.

The coach chose *players who would benefit from intense drills*.



A *book that goes unread* is a writer's worst nightmare.




Relative pronouns are sometimes “understood.”

The things [*that*] *we cherish most* are the things [*that*] *we might lose*.

Occasionally an adjective clause is introduced by a relative adverb, usually *when*, *where*, or *why*.

The aging actor returned to the *stage where he had made his debut as Hamlet half a century earlier*.



The parts of an adjective clause are often arranged as in sentences (subject/verb/object or complement).

Sometimes it is our closest friends <sup>S</sup> who <sup>V</sup> disappoint <sup>DO</sup> us.

Frequently, however, the object or complement appears first, out of the normal order of subject/verb/object.

They can be the very friends <sup>DO</sup> whom <sup>S</sup> we <sup>V</sup> disappoint.

**TIP:** For punctuation of adjective clauses, see 32e and 33e. For advice about avoiding repeated words in adjective clauses, see 30d.

## Words that introduce subordinate clauses

### Words introducing adjective clauses

RELATIVE PRONOUNS: that, which, who, whom, whose

RELATIVE ADVERBS: when, where, why

### Words introducing adverb clauses

SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS: after, although, as, as if, because, before, even though, if, in order that, since, so that, than, that, though, unless, until, when, where, whether, while

### Words introducing noun clauses

RELATIVE PRONOUNS: that, which, who, whom, whose

OTHER PRONOUNS: what, whatever, whichever, whoever, whomever

OTHER SUBORDINATING WORDS: how, if, when, whenever, where, wherever, whether, why

## Adverb clauses

Adverb clauses modify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs, usually answering one of these questions: When? Where? Why? How? Under what conditions? To what degree? They always begin with a subordinating conjunction (such as *after*, *although*, *because*, *that*, *though*, *unless*, or *when*). (For a complete list, see the chart on this page.)

 *When the sun went down*, the hikers *prepared* their camp.

Kate *would have made* the team *if she hadn't broken her ankle*.

Adverb clauses are usually movable when they modify a verb. In the preceding examples, for instance, the adverb clauses can be moved without affecting the meaning of the sentences.

The hikers prepared their camp *when the sun went down*.

*If she hadn't broken her ankle*, Kate would have made the team.

When an adverb clause modifies an adjective or an adverb, it is not movable; it must appear next to the word it modifies. In the following examples, the *when* clause modifies the adjective *Uncertain*, and the *than* clause modifies the adverb *better*.

Uncertain *when the baby would be born*, Ray and Leah stayed close to home.

Jackie can dance better *than I can walk*.

Adverb clauses are sometimes elliptical, with some of their words being understood but not appearing in the sentence.

*When [it is] renovated*, the dorm will hold six hundred students.

## Noun clauses

A noun clause functions just like a single-word noun, usually as a subject, a subject complement, a direct object, or an object of a preposition. It usually begins with one of the following words: *how, if, that, what, whatever, when, where, whether, which, who, whoever, whom, whomever, whose, why*. (For a complete list, see the box on p. 390.)

Whoever <sup>S</sup> leaves the house last must double-lock the door.

Copernicus argued that the sun is the center of the universe. <sup>DO</sup>

The subordinating word introducing the clause may or may not play a significant role in the clause. In the preceding example sentences, *Whoever* is the subject of its clause, but *that* does not perform a function in its clause.

As with adjective clauses, the parts of a noun clause may appear in normal order (subject/verb/object or complement) or out of their normal order.

Loyalty <sup>S</sup> is what <sup>V</sup> keeps a friendship <sup>DO</sup> strong. <sup>OC</sup>

New Mexico <sup>DO</sup> is where <sup>S</sup> we <sup>V</sup> live.

**EXERCISE 48–10** Underline the subordinate clauses in the following sentences. Tell whether each clause is an adjective, adverb, or noun clause and how it is used in the sentence. Answers appear in the back of the book.

More practice:  LaunchPad Solo

Show the committee the latest draft before you print the final report. (Adverb clause modifying “Show”)

- a. The city's electoral commission adjusted the voting process so that every vote would count.
- b. A marketing campaign that targets baby boomers may not appeal to young professionals.
- c. After the Tambora volcano erupted in the southern Pacific in 1815, no one realized that it would contribute to the "year without a summer" in Europe and North America.
- d. The concept of peak oil implies that at a certain point there will be no more oil to extract from the earth.
- e. Details are easily overlooked when you are rushing.

## 49 Sentence types

Sentences are classified in two ways: according to their structure (simple, compound, complex, and compound-complex) and according to their purpose (declarative, imperative, interrogative, and exclamatory).

### 49a Sentence structures

Depending on the number and the types of clauses they contain, sentences are classified as simple, compound, complex, or compound-complex.

Clauses come in two varieties: independent and subordinate. An independent clause contains a subject and a predicate, and it either stands alone or could stand alone as a sentence. A subordinate clause also contains a subject and a predicate, but it functions within a sentence as an adjective, an adverb, or a noun; it cannot stand alone. (See 48e.)

#### Simple sentences

A simple sentence is one independent clause with no subordinate clauses.



INDEPENDENT CLAUSE  
 Without a passport, Eva could not visit her grandparents in  
 Hungary.

A simple sentence may contain compound elements—a compound subject, verb, or object, for example—but it does not contain more than one full sentence pattern. The following sentence is simple because its two verbs (*comes in* and *goes out*) share a subject (*Spring*).

INDEPENDENT CLAUSE  
 Spring comes in like a lion and goes out like a lamb.

### Compound sentences

A compound sentence is composed of two or more independent clauses with no subordinate clauses. The independent clauses are usually joined with a comma and a coordinating conjunction (*and, but, or, nor, for, so, yet*) or with a semicolon. (See 14a.)

INDEPENDENT CLAUSE      INDEPENDENT CLAUSE  
 The car broke down, but a rescue van arrived within minutes.

INDEPENDENT CLAUSE      INDEPENDENT CLAUSE  
 A shark was spotted near shore; people left immediately.

### Complex sentences

A complex sentence is composed of one independent clause with one or more subordinate clauses. (See 48e.)

ADJECTIVE      SUBORDINATE CLAUSE  
 The pitcher who won the game is a rookie.

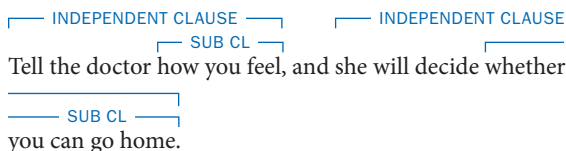
ADVERB      SUBORDINATE CLAUSE  
 If you leave late, take a cab home.

NOUN      SUBORDINATE CLAUSE  
 What matters most to us is a quick commute.

### Compound-complex sentences

A compound-complex sentence contains at least two independent clauses and at least one subordinate clause. The following


sentence contains two independent clauses, each of which contains a subordinate clause.



## 49b Sentence purposes

Writers use declarative sentences to make statements, imperative sentences to issue requests or commands, interrogative sentences to ask questions, and exclamatory sentences to make exclamations.

DECLARATIVE	The echo sounded in our ears.
IMPERATIVE	Love your neighbor.
INTERROGATIVE	Did the better team win tonight?
EXCLAMATORY	We're here to save you!

**EXERCISE 49-1** Identify the following sentences as simple, compound, complex, or compound-complex. Identify the subordinate clauses and classify them according to their function: adjective, adverb, or noun. (See 48e.) Answers appear in the back of the book. *More practice:*  LaunchPadSolo

The deli in Courthouse Square was crowded with lawyers  
at lunchtime. (Simple)

- Fires that are ignited in dry areas spread especially quickly.
- The early Incas were advanced; they used a calendar and developed a decimal system.
- Elaine's jacket was too thin to block the wintry air.
- Before we leave for the station, we always check the Amtrak Web site.
- Decide when you want to leave, and I will be there to pick you up.



# Research

- 50** Thinking like a researcher; gathering sources, 396
- 51** Managing information; taking notes responsibly, 408
- 52** Evaluating sources, 416

# 50 Thinking like a researcher; gathering sources

A college research assignment asks you to pose questions worth exploring, to read widely in search of possible answers, to interpret what you read, to draw reasoned conclusions, and to support those conclusions with evidence. In short, it asks you to enter a research conversation by engaging with the ideas of other writers and thinkers who have explored and studied your topic. As you listen to and learn from the voices already in the conversation, you'll find entry points where you can add your own insights and ideas.

Becoming a confident researcher means figuring out how to respond to and engage with ideas, find your own voice, and present your ideas alongside other people's thoughts. It also requires embracing the idea that writing with sources is a process that takes time. As your ideas evolve, you may find that the process leads you in unexpected directions—perhaps new questions in the conversation require you to create a new search strategy, find additional sources, and challenge your initial assumptions. Keep an open mind throughout the process, be curious, and enjoy the work of finding answers to questions that matter to you.

## 50a Manage the project.

When you begin a research project, you need to understand the assignment, choose a direction, and quickly grasp the big picture for the topic you choose. The following tips will help you manage the beginning phase of research.

### Managing time

When you receive your assignment, set a realistic schedule of deadlines. Think about how much time you might need for each step of your project. One student created a calendar to map out her tasks for a research paper assigned on October 3 and due October 31, keeping in mind that some tasks might overlap or need to be repeated.

### Keeping a research log

Research is a process. As your topic evolves, you may find yourself asking new questions that require you to create a new search

## SAMPLE CALENDAR FOR A RESEARCH ASSIGNMENT

<b>2</b>	<b>3</b> Receive and analyze the assignment.	<b>4</b> Pose questions you might explore.	<b>5</b> Talk with a reference librarian; plan a search strategy.	<b>6</b> Start research log.	<b>7</b> Settle on a topic; narrow the focus.	<b>8</b> Revise research questions. Locate sources.
<b>9</b> Read, take notes, and compile a working bibliography.	<b>10</b>	<b>11</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>13</b> Draft a working thesis and an outline.	<b>14</b> Draft the paper.	<b>15</b>
<b>16</b> Draft the paper.	<b>17</b>	<b>18</b>	<b>19</b> Visit the writing center for feedback.	<b>20</b> Do additional research if needed.	<b>21</b>	<b>22</b>
<b>23</b> Ask peers for feedback.	<b>24</b>	<b>25</b>	<b>26</b>	<b>27</b> Prepare a list of works cited.	<b>28</b>	<b>29</b> Proofread the final draft.
<b>30</b> Proofread the final draft.	<b>31</b> Submit the final draft.					

strategy, find additional sources, and revise your initial assumptions. A research log helps you bring order to this process by keeping accurate records of the sources you read and your ideas about them. You might want to use a separate hardcopy notebook for your log or create a digital set of files. Keeping an accurate source trail and working bibliography, and separating your own insights and ideas from those of your sources, will help you become a more efficient researcher.

### Getting the big picture

As you consider a possible research topic, set aside some time to learn what people are saying about it by reading sources on the Web or in library databases. Ask yourself questions such as these:

- What aspects of the topic are generating the most debate?
- Why and on what points are people disagreeing?
- Which arguments and approaches seem worth exploring?

Once you have an aerial view of the topic and are familiar with some of the existing research, you can zoom in closer to examine subtopics and debates that look interesting.

## 50b Pose questions worth exploring.

Every research project starts with questions. Working within the guidelines of your assignment, pose a few preliminary questions that seem worth researching—questions that you are interested in exploring, that you feel would engage your audience, and about which there is substantial debate. You'll find the research process more rewarding and meaningful if you choose questions that you care about.

### Thinking like a researcher

To develop your authority as a researcher, you need to think like a researcher—asking interesting questions, becoming well informed through reading and evaluating sources, and citing sources to acknowledge other researchers.

**Be curious.** What makes you angry, concerned, or perplexed? What topics and debates do you care about? What problems do you want to help solve? Explore your topic from multiple perspectives, and let your curiosity drive your project.

**Be engaged.** Talk with a librarian and learn how to use your library's research tools and resources. Once you find promising sources, let one source lead you to another; follow clues (in the source's list of works cited, if one exists) to learn who else has written about your topic. Listen to the key voices in the research conversation you've joined—and then respond.

**Be responsible.** Use sources to develop and support your ideas rather than patching them together to let them speak for you. From the start of your research project, keep careful track of sources you read or view (see 51), place quotation marks around words copied from sources, and maintain accurate records for all bibliographic information.

**Be reflective.** Keep a research log, and use your log to explore various points you are developing and to pose counterarguments to your research argument. Research is never a straightforward path, so use your log to reflect on the evolution of your project as well as your evolution as a researcher.

Here are some preliminary questions jotted down by students enrolled in a variety of college courses.

- Why are boys diagnosed with attention deficit disorder more often than girls are?
- Do nutritional food labels inform consumers or confuse them?
- Should states require public schools to adopt antibullying policies?
- Why was amateur archaeologist Heinrich Schliemann such a controversial figure in his own time?

As you think about possible questions, choose those that are focused (not too broad), challenging (not just factual), and grounded (not too speculative) as possible entry points in a conversation.

### Choosing a focused question

If your initial question is too broad, given the length of the paper you plan to write, look for ways to restrict your focus. Here, for example, is how two students narrowed their initial questions.

#### TOO BROAD

What are the benefits of stricter auto emissions standards?

What causes depression?

#### FOCUSED

How will stricter auto emissions standards create new auto industry jobs and make US carmakers more competitive in the world market?

How has the widespread use of antidepressant drugs affected teenage suicide rates?

### Choosing a challenging question

Your research paper will be more interesting to both you and your audience if you base it on an intellectually challenging line of inquiry. Avoid factual questions that fail to provoke thought or engage readers in a debate; such questions lead to reports or lists of facts, not to researched arguments.

#### TOO FACTUAL

Is autism on the rise?

Where is wind energy being used?

#### CHALLENGING

Why is autism so difficult to treat?

What makes wind farms economically viable?

You will need to address a factual question in the course of answering a more challenging one. For example, if you were writing about promising treatments for autism, you would no doubt answer the question “What is autism?” at some point in your paper and even analyze competing definitions of autism to help support your arguments about the challenges of treating the condition. It would be unproductive, however, to use the factual question as the focus for the entire paper.

### Choosing a grounded question

Make sure that your research question is grounded, not too speculative. Although speculative questions—such as those that address morality or beliefs—are worth asking in a research paper, they are unsuitable central questions. For most college courses, the central argument of a research paper should be grounded in evidence and should not be based entirely on beliefs.

#### TOO SPECULATIVE

Is it wrong to share pornographic personal photos by cell phone?

Do medical scientists have the right to experiment on animals?

#### GROUNDED

What role should the US government play in regulating mobile content?

How have technical breakthroughs made medical experiments on animals increasingly unnecessary?

### Finding an entry point in a research conversation

As you pose preliminary research questions, you may wonder where and how to step into a research conversation. To find entry points, you may need to ask:

- Who are the major writers or thinkers in the debate? What positions have they taken?
- How and why do the major writers or thinkers disagree?
- What hasn't been said in the conversation and needs to be pointed out?



As you orient yourself, try using the following statements to help you find points of entry in a research conversation.

On one side of the debate is position X, on the other side is Y, but there is a middle position, Z.

The conventional view about the problem or issue needs to be challenged because . . .

Key details in this debate that have been overlooked are . . .

Researchers have drawn conclusion X from the evidence, but one could also draw conclusion Y.

### Testing a research question

- Does the question allow you to enter into a research conversation that you care about?
- Is the question flexible enough to allow for many possible answers?
- Is the question clear, focused, interesting?
- Is the question narrow enough, given the length of the assignment?
- Put the question to the “So what?” test. Can you show readers why the question needs to be asked and why the answer matters? (See p. 16.)

## 50c Map out a search strategy.

A search strategy is a systematic plan for tracking down sources. To create a search strategy appropriate for your research question, it may help to consult a librarian and take a look at your library’s Web site, which will give you an overview of available resources.

No single search strategy works for every topic. For some topics, it may be useful to search for information in popular newspapers, magazines, and Web sites. For others, the best sources might be found in scholarly journals, books, and specialized reference works. Still other topics might be enhanced by field research — interviews, surveys, or observation.

With the help of a librarian, each of the students whose research essays can be found in this handbook constructed a search strategy appropriate for the research question.

**Sophie Harba** (See her full paper in 57b.) Sophie Harba’s topic, the role of government in legislating food choices, is debated in

scholarly articles and in publications aimed at the general public. To find information on her topic, Harba decided to

- search the Web to locate current news, government publications, and information from organizations that focus on the issues surrounding government regulation of food
- check a library database for current peer-reviewed research articles
- use the library catalog to search for a recently published book that was cited in a blog post on her topic and on several well-respected Web sites

**Luisa Mirano** (See her full paper in 62b.) Luisa Mirano's topic, the limitations of medication for childhood obesity, is the subject of psychological studies as well as articles in newspapers and magazines aimed at the general public. Thinking that both scholarly and popular sources would be appropriate, Mirano decided to

- search the Web to see what issues about childhood obesity might be interesting
- focus her search on medications reported in newspaper and magazine articles, advocacy Web sites, and government sites
- search specialized databases related to psychology and medicine for recent scholarly and scientific articles
- track down an article that several of her sources cited as an influential study

**USING SOURCES RESPONSIBLY:** Use your research log (see p. 396) to record information for each source you read or view, especially page numbers and URLs. If you gather complete publication information from the start of your project, you'll easily find it when you need to document your sources.

## 50d Search efficiently; master a few shortcuts to finding good sources.

Most students use a combination of library databases and the Web in their research. You can save yourself a lot of time by becoming an efficient searcher.





## Using the library

The Web site hosted by your college library is full of useful information. In addition to dozens of databases and links to other references, many libraries offer online subject guides as well as one-on-one help from reference librarians through e-mail or chat. You can save yourself time if you get advice from your instructor, a librarian, or your library's Web site about the best place to start your search for sources.

Visiting your library can also be helpful. You can consult personally with reference librarians, who can show you what resources are available, help you refine your keywords for catalog or database searches, or suggest ways to narrow your search.

Savvy searchers cut down on the clutter of a broad search by adding additional search terms, limiting a search to recent publications, or selecting a database option to look at only one type of source, such as peer-reviewed articles, if that's what is needed. When looking for books, you can broaden a catalog search by asking "What kind of book might contain the information I need?" After you've identified a promising book on the library shelves, looking through the books on nearby shelves can also be valuable.

## Using the Web

When using a search engine, it's a good idea to use terms that are as specific as possible and to enclose search phrases in quotation marks. You can refine your search by date or domain; for example, *autism site:.gov* will search for information about autism on government (.gov) Web sites. Use clues in what you find (such as organizations or government agencies that seem particularly informative) to refine your search.

As you examine sites, look for "about" links to learn about the site's author or sponsoring agency. Examine URLs for clues. Those that contain .k12 may be intended for young audiences; URLs ending in .gov lead to official information from US government entities. URLs may also offer clues about the country of origin: .au for Australia, .uk for United Kingdom, .in for India, and so on. If you aren't sure where a page originated, erase everything in the URL after the first slash in your address bar; the result should be the root page of the site, which may offer useful information about the site's purpose and audience (see p. 404). Avoid sites that provide information but no explanation of who

the authors are or why the site was created. They may simply be advertising platforms attracting visitors with commonly sought information that is not original or substantial. For more on evaluating Web sites, see 52e.

### CHECK URLS FOR CLUES ABOUT SPONSORSHIP

The screenshot shows a web browser window displaying the page *Adventures of Huckleberry Finn*. The browser's address bar contains the URL [twain.lib.virginia.edu/hucklefinn/huchompg.html](http://twain.lib.virginia.edu/hucklefinn/huchompg.html), which is highlighted by a callout box. The page content includes a paragraph of text about the novel's history and a list of links such as 'Sources & Pre-Tests', 'Advertisements & Publicity', and 'Library Attributions'. At the bottom, there is a small portrait of Mark Twain and a 'SCRAP BOOK' graphic.

This source, from an internal page of a Web site, provides no indication of an author or a sponsor. Shortening the URL to <http://twain.lib.virginia.edu/> leads to a main page that lists a university literature professor as the author and the University of Virginia Library as the sponsor.

## Using bibliographies and citations as shortcuts

Scholarly books and articles list the works the author has cited, usually at the end. These lists are useful shortcuts to additional reliable sources on your topic. For example, most of the scholarly articles that student writer Luisa Mirano consulted contained citations to related research studies, selected by experts in the field. Through these citations, she quickly located other sources related to her topic, treatments for childhood obesity. Even popular sources such as news articles, videos, and interviews may refer to additional relevant sources that may be worth tracking down.

## Using a variety of online tools and databases

You will probably find that your instructor, your librarian, or your library's Web site can be helpful in pointing you in the right direction once you have a topic and a research question. If you are still seeking some guidance about which Web sites, directories, databases, and other sources might yield useful searches, the URL at the bottom of the page will lead you to lists of sources that might provide the jump start you are looking for.

### Tips for smart searching

**For currency.** If you need current information, news outlets such as the *New York Times* and the BBC, think tanks, government agencies, and advocacy groups may provide appropriate sources for your research. When using Google, you can limit a search to the most recent year, month, week, or day.

**For authority.** As you search, keep an eye out for any experts being cited in sources you examine. Following the citation trail may lead you to sources by those experts — or the organizations they represent — that may be even more helpful. You can limit a Google search by type of Web site and type of source. Add *site:.gov* to focus on government sources or *filetype:pdf* to zero in on reports and research papers as PDF files.

**For scholarship.** When you need scholarly or peer-reviewed articles, use a library database to look for reports of original research written by the people who conducted it. Scholarly articles provide information about where the authors work (such as universities or research centers), use a formal writing style, and include footnotes or a bibliography.



### Tips for smart searching, continued

**For context.** Books are important sources in many fields such as history, philosophy, and sociology, and they often do a better job than scholarly articles of putting ideas in context. You may find a single chapter or even a few pages that are just what you need to gain a deeper perspective. Consider publication dates with your topic in mind.

**For firsthand authenticity.** In some fields, primary sources may be required. In historical research, for example, a primary source is one that originated in the historical period under discussion or is a firsthand account from a witness. In the sciences, a primary source (sometimes called a *primary article*) is a published report of research written by the scientist who conducted it. For more information, see page 423.

## 50e Conduct field research, if appropriate.

Your own field research can enhance or be the focus of a writing project. For a composition class, for example, you might want to interview a local politician about a current issue, such as the initiation of a city bike-share program. For a sociology class, you might decide to conduct a survey about campus trends in community service.

**RESEARCH NOTE:** Colleges and universities often require researchers to submit projects to an institutional review board (IRB) if the research involves human subjects outside a classroom setting. Before administering a survey or conducting other fieldwork, check with your instructor to see if IRB approval is required.

### Interviewing

Interviews can often shed new light on a topic. Look for an expert who has firsthand knowledge of the subject, or seek out a key participant whose personal experience provides a valuable perspective.

When asking for an interview, be clear about who you are, what the purpose of the interview is, and how you would prefer to conduct it: by e-mail, over the phone, or in person. Ask questions that lead to facts, anecdotes, and opinions that will add a meaningful dimension to your paper.

**INEFFECTIVE INTERVIEW QUESTIONS**

How many years have you spent studying childhood obesity?

Is your work interesting?

**EFFECTIVE INTERVIEW QUESTIONS**

What are some current interpretations of the causes of childhood obesity?

What treatments have you found to be most effective? Why do you think they work?

**USING SOURCES RESPONSIBLY:** When quoting your source (the interviewee) in your paper, be accurate and fair. Do not change the meaning of your interviewee's words or take them out of context. To ensure accuracy, you might want to ask permission to record the interview or conduct it by e-mail.

**Surveying opinion**

For some topics, you may find it useful to survey opinions through written questionnaires, telephone or e-mail polls, or questions posted on a social media site. Many people are reluctant to fill out long questionnaires, so for a good response rate, limit your questions with your purpose in mind.

Surveys with yes/no questions or multiple-choice options can be completed quickly, and the results are easy to tally. You may also want to ask a few open-ended questions to elicit more individual responses, some of which may be worth quoting in your paper.

**SAMPLE YES/NO QUESTION**

Do you favor the use of Internet surveillance in the workplace?

**SAMPLE OPEN-ENDED QUESTION**

What, if any, experiences have you had with Internet surveillance in the workplace?

**Other field methods**

Your firsthand visits to and observations of significant places, people, or events can enhance a paper in a variety of disciplines. If you aren't able to visit an organization, a company, or a historic site, you may find useful information on an official Web site or a phone number or e-mail address to use to contact a representative.

## 50f Write a research proposal.

One effective way to manage your research project and focus your thinking is to write a research proposal. A proposal gives you an opportunity to look back—to remind you why you decided to enter a specific research conversation—and to look forward—to predict any difficulties or obstacles that might arise during your project. Your objective is to make a case for the question you plan to explore, the sources you plan to use, and the feasibility of the project, given the time and resources available. As you take stock of your project, you also have the valuable opportunity to receive comments from your instructor and classmates about your proposed research question and search strategy.

The following points will help you organize your proposal.

- **Research question.** What question will you be exploring? Why does this question need to be asked? What do you hope to learn from the project?
- **Research conversation.** What have you learned so far about the debate or specific research conversation you will enter? What entry point have you found to offer your own insights and ideas?
- **Search strategy.** Explain your search strategy: What kinds of sources will you use to explore your question? What sources have you found most useful, and why? How will you locate a variety of sources (print and visual, primary and secondary, for example)?
- **Research challenges.** What challenges, if any, do you anticipate (locating sufficient sources, managing the project, finding a position to take)? What resources are available to help you meet these challenges?

# 51 Managing information; taking notes responsibly

An effective researcher is a good record keeper. Whether you decide to keep records in your research log or in a file on your computer, you will need methods for managing information: maintaining a working bibliography (see 51a), keeping track of

source materials (see 51b), and taking notes without plagiarizing your sources (see 51c). (For more on avoiding plagiarism, see 54 for MLA style and 59 for APA style.)

## 51a Maintain a working bibliography.

Keep a record of each source you read or view. This record, called a *working bibliography*, will help you compile the list of sources that will appear at the end of your paper. The format of this list depends on the documentation style you are using (for MLA style, see 56b; for APA style, see 61b). Using the proper style in your working bibliography will ensure that you have all the information you need to correctly cite any sources you use. (See 52f for advice on using your working bibliography as the basis for an annotated bibliography.)

Most researchers save bibliographic information from the library's catalog and databases and from the Web. The information you need is given in the chart on page 411. If you download a visual, you must gather the same information as for a print source.

For Web sources, some bibliographic information may not be available, but spend time looking for it before assuming that it doesn't exist. When information isn't available on the home page, you may have to follow links to interior pages. (See also pp. 405 and 425 for more details about finding bibliographic information in online sources.)

**USING SOURCES RESPONSIBLY:** Use care when printing or saving articles from a database or Web site. The files themselves may not include some of the elements you need to cite the source properly, especially page numbers. You may need to record additional information from the database or Web site where you accessed the file.

**RESEARCH TIP:** Your school may provide citation software, which automatically formats citations in any style using bibliographic information submitted by researchers. You must carefully proofread the results from these programs, however, because the citations often include errors.



## 51b Keep track of source materials.

The best way to keep track of source materials is to save a copy of each potential source as you conduct your research. Many database services will allow you to e-mail, save, or print citations or full texts of articles, and you can easily download, copy, or take screen shots of information from the Web.

Working with photocopies, printouts, and electronic files—as opposed to relying on memory or hastily written notes—has several benefits. You can highlight key passages, perhaps even color-coding them to reflect topics in your outline. You can get a head start on note taking. Finally, you reduce the chances of unintentional plagiarism since you will be able to compare your use of a source in your paper with the actual source, not just with your notes.

## 51c Take notes carefully to avoid unintentional plagiarism.

When you take notes from sources and jot down ideas, use your own words. Avoid copying passages—or cutting and pasting texts from electronic sources—without using quotation marks to indicate which words are yours and which ones you've taken from a source. Even if you half-copy the author's sentences—either by mixing the author's phrases with your own without using quotation marks or by plugging your synonyms into the author's sentence structure—you are committing plagiarism, a serious academic offense. (For examples of this kind of plagiarism, sometimes referred to as *patchwriting*, see 54b and 59b.)

To take notes responsibly, make sure you understand the ideas in the source. What are the major arguments? What is the evidence? Then, resist the temptation to look at the source as you take notes—except when you are quoting. Keep the source close by so that you can check for accuracy, but don't try to put ideas in your own words with the source's sentences in front of you. When you include a quotation in your notes, make sure you copy the words exactly and put quotation marks around them.

For strategies for avoiding plagiarism when using sources from the Web, see page 415.



**Information to collect for a working bibliography****For an entire book**

- All authors; any editors or translators
- Title and subtitle
- Edition (if not the first)
- Publication information: city, publisher, and date
- Medium: print, Web, and so on
- Date you retrieved the source (for an online source)

**For an article**

- All authors of the article
- Title and subtitle of the article
- Title of the journal, magazine, or newspaper
- Date; volume, issue, and page numbers
- Medium: print, Web, DVD, and so on
- Date you retrieved the source (for an online source)

**For an article retrieved from a database (in addition to preceding information)**

- Name of the database
- Accession number or other number assigned by the database
- Digital object identifier (DOI), if there is one
- URL of the database home page or of the journal's home page if there is no DOI
- Date you retrieved the source

**For a Web source (including visual, audio, and multimedia sources)**

- All authors, editors, or composers of the source
- Editor or compiler of the Web source, if there is one
- Title and subtitle of the source
- Title of the longer work, if the source is contained in a longer work
- Title of the Web site
- Print publication information for the source, if available
- Online page or paragraph numbers, if the source provides them
- Date of online publication (or latest update)
- Sponsor or publisher of the site
- Date you accessed the source
- URL or permalink of the page on which the source appears

**NOTE:** For the exact bibliographic format to use in your working bibliography and in the final paper, see 56b (MLA) and 61b (APA).

**USING SOURCES RESPONSIBLY:** Be especially careful when using copy-and-paste functions in electronic files. Some researchers plagiarize their sources because they lose track of which words came from sources and which are their own. To prevent unintentional plagiarism, put quotation marks around any source text that you copy during your research.

There are three kinds of note taking: summarizing, paraphrasing, and quoting. Be sure to keep track of exact page references for all three types of notes; you will need the page numbers later if you use the information in your paper. And it is good practice to indicate in your notes if you have summarized, paraphrased, or quoted an author's words to avoid unintentionally plagiarizing a source.

### Summarizing without plagiarizing

A summary condenses information and captures main ideas, perhaps reducing a chapter to a short paragraph or a paragraph to a single sentence. A summary should be written in your own words; if you use phrases from the source, put them in quotation marks.

**Academic English** Even in the early stages of note taking, it is important to keep in mind that in the United States written texts are considered an author's property. (This "property" isn't a physical object, so it is often referred to as *intellectual property*.) The author (or the publisher) owns the language as well as any original ideas contained in the writing, whether the source is published in print or digital form. When you use another author's property in your own writing, you are required to follow certain conventions for citing the material, or you risk committing *plagiarism*.

Here is a passage about marine pollution from a National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) Web site. Following the passage are the student's annotations on the source—notes and questions that help him figure out the meaning—and then his summary of the passage. (The bibliographic information is recorded in MLA style.)

#### ORIGINAL SOURCE

A question that is often posed to the NOAA Marine Debris Program (MDP) is "How much debris is actually out there?"

The MDP has recognized the need for this answer as well as the growing interest and value of citizen science. To that end, the MDP is developing and testing two types of monitoring and assessment protocols: 1) rigorous scientific survey and 2) volunteer at-sea visual survey. These types of monitoring programs are necessary in order to compare marine debris, composition, abundance, distribution, movement, and impact data on national and global scales.

— NOAA Marine Debris Program.  
 “Efforts and Activities Related to the ‘Garbage Patches.’” *Marine Debris*, 2012, pm22100.net/docs/pdf/enercoop/pollutions/noaa-plastiques.pdf.

#### ORIGINAL SOURCE WITH STUDENT ANNOTATIONS

A question that is often posed to the NOAA Marine Debris Program (MDP) is “How much debris is actually out there?”

The MDP has recognized the need for this answer as well as the growing interest and value of citizen science. To that end, the MDP is developing and testing two types of monitoring and assessment protocols: 1) rigorous scientific survey and 2) volunteer at-sea visual survey. These types of monitoring programs are necessary in order to compare marine debris, composition, abundance, distribution, movement, and impact data on national and global scales.

*Annotations:* “by whom?” (pointing to “often posed”), “ocean” (pointing to “NOAA Marine Debris”), “trash” (pointing to “debris”), “ways of gathering information” (pointing to “monitoring and assessment”), “kinds of materials” (pointing to “composition, abundance, distribution”), “how much?” (pointing to “How much”), “why it matters” (pointing to “impact”).

#### SUMMARY

Source: NOAA Marine Debris Program. “Efforts and Activities Related to the ‘Garbage Patches.’” *Marine Debris*, 2012, pm22100.net/docs/pdf/enercoop/pollutions/noaa-plastiques.pdf.

Having to field citizens’ questions about the size of debris fields in Earth’s oceans, the Marine Debris Program, an arm of the US National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, is currently implementing methods to monitor and draw conclusions about our oceans’ patches of pollution (NOAA Marine Debris Program).

### Paraphrasing without plagiarizing

Like a summary, a paraphrase is written in your own words; but whereas a summary reports significant information in fewer words than the source, a paraphrase restates the information in roughly the same number of words. A successful paraphrase also uses sentence structure that's different from the original. If you retain occasional choice phrases from the source, use quotation marks so that later you will know which phrases are not your own. If you paraphrase a source, you must still cite the source.

As you read the following paraphrase of the original source (see pp. 412–13), notice that the language is significantly different from that in the original.

#### PARAPHRASE

Source: NOAA Marine Debris Program. "Efforts and Activities Related to the 'Garbage Patches.'" *Marine Debris*, 2012, pm22100.net/docs/pdf/enercoop/pollutions/noaa-plastiques.pdf.

Citizens concerned and curious about the amount, makeup, and locations of debris patches in our oceans have been pressing NOAA's Marine Debris Program for answers. In response, the organization is preparing to implement plans and standards for expert study and nonexpert observation, both of which will yield results that will be helpful in determining the significance of the pollution problem (NOAA Marine Debris Program).

### Using quotation marks to avoid plagiarizing

A quotation consists of the exact words from a source. In your notes, put all quoted material in quotation marks; do not assume that you will remember later which words, phrases, and passages you have quoted and which are your own. When you quote, be sure to copy the words of your source exactly, including punctuation and capitalization.

#### QUOTATION

Source: NOAA Marine Debris Program. "Efforts and Activities Related to the 'Garbage Patches.'" *Marine Debris*, 2012, pm22100.net/docs/pdf/enercoop/pollutions/noaa-plastiques.pdf.

The NOAA Marine Debris Program has noted that, as our oceans become increasingly polluted, surveillance is “necessary in order to compare marine debris, composition, abundance, distribution, movement, and impact data on national and global scales.”

Note that because the source is from a Web site without page numbers, the in-text citation includes only the author name and not a page number.

### Avoiding plagiarism from the Web

**Understand what plagiarism is.** When you use another author’s intellectual property — language, visuals, or ideas — in your own writing without giving proper credit, you commit a kind of academic theft called *plagiarism*.

**Treat Web sources the same way you treat print sources.** Any language that you find on the Web must be cited, even if the material is in the public domain (which generally includes older works no longer protected by copyright law) or is publicly accessible on free sites. When you use material from Web sites sponsored by federal, state, or municipal governments (.gov sites) or by nonprofit organizations (.org sites), you must acknowledge that material, too, as intellectual property owned by those agencies.

**Keep track of which words come from sources and which are your own.** To prevent unintentional plagiarism when you copy and paste passages from Web sources to an electronic file, put quotation marks around any text that you have inserted into your own work. During note taking and drafting, you might use a different color font or highlighting to draw attention to text taken from sources so that material from articles, Web sites, and other sources stands out unmistakably as someone else’s words.

**Avoid Web sites that bill themselves as “research services” and sell essays.** When you use Web search engines to research a topic, you will often see links to sites that appear to offer legitimate writing support but that actually sell college essays. Of course, submitting a paper that you have purchased is cheating, but even using material from such a paper is considered plagiarism.

For details on avoiding plagiarism while working with sources, see 54b (MLA) and 59b (APA).

# 52 Evaluating sources

You can often locate dozens or even hundreds of potential sources for your topic—far more than you will have time to read. Your challenge will be to determine what kinds of sources you need to answer your research questions and to zero in on a reasonable number of trustworthy sources. This kind of decision making is referred to as *evaluating sources*. When you evaluate a source, you make a judgment about how useful the source is to your project.

Evaluating sources isn't something you do in one sitting. Being an effective researcher doesn't mean following a formula (*find some sources > evaluate those sources > write the paper*). Rather, it means seeing the process as more dynamic. After you do some planning, searching, and reading, for example, you may reflect on the information you have collected and conclude that you need to rethink your research question—and so you return to assessing the kinds of sources you need. You may be midway through drafting your paper when you begin to question a particular source's credibility, at which point you return to searching and reading.

## 52a Think about how sources might contribute to your writing.

How you plan to use sources in your paper will affect how you evaluate them. Not every source must directly support your thesis; sources can have a range of functions in a paper. They can do any of the following:

- provide background information or context for your topic
- explain terms or concepts that your readers might not understand
- provide evidence for your argument
- lend authority to your argument
- identify a gap or contradiction in the conversation
- offer counterarguments and alternative interpretations to your argument

### Viewing evaluation as a process

When you use sources in your writing, make a habit of evaluating, or judging the value of, those sources at each stage of your project. The following questions may help.

#### Evaluate as you PLAN

What kinds of sources do I need?  
 What do I need these sources to help me do: Define? Persuade? Inform?

#### Evaluate as you READ

What positions do these sources take in the debate on my topic? What are their biases?  
 How do these sources inform my understanding of the topic and the position I will take?

#### Evaluate as you SEARCH

How can I find reliable sources that help me answer my research question?  
 Which sources will help me build my credibility as a researcher?

#### Evaluate as you WRITE

How do the sources I've chosen help me make my point?  
 How do my own ideas fit into the conversation on my research topic?

As you plan, you will need to think through the kinds of sources that will help you fulfill your purpose. The following are notes that one student took as she planned a paper.

Purpose: to persuade

My argument: that public funding for the arts should be granted on artistic merit alone and not on so-called decency standards

Sources I could use for background/context: 1998 Supreme Court decision (*National Endowment for the Arts v. Finley*)  
 First Amendment

Sources that support my argument: interviews of controversial artists  
 Karen Finley and Tim Miller

Source that represents an alternative viewpoint: passages from a profile of conservative  
 North Carolina senator Jesse Helms

With her overall purpose in mind, the student judged each source according to the specific role it would play in her argument. For more examples of how student writers use sources for a variety of purposes, see 53c and 58c.

## 52b Select sources worth your time and attention.

As you search for sources in databases, the library catalog, and search engines, you're likely to get many more results than you can read or use. This section explains how to scan through the results for the most promising sources, and how to preview them to see whether they will help you answer your research question.

### Scanning search results

As you scan through a list of search results, look for clues indicating whether a source might be useful for your purposes or not worth pursuing. You will need to use somewhat different strategies when scanning search results from a database, a library catalog, and a Web search engine.

**Databases** Most databases list at least the following information, which can help you decide if a source is relevant, current, and scholarly (see the chart on p. 421).

Title and brief description (How relevant?)

Date (How current?)

Name of periodical or other publication (How scholarly?)

Length (How extensive in coverage?)

Many databases allow you to sort your list of results by relevance or date; sorting may help you scan the information more efficiently.

**Library catalogs** The library's catalog usually lists basic information about books, periodicals, DVDs, and other material—enough to give you a first impression. As in database search results, the title and date of publication of books and other sources listed in the catalog will often be your first clues as to whether the source is worth consulting. If a title looks interesting, you can click on it for information about the subject matter and length. For books, reports, or other long sources, a table of contents may also be available.





**Web search engines** Reliable and unreliable sources live side-by-side online. As you scan through search results, look for the following clues about the probable relevance, currency, and reliability of a Web site.

The title, keywords, headings, and lead-in text (How relevant?)

A date (How current?)

An indication of the site's sponsor or purpose (How reliable?)

The URL, especially the URL ending: for example, .com, .edu, .gov, or .org (How relevant? How reliable?)

At the bottom of this page are a few of the results that student writer Luisa Mirano retrieved after typing the keywords *childhood obesity* into a search engine; she limited her search to works with those words in the title.

Mirano found the first site, sponsored by a research-based organization, promising enough to explore for her paper. The second and fourth sites held less promise because they seemed to offer popular rather than scholarly information. In addition, the second site was full of distracting advertisements. Mirano rejected the third source not because she doubted its reliability—in fact, research from the National Institutes of Health was what she hoped to find—but because a review of its contents revealed that the information was too general for her purposes.

## EVALUATING SEARCH RESULTS: INTERNET SEARCH ENGINE

Content from a research-based organization. Promising.

Popular rather than scholarly source. Not relevant.

Content too general. Not relevant.

Popular and too general. Not relevant.

### American Obesity Association - Childhood Obesity

**Childhood Obesity. Obesity in children** ... Note: The term "childhood obesity" may refer to both children and adolescents. In general, we ...  
www.obesity.org/subs/childhood/ - 17k - Jan 8, 2005 - [Cached](#) - [Similar pages](#)

### Childhood Obesity

KS Logo, **Childhood Obesity**, advertisement. Source: ERIC Clearinghouse on Teaching and Teacher Education. Contents. ... Back to the Top Causes of **Childhood Obesity**. ...  
www.kidsouca.com/kidsouca/content2/obesity.html - 18k - [Cached](#) - [Similar pages](#)

### Childhood Obesity, June 2002 Word on Health - National Institutes

**Childhood Obesity on the Rise**, an article in the June 2002 edition of The NIH Word on Health - Consumer Information Based on Research from the National ...  
www.nih.gov/news/WorndonHealth/jun2002/childhoodobesity.htm - 22k - [Cached](#) - [Similar pages](#)

### MayoClinic.com - Childhood obesity. Parenting advice

... **Childhood obesity**: Parenting advice By Mayo Clinic staff. ... Here are some other tips to help your **obese child**—and yourself. Be a positive role model. ...  
www.mayoclinic.com/invoke.cfm?id=FL00058 - 43k - Jan 8, 2005 - [Cached](#) - [Similar pages](#)

## Previewing sources

Once you have decided that a source looks promising, preview it quickly to see whether it lives up to its promise. If you can evaluate as you search, rejecting irrelevant or unreliable sources before actually reading them, you will save yourself time.

### PREVIEWING AN ARTICLE

- Consider the publication in which the article is printed. Is it a scholarly journal (see the chart on p. 421)? A popular magazine? A newspaper with a national reputation?
- For a magazine or journal article, look for an abstract or a statement of purpose at the beginning; also look for a summary at the end.
- For a newspaper article, focus on the headline and the opening paragraphs for relevance.
- Scan any headings and look at any visuals — charts, graphs, diagrams, or illustrations — that might indicate the article's focus and scope.

### PREVIEWING A BOOK

- Glance through the table of contents, keeping your research question in mind. Even if the entire book is not relevant, parts of it may prove useful.
- Scan the preface in search of a statement of the author's purposes.
- Use the index to look up a few words related to your topic.
- If a chapter looks useful, read its opening and closing paragraphs and skim any headings.

### PREVIEWING A WEB SITE

- Check to see if the sponsor is a reputable organization, a government agency, or a university. Is the group likely to look at only one side of a debatable issue?
- If you have landed on an internal page of a site and no author or sponsor is evident, try navigating to the home page, either through a link or by truncating the URL (see the tip on p. 404).
- Try to determine the purpose of the Web site. Is the site trying to sell a product? Promote an idea? Inform the public? Is the purpose consistent with your research?

- If the Web site includes statistical data (tables, graphs, charts), can you tell how and by whom the statistics were compiled? Is research cited?
- Find out when the site was created or last updated. Is it current enough for your purposes?

## 52c Select appropriate versions of online sources.

An online source may appear as an abstract, an excerpt, or a full-text article or book. It is important to distinguish among these versions of sources and to use a complete version of a source, preferably one with page numbers, for your research.

Abstracts and excerpts are shortened versions of complete works. An abstract—a summary of a work's contents—might appear in a database record for a source and can give you clues

### Determining if a source is scholarly

For many college assignments, you will be asked to use scholarly sources. These are written by experts for a knowledgeable audience and usually go into more depth than books and articles written for a general audience. (Scholarly sources are sometimes called *refereed* or *peer-reviewed* because the work is evaluated by experts in the field before publication.) To determine if a source is scholarly, you should look for the following:

- Formal language and presentation
- Authors who are academics or scientists
- Footnotes or a bibliography documenting the works cited by the author in the source
- Original research and interpretation (rather than a summary of other people's work)
- Quotations from and analysis of primary sources (in humanities disciplines such as literature, history, and philosophy)
- A description of research methods or a review of related research (in the sciences and social sciences)

**NOTE:** In some databases, searches can be limited to refereed or peer-reviewed journals.

about the usefulness of the source for your research. An excerpt is the first few sentences or paragraphs of a newspaper or magazine article and sometimes appears in a list of results from an online search. Abstracts and excerpts often provide enough information for you to determine whether the complete article would be useful for your paper. Both are brief (usually fewer than five hundred words) and generally do not contain enough information to function alone as sources in a research paper. Reading the complete article is the best way to understand the author's argument before referring to it in your own writing. If an article is available in multiple file formats, work with the file that includes page numbers. Numbering will help you with accurate note taking and citation.

## 52d Read with an open mind and a critical eye.

As you begin reading the sources you have chosen, keep an open mind. Do not let your personal beliefs prevent you from listening to new ideas and opposing viewpoints. Be curious about the wide range of positions in the research conversation you are entering. Your research question should guide you as you engage your sources.

When you read critically, you are examining an author's assumptions, assessing evidence, and weighing conclusions.

Reading critically means

- reading carefully (*What does the source say?*)
- reading skeptically (*Are any of the author's points or conclusions problematic?*)
- reading evaluatively (*How does this source help me make my argument?*)

For one student's careful reading of a source text, see 5a.

**USING SOURCES RESPONSIBLY:** Take time to read the entire source and try to understand an author's arguments, assumptions, and conclusions. Try to avoid taking quotations from the first few pages of a source before you understand if the words and ideas are representative of the work as a whole.

### Distinguishing between primary and secondary sources

As you begin assessing evidence in a source, determine whether you are reading a primary or a secondary source. Primary sources include original documents such as letters, diaries, legislative bills, laboratory studies, field research reports, and eyewitness accounts. Secondary sources are commentaries on primary sources—another writer's opinions about or interpretation of a primary source.

Although a primary source is not necessarily more reliable than a secondary source, it has the advantage of being a firsthand account. You can better evaluate what a secondary source says if you have first read any primary sources it discusses.

### Being alert for signs of bias

Bias is a way of thinking, a tendency to be partial, that prevents people and publications from viewing a topic objectively. Both in print and online, some sources are more objective than others. If you are exploring the rights of organizations like WikiLeaks to distribute sensitive government documents over the Internet, for example, you may not find objective, unbiased information in a US State Department report. If you are researching timber harvesting practices, you are likely to encounter bias in publications sponsored by environmental groups. As a researcher, you will need to consider any suspected bias as you assess the source. If you are uncertain about a source's special interests, seek the help of a reference librarian.

Like publishers, some authors are more objective than others. If you have reason to believe that a writer is particularly biased, you will want to assess his or her arguments with special care. For a list of questions worth asking, see the chart on page 424.

### Assessing the author's argument

In nearly all subjects worth writing about, there is some element of argument, so expect to encounter debates and disagreements among authors. In fact, areas of disagreement give you entry points in a research conversation. The questions in the chart on page 424 can help you weigh the strengths and weaknesses of each author's arguments.

## Evaluating all sources

### Checking for signs of bias

- Does the author or publisher endorse political or religious views that could affect objectivity?
- Is the author or publisher associated with a special-interest group, such as PETA or the National Rifle Association, that might present only one side of an issue?
- Are alternative views presented and addressed? How fairly does the author treat opposing views? (See 6c.)
- Does the author's language show signs of bias?

### Assessing an argument

- What is the author's central claim or thesis?
- How does the author support this claim — with relevant and sufficient evidence or with just a few anecdotes or emotional examples?
- Are statistics consistent with those you encounter in other sources? Have they been used fairly? Does the author explain where the statistics come from?
- Are any of the author's assumptions questionable?
- Does the author consider opposing arguments and refute them persuasively? (See 6c.)
- Does the author fall prey to any logical fallacies? (See 6a.)

## 52e Assess Web sources with care.

Sources found on the Web can provide valuable information, but verifying their credibility may take time. Before using a Web source in your paper, make sure you know who created the material and for what purpose. Sites with reliable information can stand up to careful scrutiny. For a checklist on evaluating Web sources, see the chart on page 425. (See also an evaluation of two sample Web sites on pp. 426–27.)



## Evaluating sources you find on the Web

### Authorship

- Does the Web site or document have an author? You may need to do some clicking and scrolling to find the author's name. If you have landed directly on an internal page of a site, for example, you may need to navigate to the home page or find an "about this site" link to learn the name of the author.
- If there is an author, can you tell whether he or she is knowledgeable and credible? When the author's qualifications aren't listed on the site itself, look for links to the author's home page, which may provide evidence of his or her interests and expertise.

### Sponsorship

- Who, if anyone, sponsors the site? The sponsor of a site is often named and described on the home page.
- What does the URL tell you? The domain name extension often indicates the type of group hosting the site: commercial (.com), educational (.edu), nonprofit (.org), governmental (.gov), military (.mil), or network (.net). URLs may also indicate a country of origin: .uk (United Kingdom) or .jp (Japan), for instance.

### Purpose and audience

- Why was the site created: To argue a position? To sell a product? To inform readers?
- Who is the site's intended audience?

### Currency

- How current is the site? Check for the date of publication or the latest update, often located at the bottom of the home page or at the beginning or end of an internal page.
- How current are the site's links? If many of the links no longer work, the site may be too dated for your purposes.

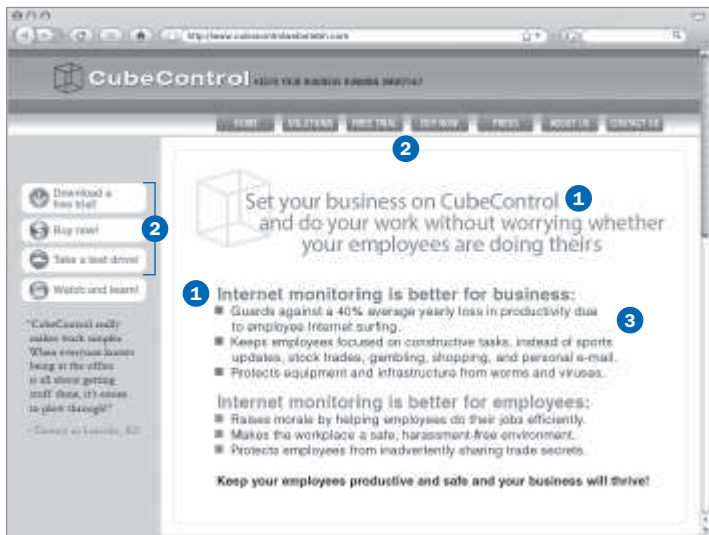
## EVALUATING A WEB SITE: CHECKING RELIABILITY

The screenshot shows a web browser displaying the NCSL website. A callout box labeled '2' points to the text 'Last update: December 19, 2012'. Another callout box labeled '3' points to the 'About Us' link in the navigation menu. The page content includes a list of links under the heading 'State Laws Related to Internet Privacy' and sections for 'Privacy of Online Activities' and 'CC Bill, Data § 8227'.

- 1 This page on Internet monitoring and workplace privacy appears on a Web site sponsored by the National Conference of State Legislatures. The NCSL is a bipartisan group that functions as a clearinghouse of ideas and research of interest to state lawmakers. It is also a lobby for state issues before the US government.
- 2 A clear date of publication shows currency.
- 3 An “About Us” page provides an opportunity to verify the organization’s credentials. When you know something about the creator of the site, you will be in a good position to evaluate the worth and reliability of its information.



## EVALUATING A WEB SITE: CHECKING PURPOSE



- 1 The site is sponsored by a company that specializes in employee-monitoring software.
- 2 Repeated links for trial downloads and purchase suggest the site's intended audience: consumers seeking to purchase software (probably not researchers seeking detailed information about employees' use of the Internet in the workplace).
- 3 The site appears to provide information and even shows statistics from studies, but ultimately the purpose of the site is to sell a product.

## 52f Construct an annotated bibliography.

Section 51a describes how to write a working bibliography, a document that helps you keep track of publication information for all of the sources you may be considering for your project. At some point during your research process, or as a separate assignment, your instructor may ask you to write an annotated

### LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e)

#### 52 Evaluating sources

- > Writing practice: Developing an annotated bibliography
- > Sample student writing: Orlov, "Online Monitoring: A Threat to Employee Privacy in the Wired Workplace: An Annotated Bibliography" (annotated bibliography; MLA)
- > Sample student writing: Niemeyer, "Keynesian Policy: Implications for the Current U.S. Economic Crisis" (annotated bibliography; APA)

# Writing guide | Annotated bibliography

An **annotated bibliography** gives you an opportunity to summarize, evaluate, and record publication information for your sources before drafting your research paper. You summarize each source to understand its main ideas; you evaluate each source for accuracy, quality, and relevance. Finally, you reflect, asking yourself how the source will contribute to your research project. A sample annotated bibliography entry appears on page 430.

## Key features

- A **list of sources arranged in alphabetical order by author** includes complete bibliographic information for each source.
- A **brief entry for each source** is typically one hundred to two hundred words.
- A **summary** of each source states the work's main ideas and key points briefly and accurately. The summary is written in the third person and the present tense. Summarizing helps you test your understanding of a source and convey its meaning responsibly.
- An **evaluation** of the source's role and usefulness in your project includes an assessment of the source's strengths and limitations, the author's qualifications and expertise, and the function of the source in your project. Evaluating a source helps you analyze how the source fits into your project and separate the source's ideas from your own.

## Writing your annotated bibliography

### EXPLORE

For each source, begin by brainstorming responses to questions such as the following.

- What is the purpose of the source? Who is the author's intended audience?
- What is the author's thesis? What evidence supports the thesis?
- What qualifications and expertise does the author bring? Does the author have any biases or make any questionable assumptions?
- Why do you think this source is useful for your project?
- How does this source relate to the other sources in your bibliography?

## DRAFT

- Arrange the sources in alphabetical order by author (or by title for works with no author).
- Provide consistent bibliographic information for each source. For the exact bibliographic format, see 56b (MLA) or 61b (APA).
- Start your summary by identifying the thesis and purpose of the source as well as the credentials of the source's author.
- Keep your research question in mind. How does this source contribute to your project? How does it help you take your place in the conversation?

## REVISE

Ask reviewers for specific feedback. Here are some questions to guide their comments.

- Is each source summarized clearly? Have you identified the author's main idea?
- For each source, have you made a clear judgment about how and why the source is useful for your project?
- Have you used quotation marks around exact words from a source?

bibliography entry for one or more of the sources you've gathered. When annotating a bibliography entry, you provide citation information for the source and, in your own words, a summary of its contents. Summarizing key points of a source will help you identify how the source relates to your argument and will help you judge whether the source is relevant and appropriate for your project. Evaluating your sources' ideas will help you separate them from your own ideas, and it will also help you move toward a draft in which you synthesize sources and present your own thesis. (See 55d and 60d for more on synthesis.) For a sample annotated bibliography, see page 430. For more help with writing an annotated bibliography, see the Writing Guide that begins on page 428.

**SAMPLE ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY ENTRY (MLA STYLE)**

Resnik, David. "Trans Fat Bans and Human Freedom."  
*American Journal of Bioethics*, vol. 10, no. 3,  
 Mar. 2010, pp. 27-32.

<p>Summarize the source using present tense.</p> <p>Annotations should be three to seven sentences long.</p>	<p>In this scholarly article, bioethicist David Resnik argues that bans on unhealthy foods threaten our personal freedom. He claims that researchers don't have enough evidence to know whether banning trans fats will save lives or money; all we know is that such bans restrict dietary choices. Resnik explains why most Americans oppose food restrictions, noting our multiethnic and regional food traditions as well as our resistance to government limitations on personal freedoms. He acknowledges that few people would miss eating trans fats, but he fears that bans on such substances could lead to widespread restrictions on red meat, sugary sodas, and other foods known to have harmful effects. Resnik offers a well-reasoned argument, but he goes too far by insisting that all proposed food restrictions will do more harm than good. This article contributes important perspectives on American resistance to government intervention in food choice and counters arguments in other sources that support the idea of food legislation to advance public health.</p>	<p>Evaluate the source for bias and relevance.</p> <p>Evaluate the source for its contribution to the research project.</p>
--	--	---

# Writing Papers in MLA Style

DIRECTORY TO MLA IN-TEXT CITATION MODELS, 432

DIRECTORY TO MLA WORKS CITED MODELS, 432

- 53** Supporting a thesis, 435
- 54** Citing sources; avoiding plagiarism, 441
- 55** Integrating sources, 445
- 56** Documenting sources in MLA style, 458
- 57** MLA manuscript format; sample research paper, 513

## Directory to MLA in-text citation models

### General guidelines for signal phrases and page numbers

1. Author named in a signal phrase, 459
2. Author named in parentheses, 460
3. Author unknown, 460
4. Page number unknown, 460
5. One-page source, 460

### Variations on the general guidelines

6. Two authors, 461
7. Three or more authors, 461
8. Organization as author, 462
9. Authors with the same last name, 462
10. Two or more works by the same author, 462
11. Two or more works in one citation, 463
12. Repeated citations from the same source, 463

13. Encyclopedia or dictionary entry, 464
14. Multivolume work, 464
15. Entire work, 464
16. Selection in an anthology or a collection, 464
17. Government document, 465
18. Historical document, 465
19. Legal source, 465
20. Visual such as a table, a chart, or another graphic, 465
21. Personal communication and social media, 466
22. Web source, 466
23. Indirect source (source quoted in another source), 466

### Literary works and sacred texts

24. Literary work without parts or line numbers, 467
25. Verse play or poem, 467
26. Novel with numbered divisions, 468
27. Sacred text, 468

## Directory to MLA works cited models

### General guidelines for listing authors

1. Single author, 469
2. Two authors, 469
3. Three or more authors, 469
4. Organization or company as author, 472
5. No author listed, 472
  - a. Article or other short work, 472
  - b. Television program, 473
  - c. Book, entire Web site, or other long work, 473
6. Two or more works by the same author, 473
7. Two or more works by the same group of authors, 473
8. Editor or translator, 473
9. Author with editor or translator, 474
10. Graphic narrative or other illustrated work, 474
  - a. Author first, 475

- b. Illustrator first, 475
  - c. Author and illustrator the same person, 475
11. Author using a pseudonym (pen name) or screen name, 476
  12. Author quoted by another author (indirect source), 476

### Articles and other short works

13. Basic format for an article or other short work, 477
  - a. Print, 477
  - b. Web, 477
  - c. Database, 477
14. Article in a journal, 477
  - a. Print, 477
  - b. Online journal, 479
  - c. Database, 479
15. Article in a magazine, 479
  - a. Print (monthly), 479
  - b. Print (weekly), 479
  - c. Web, 481
  - d. Database, 481

## Directory to MLA works cited models, continued

16. Article in a newspaper, 481
  - a. Print, 481
  - b. Web, 482
  - c. Database, 482
17. Abstract or executive summary, 482
  - a. Abstract of an article, 482
  - b. Abstract of a paper, 482
  - c. Abstract of a dissertation, 482
  - d. Executive summary, 482
18. Article with a title in its title, 483
19. Editorial, 483
20. Unsigned article, 483
21. Letter to the editor, 483
22. Comment on an online article, 484
23. Paper or presentation at a conference, 484
24. Book review, 484
  - a. Print, 485
  - b. Web, 485
  - c. Database, 485
25. Film review or other review, 485
  - a. Print, 485
  - b. Web, 485
26. Performance review, 485
27. Interview, 486
  - a. Print, 486
  - b. Web, 486
  - c. Television or radio, 486
  - d. Personal, 486
28. Article in a dictionary or an encyclopedia (including a wiki), 486
  - a. Print, 487
  - b. Web, 487
29. Letter, 487
  - a. Print, 487
  - b. Web, 487
  - c. Personal, 487
30. Basic format for a book, 488
  - a. Print book or e-book, 488
  - b. Web, 488
  - c. Database, 488
31. Parts of a book, 490
  - a. Foreword, introduction, preface, or afterword, 490
  - b. Chapter in a book, 490
32. Book with a title in its title, 490
33. Book in a language other than English, 490
34. Entire anthology or collection, 491
35. One selection from an anthology or a collection, 491
36. Two or more selections from an anthology or a collection, 491
37. Edition other than the first, 491
38. Multivolume work, 493
39. Sacred text, 493
40. Book in a series, 494
41. Republished book, 494
42. Pamphlet, brochure, or newsletter, 494
43. Dissertation, 494
  - a. Published, 494
  - b. Unpublished, 494
44. Proceedings of a conference, 495
45. Manuscript, 495

### Web sites and parts of Web sites

46. An entire Web site, 495
  - a. Web site with author or editor, 495
  - b. Web site with organization as author, 496
  - c. Web site with no author, 496
  - d. Web site with no title, 496
47. Short work from a Web site, 496
  - a. Short work with author, 496
  - b. Short work with no author, 496
48. Long work from a Web site, 498
49. Entire blog, 498
50. Blog post or comment, 498
51. Academic course or department home page, 498

## Directory to MLA works cited models, continued

### Audio, visual, and multimedia sources

52. Podcast, 499
53. Film, 499
54. Supplementary material accompanying a film, 500
55. Video or audio from the Web, 500
56. Video game, 501
57. Computer software or app, 501
58. Television or radio episode or program, 501
  - a. Broadcast, 501
  - b. Web, 502
59. Transcript, 503
60. Performance, 504
61. Lecture or public address, 504
  - a. Live, 504
  - b. Web, 504
62. Musical score, 504
63. Sound recording, 505
64. Work of art, 505
  - a. Original, 505
  - b. Web, 506
  - c. Reproduction (print), 506

65. Photograph, 506
  - a. Original, 506
  - b. Web, 506
  - c. Reproduction (print), 506
66. Cartoon, 507
67. Advertisement, 507
68. Visual such as a table, a chart, or another graphic, 507
69. Map, 507

### Government and legal documents

70. Government document, 508
71. Testimony before a legislative body, 510
72. Historical document, 510
73. Legislative act (law), 510
74. Court case, 511

### Personal communication and social media

75. E-mail message, 511
76. Text message, 511
77. Posting to an online discussion list, 511
78. Facebook post or comment, 512
79. Twitter post (tweet), 512

Most English instructors and some humanities instructors will ask you to document your sources with the Modern Language Association (MLA) system of citations described in chapter 56.

When writing an MLA paper that is based on sources, you face three main challenges: (1) supporting a thesis, (2) citing your sources accurately and avoiding plagiarism, and (3) integrating source material effectively.

Examples in chapters 53–55 are drawn from a student’s research about the role of government in legislating food choices. Sophie Harba’s research paper, in which she argues that state governments have the responsibility to advance health policies and to regulate healthy eating choices, appears on pages 517–25.



**NOTE:** For advice on finding and evaluating sources and on managing information in all your college courses, see chapters 50–52.

# 53 Supporting a thesis

Most research assignments ask you to form a thesis, or main idea, and to support that thesis with well-organized evidence. (See also 1c.)

## 53a Form a working thesis.

Once you have read a variety of sources, considered your issue from different perspectives, and chosen an entry point in the research conversation (see 50b), you are ready to form a working thesis to focus your project: a one-sentence (or occasionally a two-sentence) statement of your central idea. (See also 1c and 53d.) The working thesis expresses more than your opinion; it expresses your informed, reasoned answer to your research question—a question about which people might disagree. As you learn more about your subject, your ideas may change, and your working thesis will evolve, too. You can revise your thesis as you draft.

In a research paper, your thesis will answer the central research question that you pose (see 50b). Here, for example, are student writer Sophie Harba's research question and working thesis.

### RESEARCH QUESTION

Should the government enact laws to regulate healthy eating choices?

### WORKING THESIS

Government has the responsibility to regulate healthy eating choices because of the rise of chronic diseases.



LaunchPadSolo [macmillanhigher.com/rules8e](https://www.macmillanhigher.com/rules8e)

53 Supporting a thesis

- > Writing practice: Writing a working thesis for a research paper
- > Exercises: 53-1 and 53-2

After you have written a rough draft and perhaps done more reading, you may decide to revise your thesis, as Harba did, to give it a sharper and more specific focus.

#### REVISED THESIS

In the name of public health and safety, state governments have the responsibility to advance health policies and to regulate healthy eating choices, especially since doing so offers a potentially large social benefit for a relatively small cost.

The thesis usually appears at the end of the introductory paragraph. To read Sophie Harba's thesis in her introduction, see page 517.

### Testing your thesis

When drafting and revising a thesis statement, make sure it answers your central research question and that you can effectively develop it with the sources available to you. Keeping the following guidelines in mind will help you develop an effective thesis statement.

- A thesis should take a position that needs to be argued and supported. It should not be a fact or description.
- A thesis should match the scope of the research project. If your thesis is too broad, explore a subtopic of your original topic. If your thesis is too narrow, pose a research question that has more than one answer.
- A thesis should be sharply focused. Avoid vague words such as *interesting* or *good*. Use concrete language and make sure your thesis lets readers know your position.
- A thesis should stand up to the “So what?” question. Ask yourself why readers should care about your thesis. If your thesis matters to you, your readers are more likely to find your ideas engaging.

### 53b Organize your ideas.

The body of your paper will consist of evidence in support of your thesis. It will be useful to sketch an informal plan that helps you begin to organize your ideas. Sophie Harba, for example, used this simple plan to outline the structure of her argument:

- Debates about the government's role in regulating food have a long history in the United States.

- Some experts argue that we should focus on the dangers of unhealthy eating habits and on preventing chronic diseases linked to diet.
- But food regulations are not a popular solution because many Americans object to government restrictions on personal choice.
- Food regulations designed to prevent chronic disease don't ask Americans to give up their freedom; they ask Americans to see health as a matter of public good.

After you have written a rough draft, a formal outline can help you organize your argument (see 1d).

## 53c Use sources to inform and support your argument.

Used thoughtfully, the source materials you have gathered will make your argument more developed and convincing for readers. Sources can play several different roles to support your thesis and develop your points.

### Providing background information or context

You can use facts and statistics to support generalizations or to establish the importance of your topic, as student writer Sophie Harba does to demonstrate the large social benefits of laws designed to prevent chronic disease.

To give just one example, Marion Nestle, New York University professor of nutrition and public health, notes that “a 1% reduction in intake of saturated fat across the population would prevent more than 30,000 cases of coronary heart disease annually and save more than a billion dollars in health care costs” (7).

### Explaining terms or concepts

If readers are unfamiliar with a term or a concept, you will want to define or explain it; or if your argument depends on a term with multiple meanings, you will want to explain your use of the term. Quoting or paraphrasing a source can help you define terms and concepts in accessible language. Harba defines the

term *refined grains* as part of her claim that the typical American diet is getting less healthy over time.

A diet that is low in nutritional value and high in sugars, fats, and refined grains—grains that have been processed to increase shelf life but that sacrifice fiber, iron, and B vitamins—can be damaging over time (United States, Dept. of Agriculture and Dept. of Health and Human Services 36).

### Supporting your claims

As you develop your argument, back up your assertions with facts, examples, and other evidence from your research. (See also 6h.) Harba, for example, uses factual evidence to make the point that the typical American diet is damaging.

Michael Pollan, who has written extensively about Americans' unhealthy eating habits, cites the Centers for Disease Control in arguing that "fully three quarters of US health care spending goes to treat chronic diseases, most of which are preventable and linked to diet: heart disease, stroke, type 2 diabetes, and at least a third of all cancers."

### Lending authority

Expert opinion can add weight and credibility to your argument. (See also 6h.) But don't rely on experts to make your points for you. State your ideas in your own words and, when appropriate, cite the judgment of an authority in the field to support your position.

Debates surrounding the government's role in regulating food have a long history in the United States. According to Lorine Goodwin, a food historian, nineteenth-century reformers who sought to purify the food supply were called "fanatics" and "radicals" by critics who argued that consumers should be free to buy and eat what they want (77).

### Anticipating and countering objections

Do not ignore sources that seem contrary to your position. Instead, use them to give voice to opposing points of view and to state potential objections to your argument before you counter

them (see 6i). By anticipating her readers' argument that many Americans oppose laws to limit what they eat, Sophie Harba creates an opportunity to counter that objection and build common ground with her readers.

Why is the public largely resistant to laws that would limit unhealthy choices or penalize those choices with so-called fat taxes? Many consumers and civil rights advocates find such laws to be an unreasonable restriction on individual freedom of choice. As health policy experts Mello et al. point out, opposition to food and beverage regulation is similar to the opposition to early tobacco legislation: the public views the issue as one of personal responsibility rather than one requiring government intervention (2602). In other words, if a person eats unhealthy food and becomes ill as a result, that is his or her choice. But those who favor legislation claim that freedom of choice is a myth because of the strong influence of food and beverage industry marketing on consumers' dietary habits.

## 53d Draft an introduction for your thesis.

In a research paper, readers are accustomed to seeing the thesis statement — the paper's main point — at the end of the first or second paragraph. The advantage of putting it in the first paragraph is that readers can easily recognize your position. The advantage of delaying the thesis until the second paragraph is that you can provide a fuller context for your main idea.

As you draft your introduction, you may revise your working thesis, either because you have refined your thinking or because new wording fits more smoothly into the context you have created for it.

In addition to stating your thesis, an introduction should hook readers (see 1e). For example, in your first sentence or two you might introduce readers to the research conversation by connecting your topic to a recent news item or by pointing to emerging trends in an academic discipline. Other strategies are to pose a puzzling problem or to cite a startling statistic. Sophie Harba begins her paper by engaging readers with her research question: "Should the government enact laws to regulate healthy

eating choices?” She then highlights the research conversation around the question before offering her perspective in her thesis (see p. 517).

## 53e Draft the paper in an appropriate voice.

A chatty, breezy voice is usually not appropriate in a research paper, but neither is a vague, timid one.

### TOO CHATTY

What’s up with these people who think food isn’t important and don’t want the government in their kitchen? People who are against food regulation seem so irrational and unreasonable.

### MORE FORMAL

Why is the public largely resistant to laws that would limit unhealthy choices or penalize those choices with so-called fat taxes? Many consumers and civil rights advocates find such laws to be an unreasonable restriction on individual freedom of choice.

### TOO VAGUE

It has been concluded that a majority of Americans don’t want the government to restrict their food access.

### MORE SPECIFIC

According to a nationwide poll, 75 percent of Americans are opposed to laws that restrict or put limitations on access to unhealthy foods (Neergaard and Agiesta).

### TOO TIMID

I may not be an expert on food policy, but it seems to me that eating unhealthy foods contributes to chronic disease and lots of other problems.

### MORE AUTHORITATIVE

Mounting scientific evidence points to unhealthy foods as a significant contributing factor to chronic disease, which we know is straining our health care system, decreasing our quality of life, and leading to unnecessary premature deaths.

# 54 Citing sources; avoiding plagiarism

In a research paper, you will draw on the work of other writers, and you must document their contributions by citing your sources. Sources are cited for two reasons:

1. to tell readers where your information comes from — so that they can assess its reliability and, if interested, find and read the original source
2. to give credit to the writers from whom you have borrowed words and ideas

Borrowing another writer's language, sentence structures, or ideas without proper acknowledgment is a form of dishonesty known as *plagiarism*.

You must include a citation when you quote from a source, when you summarize or paraphrase, and when you borrow facts that are not common knowledge (see also 54b).

## 54a Understand how the MLA system works.

Most English professors and some humanities professors require the MLA (Modern Language Association) system of in-text citations. Here, briefly, is how the MLA citation system usually works. (See 56 for more details and model citations. See 57b for a sample research paper with in-text citations and a works cited list in MLA style.)

1. The source is introduced by a signal phrase that names its author.
2. The material being cited is followed by a page number in parentheses (unless the source is an unpaginated Web source).
3. At the end of the paper, a list of works cited (arranged alphabetically by authors' last names) gives complete publication information for the source.

**IN-TEXT CITATION**

Bioethicist David Resnik emphasizes that such policies “open the door to excessive government control over food, which could restrict dietary choices, interfere with cultural, ethnic, and religious traditions, and exacerbate socioeconomic inequalities” (31).

**ENTRY IN THE LIST OF WORKS CITED**

Resnik, David. “Trans Fat Bans and Human Freedom.” *American Journal of Bioethics*, vol. 10, no. 3, Mar. 2010, pp. 27-32.

**NOTE:** When you use an MLA in-text citation, a period appears after the parenthetical citation. This basic MLA format varies for different types of sources. For a detailed discussion and other models, see 56.

## 54b Avoid plagiarism when quoting, summarizing, and paraphrasing sources.

In a research paper, you draw on the work of other writers, and you must document their contributions by citing your sources. When you acknowledge your sources, you avoid plagiarism, a serious academic offense. (See also 51c.)

In general, these three acts are considered plagiarism: (1) failing to cite quotations and borrowed ideas, (2) failing to enclose borrowed language in quotation marks, and (3) failing to put summaries and paraphrases in your own words. Definitions of plagiarism may vary; it’s a good idea to find out how your school defines academic dishonesty.

### Citing quotations and borrowed ideas

You must cite all direct quotations. You must also cite any ideas borrowed from a source: summaries and paraphrases; statistics and other specific facts; and visuals such as cartoons, graphs, and diagrams.

The only exception is common knowledge—information that your readers could easily find in any number of general sources. For example, a quick search could tell you that Joel Coen directed *Fargo* in 1996 and that Emily Dickinson published only a handful of her many poems during her lifetime.



As a rule, when you have seen information repeatedly in your reading, you don't need to cite it. However, when information has appeared in only one or two sources, when it is highly specific (as with statistics), or when it is controversial, you should cite the source. If a topic is new to you and you are not sure what is considered common knowledge or what is controversial, ask your instructor, a reference librarian, or someone else with expertise. When in doubt, cite the source. (See 56 for details.)

### Enclosing borrowed language in quotation marks

To indicate that you are using a source's exact phrases or sentences, you must enclose them in quotation marks unless they have been set off from the text by indenting (see 55b). To omit the quotation marks is to claim — falsely — that the language is your own, as in the example below. Such an omission is plagiarism even if you have cited the source.

#### ORIGINAL SOURCE

Although these policies may have a positive impact on human health, they open the door to excessive government control over food, which could restrict dietary choices, interfere with cultural, ethnic, and religious traditions, and exacerbate socioeconomic inequalities.

—David Resnik, “Trans Fat Bans and Human Freedom,” p. 31

#### PLAGIARISM

Bioethicist David Resnik points out that policies to ban trans fats may protect human health, but they open the door to excessive government control over food, which could restrict dietary choices and interfere with cultural, ethnic, and religious traditions (31).

#### BORROWED LANGUAGE IN QUOTATION MARKS

Bioethicist David Resnik points out that policies to ban trans fats may protect human health, but they “open the door to excessive government control over food, which could restrict dietary choices, interfere with cultural, ethnic, and religious traditions, and exacerbate socioeconomic inequalities” (31).



### Putting summaries and paraphrases in your own words

Summaries and paraphrases are written in your own words. A summary condenses information from a source; a paraphrase uses roughly the same number of words as the original source to convey the information. When you summarize or paraphrase, it is not enough to name the source; you must restate the source's meaning using your own language. (See also 51c and 55a.) Half-copying the author's sentences by using the author's phrases in your own sentences without quotation marks or by plugging synonyms into the author's sentence structure (sometimes called patchwriting) is a form of plagiarism.

The first paraphrase of the following source is plagiarized. Even though the source is cited, too much of its language is borrowed from the original. The highlighted strings of words have been copied exactly (without quotation marks). In addition, the writer has closely echoed the sentence structure of the source, merely substituting some synonyms (*interfere with lifestyle choices* for *paternalistic intervention into lifestyle choices* and *decrease the feeling of personal responsibility* for *enfeeble the notion of personal responsibility*).

#### ORIGINAL SOURCE

[A]ntiobesity laws encounter strong opposition from some quarters on the grounds that they constitute paternalistic intervention into lifestyle choices and enfeeble the notion of personal responsibility. Such arguments echo those made in the early days of tobacco regulation.

— Michelle M. Mello et al.,  
“Obesity — the New Frontier of  
Public Health Law,” p. 2602

#### PLAGIARISM: UNACCEPTABLE BORROWING

Health policy experts Mello et al. argue that antiobesity laws encounter strong opposition from some quarters because they interfere with lifestyle choices and decrease the feeling of personal responsibility. These arguments mirror those made in the early days of tobacco regulation (2602).

To avoid plagiarizing an author's language, resist the temptation to look at the source while you are summarizing or paraphrasing. After you have read the passage you want to paraphrase, set the source aside. Ask yourself, “What is the author's

meaning?” In your own words, state your understanding of the author’s ideas.

Return to the source and check that you haven’t used the author’s language or sentence structure or misrepresented the author’s ideas. Following these steps will help you avoid plagiarizing the source. When you fully understand another writer’s meaning, you can more easily and accurately represent those ideas in your own words.

#### ACCEPTABLE PARAPHRASE

As health policy experts Mello et al. point out, opposition to food and beverage regulation is similar to the opposition to early tobacco legislation: the public views the issue as one of personal responsibility rather than one requiring government intervention (2602).

## 55 Integrating sources

Your research paper draws on and borrows from the work of others—your sources—to help you develop and support your ideas. As you conduct research, you gather language and ideas from your sources that you might want to use in your paper. Section 54 shows you how to acknowledge those sources to avoid plagiarism. This section will help you integrate those sources seamlessly and effectively into your paper, so that readers understand how your use of quotation, summary, and paraphrase contributes to your argument.

As you integrate sources, you need to find a balance between the words of your sources and your own voice. Readers should always know who is speaking in your paper—you or your source. You can use several strategies to integrate research sources into your paper while maintaining your own voice.

- Use sources as concisely as possible so that your own thinking and voice aren’t lost (55a and 55b).
- Use signal phrases and avoid dropping quotations into your paper without indicating the boundary between your words and the source’s words (55c).

- Discuss and analyze your sources to show readers how each source supports your argument and how the sources relate to one another (55d).

## 55a Summarize and paraphrase effectively.

In your academic writing, keep the emphasis on your ideas and your language; use your own words to summarize and to paraphrase your sources and to explain your points. Whether you choose to summarize or paraphrase a source depends on your purpose.

### Summarizing

When you summarize a source, you express another writer's ideas in your own words, condensing the author's key points and using fewer words than the author. The following guidelines will help you decide when summary is the most effective method for integrating your source.

#### WHEN TO USE A SUMMARY

- When a passage is lengthy and you want to condense a chapter to a short paragraph or a paragraph to a single sentence
- When you want to state the source's main ideas simply and briefly in your own words
- When you want to compare arguments or ideas from various sources
- When you want to provide readers with an understanding of the source's argument before you respond to it or launch your own

### Paraphrasing

When you paraphrase, you express an author's ideas in your own words, using approximately the same number of words and details as in the source. The following guidelines will help you decide when paraphrase is the most effective method for integrating your source.

**WHEN TO USE A PARAPHRASE**

- When the ideas and information are important but the author's exact words are not needed for accuracy or emphasis
- When you want to restate the source's ideas in your own words
- When you need to simplify and explain a technical or complicated source
- When you need to reorder a source's ideas

Even though you use your own words to summarize and paraphrase, the original idea remains the intellectual property of the author, so you must include a citation. (See 54b.)

## 55b Use quotations effectively.

When you quote a source, you borrow some of the author's exact words and enclose them in quotation marks. Quotation marks show your readers that both the idea and the words belong to the author.

**WHEN TO USE QUOTATIONS**

- When language is especially vivid or expressive
- When exact wording is needed for technical accuracy
- When it is important to let the debaters of an issue explain their positions in their own words
- When the words of an authority lend weight to an argument
- When the language of a source is the topic of your discussion (as in an analysis or interpretation)

### Limiting your use of quotations

Although it is tempting to insert many quotations in your paper and to use your own words only for connecting passages, do not quote excessively.

It is not always necessary to quote full sentences from a source. To reduce your reliance on the words of others, you can often



integrate language from a source into your own sentence structure. (For the use of signal phrases in integrating quotations, see 55c.)

Resnik acknowledges that his argument relies on the “slippery slope” fallacy, but he insists that “social and political pressures” regarding food regulations make his concerns valid (31).

### Using the ellipsis mark and brackets

Two useful marks of punctuation, the ellipsis mark and brackets, allow you to keep quoted material to a minimum and to integrate it smoothly into your text.

**The ellipsis mark** To condense a quoted passage, you can use the ellipsis mark (three periods, with spaces between) to indicate that you have left words out. What remains must be grammatically complete.

In Mississippi, legislators passed “a ban on bans—a law that forbids . . . local restrictions on food or drink” (Conly A23).

The writer has omitted from the source the words *municipalities to place* before *local restrictions* to condense the quoted material.

On the rare occasions when you want to leave out one or more full sentences, use a period before the three ellipsis dots.

Legal scholars Gostin and Gostin argue that “individuals have limited willpower to defer immediate gratification for longer-term health benefits. . . . A person understands that high-fat foods or a sedentary lifestyle will cause adverse health effects, or that excessive spending or gambling will cause financial hardship, but it is not always easy to refrain” (217).

Ordinarily, do not use an ellipsis mark at the beginning or at the end of a quotation. Your readers will understand that the quoted material is taken from a longer passage, so such marks are not necessary. The only exception occurs when you have dropped words at the end of the final quoted sentence. In such cases, put three ellipsis dots before the closing quotation mark and parenthetical reference.

**USING SOURCES RESPONSIBLY:** Make sure omissions and ellipsis marks do not distort the meaning of your source.

**Brackets** Brackets allow you to insert your own words into quoted material. You can insert words in brackets to clarify a confusing reference or to keep a sentence grammatical in your context. You also use brackets to indicate that you are changing a letter from capital to lowercase (or vice versa) to fit into your sentence.

Neergaard and Agiesta argue that “a new poll finds people are split on how much the government should do to help [find solutions to the national health crisis]—and most draw the line at attempts to force healthier eating.”

In this example, the writer inserted words in brackets to clarify the meaning of *help*.

To indicate an error such as a misspelling in a quotation, insert [sic], including the brackets, right after the error.

“While Americans of every race, gender and ethnicity are affected by this disease, diabetes disproportionately effects [sic] minority populations.”

Do not overuse [sic] to call attention to errors in a source. Sometimes paraphrasing is a better option. (See 39c.)

### Setting off long quotations

When you quote more than four typed lines of prose or more than three lines of poetry, set off the quotation by indenting it one-half inch from the left margin.

Long quotations should be introduced by an informative sentence, often followed by a colon. Quotation marks are unnecessary because the indented format tells readers that the passage is taken word-for-word from the source.

In response to critics who claim that laws aimed at stopping us from eating whatever we want are an assault on our freedom of choice, Conly offers a persuasive counterargument:

[L]aws aren't designed for each one of us individually. Some of us can drive safely at 90 miles per hour, but we're bound by the same laws as the people who can't, because individual speeding laws aren't practical. Giving up a little liberty is something we agree to when we agree to live in a democratic society that is governed by laws. (A23)

Notice that at the end of an indented quotation the parenthetical citation goes outside the final mark of punctuation. (When a quotation is run into your text, the opposite is true. See the sample citations on p. 448.)

## 55c Use signal phrases to integrate sources.

Whenever you include a paraphrase, summary, or direct quotation of another writer's work in your paper, prepare your readers for it with introductory words called a *signal phrase*. A signal phrase usually names the author of the source and often provides some context for the source material.

### Using signal phrases in MLA papers

To avoid monotony, try to vary both the language and the placement of your signal phrases.

#### Model signal phrases

Michael Pollan, who has written extensively about Americans' unhealthy eating habits, argues that “. . .”

As health policy experts Mello et al. point out, “. . .”

Marion Nestle, New York University professor of nutrition and public health, notes, “. . .”

Conly offers a persuasive counterargument: “. . .”

#### Verbs in signal phrases

acknowledges	comments	endorses	reasons
adds	compares	grants	refutes
admits	confirms	illustrates	rejects
agrees	contends	implies	reports
argues	declares	insists	responds
asserts	denies	notes	suggests
believes	disputes	observes	thinks
claims	emphasizes	points out	writes

When you write a signal phrase, choose a verb that is appropriate for the way you are using the source. Are you providing



background, explaining a concept, supporting a claim, lending authority, or refuting a belief (see 53c)? Refer to the chart on page 450 for a list of verbs commonly used in signal phrases.

**NOTE:** MLA style calls for verbs in the present or present perfect tense (*argues*, *has argued*) to introduce source material unless you include a date that specifies the time of the original author's writing.

### Marking boundaries

Readers need to move from your words to the words of a source without feeling a jolt. Avoid dropping quotations into the text without warning. Instead, provide clear signal phrases, including at least the author's name, to indicate the boundary between your words and the source's words. (The signal phrase is highlighted in the second example.)

#### DROPPED QUOTATION

Laws designed to prevent chronic disease by promoting healthier food and beverage consumption also have potential economic benefits. “[A] 1% reduction in the intake of saturated fat across the population would prevent more than 30,000 cases of coronary heart disease annually and would save more than a billion dollars in health care costs” (Nestle 7).

#### QUOTATION WITH SIGNAL PHRASE

Laws designed to prevent chronic disease by promoting healthier food and beverage consumption also have potential economic benefits. Marion Nestle, New York University professor of nutrition and public health, notes that “a 1% reduction in the intake of saturated fat across the population would prevent more than 30,000 cases of coronary heart disease annually and would save more than a billion dollars in health care costs” (7).

### Establishing authority

The first time you mention a source, include in the signal phrase the author's title, credentials, or experience to help your readers recognize the source's authority and your own credibility as a

responsible researcher who has located reliable sources. (Signal phrases are highlighted in the next two examples.)

#### SOURCE WITH NO CREDENTIALS

Michael Pollan notes that “[t]he Centers for Disease Control estimates that fully three quarters of US health care spending goes to treat chronic diseases, most of which are preventable and linked to diet: heart disease, stroke, type 2 diabetes, and at least a third of all cancers.”

#### SOURCE WITH CREDENTIALS

Journalist Michael Pollan, who has written extensively about Americans’ unhealthy eating habits, notes that “[t]he Centers for Disease Control estimates that fully three quarters of US health care spending goes to treat chronic diseases, most of which are preventable and linked to diet: heart disease, stroke, type 2 diabetes, and at least a third of all cancers.”

### Introducing summaries and paraphrases

Introduce most summaries and paraphrases with a signal phrase that names the author and places the material in the context of your argument. (See also 55c.) Readers will then understand that everything between the signal phrase and the parenthetical citation summarizes or paraphrases the cited source.

Without the signal phrase (highlighted) in the following example, readers might think that only the quotation at the end is being cited, when in fact the whole paragraph is based on the source.

To improve public health, advocates such as Bowdoin College philosophy professor Sarah Conly contend that it is the government’s duty to prevent people from making harmful choices whenever feasible and whenever public benefits outweigh the costs. In response to critics who claim that laws aimed at stopping us from eating whatever we want are an assault on our freedom of choice, Conly asserts that “laws aren’t designed for each one of us individually” (A23).

There are times when a summary or a paraphrase does not require a signal phrase naming the author. When the context makes clear where the cited material begins, you may omit the signal phrase and include the author's last name in parentheses.

### Using signal phrases with statistics and other facts

When you cite a statistic or another specific fact, a signal phrase is often not necessary. Readers usually will understand that the citation refers to the statistic or fact (not the whole paragraph).

Seventy-five percent of Americans are opposed to laws that restrict or put limitations on access to unhealthy foods (Neergaard and Agiesta).

There is nothing wrong, however, with using signal phrases to introduce statistics or other facts.

### Putting source material in context

Readers should not have to guess why source material appears in your paper. A signal phrase can help you make the connection between your own ideas and those of another writer by clarifying how the source will contribute to your paper (see 52a).

If you use another writer's words, you must explain how they relate to your argument. Quotations don't speak for themselves; you must support them by creating a context for readers. Embed each quotation between sentences of your own: Introduce the quotation with a signal phrase, and follow it with interpretive comments that link the quotation to your paper's argument (see also 55d).

#### QUOTATION WITH EFFECTIVE CONTEXT

In response to critics who claim that laws aimed at stopping us from eating whatever we want are an assault on our freedom of choice, Only offers a persuasive counterargument:

[L]aws aren't designed for each one of us individually. Some of us can drive safely at 90 miles per hour, but we're bound by the same laws as the people who can't, because individual speeding laws aren't practical. Giving up a little liberty is something we

agree to when we agree to live in a democratic society that is governed by laws. (A23)

As Conly suggests, we need to change our either/or thinking (either we have complete freedom of choice *or* we have government regulations and lose our freedom) and instead need to see health as a matter of public good, not individual liberty.

## 55d Synthesize sources.

When you synthesize multiple sources in a research paper, you create a conversation about your research topic. Your argument includes your active analysis and integration of ideas, not just a series of quotations and paraphrases. Your synthesis will show how your sources relate to one another; one source may support, extend, or counter the ideas of another. Not every source has to “speak” to another in a research paper, but readers should be able to see how each one functions in your argument (see 52a).

### Considering how sources relate to your argument

Before you integrate sources and show readers how they relate to one another, consider how each one might contribute to your own argument. As student writer Sophie Harba became more informed about her research topic, she asked herself these questions: *What have I learned from my sources? Which sources might support my ideas or illustrate the points I want to make? What counterarguments do I need to address to strengthen my position?* She annotated a passage from one of her sources—a nonprofit group’s assertion that our choices about food are skewed by marketing messages.

#### STUDENT NOTES ON THE ORIGINAL SOURCE

The food and beverage industry spends approximately \$2 billion per year marketing to children. — “Facts on Junk Food”

useful factual information →

← could use this to counter the point about personal choice in Mello et al.

### Placing sources in conversation

You can show readers how the ideas of one source relate to those of another by connecting and analyzing the ideas in your own voice. After all, you’ve done the research and thought through the

issues, so you should control the conversation. When you effectively synthesize sources, the emphasis is still on your own writing; the thread of your argument should be easy to identify and to understand, with or without your sources.

#### SAMPLE SYNTHESIS

Student writer  
Sophie Harba  
sets up her  
synthesis with  
a question.

A signal  
phrase  
indicates how  
the source  
contributes  
to Harba's  
argument and  
shows that  
the idea that  
follows is not  
her own.

Harba  
interprets a  
paraphrased  
source.

Harba uses  
a source to  
support her  
counter-  
argument.

Why is the public largely resistant to laws that would limit unhealthy choices or penalize those choices with so-called fat taxes? Many consumers and civil rights advocates find such laws to be an unreasonable restriction on individual freedom of choice. As health policy experts Mello et al. point out, opposition to food and beverage regulation is similar to the opposition to early tobacco legislation: the public views the issue as one of personal responsibility rather than one requiring government intervention (2602). In other words, if a person eats unhealthy food and becomes ill as a result, that is his or her choice. But those who favor legislation claim that freedom of choice is a myth because of the strong influence of food and beverage industry marketing on consumers' dietary habits. According to one nonprofit health advocacy group, food and beverage companies spend roughly two billion dollars per year marketing directly to children. As a result, kids see about four thousand ads per year encouraging them to consume unhealthy food and drinks ("Facts"). As was the case with antismoking laws passed in recent decades, taxes and legal restrictions on junk food sales could help to counter the strong marketing messages that promote unhealthy products.

Student  
writer

Source 1

Student  
writer

Source 2

Student  
writer

The United States has a history of state and local public health laws that have successfully promoted a particular behavior by punishing an undesirable behavior. The decline in tobacco use as a result of antismoking taxes and laws is perhaps the most obvious example. Another example is legislation requiring the use of seat belts, which have significantly reduced fatalities in car crashes. One government agency reports that seat belt use saved an average of more than fourteen thousand lives per year in the United States between 2000 and 2010 (United States, Dept. of Transportation, Natl. Highway Traffic Safety Administration 231). Perhaps seat belt laws have public support because the cost of wearing a seat belt is small, especially when compared with the benefit of saving fourteen thousand lives per year.

Harba uses a statistic to extend the argument and follows the source with a closing thought of her own.

Source 3

Student  
writer

In this synthesis, Harba uses her own analysis to shape the conversation among her sources. She does not simply string quotations together or allow them to overwhelm her writing. She guides her readers through a conversation about a variety of laws that could promote and have promoted public health. She finds points of intersection among her sources, acknowledges the contributions of others in the research conversation, and shows readers, in her own voice, how the various sources support her argument.

When synthesizing sources, ask yourself the following questions:

- How do your sources speak to your research question?
- How do your sources speak to each other?
- Have you varied the function of sources — to provide background, to explain concepts, to lend authority, and to anticipate counterarguments?
- Do you connect and analyze sources in your own voice?
- Is your own argument easy to identify and to understand, with or without your sources?

**Reviewing an MLA paper: Use of sources****Use of quotations**

- Have you used quotation marks around quoted material (unless it has been set off from the text)? (See 54b.)
- Have you checked that quoted language is word-for-word accurate? If not, do ellipsis marks or brackets indicate the omissions or changes? (See pp. 448–49.)
- Does a clear signal phrase (usually naming the author) prepare readers for each quotation and for the purpose the quotation serves? (See 55c.)
- Does a parenthetical citation follow each quotation? (See 56a.)
- Have you embedded each quotation between sentences of your own to put the source in context? (See 55c.)

**Use of summaries and paraphrases**

- Are summaries and paraphrases free of plagiarized wording — not copied or half-copied from the source? (See 54b.)
- Are summaries and paraphrases documented with parenthetical citations? (See 54b and 56a.)
- Do readers know where the cited material begins? In other words, does a signal phrase mark the boundary between your words and the summary or paraphrase? Or does the context alone make clear exactly what you are citing? (See 55c.)
- Does a signal phrase prepare readers for the purpose the summary or paraphrase has in your argument?

**Use of statistics and other facts**

- Are statistics and facts (other than common knowledge) documented with parenthetical citations? (See 54b and 56a.)
- If there is no signal phrase, will readers understand exactly which facts are being cited? (See 55c.)

# 56 Documenting sources in MLA style

In English and other humanities classes, you may be asked to use the MLA (Modern Language Association) system for documenting sources, which is set forth in the *MLA Handbook*, 8th edition (MLA, 2016).

MLA recommends in-text citations that refer readers to a list of works cited. A typical in-text citation names the author of the source, often in a signal phrase, and gives a page number in parentheses. At the end of the paper, the list of works cited provides publication information about the source; the list is alphabetized by authors' last names (or by titles for works without authors). There is a direct connection between the in-text citation and the alphabetical listing. In the following example, that connection is highlighted.

## IN-TEXT CITATION

Bioethicist David Resnik emphasizes that such policies, despite their potential to make our society healthier, “open the door to excessive government control over food, which could restrict dietary choices, interfere with cultural, ethnic, and religious traditions, and exacerbate socioeconomic inequalities” (31).

## ENTRY IN THE LIST OF WORKS CITED

Resnik, David. “Trans Fat Bans and Human Freedom.” *American Journal of Bioethics*, vol. 10, no. 3, Mar. 2010, pp. 27-32.

For a list of works cited that includes this entry, see page 524.

## 56a MLA in-text citations

MLA in-text citations are made with a combination of signal phrases and parenthetical references. A signal phrase introduces information taken from a source (a quotation, summary, paraphrase, or fact); usually the signal phrase includes the author's name. The parenthetical reference comes after the cited material,



often at the end of the sentence. It includes at least a page number (except for unpaginated sources, such as those found on the Web). In the models in 56a, the elements of the in-text citation are highlighted.

#### IN-TEXT CITATION

Resnik acknowledges that his argument relies on “slippery slope” thinking, but he insists that “social and political pressures” regarding food regulation make his concerns valid (31).

Readers can look up the author’s last name in the alphabetized list of works cited, where they will learn the work’s title and other publication information. If readers decide to consult the source, the page number will take them straight to the cited passage.

### General guidelines for signal phrases and page numbers

Items 1–5 explain how the MLA system usually works for all sources — in print, on the Web, in other media, and with or without authors and page numbers. Items 6–27 give variations on the basic guidelines.

■ **1. Author named in a signal phrase** Ordinarily, introduce the material being cited with a signal phrase that includes the author’s name. In addition to preparing readers for the source, the signal phrase allows you to keep the parenthetical citation brief.

According to Lorine Goodwin, a food historian, nineteenth-century reformers who sought to purify the food supply were called “fanatics” and “radicals” by critics who argued that consumers should be free to buy and eat what they want (77).

The signal phrase — *According to Lorine Goodwin* — names the author; the parenthetical citation gives the page number of the book in which the quoted words may be found.

Notice that the period follows the parenthetical citation. When a quotation ends with a question mark or an exclamation point, leave the end punctuation inside the quotation mark and add a period at the end of your sentence. (See the example at the top of p. 460.)



Burgess asks a critical question: “How can we think differently about food labeling?” (51).

- **2. Author named in parentheses** If you do not give the author’s name in a signal phrase, put the last name in parentheses along with the page number (if the source has one). Use no punctuation between the name and the page number: (Moran 351).

According to a nationwide poll, 75% of Americans are opposed to laws that restrict or put limitations on access to unhealthy foods (Neergaard and Agiesta).

- **3. Author unknown** If a source has no author, the works cited entry will begin with the title. In your in-text citation, either use the complete title in a signal phrase or use a short form of the title in parentheses. Titles of books and other long works are italicized; titles of articles and other short works are put in quotation marks (see also p. 514).

As a result, kids see nearly four thousand ads per year encouraging them to eat unhealthy food and drinks (“Facts”).

**NOTE:** If the author is a corporation or a government agency, see items 8 and 17 on pages 462 and 465, respectively.

- **4. Page number unknown** Do not include the page number if a work lacks page numbers, as is the case with many Web sources. Do not use page numbers from a printout from a Web site. (When the pages of a Web source are stable, as in PDF files, supply a page number in your in-text citation.)

Michael Pollan points out that “cheap food” actually has “significant costs—to the environment, to public health, to the public purse, even to the culture.”

If a source has numbered paragraphs or sections, use “par.” (or “pars.”) or “sec.” (or “secs.”) in the parentheses: (Smith, par. 4). Notice that a comma follows the author’s name.

- **5. One-page source** If the source is one page long, MLA allows (but does not require) you to omit the page number. It’s a good idea to include the page number because without it readers

may not know where your citation ends or, worse, may not realize that you have provided a citation at all.

#### NO PAGE NUMBER IN CITATION

Sarah Conly uses John Stuart Mill's "harm principle" to argue that citizens need their government to intervene to prevent them from taking harmful actions—such as driving too fast or buying unhealthy foods—out of ignorance of the harm they can do. But government intervention may overstep in the case of food choices.

#### PAGE NUMBER IN CITATION

Sarah Conly uses John Stuart Mill's "harm principle" to argue that citizens need their government to intervene to prevent them from taking harmful actions—such as driving too fast or buying unhealthy foods—out of ignorance of the harm they can do (A23). But government intervention may overstep in the case of food choices.

### Variations on the general guidelines

This section describes the MLA guidelines for handling a variety of situations not covered in items 1–5.

■ **6. Two authors** Name the authors in a signal phrase, as in the following example, or include their last names in the parenthetical reference: (Gostin and Gostin 214).

As legal scholars Gostin and Gostin explain, "[I]nterventions that do not pose a truly significant burden on individual liberty" are justified if they "go a long way towards safeguarding the health and well-being of the populace" (214).

■ **7. Three or more authors** Give the first author's name followed by "et al." (Latin for "and others") in the signal phrase and in the parenthetical citation.

The study was extended for two years, and only after results were reviewed by an independent panel did the researchers publish their findings (Blaine et al. 35).

■ **8. Organization as author** When the author is a corporation or an organization, name that author either in the signal phrase or in the parentheses. (For a government agency as author, see item 17 on p. 465.)

The **American Diabetes Association** estimates that the cost of diagnosed diabetes in the United States in 2012 was \$245 billion.

In the list of works cited, the American Diabetes Association is treated as the author and alphabetized under *A*. When you give the organization name in the text, spell out the name; when you use it in parentheses, abbreviate common words in the name: “Assn.,” “Dept.,” “Natl.,” “Soc.,” and so on.

The cost of diagnosed diabetes in the United States in 2012 was estimated at \$245 billion (**Amer. Diabetes Assn.**).

■ **9. Authors with the same last name** If your list of works cited includes works by two or more authors with the same last name, include the author’s first name in the signal phrase or first initial in the parentheses.

One approach to the problem is to introduce nutrition literacy at the K-5 level in public schools (**E. Chen 15**).

■ **10. Two or more works by the same author** Mention the title of the work in the signal phrase or include a short version of the title in the parentheses.

The **American Diabetes Association** tracks trends in diabetes across age groups. In 2012, more than 200,000 children and adolescents had diabetes (“**Fast**”). Because of an expected dramatic increase in diabetes in young people over the next forty years, the **association** encourages medical professionals to develop “strategies for implementing childhood obesity prevention programs and primary prevention programs for youth at risk of developing type 2 diabetes” (“**Number**”).

Titles of articles and other short works are placed in quotation marks; titles of books and other long works are italicized. (See also p. 514.)

In the rare case when both the author's name and a short title must be given in parentheses, separate them with a comma.

Researchers have estimated that “the number of youth with type 2 [diabetes] could quadruple and the number with type 1 could triple” by 2050, “with an increasing proportion of youth with diabetes from minority populations” (Amer. Diabetes Assn., “Number”).

■ **11. Two or more works in one citation** To cite more than one source in the parentheses, list the authors (or titles) in alphabetical order and separate them with semicolons.

The prevalence of early-onset Type 2 diabetes has been well documented (Finn 68; Sharma 2037; Whitaker 118).

It may be less distracting to use an information note for multiple citations (see 56c).

■ **12. Repeated citations from the same source** When you are writing about a single work, you do not need to include the author's name each time you quote from or paraphrase the work. After you mention the author's name at the beginning of your paper, you may include just the page number in your parenthetical citations.

In Susan Glaspell's short story “A Jury of Her Peers,” two women accompany their husbands and a county attorney to an isolated house where a farmer named John Wright has been choked to death in his bed with a rope. The chief suspect is Wright's wife, Minnie, who is in jail awaiting trial. The sheriff's wife, Mrs. Peters, has come along to gather some personal items for Minnie, and Mrs. Hale has joined her. Early in the story, Mrs. Hale sympathizes with Minnie and objects to the way the male investigators are “snoopin’ round and criticizin’” her kitchen (249). In contrast, Mrs. Peters shows respect for the law, saying that the men are doing “no more than their duty” (249).

In a paper with multiple sources, if you are citing a source more than once in a paragraph, you may omit the author's name after the first mention in the paragraph as long as it is clear that you are still referring to the same source.

■ **13. Encyclopedia or dictionary entry** When an encyclopedia or a dictionary entry does not have an author, it will be alphabetized in the list of works cited under the word or entry that you consulted (see item 28 on p. 486). Either in your text or in your parenthetical citation, mention the word or entry. No page number is required because readers can easily look up the word or entry.

The word *crocodile* has a complex etymology (“Crocodile”).

■ **14. Multivolume work** If your paper cites more than one volume of a multivolume work, indicate in the parentheses the volume you are referring to, followed by a colon and the page number.

In his studies of gifted children, Terman describes a pattern of accelerated language acquisition (2: 279).

If you cite only one volume of a multivolume work, you will include the volume number in the list of works cited and will not need to include it in the parentheses. (See the second example in item 38 on p. 493.)

■ **15. Entire work** Use the author's name in a signal phrase or a parenthetical citation. There is no need to use a page number.

Pollan explores the issues surrounding food production and consumption from a political angle.

■ **16. Selection in an anthology or a collection** Put the name of the author of the selection (not the editor of the anthology) in the signal phrase or the parentheses.

In “Love Is a Fallacy,” the narrator's logical teachings disintegrate when Polly declares that she should date Petey because “[h]e's got a raccoon coat” (Shulman 391).

In the list of works cited, the work is alphabetized under *Shulman*, the author of the story, not under the name of the editor of the anthology. (See item 35 on p. 491.)

Shulman, Max. "Love Is a Fallacy." *Current Issues and Enduring Questions*, edited by Sylvan Barnet and Hugo Bedau, 9th ed., Bedford/St. Martin's, 2011, pp. 383-91.

■ **17. Government document** When a government agency is the author, you will alphabetize it in the list of works cited under the name of the government, such as United States or Great Britain (see item 70 on p. 508). For this reason, you must name the government as well as the agency in your in-text citation.

One government agency reports that seat belt use saved an average of more than fourteen thousand lives per year in the United States between 2000 and 2010 (United States, Dept. of Transportation, Natl. Highway Traffic Safety Administration 231).

■ **18. Historical document** For a historical document, such as the United States Constitution or the Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms, provide the document title, neither italicized nor in quotation marks, along with relevant article and section numbers. In parenthetical citations, use common abbreviations such as "art." and "sec." and abbreviations of well-known titles: (US Const., art. 1, sec. 2).

While the United States Constitution provides for the formation of new states (art. 4, sec. 3), it does not explicitly allow or prohibit the secession of states.

Cite other historical documents as you would any other work, by the first element in the works cited entry (see item 72 on p. 510).

■ **19. Legal source** For a legislative act (law) or court case, name the act or case either in a signal phrase or in parentheses. Italicize the names of cases but not the names of acts. (See also items 73 and 74 on pp. 510–11.)

The Jones Act of 1917 granted US citizenship to Puerto Ricans.

In 1857, Chief Justice Roger B. Taney declared in *Dred Scott v. Sandford* that blacks, whether enslaved or free, could not be citizens of the United States.

■ **20. Visual such as a table, a chart, or another graphic** To cite a visual that has a figure number in the source, use the abbreviation

“fig.” and the number in place of a page number in your parenthetical citation: (Manning, fig. 4). If you refer to the figure in your text, spell out the word “figure” in the text.

To cite a visual that does not have a figure number in a print source, use the visual’s title or a description in your text and cite the author and page number as for any other source.

For a visual not in a print source, identify the visual in your text and then in parentheses use the first element in the works cited entry: the artist’s or photographer’s name or the title of the work. (See items 64–69 on pp. 505–07.)

Photographs such as *Woman Aircraft Worker* (Bransby) and *Women Welders* (Parks) demonstrate the US government’s attempt to document the contributions of women during World War II.

■ **21. Personal communication and social media** Cite personal letters, personal interviews, e-mail messages, and social media posts by the name listed in the works cited entry, as you would for any other source. Identify the type of source in your text if you feel it is necessary for clarity. (See items 27d, 29c, and 75–79 in section 56b.)

■ **22. Web source** Your in-text citation for a source from the Web should follow the same guidelines as for other sources. If the source lacks page numbers but has numbered paragraphs, sections, or divisions, use those numbers with the appropriate abbreviation in your parenthetical citation: “par.” “sec.” “ch.,” and so on. Do not add such numbers if the source does not use them; simply give the author or title in your in-text citation.

Julian Hawthorne points out profound differences between his father and Ralph Waldo Emerson but concludes that, in their lives and their writing, “together they met the needs of nearly all that is worthy in human nature” (ch. 4).

■ **23. Indirect source (source quoted in another source)** When a writer’s or a speaker’s quoted words appear in a source written by someone else, begin the parenthetical citation with the abbreviation “qtd. in.” (See also item 12 on p. 476.) In the following example, Gostin and Gostin are the authors of the source given in the works cited list; the source contains a quotation by Beauchamp.



Public health researcher Dan **Beauchamp** has said that “public health practices are ‘communal in nature, and concerned with the well-being of the community as a whole and not just the well-being of any particular person’” (qtd. in **Gostin and Gostin** 217).

### Literary works and sacred texts

Literary works and sacred texts are usually available in a variety of editions. Your list of works cited will specify which edition you are using, and your in-text citation will usually consist of a page number from the edition you consulted (see item 24). When possible, give enough information—such as book parts, play divisions, or line numbers—so that readers can locate the cited passage in any edition of the work (see items 25–27).

- **24. Literary work without parts or line numbers** Many literary works, such as most short stories and many novels and plays, do not have parts or line numbers. In such cases, simply cite the page number.

At the end of Kate **Chopin's** “The Story of an Hour,” Mrs. Mallard drops dead upon learning that her husband is alive. In the final irony of the story, doctors report that she has died of a “joy that kills” (25).

- **25. Verse play or poem** For verse plays, give act, scene, and line numbers that can be located in any edition of the work. Use arabic numerals and separate the numbers with periods.

In **Shakespeare's** *King Lear*, Gloucester, blinded for suspected treason, learns a profound lesson from his tragic experience: “A man may see how this world goes / with no eyes” (4.2.148-49).

For a poem, cite the part, stanza, and line numbers, if it has them, separated by periods.

The Green Knight claims to approach King Arthur's court “because the praise of you, prince, is puffed so high, / And your manor and your men are considered so magnificent” (1.12.258-59).

For poems that are not divided into numbered parts or stanzas, use line numbers. For a first reference, use the word “lines”: (lines 5-8). Thereafter use just the numbers: (12-13).

■ **26. Novel with numbered divisions** When a novel has numbered divisions, put the page number first, followed by a semicolon, and then the book, part, or chapter in which the passage may be found. Use abbreviations such as “bk.,” “pt.,” and “ch.”

One of *Kingsolver’s* narrators, teenager Rachel, pushes her vocabulary beyond its limits. For example, Rachel complains that being forced to live in the Congo with her missionary family is “a sheer tapestry of justice” because her chances of finding a boyfriend are “dull and void” (117; bk. 2, ch. 10).

■ **27. Sacred text** When citing a sacred text such as the Bible or the Qur’an, name the edition you are using in your works cited entry (see item 39 on p. 493). In your parenthetical citation, give the book, chapter, and verse (or their equivalent), separated with periods. Common abbreviations for books of the Bible are acceptable.

Consider the words of Solomon: “If your enemy is hungry, give him bread to eat; and if he is thirsty, give him water to drink” (*Oxford Annotated Bible*, Prov. 25.21).

The title of a sacred work is italicized when it refers to a specific edition of the work, as in the preceding example. If you refer to the book in a general sense in your text, neither italicize it nor put it in quotation marks (see also the note on p. 344 in section 42a).

The Bible and the Qur’an provide allegories that help readers understand how to lead a moral life.

## 56b MLA list of works cited

The elements you will need for the works cited list will differ slightly for some sources, but the main principles apply to all sources, whether in print or from the Web: You should identify an author, a creator, or a producer whenever possible; give a title; and provide the date on which the source was produced. Some sources will require page numbers; some will require a

publisher or sponsor; and some will require other identifying information.

Section 56b provides details for how to cite many of the sources you are likely to encounter. It also provides hints for what you can do when a source does not match one of the models exactly. When you cite sources, your goals are to show that your sources are reliable and relevant, to provide readers with enough information to find sources easily, and to provide that information consistently according to MLA conventions.

- ▶ Directory to MLA works cited models, [page 432](#)
- ▶ General guidelines for the works cited list, [page 470](#)

### General guidelines for listing authors

The formatting of authors' names in items 1–12 applies to all sources — books, articles, Web sites — in print, on the Web, or in other media. For more models of specific source types, see items 13–79.

#### 1. Single author

author: last name first
title (book)
publisher

Bowker, Gordon. *James Joyce: A New Biography*. Farrar, Straus and Giroux,

year

2012.

#### 2. Two authors

first author: last name first
second author: in normal order
title (book)

Gourevitch, Philip, and Errol Morris. *Standard Operating Procedure*.

publisher
year

Penguin Books, 2008.

**3. Three or more authors** Name the first author followed by “et al.” (Latin for “and others”). In an in-text citation, use the same form for the authors’ names as you use in the works cited entry. See item 7 on page 461. (See examples on p. 472.)



## General guidelines for the works cited list

In the list of works cited, include only sources that you have quoted, summarized, or paraphrased in your paper. MLA's guidelines are applicable to a wide variety of sources. At times you may find that you have to adapt the guidelines and models in this section to source types you encounter in your research.

### Organization of the list

The elements, or pieces of information, needed for a works cited entry are the following:

- The author (if a work has one)
- The title
- The title of the larger work in which the source is located (MLA calls this a “container”) — a collection, a journal, a magazine, a Web site, and so on
- As much of the following information as is available about the source and the container:

Editor, translator, director, performer

Version

Volume and issue numbers

Publisher or sponsor

Date of publication

Location of the source: page numbers, URL, DOI, and so on

Not all sources will require every element. See specific models in this section for more details.

### Authors

- Arrange the list alphabetically by authors' last names or by titles for works with no authors.
- For the first author, place the last name first, a comma, and the first name. Put a second author's name in normal order (first name followed by last name). For three or more authors, use “et al.” after the first author's name.
- Spell out “editor,” “translator,” “edited by,” and so on.

### Titles

- In titles of works, capitalize all words except articles (*a*, *an*, *the*), prepositions, coordinating conjunctions, and the *to* in infinitives — unless the word is first or last in the title or subtitle.
- Use quotation marks for titles of articles and other short works.
- Italicize titles of books and other long works.

**Publication information**

- MLA no longer requires the place of publication for a book publisher.
- Use the complete version of publishers' names, except for terms such as "Inc." and "Co.;" retain terms such as "Books" and "Press." For university publishers, use "U" and "P" for "University" and "Press."
- For a book, take the name of the publisher from the title page (or from the copyright page if it is not on the title page). For a Web site, the publisher might be at the bottom of a page or on the "About" page. If a work has two or more publishers, separate the names with slashes.
- If the title of a Web site and the publisher are the same or similar, use the title of the site but omit the publisher.

**Dates**

- For a book, give the most recent year on the title page or the copyright page. For a Web source, use the copyright date or the most recent update date. Use the complete date as listed in the source. (See item 13a.)
- Abbreviate all months except May, June, and July and give the date in inverted form: 13 Mar. 2016.
- If the source has no date, give your date of access at the end: Accessed 24 Feb. 2016.

**Page numbers**

- For most articles and other short works, give page numbers when they are available, preceded by "p." (or "pp." for more than one page).
- Do not use the page numbers from a printout of a Web source.
- If an article does not appear on consecutive pages, give the number of the first page followed by a plus sign: 35+.

**URLs and DOIs**

- Give a permalink or a DOI (digital object identifier) if a source has one. (See item 14c.)
- If a source does not have a permalink or a DOI, include a URL (omitting the protocol, such as http://).
- For a library's subscription database, such as Academic ASAP or JSTOR, include only the basic URL for the database home page. (See item 15d.)
- For open databases and archives, such as Google Books, give the complete URL for the source. (See item 30c.)

first author: "et al."  
 last name first for other authors title (book)  
 Zumeta, William, et al. *Financing American Higher Education in the Era of  
 Globalization*. Harvard Education Press, 2012.

Leech, Geoffrey, et al. *Change in Contemporary English: A Grammatical Study*. Cambridge UP, 2009.

#### 4. Organization or company as author

author: organization name, not abbreviated title (book) publisher  
 Human Rights Watch. *World Report of 2015: Events of 2014*. Seven Stories  
 Press, 2015.

Your in-text citation also should treat the organization as the author (see item 8 on p. 462).

#### 5. No author listed

##### a. Article or other short work

article title newspaper title (city in brackets) date  
 "Policing Ohio's Online Courses." *Plain Dealer* [Cleveland], 9 Oct. 2012,  
 page(s) label  
 p. A5. Editorial.

title of short work title of Web site publisher  
 "Chapter 2: What Can Be Patented?" *Lemelson-MIT*. Massachusetts  
 Institute of Technology, URL  
 lemelson.mit.edu/resources/chapter  
 date of access for undated site  
 -2-what-can-be-patented. Accessed 4 Apr. 2016.

**b. Television program**

episode title                      title of TV show                      producer  
 "Fast Times at West Philly High." *Frontline*, produced by Debbie Morton,  
 network date  
 PBS, 2012.

**c. Book, entire Web site, or other long work**

title (Web site)  
*Women of Protest: Photographs from the Records of the National Woman's Party.*  
 publisher/sponsor                      URL  
 Library of Congress, [www.loc.gov/collections/women-of-protest/](http://www.loc.gov/collections/women-of-protest/).  
 date of access  
 for undated site  
 Accessed 1 May 2015.

■ **6. Two or more works by the same author** First alphabetize the works by title (ignoring the article *A*, *An*, or *The* at the beginning of a title). Use the author's name for the first entry; for subsequent entries, use three hyphens and a period. The three hyphens must stand for exactly the same name as in the first entry.

García, Cristina. *Dreams of Significant Girls*. Simon and Schuster, 2011.

---. *The Lady Matador's Hotel*. Scribner, 2010.

■ **7. Two or more works by the same group of authors** Alphabetize the works by title. Use the authors' names in the proper form for the first entry (see items 1–4). Begin subsequent entries with three hyphens and a period. The three hyphens must stand for the same names as in the first entry.

Agha, Hussein, and Robert Malley. "The Arab Counterrevolution." *The New York Review of Books*, 29 Sept. 2011, [www.nybooks.com/articles/2011/09/29/arab-counterrevolution/](http://www.nybooks.com/articles/2011/09/29/arab-counterrevolution/).

---. "This Is Not a Revolution." *The New York Review of Books*, 8 Nov. 2012, [www.nybooks.com/articles/2012/11/08/not-revolution/](http://www.nybooks.com/articles/2012/11/08/not-revolution/).

■ **8. Editor or translator** Begin with the editor's or translator's name. After the name(s), add "editor" (or "editors") or "translator" (or "translators"). (See p. 474.)

first editor: last name first      second editor: in normal order      title (book)  
 Horner, Avril, and Anne Rowe, editors. *Living on Paper: Letters from Iris*  
 Murdoch.      publisher      year  
 Princeton UP, 2016.

■ **9. Author with editor or translator** Begin with the name of the author. Place the editor's or translator's name after the title.

author: last name first      title (book)      translator: in normal order  
 Ullmann, Regina. *The Country Road: Stories*. Translated by Kurt Beals,  
 publisher      year  
 New Directions Publishing, 2015.

■ **10. Graphic narrative or other illustrated work** If a work has both an author and an illustrator, the order in your citation will depend on which of those persons you emphasize in your paper.

## How to answer the basic question “Who is the author?”

**PROBLEM:** Sometimes when you need to cite a source, it's not clear who the author is. This is especially true for sources on the Web or other nonprint sources, which may have been created by one person and uploaded by a different person or an organization. Whom do you cite as the author in such a case? How do you determine who *is* the author?

**EXAMPLE:** The video “Surfing the Web on the Job” (see below) was uploaded to YouTube by CBSNewsOnline. Is the person or organization who uploads the video the author of the video? Not necessarily.

**Surfing the Web on The Job**

 CBSNewsOnline · 42,491 videos

 **Subscribe** 85,736

**Uploaded on Nov 12, 2009**

As the Internet continues to emerge as a critical facet of everyday life, CBS News' Daniel Sieberg reports that companies are cracking down on employees' personal Web use.





■ **11. Author using a pseudonym (pen name) or screen name** Give the author's name as it appears in the source (the pseudonym), followed by the author's real name, if available, in parentheses. (For screen names in social media, see items 78 and 79.)

Grammar Girl (Mignon Fogarty). "Lewis Carroll: He Loved to Play with Language." *QuickandDirtyTips.com*, 21 May 2015, [www.quickanddirtytips.com/education/grammar/lewis-carroll-he-loved-to-play-with-language](http://www.quickanddirtytips.com/education/grammar/lewis-carroll-he-loved-to-play-with-language).

Pauline. Comment on "Is This the End?" by James Atlas. *The New York Times*, 25 Nov. 2012, [nyti.ms/1BRUvqQ](http://nyti.ms/1BRUvqQ).

■ **12. Author quoted by another author (indirect source)** If one of your sources uses a quotation from another source and you'd like to use the quotation, provide a works cited entry for the source in which you found the quotation. In your in-text citation, indicate that the quoted words appear in the source (see item 23 on p. 466). In the following examples, Belmaker is the source in the works cited list; Townson is quoted in Belmaker.

**SOURCE (BELMAKER) QUOTING ANOTHER SOURCE (TOWNSON)**

Peter Townson, a journalist working with the DOHA Center for Press Freedom in Qatar, says there is one obvious reason that some countries in the Middle East have embraced social media so heartily. "It's kind of the preferred way for people to get news, because they know there's no self-censorship involved," Townson said in a phone interview.

**WORKS CITED ENTRY**

Belmaker, Genevieve. "Five Ways Journalists Can Use Social Media for On-the-Ground Reporting in the Middle East." *Poynter*, 19 Nov. 2012, [www.poynter.org/2012/5-ways-journalists-can-use-social-media-for-on-the-ground-reporting-in-the-middle-east/195899/](http://www.poynter.org/2012/5-ways-journalists-can-use-social-media-for-on-the-ground-reporting-in-the-middle-east/195899/).

**IN-TEXT CITATION**

Peter Townson points out that social media in the Middle East are "kind of the preferred way for people to get news, because they know there's no self-censorship involved" (qtd. in Belmaker).

## Articles and other short works

- ▶ Citation at a glance: Article in a journal, [page 478](#)
- ▶ Citation at a glance: Article from a database, [page 480](#)

### 13. Basic format for an article or other short work

#### a. Print

author:  
last name first      article title      journal title      volume, issue

Tilman, David. "Food and Health of a Full Earth." *Daedalus*, vol. 144, no. 4,

date      page(s)  
Fall 2015, pp. 5-7.

#### b. Web

author:  
last name first      title of short work

Nelson, Libby. "How Schools Will Be Different without No Child Left

title of Web site      date      URL

Behind." *Vox*, 11 Dec. 2015, [www.vox.com/2015/12/11/9889350/every-student-succeeds-act-schools](http://www.vox.com/2015/12/11/9889350/every-student-succeeds-act-schools).

#### c. Database

author:  
last name first      article title      journal title

Macari, Anne Marie. "Lyric Impulse in a Time of Extinction." *American Poetry*

volume, issue      date      page(s)      database title

*Review*, vol. 44, no. 4, July/Aug. 2015, pp. 11-14. *General OneFile*,

URL

[go.galegroup.com/](http://go.galegroup.com/).

### 14. Article in a journal

#### a. Print

author: last name first      article title      journal title

Matchie, Thomas. "Law versus Love in *The Round House*." *Midwest*

volume, issue      date      page(s)

*Quarterly*, vol. 56, no. 4, Summer 2015, pp. 353-64.

# Citation at a glance

## Article in a journal (MLA)

To cite an article in a print journal in MLA style, include the following elements:

- 1 Author(s) of article
- 2 Title and subtitle of article
- 3 Title of journal
- 4 Volume and issue numbers
- 5 Date of publication (including month or season, if any)
- 6 Page number(s) of article

### JOURNAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>RHETORIC REVIEW</b> <span style="float: right;">3</span>	
Volume 31, Number 4, 2012	
Articles	
<b>Brian Gogan</b> Exchange in On the Exchange: A Baudrillardian Perspective on Isocrates' <i>Antirostis</i>	353
<span style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">1</span> <b>Joseph Turner</b> <span style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">2</span> <i>Sir Gawain and the Green Knight</i> and the History of Medieval Rhetoric	371 <span style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">6</span>
<b>Erin T. Chandler</b> The Present Time of Things Past: Julian of Norwich's Appropriation of St. Augustine's Generative Theory of Memory	389
<b>Jacob Dickerson</b> Metonymy and Indexicality: People and Place in the Five Points	405
<b>Jessica Enoch</b> There's No Place Like the Childless Center: A Feminist Analysis of «Home» in the World War II Era	422
<b>Peter Wayne Moe</b> Revealing Rather Than Concealing Disability: The Rhetoric of Parkinson's Advocate Michael J. Fox	443
<b>Kelly Ritter</b>	61

FIRST  
PAGE  
OF  
ARTICLE

Rhetoric Review, Vol. 31, No. 4, 371-388, 2012  
Copyright © Taylor & Francis Group, LLC  
ISSN: 0733-0738 print / 1532-7982 online  
DOI: 10.1080/07330738.2012.711476

**Routledge**  
Taylor & Francis Group

---

1 **JOSEPH TURNER** *University of Delaware*

2 ***Sir Gawain and the Green Knight* and the History of Medieval Rhetoric**

*During the Middle Ages, rhetoric and literature were thoroughly intertwined, whereas current notions of disciplinary, in which literature and rhetoric are constructed as separate traditions, muddy our understanding of medieval*

## WORKS CITED ENTRY FOR AN ARTICLE IN A PRINT JOURNAL

1 2  
Turner, Joseph. "Sir Gawain and the Green Knight and the History of  
3 4 5 6  
Medieval Rhetoric." *Rhetoric Review*, vol. 31, no. 4, 2012, pp. 371-88.

For more on citing articles in MLA style, see items 13–16.

### 14. Article in a journal (cont.)

#### b. Online journal

author:  
last name first article title  
Cáceres, Sigfrido Burgos. "Towards Concert in Africa: Seeking Progress and Power  
journal title volume,  
through Cohesion and Unity." *African Studies Quarterly*, vol. 12, no. 4,  
date page(s) URL  
Fall 2011, pp. 59-73, [asq.africa.ufl.edu/files/Caceres-Vol12Is4.pdf](http://asq.africa.ufl.edu/files/Caceres-Vol12Is4.pdf).

#### c. Database

author:  
last name first article title  
Maier, Jessica. "A 'True Likeness': The Renaissance City Portrait."  
journal title volume,  
Renaissance Quarterly, vol. 65, no. 3, date page(s) database  
Fall 2012, pp. 711-52. JSTOR, title  
DOI  
doi:10.1086/668300.

### 15. Article in a magazine

#### a. Print (monthly)

author:  
last name first article title magazine title date page(s)  
Bryan, Christy. "Ivory Worship." *National Geographic*, Oct. 2012, pp. 28-61.

#### b. Print (weekly)

author:  
last name first article title magazine title date page(s)  
Vick, Karl. "The Stateless Statesman." *Time*, 15 Oct. 2012, pp. 32-37.

# Citation at a glance

## Article from a database (MLA)

To cite an article from a database in MLA style, include the following elements:

- 1 Author(s) of article
- 2 Title and subtitle of article
- 3 Title of journal, magazine, or newspaper
- 4 Volume and issue numbers (for journal)
- 5 Date of publication (including month or season, if any)
- 6 Page number(s) of article
- 7 Name of database
- 8 DOI or permalink, if available; otherwise, shortened URL of database

7 Searching: OmniFile Full Text Select (H.W. Wilson)

### DATABASE RECORD

The screenshot shows a database search interface. At the top, a search bar contains the text "Searching: OmniFile Full Text Select (H.W. Wilson)". Below this, there are search filters and a search button. The main content area displays the record for the article "FROM CENSORS TO CRITICS: REPRESENTING 'THE PEOPLE'". The record includes the author's name, the source journal, the document type, subjects, and an abstract. The author's name is "Weinberger, Stephen". The source is "Film & History (03603695), Fall2012, Vol. 42 Issue 2, p5-22, 18p". The document type is "Article". The subjects are "United States; Motion pictures -- Censorship -- Law & legislation; Motion pictures -- Social aspects; Motion pictures -- 1960-1970; Motion pictures -- History -- 1939-1945; Right & left (Political coloring); Liberty; Motion pictures -- United States -- History; Censorship -- United States -- History -- 20th century". The abstract discusses the history of the U.S. motion picture industry during the 1960s and 1970s, focusing on the powers and actions of federal censors and their opposition by film filmmakers. It explores both the attitudes of filmmakers concerning their self-perception as watchdogs and the authority to depict controversial material and those of conservative censors protect society from the same content. The history of film-censorship boards and the industry's view to them is then discussed in depth. The author's affiliation is "Anderson College". The ISSN is "03603695". The accession number is "04010245". The database is "OmniFile Full Text Select (H.W. Wilson)".

- 1 Authors: Weinberger, Stephen<sup>1</sup>
- 3 Source: Film & History (03603695); Fall2012, Vol. 42 Issue 2, p5-22, 18p

#### WORKS CITED ENTRY FOR AN ARTICLE FROM A DATABASE

Weinberger, Stephen. "From Censors to Critics: Representing 'the People.'" *Film & History*, vol. 42, no. 2, Fall 2012, pp. 5-22. *OmniFile Full Text Select*, web.b.ebscohost.com.ezproxy.bpl.org.

For more on citing articles from a database in MLA style, see items 13–16.

### 15. Article in a magazine (cont.)

#### c. Web

author:  
last name first      article title      Web site title      date  
Leonard, Andrew. "The Surveillance State High School." *Salon*, 27 Nov. 2012,  
  
URL  
www.salon.com/2012/11/27/the\_surveillance\_state\_high\_school/.

#### d. Database

author:  
last name first      article title      magazine title      date  
Rosenbaum, Ron. "The Last Renaissance Man." *Smithsonian*, Nov. 2012,  
  
page(s)      database title      URL  
pp. 39-44. *OmniFile Full Text Select*, web.b.ebscohost.com.ezproxy.bpl.org/.

**16. Article in a newspaper** If the city of publication is not obvious from the title of the newspaper, include the city in brackets after the newspaper title (see item 5a).

#### a. Print

author:  
last name first      article title  
Sherry, Allison. "Volunteers' Personal Touch Turns High-Tech Data into Votes."  
  
newspaper title      date      page(s)  
*The Denver Post*, 30 Oct. 2012, pp. 1A+.





Professional Psychology, 2016. Abstract. *ProQuest Dissertations and Theses*, search.proquest.com/docview/1707351557.

**d. Executive summary**

Pintak, Lawrence. *The Murrow Rural Information Initiative: Final Report*. Murrow College of Communication, Washington State U, 25 May 2012. Executive summary.

■ **18. Article with a title in its title** Use single quotation marks around a title of a short work or a quoted term that appears in an article title. Italicize a title or term normally italicized.

Silber, Nina. "From 'Great Emancipator' to 'Vampire Hunter': The Many Stovepipe Hats of Cinematic Lincoln." *Cognoscenti*, WBUR, 22 Nov. 2012, cognoscenti.wbur.org/2012/11/22/abraham-lincoln-nina-silber.

■ **19. Editorial** Cite as a source with no author (see item 5) and use the label "Editorial" at the end (and before any database information).

"City's Blight Fight Making Difference." *The Columbus Dispatch*, 17 Nov. 2015, www.dispatch.com/content/stories/editorials/2015/11/17/1-citys-blight-fight-making-difference.html. Editorial.

■ **20. Unsigned article** Cite as a source with no author (see item 5).

"Drought and Health." *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention*, US Department of Health and Human Services / Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 30 July 2012, www.cdc.gov/nceh/drought/default.htm.

■ **21. Letter to the editor** Use the label "Letter" at the end of the entry (and before any database information). If the letter has no title, place the label after the author's name.

Fahey, John A. "Recalling the Cuban Missile Crisis." *The Washington Post*, 28 Oct. 2012, p. A16. Letter. *LexisNexis Library Express*, www.lexisnexis.com/hottopics/Inpubliclibraryexpress/.



and no title, begin with “Review of” and alphabetize the entry by the first principal word in the title of the work reviewed.

**a. Print**

Flannery, Tim. “A Heroine in Defense of Nature.” Review of *On a Farther Shore: The Life and Legacy of Rachel Carson*, by William Souder, *The New York Review of Books*, 22 Nov. 2012, pp. 21-23.

**b. Web**

Della Subin, Anna. “It Has Burned My Heart.” Review of *The Lives of Muhammad*, by Kecia Ali, *London Review of Books*, 22 Oct. 2015, [www.lrb.co.uk/v37/n20/anna-della-subin/it-has-burned-my-heart](http://www.lrb.co.uk/v37/n20/anna-della-subin/it-has-burned-my-heart).

**c. Database**

Spychalski, John C. Review of *American Railroads—Decline and Renaissance in the Twentieth Century*, by Robert E. Gallamore and John R. Meyer. *Transportation Journal*, vol. 54, no. 4, Fall 2015, pp. 535-38. *JSTOR*, doi:10.5325/transportationj.54.4.0535.

■ **25. Film review or other review** Name the reviewer and the title of the review, if any, followed by “Review of” and the title and writer or director of the work reviewed. Add the publication information for the publication in which the review appears. If the review has no author and no title, begin with “Review of” and alphabetize the entry by the first principal word in the title of the work reviewed.

**a. Print**

Lane, Anthony. “Human Bondage.” Review of *Spectre*, directed by Sam Mendes, *The New Yorker*, 16 Nov. 2015, pp. 96-97.

**b. Web**

Savage, Phil. “Fallout 4 Review.” Review of *Fallout 4*, by Bethesda Game Studios, *PC Gamer*, Future Publishing, 8 Nov. 2015, [www.pcgamer.com/fallout-4-review/](http://www.pcgamer.com/fallout-4-review/).

■ **26. Performance review** Name the reviewer and the title of the review, if any, followed by “Review of” and the title and author of the work reviewed. Add the publication information for

the publication in which the review appears. If the review has no author and no title, begin with “Review of” and alphabetize the entry by the first principal word in the title of the work reviewed.

Stout, Gene. “The Ebullient Florence + the Machine Give KeyArena a Workout.” Review of *How Big How Blue How Beautiful Odyssey*, *The Seattle Times*, 28 Oct. 2015, [www.seattletimes.com/entertainment/music/the-ebullient-florence-the-machine-give-keyarena-a-workout/](http://www.seattletimes.com/entertainment/music/the-ebullient-florence-the-machine-give-keyarena-a-workout/).

■ **27. Interview** Begin with the person interviewed, followed by the title of the interview (if there is one). If the interview does not have a title, include the word “Interview” after the interviewee’s name. If you wish to include the name of the interviewer, put it after the title of the interview.

**a. Print**

Weddington, Sarah. “Sarah Weddington: Still Arguing for *Roe*.” Interview by Michele Kort, *Ms.*, Winter 2013, pp. 32-35.

**b. Web**

Jaffrey, Madhur. “Madhur Jaffrey on How Indian Cuisine Won Western Taste Buds.” Interview by Shadrach Kabango, *Q*, CBC Radio, 29 Oct. 2015, [www.cbc.ca/1.3292918](http://www.cbc.ca/1.3292918).

**c. Television or radio**

Putin, Vladimir. Interview by Charlie Rose. *Charlie Rose: The Week*, PBS, 19 June 2015.

**d. Personal** To cite an interview that you conducted, begin with the name of the person interviewed. Then write “Personal interview” or “Telephone interview,” followed by the date of the interview.

Akufo, Dautey. Personal interview, 11 Apr. 2016.

■ **28. Article in a dictionary or an encyclopedia (including a wiki)** List the author of the entry (if there is one), the title of the entry, the title of the reference work, the edition number (if any), the publisher, and the date of the edition. Page numbers are not

necessary because the entries in the source are arranged alphabetically and are therefore easy to locate.

**a. Print**

Robinson, Lisa Clayton. "Harlem Writers Guild." *Africana: The Encyclopedia of the African and African American Experience*. 2nd ed., Oxford UP, 2005.

"Ball's in Your Court, The." *The American Heritage Dictionary of Idioms*. 2nd ed., Houghton Mifflin Harcourt, 2013.

**b. Web**

Durante, Amy M. "Finn Mac Cumhail." *Encyclopedia Mythica*, 17 Apr. 2011, [www.pantheon.org/articles/f/finn\\_mac\\_cumhail.html](http://www.pantheon.org/articles/f/finn_mac_cumhail.html).

"House Music." *Wikipedia*, 16 Nov. 2015, [en.wikipedia.org/wiki/House\\_music](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/House_music).

■ **29. Letter**

**a. Print** Begin with the writer of the letter, the words "Letter to" and the recipient, and the date of the letter. Add the title of the collection, the editor, and publication information. Add the page range at the end.

Wharton, Edith. Letter to Henry James, 28 Feb. 1915. *Henry James and Edith Wharton: Letters, 1900-1915*, edited by Lyall H. Powers, Scribner, 1990, pp. 323-26.

**b. Web** After information about the letter writer, recipient, and date (if known), give the name of the Web site or archive, italicized; the publisher or sponsor of the site; and the URL.

Oblinger, Maggie. Letter to Charlie Thomas, 31 Mar. 1895. *Prairie Settlement: Nebraska Photographs and Family Letters, 1862-1912*, Library of Congress / American Memory, [memory.loc.gov/cgi-bin/query/r?ammem/ps:@field\(DOCID+l306\)#l3060001](http://memory.loc.gov/cgi-bin/query/r?ammem/ps:@field(DOCID+l306)#l3060001).

**c. Personal** To cite a letter that you received, begin with the writer's name and add the phrase "Letter to the author," followed by the date.

Primak, Shoshana. Letter to the author, 6 May 2016.

## Books and other long works

► Citation at a glance: Book, [page 489](#)

### ■ 30. Basic format for a book

**a. Print or e-book** If you have used an e-book, give the e-reader type at the end of the entry.

author: last name first      book title      publisher      year  
 Wolfe, Tom. *Back to Blood*. Little, Brown, 2012.

Beard, Mary. *SPQR: A History of Ancient Rome*. Liveright Publishing, 2015.

Tolstoy, Leo. *War and Peace*. 1869. Translated by Richard Pevear and Larissa Volokhonsky, Alfred A. Knopf, 2007. Nook.

**b. Web** Give whatever print publication information is available for the work, followed by the title of the Web site and the URL.

author: last name first      book title  
 Piketty, Thomas. *Capital in the Twenty-First Century*. Translated by Arthur

translator: in normal order      publisher      year      Web site title      URL  
 Goldhammer, Harvard UP, 2014. *Google Books*, [books.google.com/books?isbn=0674369556](https://books.google.com/books?isbn=0674369556).

Saalmann, Lora, editor and translator. *The China-India Nuclear Crossroads*. Carnegie Endowment for International Peace, 2012. *Scribd*, [www.scribd.com/book/142083413/The-China-India-Nuclear-Crossroads](http://www.scribd.com/book/142083413/The-China-India-Nuclear-Crossroads).

### c. Database

author: last name first      book title      city and date of original  
 Goldsmith, Oliver. *The Vicar of Wakefield: A Tale*. Philadelphia, 1801.

database title      URL  
*America's Historical Imprints*, [infoweb.newsbank.com.ezproxy.bpl.org/](http://infoweb.newsbank.com.ezproxy.bpl.org/).

# Citation at a glance

## Book (MLA)

To cite a print book in MLA style, include the following elements:

- |   |                    |   |                                   |
|---|--------------------|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1 | Author(s)          | 3 | Publisher                         |
| 2 | Title and subtitle | 4 | Year of publication (latest year) |

### TITLE PAGE

**2** THE LADY AND THE PEACOCK  
The Life of Aung San Suu Kyi

**1** PETER POPHAM

**FROM COPYRIGHT PAGE**

THE LADY AND THE PEACOCK: *The Life of Aung San Suu Kyi*

Copyright © Peter Popham, 2011, 2012 **4**  
Pages xii–xiv and 436 are a continuation of this copyright page.

**3** THE EXPERIMENT  
NEW YORK

### WORKS CITED ENTRY FOR A PRINT BOOK

**1** Popham, Peter. *The Lady and the Peacock: The Life of Aung San Suu Kyi*.  
**3** The Experiment, **4** 2012.

For more on citing books in MLA style, see items 30–41.

### ■ 31. Parts of a book

#### a. Foreword, introduction, preface, or afterword

author of foreword:  
last name first      book part      book title

Bennett, Hal Zina. Foreword. *Shimmering Images: A Handy Little Guide to Writing Memoir*, by Lisa Dale Norton, St. Martin's Griffin, 2008, pp. xiii-xvi.

author of book:  
in normal order      publisher      year      page(s)

Sullivan, John Jeremiah. "The Ill-Defined Plot." Introduction. *The Best American Essays 2014*, edited by Sullivan, Houghton Mifflin Harcourt, 2014, pp. xvii-xxvi.

#### b. Chapter in a book

Rizga, Kristina. "Mr. Hsu." *Mission High: One School, How Experts Tried to Fail It, and the Students and Teachers Who Made It Triumph*, Nation Books, 2015, pp. 89-114.

■ **32. Book with a title in its title** If the book title contains a title normally italicized, neither italicize the internal title nor place it in quotation marks. If the title within the title is normally put in quotation marks, retain the quotation marks and italicize the entire book title.

Shanahan, Timothy. *Philosophy and Blade Runner*. Palgrave Macmillan, 2014.

Lethem, Jonathan. *"Lucky Alan" and Other Stories*. Doubleday, 2015.

■ **33. Book in a language other than English** Capitalize the title according to the conventions of the book's language. If your readers are not familiar with the language, include a translation of the title in brackets.

Vargas Llosa, Mario. *El sueño del celta* [*The Dream of the Celt*]. Alfaguara, 2010.



■ **34. Entire anthology or collection** An anthology is a collection of works, often with various authors and an editor for the entire volume.

editor:  
last name first                      title of  
anthology                      publisher                      year  
Marcus, Ben, editor. *New American Stories*. Vintage Books, 2015.

■ **35. One selection from an anthology or a collection**

▶ Citation at a glance: Selection from an anthology or a collection, [page 492](#)

author of selection                      title of selection                      title of anthology                      editor(s) of anthology  
Sayrafiezadeh, Saïd. "Paranoia." *New American Stories*, edited by Ben Marcus,  
publisher                      year                      page(s)  
Vintage Books, 2015, pp. 3-29.

■ **36. Two or more selections from an anthology or a collection**  
For two or more works from the same anthology, provide an entry for the entire anthology (see item 34) and a shortened entry for each selection. Alphabetize the entries by authors' or editors' last names.

author of selection                      title of selection                      editor(s) of anthology                      page(s)  
Eisenberg, Deborah. "Some Other, Better Otto." Marcus, pp. 94-136.

editor:  
last name first                      title of anthology                      publisher                      year  
Marcus, Ben, editor. *New American Stories*. Vintage Books, 2015.

author of selection                      title of selection                      editor(s) of anthology                      page(s)  
Sayrafiezadeh, Saïd. "Paranoia." Marcus, pp. 3-29.

■ **37. Edition other than the first** Include the number of the edition (2nd, 3rd, and so on). If the book has a translator or an editor in addition to the author, give the name of the translator or editor before the edition number, (see item 9 for a book with an editor or translator).

Eagleton, Terry. *Literary Theory: An Introduction*. 3rd ed., U of Minnesota P, 2008.

# Citation at a glance

## Selection from an anthology or a collection (MLA)

To cite a selection from an anthology in MLA style, include the following elements:

- 1 Author(s) of selection
- 2 Title and subtitle of selection
- 3 Title and subtitle of anthology
- 4 Editor(s) of anthology
- 5 Publisher
- 6 Year of publication
- 7 Page numbers of selection

### FIRST PAGE OF SELECTION

### TITLE PAGE OF ANTHOLOGY

The diagram illustrates the citation elements for a selection from an anthology. It features three overlapping pages:

- Title Page of Anthology:** Shows the title "THE UNFINISHED REVOLUTION" (3), subtitle "VOICES FROM THE GLOBAL FIGHT FOR WOMEN'S RIGHTS", editor "EDITED BY MINKY WORDEN" (4), and publisher "Seven Stories Press NEW YORK" (5).
- Chapter Page:** Shows the chapter title "Technology's Quiet Revolution for Women" (2) and author "Isobel Coleman" (1).
- First Page of Selection:** Shows the start of the text, with a page number "41" (7) at the bottom right.
- Copyright Page:** Shows the copyright information "Copyright © 2012 by Minky Worden" (6) and "Individual chapters © 2012 by each author".

#### WORKS CITED ENTRY FOR A SELECTION FROM AN ANTHOLOGY

Coleman, Isobel. "Technology's Quiet Revolution for Women." *The Unfinished Revolution: Voices from the Global Fight for Women's Rights*, edited by Minky Worden, Seven Stories Press, 2012, pp. 41-49.

For more on citing selections from anthologies in MLA style, see items 34–36.

- **38. Multivolume work** Include the total number of volumes at the end of the entry, using the abbreviation "vols." If the volumes were published over several years, give the inclusive dates of publication.

author: last name first    book title    editor(s): in normal order    publisher    inclusive dates  
Stark, Freya. *Letters*. Edited by Lucy Moorehead, Compton Press, 1974-82.  
total volumes  
8 vols.

If you cite only one volume in your paper, include the volume number before the publisher and give the date of publication for that volume. After the date, give the total number of volumes.

author: last name first    book title    editor(s): in normal order    volume cited    publisher  
Stark, Freya. *Letters*. Edited by Lucy Moorehead, vol. 5, Compton Press,  
date of volume    total volumes  
1978. 8 vols.

- **39. Sacred text** Give the title of the edition (taken from the title page), italicized; the editor's or translator's name (if any); and publication information. Add the name of the version, if there is one, before the publisher.

*The Oxford Annotated Bible with the Apocrypha*. Edited by Herbert G. May and Bruce M. Metzger, Revised Standard Version, Oxford UP, 1965.

*The Qur'an: Translation*. Translated by Abdullah Yusuf Ali, Tahrike Tarsile Qur'an, 2001.

■ **40. Book in a series** After the publication information, give the series name as it appears on the title page, followed by the series number, if any.

Denham, A. E., editor. *Plato on Art and Beauty*. Palgrave Macmillan, 2012.  
Philosophers in Depth.

■ **41. Republished book** After the title of the book, give the original year of publication, followed by the current publication information. If the republished book contains new material, such as an introduction or an afterword, include information about the new material after the original date.

Trilling, Lionel. *The Liberal Imagination*. 1950. Introduction by Louis Menand, New York Review of Books, 2008.

Wilde, Oscar. *The Picture of Dorian Gray*. 1891. Barnes and Noble, 2012.  
Barnes and Noble Signature Editions.

■ **42. Pamphlet, brochure, or newsletter** Cite a pamphlet, brochure, newsletter, or other small, self-contained publication as you would a book.

*The Legendary Sleepy Hollow Cemetery*. Friends of Sleepy Hollow Cemetery, 2008.

### ■ **43. Dissertation**

**a. Published** For dissertations that have been published in book form, italicize the title. After the title, give the label “Dissertation,” the name of the institution, and the year the dissertation was accepted.

Kidd, Celeste. *Rational Approaches to Learning and Development*.  
Dissertation, U of Rochester, 2013.

**b. Unpublished** Begin with the author’s name, followed by the dissertation title in quotation marks. After the title, add the label “Dissertation,” the name of the institution, and the year the dissertation was accepted.

Abbas, Megan Brankley. "Knowing Islam: The Entangled History of Western Academia and Modern Islamic Thought." Dissertation, Princeton U, 2015.

■ **44. Proceedings of a conference** Cite as you would a book, adding the name, date, and location of the conference after the title.

Sowards, Stacey K., et al., editors. *Across Borders and Environments: Communication and Environmental Justice in International Contexts*. Proceedings of Eleventh Biennial Conference on Communication and the Environment, 25-28 June 2011, U of Texas at El Paso. International Environmental Communication Association, 2012.

■ **45. Manuscript** Give the author, a title or a description of the manuscript, and the date of composition (if known), followed by the location of the manuscript, including a URL if it is found on the Web.

Arendt, Hannah. *Between Past and Future*. 1st draft, Hannah Arendt Papers, Manuscript Division, Library of Congress, pp. 108-50, [memory.loc.gov/cgi-bin/ampage?collId=mharendt&fileName=05/050030/050030page.db&recNum=0](http://memory.loc.gov/cgi-bin/ampage?collId=mharendt&fileName=05/050030/050030page.db&recNum=0).

## Web sites and parts of Web sites

■ **46. An entire Web site**

**a. Web site with author or editor**

author or editor: last name first	title of Web site	publisher/sponsor
Railton, Stephen.	<i>Mark Twain in His Times</i> .	Stephen Railton / U of Virginia
update date	URL	
Library, 2012,	<a href="http://twain.lib.virginia.edu/">twain.lib.virginia.edu/</a> .	

Halsall, Paul, editor. *Internet Modern History Sourcebook*. Fordham U, 4 Nov. 2011, [legacy.fordham.edu/halsall/index.asp](http://legacy.fordham.edu/halsall/index.asp).

## ■ 46. An entire Web site (cont.)

### b. Web site with organization as author

organization title of Web site  
 Transparency International. *Transparency International: The Global Coalition against Corruption*. date URL  
 2015, www.transparency.org/.

**c. Web site with no author** Begin with the title of the site. If the site has no title, begin with a label such as “Home page.”

*The Newton Project*. U of Sussex, 2016, www.newtonproject.sussex.ac.uk/prism.php?id=1.

**d. Web site with no title** Use the label “Home page” or another appropriate description in place of a title.

Bae, Rebecca. Home page. Iowa State U, 2015, www engl.iastate.edu/rebecca-bae-directory-page/.

## ■ 47. Short work from a Web site

▶ Citation at a glance: Short work from a Web site, [page 497](#)

### a. Short work with author

author: last name first title of short work title of Web site  
 Gallagher, Sean. “The Last Nomads of the Tibetan Plateau.” *Pulitzer Center on Crisis Reporting*, date URL  
 25 Oct. 2012, pulitzercenter.org/reporting/china-glaciers-global-warming-climate-change-ecosystem-tibetan-plateau-grasslands-nomads.

### b. Short work with no author

title of article title of Web site  
 “Social and Historical Context: Vitality.” *Arapesh Grammar and Digital Language Archive Project*, publisher/sponsor  
 Institute for Advanced Technology in the Humanities, URL  
 www.arapesh.org/socio\_historical\_context\_vitality.php. Accessed access date for undated site  
 22 Mar. 2016.

# Citation at a glance

## Short work from a Web site (MLA)

To cite a short work from a Web site in MLA style, include the following elements:

- 1 Author(s) of short work (if any)
- 2 Title and subtitle of short work
- 3 Title and subtitle of Web site
- 4 Publisher or sponsor of Web site (unless it is the same as the title of site)
- 5 Update date
- 6 URL of page (or of home page of site)
- 7 Date of access (if no update date on site)

### INTERNAL PAGE OF WEB SITE

The screenshot shows a web browser displaying the Amherst College website. The page title is "Losing a Country, Finding a Home". The page content includes a navigation menu on the left with items like "Amherst Center for Russian Culture", "About Us", "Contact Us", "Events", "Exhibitions", "Publications", "Research & Programs", "Photo", "Virtual", "2014", "Russian", "About Us", "Contact Us", "Events", "Exhibitions", "Publications", "Research & Programs", "Photo", "Virtual", "2014". The main content area features the title "Losing a Country, Finding a Home" and a paragraph of text. A small image of a hand holding a book is visible. The footer of the page contains the Amherst College logo and contact information: "Amherst College • Contact Amherst Amherst MA 01902-0000 • (413) 542-2000".

### FOOTER ON PAGE

Courtesy of the Trustees of Amherst College.  
Reproduced by permission.

### WORKS CITED ENTRY FOR A SHORT WORK FROM A WEB SITE

"Losing a Country, Finding a Home." *Amherst College*, [www.amherst.edu/academiclife/departments/russian/acrc/lcfh](http://www.amherst.edu/academiclife/departments/russian/acrc/lcfh). Accessed 4 Jan. 2016.

For more on citing sources from Web sites in MLA style, see items 47 and 48.

#### ■ 48. Long work from a Web site

author: last name first      title of long work      title of Web site      update date  
 Milton, John. *Paradise Lost: Book I*. Poetry Foundation, 2014,  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 URL  
 www.poetryfoundation.org/poem/174987.

#### ■ 49. Entire blog

Cite a blog as you would an entire Web site (see item 46).

Ng, Amy. *Pikaland*. Pikaland Media, 2015, www.pikaland.com/.

#### ■ 50. Blog post or comment

Cite a blog post or comment as you would a short work from a Web site (see item 47). If the post or comment has no title, use the label “Blog post” or “Blog comment.” Follow with the remaining information as for an entire blog (see item 49). (See item 11 for the use of screen names.)

author: last name first      title of blog post      title of blog      publisher/ sponsor  
 Eakin, Emily. “*Cloud Atlas’s Theory of Everything*.” *NYR Daily*, NYREV,  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 date      URL  
 2 Nov. 2012, www.nybooks.com/daily/2012/11/02/ken-wilber-cloud-atlas/.

author: screen name      label      title of blog post  
 mitchellfreedman. Comment on “*Cloud Atlas’s Theory of Everything*,” by  
 author of blog post      title of blog      publisher/ sponsor      date      URL  
 Emily Eakin. *NYR Daily*, NYREV, 3 Nov. 2012, www.nybooks.com/daily/  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 2012/11/02/ken-wilber-cloud-atlas/.

#### ■ 51. Academic course or department home page

Cite as a short work from a Web site (see item 47). For a course home page, begin with the name of the instructor and the title of the course or title of the page (use “Course home page” if there is no other title). For a department home page, begin with the name of the department and the label “Department home page.” End with the URL.

Masiello, Regina. 355:101: Expository Writing. *Rutgers School of Arts and Sciences*, 2016, wp.rutgers.edu/courses/55-355101.



Film Studies. Department home page. *Wayne State University, College of Liberal Arts and Sciences*, 2016, clas.wayne.edu/FilmStudies/.

## Audio, visual, and multimedia sources

### ■ 52. Podcast

author: last  
name first                      podcast title                      Web site title                      publisher/  
sponsor

Tanner, Laura. "Virtual Reality in 9/11 Fiction." *Literature Lab*, Department of  
English, Brandeis U, [www.brandeis.edu/departments/english/literaturelab/  
tanner.html](http://www.brandeis.edu/departments/english/literaturelab/tanner.html). Accessed 14 Feb. 2016.

URL  
access date  
for undated site

McDougall, Christopher. "How Did Endurance Help Early Humans Survive?" *TED Radio Hour*, National Public Radio, 20 Nov. 2015, [www.npr.org/2015/11/20/455904655/how-did-endurance-help-early-humans-survive](http://www.npr.org/2015/11/20/455904655/how-did-endurance-help-early-humans-survive).

■ **53. Film** Generally, begin the entry with the title, followed by the director and lead performers, as in the first example. If your paper emphasizes one or more people involved with the film, you may begin with those names, as in the second example.

film title

*Birdman or (The Unexpected Virtue of Ignorance)*. Directed by  
director                      major performers

Alejandro González Iñárritu, performances by Michael Keaton, Emma  
Stone, Zach Galifianakis, Edward Norton, and Naomi Watts, Fox  
distributor                      release  
date

Searchlight, 2014.

### ■ 53. Film (cont.)

director:  
last name first                      film title                      major performers  
Scott, Ridley, director. *The Martian*. Performances by Matt Damon, Jessica  
Chastain, Kristen Wiig, and Kate Mara, Twentieth Century Fox, 2015.  
distributor                      release date

■ **54. Supplementary material accompanying a film** Begin with the title of the supplementary material, in quotation marks, and the names of any important contributors, as for a film. End with information about the film, as in item 53, and about the location of the supplementary material.

“Sweeney’s London.” Produced by Eric Young. *Sweeney Todd: The Demon Barber of Fleet Street*, directed by Tim Burton, DreamWorks, 2007, disc 2.

■ **55. Video or audio from the Web** Cite video or audio that you accessed on the Web as you would a short work from a Web site (see item 47), giving information about the author before other information about the video or audio.

author: last name first                      title of video                      Web site title                      date                      URL  
Lewis, Paul. “Citizen Journalism.” *YouTube*, 14 May 2011, www.youtube.com/watch?v=9AP09\_yNbcg.

author: last name first                      title of video                      Web site title  
Fletcher, Antoine. “The Ancient Art of the Atlatl.” *Russell Cave National Monument*, narrated by Brenton Bellomy, National Park Service,  
12 Feb. 2014, www.nps.gov/media/video/view.htm?id=C92C0D0A-1DD8-B71C-07CBC6E8970CD73F.

author: last name first                      title of video                      Web site title                      date  
Burstein, Julie. “Four Lessons in Creativity.” *TED*, Feb. 2012,  
www.ted.com/talks/julie\_burstein\_4\_lessons\_in\_creativity.

■ **56. Video game** List the developer or author of the game (if any); the title, italicized; the version, if there is one; and the distributor and date of publication. If the game can be played on the Web, add information as for a work from a Web site (see item 47).

Firaxis Games. *Sid Meier's Civilization Revolution*. Take-Two Interactive, 2008.

*Edgeworld*. Atom Entertainment, 1 May 2012, [www.kabam.com/games/edgeworld](http://www.kabam.com/games/edgeworld).

■ **57. Computer software or app** Cite as a video game (see item 56), giving whatever information is available about the version, distributor, and date.

*Words with Friends*. Version 5.84. Zynga, 2013.

■ **58. Television or radio episode or program** If you are citing an episode or a segment of a program, begin with the title of the episode or segment, in quotation marks. Then give the title of the program, italicized; relevant information about the program, such as the writer, director, performers, or narrator; the episode number (if any); the network; and the date of broadcast.

For a program you accessed on the Web, after the information about the program give the network, the original broadcast date, and the URL. If you are citing an entire program (not an episode or a segment), begin your entry with the title of the program, italicized.

**a. Broadcast**

"Federal Role in Support of Autism." *Washington Journal*, narrated by  
 Robb Harleston, C-SPAN, 1 Dec. 2012.

*The Daily Show with Trevor Noah*. Comedy Central, 18 Nov. 2015.

## ■ 58. Television or radio episode or program (cont.)

### b. Web

title of episode program title, narrated by narrator, episode,  
 "The Cathedral." *Reply All*, narrated by Sruthi Pinnamaneni, episode 50,  
publisher/  
sponsor date  
of posting, URL  
 Gimlet Media, 7 Jan. 2016, gimletmedia.com/episode/50-the-cathedral/.

"Take a Giant Step." *Prairie Home Companion*, narrated by Garrison Keillor,  
 American Public Media, 27 Feb. 2016, prairiehome.publicradio.org/  
 listen/full/?name=phc/2016/02/27/phc\_20160227\_128.

## How to cite a source reposted from another source

**PROBLEM:** Some sources that you find online, particularly on video-sharing sites, did not originate with the person who uploaded or published the source online. How do you give proper credit for such sources?

**EXAMPLE:** Say you need to cite President John F. Kennedy's inaugural address. You have found a video on YouTube that provides footage of the address (see image). The video was uploaded by PaddyIrishMan2 on October 29, 2006. But clearly, PaddyIrishMan2 is not the author of the video or of the address.

### JFK Inaugural Address 1 of 2



PaddyIrishMan2 · 12 videos



Subscribe

403

Uploaded on Oct 29, 2006

President John F. Kennedy's inaugural address, January 20th 1961.

Vice President Johnson, Mr. Speaker, Mr. Chief Justice, President Eisenhower, Vice President Nixon, President Truman, reverend clergy, fellow citizens, we observe today not a victory of party, but a celebration of freedom — symbolising an end, as well as a beginning — signifying renewal, as well as change. For I have sworn before you and Almighty God the same solemn oath our forebears prescribed nearly a century and three quarters ago.

■ **59. Transcript** You might find a transcript related to an interview or a program on a radio or television Web site or in a transcript database. Cite the source as you would an interview (see item 27) or a radio or television program (see item 58). Add the label “Transcript” at the end of the entry.

“How Long Can Florida’s Citrus Industry Survive?” *All Things Considered*, narrated by Greg Allen, National Public Radio, 27 Nov. 2015, [www.npr.org/templates/transcript/transcript.php?storyId=457424528](http://www.npr.org/templates/transcript/transcript.php?storyId=457424528). Transcript.

“The Economics of Sleep, Part 1.” *Freakonomics Radio*, narrated by Stephen J. Dubner, 9 July 2015, [freakonomics.com/2015/07/09/the-economics-of-sleep-part-1-full-transcript/](http://freakonomics.com/2015/07/09/the-economics-of-sleep-part-1-full-transcript/). Transcript.

**STRATEGY:** Start with what you know. The source is a video that you viewed on the Web. For this particular video, John F. Kennedy is the speaker and the author of the inaugural address. PaddyIrishMan2 is identified as the person who uploaded the source to YouTube.

**CITATION:** To cite the source, you can combine the basic MLA guidelines for a lecture or public address (see item 61) and for a video found on the Web (see item 55).

author/speaker: last name first	title of address	Web site title
Kennedy, John F.	“JFK Inaugural Address: 1 of 2.”	YouTube,
update date	URL	
29 Oct. 2006,	<a href="http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=xEOiPY7XGBo">www.youtube.com/watch?v=xEOiPY7XGBo</a> .	

Because Kennedy’s inauguration is a well-known historical event, you can be fairly certain that this is not the only version of the inauguration video. It is a good idea, therefore, to include information about the version you viewed as supplementary information.

author/speaker: last name first	title of address	Web site title	supplementary information
Kennedy, John F.	“JFK Inaugural Address: 1 of 2.”	YouTube,	uploaded by
update date	URL		
PaddyIrishMan2,	29 Oct. 2006,	<a href="http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=xEOiPY7XGBo">www.youtube.com/watch?v=xEOiPY7XGBo</a> .	

**NOTE:** If your work calls for a primary source, you should try to find the original source of the video; a reference librarian can help.

■ **60. Performance** For a live performance of a concert, a play, a ballet, or an opera, begin with the title of the work performed, italicized (unless it is named by form, number, and key). Then give the author or composer of the work; relevant information such as the director, the choreographer, the conductor, or the major performers; the theater, ballet, or opera company, if any; the theater and location; and the date of the performance.

*The Draft*. By Peter Snoad, directed by Diego Arciniegas, Hibernian Hall, Boston, 10 Sept. 2015.

Symphony no. 4 in G. By Gustav Mahler, conducted by Mark Wigglesworth, performances by Juliane Banse and Boston Symphony Orchestra, Symphony Hall, Boston, 17 Apr. 2009.

■ **61. Lecture or public address** Begin with the speaker's name, the title of the lecture, the sponsoring organization, location, and date. If you viewed the lecture on the Web, cite as you would a short work from a Web site (see item 47). Add the label "Address" or "Lecture" at the end if it is not clear from the title.

**a. Live**

Smith, Anna Deavere. "On the Road: A Search for American Character." National Endowment for the Humanities, John F. Kennedy Center for the Performing Arts, Washington, 6 Apr. 2015. Address.

**b. Web**

Khosla, Raj. "Precision Agriculture and Global Food Security." *US Department of State: Diplomacy in Action*, 26 Mar. 2013, [www.state.gov/e/stas/series/212172.htm](http://www.state.gov/e/stas/series/212172.htm). Address.

■ **62. Musical score** For both print and online versions, begin with the composer's name; the title of the work, italicized (unless it is named by form, number, and key); and the date of composition. For a print source, give the publisher and date. For an online

source, give the title of the Web site; the publisher or sponsor; the date; and the URL.

Beethoven, Ludwig van. *Symphony no. 5 in C Minor, op. 67. 1807. Center for Computer Assisted Research in the Humanities, Stanford U, 2000, scores.ccarh.org/beethoven/sym/beethoven-sym5-1.pdf.*

■ **63. Sound recording** Begin with the name of the person you want to emphasize: the composer, conductor, or performer. For a long work, give the title, italicized (unless it is named by form, number, and key); the names of pertinent artists; and the orchestra and conductor. End with the manufacturer and the date.

Bizet, Georges. *Carmen*. Performances by Jennifer Larmore, Thomas Moser, Angela Gheorghiu, and Samuel Ramey, Bavarian State Orchestra and Chorus, conducted by Giuseppe Sinopoli, Warner, 1996.

Blige, Mary J. "Don't Mind." *Life II: The Journey Continues (Act 1)*, Geffen, 2011.

■ **64. Work of art** (a) For an original work of art, cite the artist's name; the title of the artwork, italicized; the date of composition; and the institution and city in which the artwork is located. (b) For artworks found on the Web, include the title of the Web site (unless it is the same as the institution) and the URL. (c) If you viewed the artwork as a reproduction in a print source, add publication information about the print source, including the page number or figure number for the artwork.

**a. Original**

Bradford, Mark. *Let's Walk to the Middle of the Ocean*. 2015, Museum of Modern Art, New York.

**■ 64. Work of art (cont.)****b. Web**

Clough, Charles. *January Twenty-First*. 1988-89, Joslyn Art Museum, Omaha, [www.joslyn.org/collections-and-exhibitions/permanent-collections/modern-and-contemporary/charles-clough-january-twenty-first/](http://www.joslyn.org/collections-and-exhibitions/permanent-collections/modern-and-contemporary/charles-clough-january-twenty-first/).

**c. Reproduction (print)**

O'Keeffe, Georgia. *Black and Purple Petunias*. 1925, private collection.

*Two Lives: A Conversation in Paintings and Photographs*, edited by Alexandra Arrowsmith and Thomas West, HarperCollins, 1992, p. 67.

**■ 65. Photograph** (a) For an original photograph, cite the photographer's name; the title of the photograph, italicized; the date of composition; and the institution and city in which the photograph is located. (b) For photographs found on the Web, include the title of the Web site (unless it is the same as the institution) and the URL. (c) If you viewed the photograph as a reproduction in a print source, add publication information about the print source, including the page number or figure number for the artwork. Add the label "Photograph" at the end if it is not clear from the rest of the entry.

**a. Original**

Feinstein, Harold. *Hangin' Out, Sharing a Public Bench, NYC*. 1948, Panopticon Gallery, Boston. Photograph.

Finotti, Leonardo. *Edificio Girón, Havana, Cuba*. 2014, Museum of Modern Art, New York. Photograph.

**b. Web**

Hura, Sohrab. *Old man lighting a fire*. 2015, *Magnum Photos*, [www.magnumphotos.com/C.aspx?VP3=SearchResult&ALID=2K1HRG681B\\_Q](http://www.magnumphotos.com/C.aspx?VP3=SearchResult&ALID=2K1HRG681B_Q).

**c. Reproduction (print)**

Kertész, André. *Meudon*. 1928, *Street Photography: From Atget to Cartier-Bresson*, by Clive Scott, Tauris, 2011, p. 61.



■ **66. Cartoon** Give the cartoonist's name; the title of the cartoon, if it has one, in quotation marks; publication information; and the label "Cartoon" at the end. To cite an online cartoon, cite as a short work from a Web site (item 47).

Zyglis, Adam. "City of Light." *Buffalo News*, 8 Nov. 2015, adamzyglis.buffalonews.com/2015/11/08/city-of-light/. Cartoon.

■ **67. Advertisement** Name the product or company being advertised and publication information for the source in which the advertisement appears. Add the label "Advertisement" at the end.

AT&T. *National Geographic*, Dec. 2015, p. 14. Advertisement.

Toyota. *The Root*. Slate Group, 28 Nov. 2015, www.theroot.com. Advertisement.

■ **68. Visual such as a table, a chart, or another graphic** Cite a visual as you would a short work within a longer work.

"Brazilian Waxing and Waning: The Economy." *The Economist*, 1 Dec. 2015, www.economist.com/blogs/graphicdetail/2015/12/economic-backgrounder.

"Number of Measles Cases by Year since 2010." *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention*, 2 Jan. 2016, www.cdc.gov/measles/cases-outbreaks.html.

■ **69. Map** Cite a map as you would a short work within a longer work. Or, if the map is published on its own, cite it as a book or another long work. Use the label "Map" at the end if it is not clear from the title or source information.

"Map of Sudan." *Global Citizen*, Citizens for Global Solutions, 2011, globalsolutions.org/blog/bashir#.VthzNMfi\_FI.

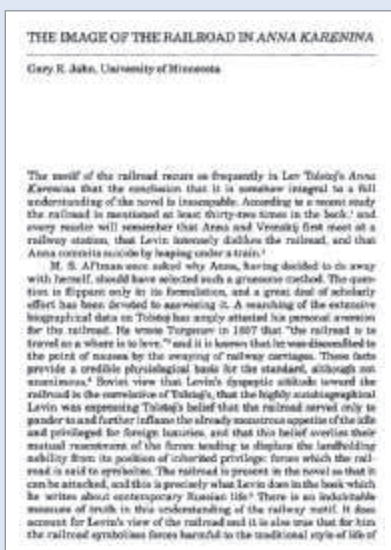
## Government and legal documents

■ **70. Government document** Treat the government agency as the author, giving the name of the government followed by the name of the department and the agency, if any. For sources found on the Web, follow the model for an entire Web site (see item 46) or for short or long works from a Web site (see items 47 and 48).

## How to cite course materials

**PROBLEM:** Sometimes you will be assigned to work with materials that an instructor has uploaded to a course Web site or has handed out in class. Complete publication information may not always be given for such sources. A PDF file or a hard copy article, for instance, may have a title and an author's name but give no other information. Or a video may not include information about the creator or the date the video was created. When you write a paper using such sources, how should you cite them in your own work?

**EXAMPLE:** Perhaps your instructor has included a PDF file of an article in a collection of readings on the course Web site (see image at right). You are writing a paper in which you use a passage from the work.



government department agency (or agencies)  
 United States, Department of Agriculture, Food and Nutrition Service, Child  
 title (long work)  
 Nutrition Programs. *Eligibility Manual for School Meals: Determining  
 and Verifying Eligibility. National School Lunch Program,*  
 Web site title  
 date URL  
 July 2015, [www.fns.usda.gov/sites/default/files/cn/SP40\\_CACFP18\\_SFSP20-2015a1.pdf](http://www.fns.usda.gov/sites/default/files/cn/SP40_CACFP18_SFSP20-2015a1.pdf).

**STRATEGY:** Look through section 56b for a model that matches the type of source you're working with. Is it an article? A chapter from a book? A photograph? A video? The model or models you find will give you an idea of the information you need to gather about the source. The usual required information is (1) the author or creator, (2) the title, (3) the date the work was published or created, and (4) the URL for sources on the Web (see p. 471).

**CITATION:** For your citation, you can give only as much of the required information as you can find in the source. In this example, you know the source is an article with an author and a title, so you can use item 13a (basic format for an article). Because you don't have much other information about the source, it is a good idea to include the description "Course materials" and supplementary information about the course (such as its title or number and the term).

author:  
 last name first article title  
 Jahn, Gary R. "The Image of the Railroad in *Anna Karenina*."  
 supplementary information  
 Course materials, EN101, Fall 2013.

**NOTE:** When in doubt about how much information to include or where to find it, consult your instructor.

**■ 70. Government document (cont.)**

Canada, Minister of Aboriginal Affairs and Northern Development. *2015-16 Report on Plans and Priorities*. Minister of Public Works and Government Services Canada, 2015.

**■ 71. Testimony before a legislative body**

Russel, Daniel R. "Burma's Challenge: Democracy, Human Rights, Peace, and the Plight of the Rohingya." Testimony before the US House Foreign Affairs Committee, Subcommittee on East Asian and Pacific Affairs, *US Department of State: Diplomacy in Action*, 21 Oct. 2015, [www.state.gov/p/eap/rls/rm/2015/10/248420.htm](http://www.state.gov/p/eap/rls/rm/2015/10/248420.htm).

**■ 72. Historical document** The titles of most historical documents, such as the US Constitution and the Canadian Charter of Rights and Freedoms, are neither italicized nor put in quotation marks. For a print version, cite as a selection in an anthology (see item 35) or as a book (with the title not italicized). For an online version, cite as a short work from a Web site (see item 47).

Jefferson, Thomas. First Inaugural Address. 1801. *The American Reader: Words That Moved a Nation*, edited by Diane Ravitch, 2nd ed., William Morrow, 2000, pp. 79-82.

Constitution of the United States. 1787. *The Charters of Freedom*, US National Archives and Records Administration, [www.archives.gov/exhibits/charters/](http://www.archives.gov/exhibits/charters/).

**■ 73. Legislative act (law)** Begin with the name of the act, neither italicized nor in quotation marks. Then provide the act's Public Law number; its Statutes at Large volume and page numbers; and its date of enactment.

Electronic Freedom of Information Act Amendments of 1996. Pub. L. 104-231. 110 Stat. 3048. 2 Oct. 1996.

■ **74. Court case** Name the first plaintiff and the first defendant. Then give the volume, name, and page number of the law report; the court name; the year of the decision; and publication information. Do not italicize the name of the case. (In the text of the paper, the name of the case is italicized; see item 19 on p. 465.)

Utah v. Evans. 536 US 452. Supreme Court of the US. 2002. *Legal Information Institute*, Cornell U Law School, [www.law.cornell.edu/supremecourt/text/536/452](http://www.law.cornell.edu/supremecourt/text/536/452).

### Personal communication and social media

■ **75. E-mail message** Begin with the writer's name and the subject line. Then write "Received by," followed by the name of the recipient. End with the date of the message.

Lowe, Walter. "Review Questions." Received by Rita Anderson, 20 Oct. 2015.

■ **76. Text message**

Wiley, Joanna. Message to the author, 4 Apr. 2014.

■ **77. Posting to an online discussion list** When possible, cite archived versions of postings. If you cannot locate an archived version, keep a copy of the posting for your records. Begin with the author's name, followed by the title or subject line, in quotation marks (use the label "Online posting" if the posting has no title). Then proceed as for a short work from a Web site (see item 47).

Robin, Griffith. "Write for the Reading Teacher." *Developing Digital Literacies*, NCTE, 23 Oct. 2015, [ncte.connectedcommunity.org/communities/community-home/digestviewer/viewthread?GroupId=1693&MID=24520&tab=digestviewer&CommunityKey=628d2ad6-8277-4042-a376-2b370ddceabf](http://ncte.connectedcommunity.org/communities/community-home/digestviewer/viewthread?GroupId=1693&MID=24520&tab=digestviewer&CommunityKey=628d2ad6-8277-4042-a376-2b370ddceabf).

■ **78. Facebook post or comment** Cite as a short work from a Web site (see item 47), beginning with the writer's screen name followed by the real name in parentheses, if both are given. Otherwise use whatever name is given in the source. Follow with the title of the post, if any, in quotation marks. If there is no title, use the label "Post."

Bedford English. "Stacey Cochran explores Reflective Writing in the classroom and as a writer: <http://ow.ly/YkjVB>." *Facebook*, 15 Feb. 2016. [www.facebook.com/BedfordEnglish/posts/10153415001259607](http://www.facebook.com/BedfordEnglish/posts/10153415001259607).

■ **79. Twitter post (tweet)** Begin with the writer's screen name followed by the real name in parentheses, if both are given. Otherwise use whatever name is given in the source. Give the text of the entire tweet in quotation marks, using the writer's capitalization and punctuation. Follow the text with the date and time noted on the tweet, and end with the URL.

Curiosity Rover. "Can you see me waving? How to spot #Mars in the night sky: <https://youtu.be/hv8hVvJlcJQ>." *Twitter*, 5 Nov. 2015, 11:00 a.m., [twitter.com/marscuriosity/status/672859022911889408](https://twitter.com/marscuriosity/status/672859022911889408).

@grammarphobia (Patricia T. O'Conner and Steward Kellerman). "Is 'if you will,' like, a verbal tic? #English #language #grammar #etymology #usage #linguistics #WOTD." *Twitter*, 14 Mar. 2016, 9:12 a.m., [twitter.com/grammarphobia](https://twitter.com/grammarphobia).

## 56c MLA information notes (optional)

Researchers who use the MLA system of parenthetical documentation may also use information notes for one of two purposes:

1. to provide additional material that is important but might interrupt the flow of the paper
2. to refer to several sources that support a single point or to provide comments on sources

Information notes may be either footnotes or endnotes. Footnotes appear at the foot of the page; endnotes appear on a

separate page at the end of the paper, just before the list of works cited. For either style, the notes are numbered consecutively throughout the paper. The text of the paper contains a raised arabic numeral that corresponds to the number of the note.

**TEXT**

In the past several years, employees have filed a number of lawsuits against employers because of online monitoring practices.<sup>1</sup>

**NOTE**

1. For a discussion of federal law applicable to electronic surveillance in the workplace, see Kesan 293.

## 57 MLA manuscript format; sample research paper

The following guidelines are consistent with advice given in the *MLA Handbook*, 8th edition (MLA, 2016), and with typical requirements for student papers. For a sample MLA research paper, see pages 517–25.

### 57a MLA manuscript format

#### Formatting the paper

Papers written in MLA style should be formatted as follows.

**Font** If your instructor does not require a specific font, choose one that is standard and easy to read (such as Times New Roman).

**Title and identification** MLA does not require a title page. On the first page of your paper, place your name, your instructor's name, the course title, and the date on separate lines against the left margin. Then center your title. (See p. 517 for a sample first page.)

If your instructor requires a title page, ask for formatting guidelines.

**Page numbers (running head)** Put the page number preceded by your last name in the upper right corner of each page, one-half inch below the top edge. Use arabic numerals (1, 2, 3, and so on).

**Margins, line spacing, and paragraph indents** Leave margins of one inch on all sides of the page. Left-align the text.

Double-space throughout the paper. Do not add extra space above or below the title of the paper or between paragraphs.

Indent the first line of each paragraph one-half inch from the left margin.

**Capitalization, italics, and quotation marks** In titles of works, capitalize all words except articles (*a, an, the*), prepositions (*to, from, between,* and so on), coordinating conjunctions (*and, but, or, nor, for, so, yet*), and the *to* in infinitives—unless the word is first or last in the title or subtitle. Follow these guidelines in your paper even if the title appears in all capital or all lowercase letters in the source.

In the text of an MLA paper, when a complete sentence follows a colon, lowercase the first word following the colon unless the sentence is a quotation or a well-known expression or principle.

Italicize the titles of books, journals, magazines, and other long works, such as Web sites. Use quotation marks around the titles of articles, short stories, poems, and other short works.

**Long quotations** When a quotation is longer than four typed lines of prose or three lines of poetry, set it off from the text by indenting the entire quotation one-half inch from the left margin. Double-space the indented quotation and do not add extra space above or below it.

Do not use quotation marks when a quotation has been set off from the text by indenting. See page 522 for an example.

**URLs** If you need to break a URL at the end of a line in the text of a paper, break it only after a slash or a double slash or before



any other mark of punctuation. Do not add a hyphen. If you will post your project online or submit it electronically and you want your readers to click on your URLs, do not insert any line breaks. For MLA guidelines on dividing URLs in your list of works cited, see page 516.

**Headings** MLA neither encourages nor discourages the use of headings and provides no guidelines for their use. If you would like to insert headings in a long essay or research paper, check first with your instructor.

**Visuals** MLA classifies visuals as tables and figures (figures include graphs, charts, maps, photographs, and drawings). Label each table with an arabic numeral (“Table 1,” “Table 2,” and so on) and provide a clear caption that identifies the subject. Capitalize the caption as you would a title (see 45c); do not italicize the label and caption or place them in quotation marks. Place the label and caption on separate lines above the table, flush with the left margin.

For a table that you have borrowed or adapted, give the source below the table in a note like the following:

Source: Boris Groysberg and Michael Slind, “Leadership Is a Conversation,” *Harvard Business Review*, June 2012, p. 83.

For each figure, place the figure number (using the abbreviation “Fig.,”) and a caption below the figure, flush left. Capitalize the caption as you would a sentence; include source information following the caption. (When referring to the figure in your paper, use the abbreviation “fig.” in parenthetical citations; otherwise spell out the word.) See page 519 for an example of a figure in a paper.

Place visuals in the text, as close as possible to the sentences that relate to them, unless your instructor prefers that visuals appear in an appendix.

### Preparing the list of works cited

Begin the list of works cited on a new page at the end of the paper. Center the title “Works Cited” about one inch from the top of the page. Double-space throughout. See pages 117 and 524–25 for sample lists of works cited.

**Alphabetizing the list** Alphabetize the list by the last names of the authors (or editors); if a work has no author or editor, alphabetize by the first word of the title other than *A*, *An*, or *The*.

If your list includes two or more works by the same author, use the author's name for the first entry only. For subsequent entries, use three hyphens followed by a period. List the titles in alphabetical order. (See items 6 and 7 on p. 473.)

**Indenting** Do not indent the first line of each works cited entry, but indent any additional lines one-half inch. This technique highlights the names of the authors, making it easy for readers to scan the alphabetized list. See page 524.

**URLs (Web addresses)** If you need to include a URL in a works cited entry and it must be divided across lines, break it only after a slash or a double slash or before any other mark of punctuation. Do not add a hyphen. If you will post your project online or submit it electronically and you want your readers to click on your URLs, do not insert any line breaks.

## 57b Sample MLA research paper

On the following pages is a research paper on the topic of the role of government in legislating food choices, written by Sophie Harba, a student in a composition class. Harba's paper is documented with in-text citations and a list of works cited in MLA style. Annotations in the margins of the paper draw your attention to Harba's use of MLA style and her effective writing.



Harba 1

Sophie Harba  
Professor Baros-Moon  
Engl 1101  
30 April 2013

What's for Dinner? Personal Choices vs. Public Health

Should the government enact laws to regulate healthy eating choices? Many Americans would answer an emphatic "No," arguing that what and how much we eat should be left to individual choice rather than unreasonable laws. Others might argue that it would be unreasonable for the government not to enact legislation, given the rise of chronic diseases that result from harmful diets. In this debate, both the definition of reasonable regulations and the role of government to legislate food choices are at stake. In the name of public health and safety, state governments have the responsibility to shape health policies and to regulate healthy eating choices, especially since doing so offers a potentially large social benefit for a relatively small cost.

Debates surrounding the government's role in regulating food have a long history in the United States. According to Lorine Goodwin, a food historian, nineteenth-century reformers who sought to purify the food supply were called "fanatics" and "radicals" by critics who argued that consumers should be free to buy and eat what they want (77). Thanks to regulations, though, such as the 1906 federal Pure Food and Drug Act, food, beverages, and medicine are largely free from toxins. In addition, to prevent contamination and the spread of disease, meat and dairy products are now inspected by government agents to ensure that they meet health requirements. Such regulations

Title is centered.

Opening research question engages readers.

Writer highlights the research conversation.

Thesis answers the research question and presents Harba's main point.

Signal phrase names the author. The parenthetical citation includes a page number.

Historical background provides context for debate.

Harba 2

Harba explains her use of a key term, *reasonable*.

Harba establishes common ground with the reader.

Transition helps readers move from one paragraph to the next.

can be considered reasonable because they protect us from harm with little, if any, noticeable consumer cost. It is not considered an unreasonable infringement on personal choice that contaminated meat or arsenic-laced cough drops are *unavailable* at our local supermarket. Rather, it is an important government function to stop such harmful items from entering the marketplace.

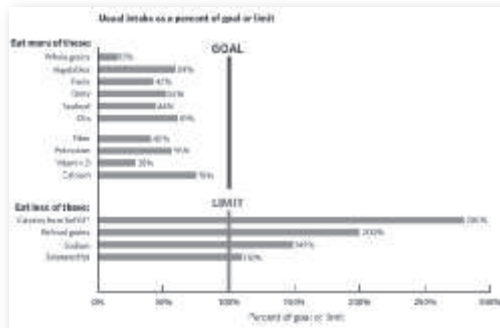
Even though our food meets current safety standards, there is a need for further regulation. Not all food dangers, for example, arise from obvious toxins like arsenic and *E. coli*. A diet that is low in nutritional value and high in sugars, fats, and refined grains—grains that have been processed to increase shelf life but that contain little fiber, iron, and B vitamins—can be damaging over time (United States, Dept. of Agriculture and Dept. of Health and Human Services 36). A graph from the government’s *Dietary Guidelines for Americans, 2010* provides a visual representation of the American diet and how far off it is from the recommended nutritional standards (see fig. 1).

Michael Pollan, who has written extensively about Americans’ unhealthy eating habits, notes that “[t]he Centers for Disease Control estimates that fully three quarters of US health care spending goes to treat chronic diseases, most of which are preventable and linked to diet: heart disease, stroke, type 2 diabetes, and at least a third of all cancers.” In fact, the amount of money the United States spends to treat chronic illnesses is increasing so rapidly that the Centers for Disease Control has labeled chronic disease “the public health challenge of the 21st century” (United States, Dept. of Health and Human Services 1). In fighting this epidemic, the primary challenge

No page number is available for this Web source.

Harba 3

### How Do Typical American Diets Compare to Recommended Intake Levels or Limits?



\* Solid Fats and Added Sugars

Source: USDA &amp; HHS: Dietary Guidelines for Americans. 2010

Fig. 1. This graph shows that Americans consume about three times more fats and sugars and twice as many refined grains as is recommended but only half of the recommended foods (United States, Dept. of Agriculture and Dept. of Health and Human Services, fig. 5-1).

The visual includes a figure number, descriptive caption, and source information.

is not the need to find a cure; the challenge is to prevent chronic diseases from striking in the first place.

Harba sets forth the urgency of her argument.

Legislation, however, is not a popular solution when it comes to most Americans and the food they eat. According to a nationwide poll, 75% of Americans are opposed to laws that restrict or put limitations on access to unhealthy foods (Neergaard and Agiesta). When New York mayor Michael Bloomberg proposed a regulation in 2012 banning the sale of soft drinks in servings greater than twelve ounces in restaurants and movie theaters, he was ridiculed as “Nanny Bloomberg.” In California in 2011, legislators failed to pass a law that would impose a penny-per-ounce tax on soda,

Harba treats both sides fairly.

Harba uses a graph to illustrate Americans' poor nutritional choices.

Harba 4

which would have funded obesity prevention programs. And in Mississippi, legislators passed “a ban on bans—a law that forbids . . . local restrictions on food or drink” (Conly A23).

Why is the public largely resistant to laws that would limit unhealthy choices or penalize those choices with so-called fat taxes? Many consumers and civil rights advocates find such laws to be an unreasonable restriction on individual freedom of choice. As health policy experts Mello et al. point out, opposition to food and beverage regulation is similar to the opposition to early tobacco legislation: the public views the issue as one of personal responsibility rather than one requiring government intervention (2602). In other words, if a person eats unhealthy food and becomes ill as a result, that is his or her choice. But those who favor legislation claim that freedom of choice is a myth because of the strong influence of food and beverage industry marketing on consumers’ dietary habits. According to one nonprofit health advocacy group, food and beverage companies spend roughly two billion dollars per year marketing directly to children. As a result, kids see nearly four thousand ads per year encouraging them to consume unhealthy food and drinks (“Facts”). As was the case with antismoking laws passed in recent decades, taxes and legal restrictions on junk food sales could help to counter the strong marketing messages that promote unhealthy products.

The United States has a history of state and local public health laws that have successfully promoted a particular behavior by punishing an undesirable behavior. The decline in tobacco use as a result of antismoking taxes and laws is perhaps the most obvious example. Another example is legislation requiring the use of seat belts, which have significantly reduced fatalities in car

Harba anticipates objections to her idea. She counters opposing views and provides support for her argument.

An analogy extends Harba’s argument.

Harba 5

crashes. One government agency reports that seat belt use saved an average of more than fourteen thousand lives per year in the United States between 2000 and 2010 (United States, Dept. of Transportation, Natl. Highway Traffic Safety Administration 231). Perhaps seat belt laws have public support because the cost of wearing a seat belt is small, especially when compared with the benefit of saving fourteen thousand lives per year.

Laws designed to prevent chronic disease by promoting healthier food and beverage consumption also have potentially enormous benefits. To give just one example, Marion Nestle, New York University professor of nutrition and public health, notes that “a 1% reduction in intake of saturated fat across the population would prevent more than 30,000 cases of coronary heart disease annually and save more than a billion dollars in health care costs” (7). Few would argue that saving lives and dollars is not an enormous benefit. But three-quarters of Americans say they would object to the costs needed to achieve this benefit—the regulations needed to reduce saturated fat intake.

Why do so many Americans believe there is a degree of personal choice lost when regulations such as taxes, bans, or portion limits on unhealthy foods are proposed? Some critics of anti-junk-food laws believe that even if state and local laws were successful in curbing chronic diseases, they would still be unacceptable. Bioethicist David Resnik emphasizes that such policies, despite their potential to make our society healthier, “open the door to excessive government control over food, which could restrict dietary choices, interfere with cultural, ethnic, and religious traditions, and exacerbate socioeconomic inequalities” (31). Resnik acknowledges that his argument relies on “slippery slope” thinking, but he insists that “social

Harba introduces a direct quotation with a signal phrase and follows with a comment that shows readers why she chose to use the source.

Harba acknowledges critics and counterarguments.

Harba 6

and political pressures” regarding food regulation make his concerns valid (31). Yet the social and political pressures that Resnik cites are really just the desire to improve public health, and limiting access to unhealthy, artificial ingredients seems a small price to pay. As legal scholars L. O. Gostin and K. G. Gostin explain, “[I]nterventions that do not pose a truly significant burden on individual liberty” are justified if they “go a long way towards safeguarding the health and well-being of the populace” (214).

To improve public health, advocates such as Bowdoin College philosophy professor Sarah Conly contend that it is the government’s duty to prevent people from making harmful choices whenever feasible and whenever public benefits outweigh the costs. In response to critics who claim that laws aimed at stopping us from eating whatever we want are an assault on our freedom of choice, Conly offers a persuasive counterargument:

[L]aws aren’t designed for each one of us individually. Some of us can drive safely at 90 miles per hour, but we’re bound by the same laws as the people who can’t, because individual speeding laws aren’t practical. Giving up a little liberty is something we agree to when we agree to live in a democratic society that is governed by laws. (A23)

As Conly suggests, we need to change our either/or thinking (either we have complete freedom of choice *or* we have government regulations and lose our freedom) and instead need to see health as a matter of public good, not individual liberty. Proposals such as Mayor Bloomberg’s that seek to limit portions of unhealthy beverages aren’t about giving up liberty; they are about asking individuals to choose substantial public health benefits at a very small cost.

Including the source’s credentials makes Harba more credible.

Long quotation is introduced with a signal phrase naming the author.

Long quotation is set off from the text. Quotation marks are omitted.

Long quotation is followed with comments that connect the source to Harba’s argument.



## Harba 7

Despite arguments in favor of regulating unhealthy food as a means to improve public health, public opposition has stood in the way of legislation. Americans freely eat as much unhealthy food as they want, and manufacturers and sellers of these foods have nearly unlimited freedom to promote such products and drive increased consumption, without any requirements to warn the public of potential hazards. Yet mounting scientific evidence points to unhealthy food as a significant contributing factor to chronic disease, which we know is straining our health care system, decreasing Americans' quality of life, and leading to unnecessary premature deaths. Americans must consider whether to allow the costly trend of rising chronic disease to continue in the name of personal choice or whether to support the regulatory changes and public health policies that will reverse that trend.

Conclusion sums up Harba's argument and provides closure.

Harba 8

## Works Cited

- Conly, Sarah. "Three Cheers for the Nanny State." *The New York Times*, 25 Mar. 2013, p. A23.
- "The Facts on Junk Food Marketing and Kids." *Prevention Institute*, [www.preventioninstitute.org/focus-areas/supporting-healthy-food-a-activity/supporting-healthy-food-and-activity-environments-advocacy/get-involved-were-not-buying-it/735-were-not-buying-it-the-facts-on-junk-food-marketing-and-kids.html](http://www.preventioninstitute.org/focus-areas/supporting-healthy-food-a-activity/supporting-healthy-food-and-activity-environments-advocacy/get-involved-were-not-buying-it/735-were-not-buying-it-the-facts-on-junk-food-marketing-and-kids.html). Accessed 21 Apr. 2013.
- Goodwin, Lorine Swainston. *The Pure Food, Drink, and Drug Crusaders, 1879-1914*. McFarland, 2006.
- Gostin, L. O., and K. G. Gostin. "A Broader Liberty: J. S. Mill, Paternalism, and the Public's Health." *Public Health*, vol. 123, no. 3, 2009, pp. 214-21, doi:10.1016/j.puhe.2008.12.024.
- Mello, Michelle M., et al. "Obesity—the New Frontier of Public Health Law." *New England Journal of Medicine*, vol. 354, no. 24, 2006, pp. 2601-10, [www.nejm.org/doi/pdf/10.1056/NEJMhpr060227](http://www.nejm.org/doi/pdf/10.1056/NEJMhpr060227).
- Neergaard, Lauran, and Jennifer Agiesta. "Obesity's a Crisis but We Want Our Junk Food, Poll Shows." *Huffington Post*, 4 Jan. 2013, [www.huffingtonpost.com/2013/01/04/obesity-junk-food-government-intervention-poll\\_n\\_2410376.html](http://www.huffingtonpost.com/2013/01/04/obesity-junk-food-government-intervention-poll_n_2410376.html).
- Nestle, Marion. *Food Politics: How the Food Industry Influences Nutrition and Health*. U of California P, 2013.
- Pollan, Michael. "The Food Movement, Rising." *The New York Review of Books*, NYREV, 10 June 2010, [www.nybooks.com/articles/2010/06/10/food-movement-rising/](http://www.nybooks.com/articles/2010/06/10/food-movement-rising/).

Heading is centered.

Access date used for an online source that has no update date.

First line of each entry is at the left margin; extra lines are indented ½".

Double-spacing is used throughout.

List is alphabetized by authors' last names (or by title when a work has no author).

Harba 9

Resnik, David. "Trans Fat Bans and Human Freedom."

*American Journal of Bioethics*, vol. 10, no. 3, Mar. 2010, pp. 27-32.

United States, Department of Agriculture and Department of Health and Human Services. *Dietary Guidelines for Americans, 2010*, [health.gov/dietaryguidelines/dga2010/dietaryguidelines2010.pdf](http://health.gov/dietaryguidelines/dga2010/dietaryguidelines2010.pdf).

United States, Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. *The Power of Prevention*. National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion, 2009, [www.cdc.gov/chronicdisease/pdf/2009-Power-of-Prevention.pdf](http://www.cdc.gov/chronicdisease/pdf/2009-Power-of-Prevention.pdf).

United States, Department of Transportation, National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. *Traffic Safety Facts 2010: A Compilation of Motor Vehicle Crash Data from the Fatality Analysis Reporting System and the General Estimates System*. 2010, [www-nrd.nhtsa.dot.gov/Pubs/811659.pdf](http://www-nrd.nhtsa.dot.gov/Pubs/811659.pdf).

The government agency is used as the author of a government document.

*this page left intentionally blank*

# Writing Papers in APA Style

DIRECTORY TO APA IN-TEXT CITATION MODELS, 528

DIRECTORY TO APA REFERENCE LIST MODELS, 528

- 58** Supporting a thesis, 530
- 59** Citing sources; avoiding plagiarism, 534
- 60** Integrating sources, 537
- 61** Documenting sources in APA style, 546
- 62** APA manuscript format; sample research paper, 580

## Directory to APA in-text citation models

1. Basic format for a quotation, 547
2. Basic format for a summary or a paraphrase, 548
3. Work with two authors, 548
4. Work with three to five authors, 548
5. Work with six or more authors, 549
6. Work with unknown author, 549
7. Organization as author, 549
8. Authors with the same last name, 550
9. Two or more works by the same author in the same year, 550
10. Two or more works in the same parentheses, 550
11. Multiple citations to the same work in one paragraph, 550
12. Web source, 551
  - a. No page numbers, 551
  - b. Unknown author, 551
  - c. Unknown date, 551
13. An entire Web site, 552
14. Multivolume work, 552
15. Personal communication, 552
16. Course materials, 552
17. Part of a source (chapter, figure), 552
18. Indirect source (source quoted in another source), 552
19. Sacred or classical text, 553

## Directory to APA reference list models

### General guidelines for listing authors

1. Single author, 556
2. Two to seven authors, 556
3. Eight or more authors, 556
4. Organization as author, 556
5. Unknown author, 557
6. Author using a pseudonym (pen name) or screen name, 557
7. Two or more works by the same author, 557
8. Two or more works by the same author in the same year, 557
9. Editor, 558
10. Author and editor, 558
11. Translator, 558
12. Editor and translator, 558

### Articles and other short works

13. Article in a journal, 559
  - a. Print, 559
  - b. Web, 559
  - c. Database, 559
14. Article in a magazine, 563
  - a. Print, 563
  - b. Web, 563
  - c. Database, 563
15. Article in a newspaper, 563
  - a. Print, 563
  - b. Web, 564
16. Abstract, 564
  - a. Abstract of a journal article, 564
  - b. Abstract of a paper, 564
17. Supplemental material, 564
18. Article with a title in its title, 564
19. Letter to the editor, 565
20. Editorial or other unsigned article, 565
21. Newsletter article, 565
22. Review, 565
23. Published interview, 566
24. Article in a reference work (encyclopedia, dictionary, wiki), 566
  - a. Print, 566
  - b. Web, 566
25. Comment on an online article, 566
26. Testimony before a legislative body, 566
27. Paper presented at a meeting or symposium (unpublished), 566
28. Poster session at a conference, 567

## Directory to APA reference list models, continued

### Books and other long works

29. Basic format for a book, 567
  - a. Print, 567
  - b. Web (or online library), 567
  - c. E-book, 567
  - d. Database, 567
30. Edition other than the first, 569
31. Selection in an anthology or a collection, 569
  - a. Entire anthology, 569
  - b. Selection in an anthology, 569
32. Multivolume work, 569
  - a. All volumes, 569
  - b. One volume, with title, 570
33. Introduction, preface, foreword, or afterword, 570
34. Dictionary or other reference work, 570
35. Republished book, 570
36. Book with a title in its title, 570
37. Book in a language other than English, 570
38. Dissertation, 570
  - a. Published, 570
  - b. Unpublished, 571
39. Conference proceedings, 571
40. Government document, 571
41. Report from a private organization, 571
42. Legal source, 571
43. Sacred or classical text, 572

### Web sites and parts of

#### Web sites

44. Entire Web site, 572
45. Document from a Web site, 572
46. Section in a Web document, 572

47. Blog post, 573
48. Blog comment, 573

### Audio, visual, and multimedia sources

49. Podcast, 573
50. Video or audio on the Web, 573
51. Transcript of an audio or a video file, 574
52. Film (DVD, BD, or other format), 574
53. Television or radio program, 574
  - a. Series, 574
  - b. Episode on the air, 574
  - c. Episode on the Web, 575
54. Music recording, 575
55. Lecture, speech, or address, 575
56. Data set or graphic representation of data (graph, chart, table), 575
57. Mobile application software (app), 578
58. Video game, 578
59. Map, 578
60. Advertisement, 578
61. Work of art or photograph, 578
62. Brochure or fact sheet, 579
63. Press release, 579
64. Presentation slides, 579
65. Lecture notes or other course materials, 579

### Personal communication and social media

66. E-mail, 579
67. Online posting, 580
68. Twitter post (tweet), 580
69. Facebook post, 580

Most instructors in the social sciences and some instructors in other disciplines will ask you to document your sources with the American Psychological Association (APA) system of in-text citations and references described in section 61.

When writing an APA-style paper that draws on sources, you face three main challenges: (1) supporting a thesis, (2) citing your sources accurately and avoiding plagiarism, and (3) integrating source material effectively.

Examples in this section are drawn from one student's research for a review of the literature on treatments for childhood obesity. Luisa Mirano's paper appears on pages 585–96.

**NOTE:** For advice on finding and evaluating sources and on managing information in all your college courses, see sections 50–52.

## 58 Supporting a thesis

Most research assignments ask you to form a thesis, or main idea, and to support that thesis with well-organized evidence. In a paper reviewing the literature on a topic, the thesis analyzes the often competing conclusions drawn by a variety of researchers.

### 58a Form a working thesis.

Once you have read a range of sources, considered your issue from different perspectives, and chosen an entry point in the research conversation (see 50b), you are ready to form a working thesis to focus your project: a one-sentence (or occasionally a two-sentence) statement of your central idea. (See also 1c.) The working thesis expresses more than your opinion; it expresses your informed, reasoned answer to your research question—a question about which people might disagree. As you learn more about your subject, your ideas may change, and your working thesis will evolve, too. You can revise your thesis as you draft. Here, for example, is a research question posed by Luisa Mirano, a student in a psychology class, followed by her thesis in answer to that question.



**RESEARCH QUESTION**

Is medication the right treatment for the escalating problem of childhood obesity?

**WORKING THESIS**

Treating cases of childhood obesity with medication alone is too narrow an approach for this growing problem.

The thesis usually appears at the end of the introductory paragraph. To read Luisa Mirano's thesis in the context of her introduction, see page 587.

**Testing your thesis**

When drafting and revising a thesis statement, make sure it answers your central research question and that you can effectively develop it with the sources available to you.

Keeping the following guidelines in mind will help you develop an effective thesis statement.

- A thesis should take a position that needs to be argued and supported. It should not be a fact or description.
- A thesis should match the scope of the research project. If your thesis is too broad, explore a subtopic of your original topic. If your thesis is too narrow, pose a research question that has more than one answer.
- A thesis should be sharply focused. Avoid vague words such as *interesting* or *good*. Use concrete language and make sure your thesis lets readers know your position.
- A thesis should stand up to the “So what?” question. Ask yourself why readers should care about your thesis. If your thesis matters to you, your readers are more likely to find your ideas engaging.

## 58b Organize your ideas.

The American Psychological Association (APA) encourages the use of headings to help readers follow the organization of a paper. For an original research report, the major headings often follow a standard model: Method, Results, Discussion. The introduction does not have a heading; it consists of the material between the title of the paper and the first heading.



For a literature review, headings will vary. Luisa Mirano used four questions to focus her research into treatments for childhood obesity; the questions then became headings in her paper (see 62b).

## **58c Use sources to inform and support your argument.**

Sources can play several different roles to support your thesis and develop your points.

### **Providing background information or context**

You can use facts and statistics to support generalizations or to establish the importance of your topic, as student writer Luisa Mirano does in her introduction.

In March 2004, U.S. Surgeon General Richard Carmona called attention to a health problem in the United States that, until recently, has been overlooked: childhood obesity. Carmona said that the “astounding” 15% child obesity rate constitutes an “epidemic.” Since the early 1980s, that rate has “doubled in children and tripled in adolescents.” Now more than nine million children are classified as obese.

### **Explaining terms or concepts**

If readers are unfamiliar with a term or a concept important to your topic, you will want to define or explain it; or if your argument depends on a term with multiple meanings, you will want to explain your use of the term. Quoting or paraphrasing a source can help you define terms and concepts in accessible language. Luisa Mirano uses a scholarly source to explain how one of the major obesity drugs functions.

Sibutramine suppresses appetite by blocking the reuptake of the neurotransmitters serotonin and norepinephrine in the brain (Yanovski & Yanovski, 2002, p. 594).

### **Supporting your claims**

As you develop your points, back up your assertions with facts, examples, and other evidence from your research (see also 6h).

Luisa Mirano, for example, uses one source's findings to support her central idea that the medical treatment of childhood obesity has limitations.

As journalist Greg Critser (2003) noted in his book *Fat Land*, use of weight-loss drugs is unlikely to have an effect without the proper "support system"—one that includes doctors, facilities, time, and money (p. 3).

### Lending authority to your argument

Expert opinion can add weight and credibility to your argument (see also 6h). But don't rely on experts to make your points for you. State your ideas in your own words and, when appropriate, cite the judgment of an authority in the field to support your position.

Both medical experts and policymakers recognize that solutions might come not only from a laboratory but also from policy, education, and advocacy. A handbook designed to educate doctors on obesity called for "major changes in some aspects of western culture" (Hoppin & Taveras, 2004, Conclusion section, para. 1).

### Anticipating and countering alternative interpretations

Do not ignore sources that seem contrary to your position. Instead, use them to give voice to opposing points of view and alternative interpretations before you counter them (see 6i). Readers often have objections in mind already, whether or not they agree with you. Mirano uses a source to acknowledge value in her opponents' position that medication alone can successfully treat childhood obesity.

As researchers Yanovski and Yanovski (2002) have explained, obesity was once considered "either a moral failing or evidence of underlying psychopathology" (p. 592). But this view has shifted: Many medical professionals now consider obesity a biomedical rather than a moral condition, influenced by both genetic and environmental factors. Yanovski and Yanovski have further noted that the development of weight-loss medications in the early 1990s showed that "obesity should be treated in the same manner as any other chronic disease . . . through the long-term use of medication" (p. 592).

# 59 Citing sources; avoiding plagiarism

In a research paper, you will draw on the work of other researchers and writers, and you must document their contributions by citing your sources. Sources are cited for two reasons:

1. to tell readers where your information comes from — so that they can assess its reliability and, if interested, find and read the original source
2. to give credit to the writers from whom you have borrowed words and ideas

You must cite anything you borrow from a source, including direct quotations; statistics and other specific facts; visuals such as tables, graphs, and diagrams; and any ideas you present in a summary or paraphrase. Borrowing without proper acknowledgment is a form of dishonesty known as *plagiarism*.

The only exception is common knowledge—information that your readers may know or could easily locate in any number of reference sources.

## 59a Understand how the APA system works.

The American Psychological Association recommends an author-date system of citations. The following is a brief description of how the author-date system usually works.

1. The source is introduced by a signal phrase that includes the last name of the author followed by the date of publication in parentheses.
2. The material being cited is followed by a page number in parentheses (unless the source is an unpaginated Web source).
3. At the end of the paper, an alphabetized list of references gives complete publication information for the source.

### IN-TEXT CITATION

As researchers Yanovski and Yanovski (2002) have explained, obesity was once considered “either a moral failing or evidence of underlying psychopathology” (p. 592).

ENTRY IN THE LIST OF REFERENCES

Yanovski, S. Z., & Yanovski, J. A. (2002). Drug therapy: Obesity. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 346, 591-602.

This basic APA format varies for different types of sources. For a detailed discussion and other models, see 61.

## 59b Avoid plagiarism when quoting, summarizing, and paraphrasing sources.

In a research paper, you draw on the work of other writers and you must document their contributions by citing your sources. When you acknowledge your sources, you avoid plagiarism, a serious academic offense.

In general, these three acts are considered plagiarism: (1) failing to cite quotations and borrowed ideas, (2) failing to enclose borrowed language in quotation marks, and (3) failing to put summaries and paraphrases in your own words. Definitions of plagiarism may vary; it's a good idea to find out how your school defines and addresses academic dishonesty.

### Citing quotations and borrowed ideas

To indicate that you are using a source's exact phrases or sentences, you must enclose them in quotation marks unless they have been set off from the text by indenting (see 60b). To omit the quotation marks is to claim — falsely — that the language is your own, as in the example below. Such an omission is plagiarism even if you have cited the source.

ORIGINAL SOURCE

In an effort to seek the causes of this disturbing trend, experts have pointed to a range of important potential contributors to the rise in childhood obesity that are unrelated to media: a reduction in physical education classes and after-school athletic programs, an increase in the availability of sodas and snacks in public schools, the growth in the number of fast-food outlets across the country, the trend toward “super-sizing” food portions in restaurants, and the increasing number of highly processed high-calorie and high-fat grocery products.

— Henry J. Kaiser Family Foundation,  
“The Role of Media in Childhood Obesity” (2004), p. 1



**PLAGIARISM**

According to the Henry J. Kaiser Family Foundation (2004), experts have pointed to a range of important potential contributors to the rise in childhood obesity that are unrelated to media (p. 1).

**BORROWED LANGUAGE IN QUOTATION MARKS**

According to the Henry J. Kaiser Family Foundation (2004), “experts have pointed to a range of important potential contributors to the rise in childhood obesity that are unrelated to media” (p. 1).

**NOTE:** Quotation marks are not used when quoted sentences are set off from the text by indenting (see 60b).

**Putting summaries and paraphrases in your own words**

Summaries and paraphrases are written in your own words. A summary condenses information from a source; a paraphrase uses roughly the same number of words as the original source to convey information. When you summarize or paraphrase, it is not enough to name the source; you must restate the source’s meaning using your own language. (See also 51c and 60a.)

Half-copying the author’s sentences by using the author’s phrases in your own sentences without quotation marks or by plugging synonyms into the author’s sentence structure (sometimes called patchwriting) is a form of plagiarism.

The following paraphrases are plagiarized — even though the source is cited — because their language and sentence structure are too close to those of the source.

**ORIGINAL SOURCE**

In an effort to seek the causes of this disturbing trend, experts have pointed to a range of important potential contributors to the rise in childhood obesity that are unrelated to media.

— Henry J. Kaiser Family Foundation,  
“The Role of Media in Childhood Obesity” (2004), p. 1

**UNACCEPTABLE BORROWING OF PHRASES**

According to the Henry J. Kaiser Family Foundation (2004), experts have indicated a range of significant potential contributors to the rise in childhood obesity that are not linked to media (p. 1).

**UNACCEPTABLE BORROWING OF STRUCTURE**

According to the Henry J. Kaiser Family Foundation (2004), experts have identified a variety of key factors causing a

rise in childhood obesity, factors that are not tied to media (p. 1).

To avoid plagiarizing an author's language, resist the temptation to look at the source while you are summarizing or paraphrasing. After you have read the passage you want to paraphrase, set the source aside. Ask yourself, "What is the author's meaning?" In your own words, state your understanding of the author's ideas.

Return to the source and check that you haven't used the author's language or sentence structure or misrepresented the author's ideas. When you fully understand another writer's meaning, you can more easily and accurately present those ideas in your own words.

#### ACCEPTABLE PARAPHRASE

A report by the Henry J. Kaiser Family Foundation (2004) described causes other than media for the childhood obesity crisis.

## 60 Integrating sources

Your research paper draws on and borrows from the work of others—your sources—to help you develop and support your ideas. As you conduct research, you gather language and ideas from your sources that you might want to use in your paper. Section 59 shows you how to acknowledge those sources to avoid plagiarism. This section will help you integrate those sources seamlessly and effectively into your paper, so that readers understand how your use of quotation, summary, and paraphrase contributes to your argument. As you integrate sources, you need to find a balance between the words of your sources and your own voice. Readers should always know who is speaking in your paper—you or your source. You can use several strategies to integrate research sources into your paper while maintaining your own voice.

- Use sources as concisely as possible so that your own thinking and voice aren't lost (60a and 60b).
- Use signal phrases and avoid dropped quotations. Clearly indicate the boundary between your words and the source's words (60c).
- Discuss and analyze your sources to show readers how each source supports your points and how the sources relate to one another (60d).

## 60a Summarize and paraphrase effectively.

In your academic writing, keep the emphasis on your ideas and your language; use your own words to summarize and to paraphrase your sources and to explain your points. Whether you choose to summarize or paraphrase a source depends on your purpose.

### Summarizing

When you summarize a source, you express another writer's ideas in your own words, condensing the author's key points and using fewer words than the author. Even though a summary is in your own words, the original idea remains the intellectual property of the author, so you must include a citation.

#### WHEN TO USE A SUMMARY

- When a passage is lengthy and you want to condense a chapter to a short paragraph or a paragraph to a single sentence
- When you want to state the source's main ideas simply and briefly in your own words
- When you want to compare or contrast arguments or ideas from various sources
- When you want to provide readers with an understanding of the source's argument before you respond to it or launch your own

### Paraphrasing

When you paraphrase, you express an author's ideas in your own words, using approximately the same number of words and details as in the source. Even though the words are your own, the original idea is the author's intellectual property, so you must give a citation.

#### WHEN TO USE A PARAPHRASE

- When the ideas and information are important but the author's exact words are not needed for accuracy or emphasis
- When you want to restate the source's ideas in your own words
- When you need to simplify and explain a technical or complicated source
- When you need to reorder a source's ideas



Even though you use your own words to summarize and paraphrase, the original idea remains the intellectual property of the author, so you must include a citation. (See 59b.)

## 60b Use quotations effectively.

When you quote a source, you borrow some of the author's exact words and enclose them in quotation marks. Quotation marks show your readers that both the idea and the words belong to the author.

### WHEN TO USE QUOTATIONS

- When language is especially vivid or expressive
- When exact wording is needed for technical accuracy
- When it is important to let the debaters of an issue explain their positions in their own words
- When the words of an authority lend weight to an argument
- When you want to discuss the language of a source

### Limiting your use of quotations

Although it is tempting to insert many quotations in your paper and to use your own words only for connecting passages, do not quote excessively.

It is not always necessary to quote full sentences from a source. To reduce your reliance on the words of others, you can integrate language from a source into your own sentence structure. (For the use of signal phrases in integrating quotations, see 60c.)

Carmona (2004) advised the subcommittee that the situation constitutes an "epidemic" and that the skyrocketing statistics are "astounding."

As researchers continue to face a number of unknowns about obesity, it may be helpful to envision treating the disorder, as Yanovski and Yanovski (2002) suggested, "in the same manner as any other chronic disease" (p. 592).



### Using the ellipsis mark

To condense a quoted passage, you can use the ellipsis mark (three periods, with spaces between) to indicate that you have omitted words. What remains must be grammatically complete.

Roman (2003) reported that “social factors are nearly as significant as individual metabolism in the formation of . . . dietary habits of adolescents” (p. 345).

The writer has omitted the words *both healthy and unhealthy* from the source.

When you want to leave out one or more full sentences, use a period before the three ellipsis dots.

According to Sothorn and Gordon (2003), “Environmental factors may contribute as much as 80% to the causes of childhood obesity. . . . Research suggests that obese children demonstrate decreased levels of physical activity and increased psychosocial problems” (p. 104).

Ordinarily, do not use an ellipsis mark at the beginning or at the end of a quotation. Readers will understand that you have taken the quoted material from a longer passage. The only exception occurs when you feel it is necessary, for clarity, to indicate that your quotation begins or ends in the middle of a sentence.

**USING SOURCES RESPONSIBLY:** Make sure that omissions and ellipsis marks do not distort the meaning of your source.

### Using brackets

Brackets allow you to insert your own words into quoted material. You can insert words in brackets to clarify a confusing reference or to keep a sentence grammatical in your context.

The cost of treating obesity currently totals \$117 billion per year—a price, according to the surgeon general, “second only to the cost of [treating] tobacco use” (Carmona, 2004).

To indicate an error such as a misspelling in a quotation, insert [*sic*], italicized and in brackets, right after the error.

### Setting off long quotations

When you quote forty or more words from a source, set off the quotation by indenting it one-half inch from the left margin. Use the normal right margin and do not single-space the quotation.

Long quotations should be introduced by an informative sentence, often followed by a colon. Quotation marks are unnecessary because the indented format tells readers that the passage is taken word-for-word from the source.

Yanovski and Yanovski (2002) have described earlier treatments of obesity that focused on behavior modification:

With the advent of behavioral treatments for obesity in the 1960s, hope arose that modification of maladaptive eating and exercise habits would lead to sustained weight loss, and that time-limited programs would produce permanent changes in weight. Medications for the treatment of obesity were proposed as short-term adjuncts for patients, who would presumably then acquire the skills necessary to continue to lose weight, reach “ideal body weight,” and maintain a reduced weight indefinitely. (p. 592)

Notice that at the end of an indented quotation the parenthetical citation goes outside the final mark of punctuation. (When a quotation is run into your text, the opposite is true. See the sample citations on p. 540.)

## 60c Use signal phrases to integrate sources.

Whenever you include a paraphrase, summary, or direct quotation of another writer's work in your paper, prepare your readers for it with introductory words called a *signal phrase*. A signal phrase usually names the author of the source, gives the publication year in parentheses, and often provides some context. It is generally acceptable in APA style to call authors by their last name only, even on a first mention. If your paper refers to two authors with the same last name, use initials as well.

When you write a signal phrase, choose a verb that is appropriate for the way you are using the source. Are you providing background, explaining a concept, supporting a claim, lending

authority, or refuting an argument (see 58c)? See the chart on page 543 for a list of verbs commonly used in signal phrases. Note that APA requires using verbs in the past tense or present perfect tense (*explained* or *has explained*) to introduce source material. Use the present tense only for discussing the applications or effects of your own results (*the data suggest*) or knowledge that has been clearly established (*researchers agree*).

### Marking boundaries

Readers need to move from your words to the words of a source without feeling a jolt. Avoid dropping direct quotations into your text without warning. Instead, provide clear signal phrases, including at least the author's name and the year of publication. Signal phrases mark the boundaries between source material and your own words; they can also tell readers why a source is worth quoting. (The signal phrase is highlighted in the second example.)

#### DROPPED QUOTATION

Obesity was once considered in a very different light. "For many years, obesity was approached as if it were either a moral failing or evidence of underlying psychopathology" (Yanovski & Yanovski, 2002, p. 592).

#### QUOTATION WITH SIGNAL PHRASE

Obesity was once considered in a very different light. **As researchers Yanovski and Yanovski (2002) have explained**, obesity was widely thought of as "either a moral failing or evidence of underlying psychopathology" (p. 592).

### Using signal phrases with summaries and paraphrases

As with quotations, you should introduce most summaries and paraphrases with a signal phrase that mentions the author and the year and places the material in the context of your own writing. Readers will then understand where the summary or paraphrase begins.

Without the signal phrase (highlighted) in the following example, readers might think that only the last sentence is being cited, when in fact the whole paragraph is based on the source.

Carmona (2004) advised a Senate subcommittee that the problem of childhood obesity is dire and that the skyrocketing statistics—which put the child obesity rate at 15%—are cause for alarm. More than nine million children, double the number in the early 1980s, are classified as obese. Carmona warned that obesity can cause myriad physical problems that only worsen as children grow older.

There are times, however, when a summary or a paraphrase does not require a signal phrase naming the author. When the context makes clear where the cited material begins, you may omit the signal phrase and include the author's name and the year in parentheses.

### Using signal phrases in APA papers

To avoid monotony, try to vary both the language and the placement of your signal phrases.

#### Model signal phrases

In the words of Carmona (2004), “. . .”

As Yanovski and Yanovski (2002) have noted, “. . .”

Hoppin and Taveras (2004), medical researchers, pointed out that “. . .” “. . .” claimed Critser (2003).

“. . .” wrote Duenwald (2004), “. . .”

Researchers McDuffie et al. (2003) have offered a compelling argument for this view: “. . .”

Hilts (2002) answered objections with the following analysis: “. . .”

#### Verbs in signal phrases

admitted	contended	reasoned
agreed	declared	refuted
argued	denied	rejected
asserted	emphasized	reported
believed	insisted	responded
claimed	noted	suggested
compared	observed	thought
confirmed	pointed out	wrote

### Integrating statistics and other facts

When you are citing a statistic or another specific fact, a signal phrase is often not necessary. In most cases, readers will understand that the citation refers to the statistic or fact (not the whole paragraph).

In purely financial terms, the drugs cost more than \$3 a day on average (Duenwald, 2004).

There is nothing wrong, however, with using a signal phrase to introduce a statistic or another fact.

### Putting source material in context

Readers should not have to guess why source material appears in your paper. A signal phrase can help you make the connection between your own ideas and those of another writer by clarifying how the source will contribute to your paper.

If you use another writer's words, you must explain how they relate to your writing. Quotations don't speak for themselves; you must support them by creating a context for readers. Embed each quotation between sentences of your own: Introduce the quotation with a signal phrase, and follow it with interpretive comments that link the quotation to your own ideas. (See also 60c.)

#### QUOTATION WITH EFFECTIVE CONTEXT

A report by the Henry J. Kaiser Family Foundation (2004) outlined trends that may have contributed to the childhood obesity crisis, including food advertising for children as well as

a reduction in physical education classes . . . , an increase in the availability of sodas and snacks in public schools, the growth in the number of fast-food outlets . . . , and the increasing number of highly processed high-calorie and high-fat grocery products. (p. 1)

Addressing each of these areas requires more than a doctor armed with a prescription pad; it requires a broad mobilization not just of doctors and concerned parents but of educators, food industry executives, advertisers, and media representatives.

## 60d Synthesize sources.

When you synthesize multiple sources in a research paper, you create a conversation about your research topic. Your paper includes your active analysis and integration of ideas, not just a series of quotations and paraphrases. Your synthesis will show how your sources relate to one another; one source may support, extend, or counter the ideas of another. Not every source has to “speak” to another in a research paper, but readers should be able to see how each one functions in your argument.

### SAMPLE SYNTHESIS (DRAFT)

Student writer  
Luisa Mirano  
begins with  
a claim that  
needs support.

Medical treatments have clear costs for individual patients, including unpleasant side effects, little information about long-term use, and uncertainty that they will yield significant weight loss. The financial burden is heavy as well; the drugs cost more than \$3 a day on average (Duenwald, 2004). In each of the clinical trials, use of medication was accompanied by expensive behavioral therapies, including counseling, nutrition education, fitness advising, and monitoring. As Critser (2003) noted in his book *Fat Land*, use of weight-loss drugs is unlikely to have an effect without the proper “support system”—one that includes doctors, facilities, time, and money (p. 3). For many families, this level of care is prohibitively expensive.

Student  
writer

Source 1

Student  
writer

Source 2

Student  
writer

Mirano  
interprets  
and connects  
sources. Each  
paragraph  
ends with her  
own thoughts.

Both medical experts and policymakers recognize that solutions might come not only from a laboratory but also from policy, education, and advocacy. A handbook designed to educate doctors on obesity called for “major changes in some aspects of western culture” (Hoppin & Taveras, 2004, Conclusion section, para. 1). Solving the childhood obesity problem

Source 3

Signal phrases  
indicate  
how sources  
contribute  
to Mirano's  
paper and  
show that the  
ideas that  
follow are not  
her own.

will require broad mobilization of doctors and concerned parents and also of educators, food industry executives, advertisers, and media representatives.

Student  
writer

In this synthesis, Mirano uses her own analyses to shape the conversation among her sources. She does not simply string quotations and statistics together or allow her sources to overwhelm her writing. The final sentence, written in her own voice, gives her an opportunity to explain to readers how her sources support and extend her argument.

When synthesizing sources, ask yourself these questions:

- How do your sources speak to your research question?
- How do your sources speak to each other?
- Have you varied the functions of sources — to provide background, explain concepts, lend authority, and anticipate counterarguments?
- Do you explain how your sources support your argument?
- Do you connect and analyze sources in your own voice?
- Is your own argument easy to identify and to understand, with or without your sources?

## 61 Documenting sources in APA style

In most social science classes and some humanities classes, you will be asked to use the APA system for documenting sources, which is set forth in the *Publication Manual of the American Psychological Association*, 6th ed. (Washington, DC: APA, 2010).

APA recommends in-text citations that refer readers to a list of references. An in-text citation gives the author of the source (often in a signal phrase), the year of publication, and often a page number in parentheses. At the end of the paper, a list of references provides publication information about the source; the list is alphabetized by authors' last names (or by titles for works with no authors). The direct link between the in-text



citation and the entry in the reference list is highlighted in the following example.

#### IN-TEXT CITATION

Yanovski and Yanovski (2002) reported that “the current state of the treatment for obesity is similar to the state of the treatment of hypertension several decades ago” (p. 600).

#### ENTRY IN THE LIST OF REFERENCES

Yanovski, S. Z., & Yanovski, J. A. (2002). Drug therapy: Obesity. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 346, 591-602.

For a reference list that includes this entry, see pages 595–96.

## 61a APA in-text citations

APA's in-text citations provide the author's last name and the year of publication, usually before the cited material, and a page number in parentheses directly after the cited material. In the following models, the elements of the in-text citation are highlighted.

**NOTE:** APA style requires the use of the past tense or the present perfect tense in signal phrases introducing cited material: *Smith (2012) reported*, *Smith (2012) has argued*. (See also p. 543.)

■ **1. Basic format for a quotation** Ordinarily, introduce the quotation with a signal phrase that includes the author's last name followed by the year of publication in parentheses. Put the page number (preceded by “p.”) in parentheses after the quotation. For sources from the Web without page numbers, see item 12a on page 551.

Critser (2003) noted that despite growing numbers of overweight Americans, many health care providers still “remain either in ignorance or outright denial about the health danger to the poor and the young” (p. 5).

If the author is not named in the signal phrase, place the author's name, the year, and the page number in parentheses after the



quotation: (Critser, 2003, p. 5). (See items 6 and 12 for citing sources that lack authors; item 12 also explains how to handle sources without dates or page numbers.)

**NOTE:** Do not include a month in an in-text citation, even if the entry in the reference list includes the month.

■ **2. Basic format for a summary or a paraphrase** As with a quotation (see item 1), include the author's last name and the year either in a signal phrase introducing the material or in parentheses following it. Use a page number, if one is available, following the cited material. For sources from the Web without page numbers, see item 12a on page 551.

Yanovski and Yanovski (2002) explained that sibutramine suppresses appetite by blocking the reuptake of the neurotransmitters serotonin and norepinephrine in the brain (p. 594).

Sibutramine suppresses appetite by blocking the reuptake of the neurotransmitters serotonin and norepinephrine in the brain (Yanovski & Yanovski, 2002, p. 594).

■ **3. Work with two authors** Name both authors in the signal phrase or in parentheses each time you cite the work. In the parentheses, use "&" between the authors' names; in the signal phrase, use "and."

According to Sothorn and Gordon (2003), "Environmental factors may contribute as much as 80% to the causes of childhood obesity" (p. 104).

Obese children often engage in limited physical activity (Sothorn & Gordon, 2003, p. 104).

■ **4. Work with three to five authors** Identify all authors in the signal phrase or in parentheses the first time you cite the source.

In 2003, Berkowitz, Wadden, Tershakovec, and Cronquist concluded, "Sibutramine . . . must be carefully monitored in adolescents, as in adults, to control increases in [blood pressure] and pulse rate" (p. 1811).

In subsequent citations, use the first author's name followed by "et al." in either the signal phrase or the parentheses.

As Berkowitz et al. (2003) advised, “Until more extensive safety and efficacy data are available, . . . weight-loss medications should be used only on an experimental basis for adolescents” (p. 1811).

■ **5. Work with six or more authors** Use the first author’s name followed by “et al.” in the signal phrase or in parentheses.

McDuffie et al. (2002) tested 20 adolescents, aged 12-16, over a three-month period and found that orlistat, combined with behavioral therapy, produced an average weight loss of 4.4 kg, or 9.7 pounds (p. 646).

■ **6. Work with unknown author** If the author is unknown, mention the work’s title in the signal phrase or give the first word or two of the title in the parentheses. Titles of short works such as articles are put in quotation marks; titles of long works such as books and reports are italicized.

Children struggling to control their weight must also struggle with the pressures of television advertising that, on the one hand, encourages the consumption of junk food and, on the other, celebrates thin celebrities (“Television,” 2002).

**NOTE:** In the rare case when “Anonymous” is specified as the author, treat it as if it were a real name: (Anonymous, 2001). In the list of references, also use the name Anonymous as author.

■ **7. Organization as author** If the author is an organization or a government agency, name the organization in the signal phrase or in the parentheses the first time you cite the source.

Obesity puts children at risk for a number of medical complications, including Type 2 diabetes, hypertension, sleep apnea, and orthopedic problems (Henry J. Kaiser Family Foundation, 2004, p. 1).

If the organization has a familiar abbreviation, you may include it in brackets the first time you cite the source and use the abbreviation alone in later citations.

<b>FIRST CITATION</b>	(Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC], 2012)
<b>LATER CITATIONS</b>	(CDC, 2012)

■ **8. Authors with the same last name** To avoid confusion if your reference list includes two or more authors with the same last name, use initials with the last names in your in-text citations.

Research by E. Smith (1989) revealed that. . . .

One 2012 study contradicted . . . (R. Smith, p. 234).

■ **9. Two or more works by the same author in the same year** When your list of references includes more than one work by the same author in the same year, you will use lowercase letters (“a,” “b,” and so on) with the year to order the entries in the reference list. (See item 8 on p. 557.) Use those same letters with the year in the in-text citation.

Research by Durgin (2003b) has yielded new findings about the role of counseling in treating childhood obesity.

■ **10. Two or more works in the same parentheses** Put the works in the same order that they appear in the reference list, separated with semicolons.

Researchers have indicated that studies of pharmacological treatments for childhood obesity are inconclusive (Berkowitz et al., 2003; McDuffie et al., 2002).

■ **11. Multiple citations to the same work in one paragraph** If you give the author’s name in the text of your paper (not in parentheses) and you mention that source again in the text of the same paragraph, give only the author’s name, not the date, in the later citation. If any subsequent reference in the same paragraph is in parentheses, include both the author and the date in the parentheses.

Principal Jean Patrice said, “You have to be able to reach students where they are instead of making them come to you. If you don’t, you’ll lose them” (personal communication, April 10, 2006). Patrice expressed her desire to see all students get something out of their educational experience. This feeling is common among members of Waverly’s faculty. With such a positive view of student potential, it is no wonder that 97% of Waverly High School graduates go on to a four-year university (Patrice, 2006).

■ **12. Web source** Cite sources from the Web as you would cite any other source, giving the author and the year when they are available.

Atkinson (2001) found that children who spent at least four hours a day watching TV were less likely to engage in adequate physical activity during the week.

Usually a page number is not available; occasionally a Web source will lack an author or a date (see items 12a, 12b, and 12c).

**a. No page numbers** When a Web source lacks stable numbered pages, you may include paragraph numbers or headings to help readers locate the passage being cited.

If the source has numbered paragraphs, use the paragraph number preceded by the abbreviation “para.”: (Hall, 2012, para. 5). If the source has no numbered paragraphs but contains headings, cite the appropriate heading in parentheses; you may also indicate which paragraph under the heading you are referring to, even if the paragraphs are not numbered.

Hoppin and Taveras (2004) pointed out that several other medications were classified by the Drug Enforcement Administration as having the “potential for abuse” (Weight-Loss Drugs section, para. 6).

**NOTE:** For PDF documents that have stable page numbers, give the page number in the parenthetical citation.

**b. Unknown author** If no author is named in the source, mention the title of the source in a signal phrase or give the first word or two of the title in parentheses (see also item 6). (If an organization serves as the author, see item 7.)

The body’s basal metabolic rate, or BMR, is a measure of its at-rest energy requirement (“Exercise,” 2003).

**c. Unknown date** When the source does not give a date, use the abbreviation “n.d.” (for “no date”).

Attempts to establish a definitive link between television programming and children’s eating habits have been problematic (Magnus, n.d.).

■ **13. An entire Web site** If you are citing an entire Web site, not an internal page or a section, give the URL in the text of your paper but do not include it in the reference list.

The U.S. Center for Nutrition Policy and Promotion website (<http://www.cnpp.usda.gov/>) provides useful information about diet and nutrition for children and adults.

■ **14. Multivolume work** If you have used more than one volume from a multivolume work, add the volume number in parentheses with the page number.

Banford (2009) has demonstrated stable weight loss over time from a combination of psychological counseling, exercise, and nutritional planning (Volume 2, p. 135).

■ **15. Personal communication** Interviews that you conduct, memos, letters, e-mail messages, social media posts, and similar communications that would be difficult for your readers to retrieve should be cited in the text only, not in the reference list. (Use the first initial with the last name in parentheses.)

One of Atkinson's colleagues, who has studied the effect of the media on children's eating habits, has contended that advertisers for snack foods will need to design ads responsibly for their younger viewers (F. Johnson, personal communication, October 20, 2013).

■ **16. Course materials** Cite lecture notes from your instructor or your own class notes as personal communication (see item 15). If your instructor distributes or posts materials that contain publication information, cite as you would the appropriate source (for instance, an article, a section in a Web document, or a video). See also item 65 on page 579.

■ **17. Part of a source (chapter, figure)** To cite a specific part of a source, such as a whole chapter or a figure or table, identify the element in parentheses. Don't abbreviate terms such as "Figure," "Chapter," and "Section"; "page" is always abbreviated "p." (or "pp." for more than one page).

The data support the finding that weight loss stabilizes with consistent therapy and ongoing monitoring (Hanniman, 2010, Figure 8-3, p. 345).

■ **18. Indirect source (source quoted in another source)** When a writer's or a speaker's quoted words appear in a source written by

someone else, begin the parenthetical citation with the words “as cited in.” In the following example, Critser is the author of the source given in the reference list; that source contains a quotation by Satcher.

Former surgeon general Dr. David Satcher described “a nation of young people seriously at risk of starting out obese and dooming themselves to the difficult task of overcoming a tough illness” (as cited in Critser, 2003, p. 4).

■ **19. Sacred or classical text** Identify the text, the version or edition you used, and the relevant part (chapter, verse, line). It is not necessary to include the source in the reference list.

Peace activists have long cited the biblical prophet’s vision of a world without war: “And they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruning hooks; nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more” (Isaiah 2:4, Revised Standard Version).

## 61b APA list of references

As you gather sources for an assignment, you will likely find sources in print, on the Web, and in other places. The information you will need for the reference list at the end of your paper will differ slightly for some sources, but the main principles apply to all sources: You should identify an author, a creator, or a producer whenever possible; give a title; and provide the date on which the source was produced. Some sources will require page numbers; some will require a publisher; and some will require retrieval information.

► General guidelines for the reference list, [page 554](#)

Section 61b provides specific requirements for and examples of many of the sources you are likely to encounter. When you cite sources, your goals are to show that the sources you’ve used are reliable and relevant to your work, to provide your readers with enough information so that they can find your sources easily, and to provide that information in a consistent way according to APA conventions.

In the list of references, include only sources that you have quoted, summarized, or paraphrased in your paper.



## General guidelines for listing authors

The formatting of authors' names in items 1–12 applies to all sources in print and on the Web — books, articles, Web sites, and so on. For more models of specific source types, see items 13–69.

### General guidelines for the reference list

In APA style, the alphabetical list of works cited, which appears at the end of the paper, is titled “References.”

#### Authors and dates

- Alphabetize entries in the list of references by authors' last names; if a work has no author, alphabetize it by its title.
- For all authors' names, put the last name first, followed by a comma; use initials for the first and middle names.
- With two or more authors, use an ampersand (&) before the last author's name. Separate the names with commas. Include names for the first seven authors; if there are eight or more authors, give the first six authors, three ellipsis dots, and the last author.
- If the author is a company or an organization, give the name in normal order.
- Put the date of publication immediately after the first element of the citation. Enclose the date in parentheses, followed by a period (outside the parentheses).
- For books, give the year of publication. For magazines, newspapers, and newsletters, give the exact date as in the publication (the year plus the month or the year plus the month and the day). For sources on the Web, give the date of posting, if it is available. Use the season if the publication gives only a season and not a month.

#### Titles

- Italicize the titles and subtitles of books, journals, and other long works.
- Use no italics or quotation marks for the titles of articles.
- For books and articles, capitalize only the first word of the title and subtitle and all proper nouns.
- For the titles of journals, magazines, and newspapers, capitalize all words of four letters or more (and all nouns, pronouns, verbs, adjectives, and adverbs of any length).



### Place of publication and publisher

- Take the information about a book from its title page and copyright page. If more than one place of publication is listed, use only the first.
- Give the city and state for all US cities. Use postal abbreviations for all states.
- Give the city and country for all non-US cities; include the province for Canadian cities. Do not abbreviate the country and province.
- Do not give a state if the publisher's name includes it (Ann Arbor: University of Michigan Press, for example).
- In publishers' names, omit terms such as "Company" (or "Co.") and "Inc." but keep "Books" and "Press." Omit first names or initials (Norton, not W. W. Norton, for example).
- If the publisher is the same as the author, use the word "Author" in the publisher position.

### Volume, issue, and page numbers

- For a journal or a magazine, give only the volume number if the publication is paginated continuously through each volume; give the volume and issue numbers if each issue begins on page 1.
- Italicize the volume number and put the issue number, not italicized, in parentheses.
- For monthly magazines, give the year and the month; for weekly magazines, add the day.
- For daily and weekly newspapers, give the month, day, and year; use "p." or "pp." before page numbers (if any). For journals and magazines, do not add "p." or "pp."
- When an article appears on consecutive pages, provide the range of pages. When an article does not appear on consecutive pages, give all page numbers: A1, A17.

### URLs, DOIs, and other retrieval information

- For articles and books from the Web, use the DOI (digital object identifier) if the source has one, and do not give a URL. If a source does not have a DOI, give the URL.
- Use a retrieval date for a Web source only if the content is likely to change. Most of the examples in 61b do not show a retrieval date because the content of the sources is stable. If you are unsure about whether to use a retrieval date, include the date or consult your instructor.

### ■ 1. Single author

author: last

name +  
initial(s)      year  
(book)      title (book)      place of  
publication      publisher  
Brown, S. (2014). *Mean streak*. New York, NY: Grand Central.

■ **2. Two to seven authors** List up to seven authors by last names followed by initials. Use an ampersand (&) before the name of the last author. (See items 3–5 on pp. 548–49 for citing works with multiple authors in the text of your paper.)

all authors:  
last name + initial(s)      year  
(book)      title (book)  
Stanford, D. J., & Bradley, B. A. (2012). *Across the Atlantic ice: The origins  
of America's Clovis culture*. Berkeley: University of California Press.

place of  
publication      publisher

all authors:  
last name + initial(s)  
Ludwig, J., Duncan, G. J., Gennetian, L. A., Katz, L. F., Kessler, R. C.,

year  
(journal)      title (article)  
Kling, J. R., & Sanbonmatsu, L. (2012). Neighborhood effects on  
the long-term well-being of low-income adults. *Science*, 337,

journal  
title      volume

page(s)      DOI  
1505-1510. doi:10.1126/science.1224648

■ **3. Eight or more authors** List the first six authors followed by three ellipsis dots and the last author's name.

Tøttrup, A. P., Klaassen, R. H. G., Kristensen, M. W., Strandberg, R.,  
Vardanis, Y., Lindström, Å., . . . Thorup, K. (2012). Drought in Africa  
caused delayed arrival of European songbirds. *Science*, 338, 1307.  
doi:10.1126/science.1227548

### ■ 4. Organization as author

author:  
organization name      year      title (book)  
American Psychiatric Association. (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical  
manual of mental disorders* (5th ed.). Washington, DC: Author.

organization  
as author  
and publisher      place  
of publication      edition

■ **5. Unknown author** Begin the entry with the work's title.

title (article)
year + month + day  
(weekly publication)
journal title  
 The rise of the sharing economy. (2013, March 9). *The Economist*,  
volume,  
issue
page(s)  
 406(8826), 14.

title (book)
year
place of  
publication
publisher  
*New concise world atlas*. (2010). New York, NY: Oxford University Press.

■ **6. Author using a pseudonym (pen name) or screen name** Use the author's real name, if known, and give the pseudonym or screen name in brackets exactly as it appears in the source. If only the screen name is known, begin with that name and do not use brackets. (See also items 47 and 68 on citing screen names in social media.)

screen name
year + month + day  
(daily publication)
title of original article  
 littlebigman. (2012, December 13). Re: Who's watching? Privacy concerns  
label
title of publication  
 persist as smart meters roll out [Comment]. *National Geographic*  
URL for Web publication  
*Daily News*. Retrieved from <http://news.nationalgeographic.com/>

■ **7. Two or more works by the same author** Use the author's name for all entries. List the entries by year, the earliest first.

Heinrich, B. (2009). *Summer world: A season of bounty*. New York, NY: Ecco.  
 Heinrich, B. (2012). *Life everlasting: The animal way of death*. New York, NY: Houghton Mifflin Harcourt.

■ **8. Two or more works by the same author in the same year** List the works alphabetically by title. In the parentheses, following the year add "a," "b," and so on. Use these same letters when giving the year in the in-text citation. (See also p. 584 and item 9 on p. 550.)

Bower, B. (2012a, December 15). Families in flux. *Science News*, 182(12), 16.  
 Bower, B. (2012b, November 3). Human-Neandertal mating gets a new date. *Science News*, 182(9), 8.

■ **9. Editor** Begin with the name of the editor or editors; place the abbreviation “Ed.” (or “Eds.” for more than one editor) in parentheses following the name. (See item 10 for a work with both an author and an editor.)

all editors:  
last name + initial(s)
year

Carr, S. C., MacLachlan, M., & Furnham, A. (Eds.). (2012).

title (book)
place of  
publication
publisher

*Humanitarian work psychology*. New York, NY: Palgrave.

■ **10. Author and editor** Begin with the name of the author, followed by the name of the editor and the abbreviation “Ed.” For an author with two or more editors, use the abbreviation “Ed.” after each editor’s name: Gray, W., & Jones, P. (Ed.), & Smith, A. (Ed.).

author
editor
year
title (book)

James, W., & Pelikan, J. (Ed.). (2009). *The varieties of religious experience*.

place of  
publication
publisher
original  
publication information

New York, NY: Library of America. (Original work published 1902)

■ **11. Translator** Begin with the name of the author. After the title, in parentheses place the name of the translator (in normal order) and the abbreviation “Trans.” (for “Translator”). Add the original date of publication at the end of the entry.

author
year
title (book)
translator
place of  
publication

Scheffer, P. (2011). *Immigrant nations* (L. Waters, Trans.). Cambridge,

publisher
original  
publication information

England: Polity Press. (Original work published 2007)

■ **12. Editor and translator** If the editor and translator are the same person, the same name appears in both the editor position and the translator position.

Girard, R., & Williams, J. G. (Ed.). (2012). *Resurrection from the underground* (J. G. Williams, Trans.). East Lansing: Michigan State University Press. (Original work published 1996)

## Articles and other short works

- ▶ Citation at a glance: Article in a journal or magazine, [page 560](#)
- ▶ Citation at a glance: Article from a database, [page 562](#)

■ **13. Article in a journal** If an article from the Web or a database has no DOI, include the URL for the journal's home page.

### a. Print

all authors: last name + initial(s)      year      article title  
 Bippus, A. M., Dunbar, N. E., & Liu, S.-J. (2012). Humorous responses

to interpersonal complaints: Effects of humor style and nonverbal

expression. *The Journal of Psychology*, 146, 437-453.

### b. Web

all authors:  
 last name + initial(s)      year      article title  
 Vargas, N., & Schafer, M. H. (2013). Diversity in action: Interpersonal

networks and the distribution of advice. *Social Science Research*,  
 volume,  
 issue      page(s)      DOI  
 42(1), 46-58. doi:10.1016/j.ssresearch.2012.08.013

author      year      article title  
 Brenton, S. (2011). When the personal becomes political: Mitigating

damage following scandals. *Current Research in Social Psychology*.

Retrieved from <http://www.uiowa.edu/~grproc/crisp/crisp.html>

### c. Database

author      year      article title  
 (journal)  
 Sohn, K. (2012). The social class origins of U.S. teachers, 1860-1920.

journal title      volume,  
 issue      page(s)      DOI  
*Journal of Social History*, 45(4), 908-935. doi:10.1093/jsh/shr121

# Citation at a glance

## Article in a journal or magazine (APA)

To cite an article in a print journal or magazine in APA style, include the following elements:

- 1 Author(s)
- 2 Year of publication for journal; complete date for magazine
- 3 Title and subtitle of article
- 4 Name of journal or magazine
- 5 Volume number; issue number, if required (see p. 555)
- 6 Page number(s) of article

### JOURNAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

**5** *Volume 13 Number 1*

Volume 13 Number 1

**DEPARTMENTS**

**EducationNext** **4**

**FEATURES**

▶ 8 **Reform Agenda Gains Strength**  
The 2013 Bipartisan Education Agenda  
WILLIAM B. HERTZEL, MARGIE B. WEST, and TRISH L. PETERSON

20 **School Choice Marches Forward**  
2011 a year of new laws and new lawsuits  
JONATHAN BUTCHER

28 **Diverse Charter Schools**  
Popular, controversial, and a challenge to the status quo  
ALEXANDER DUBOIS

▶ 36 **The Elephant**  
Why is diversity so important?  
JENNIFER BLUM

42 **COVER STORY: MAKING EDUCATION'S SYSTEMS WORK**  
Taking satisfaction to the varying needs of the students  
JACOB L. SIGOUR

▶ 50 **Newark's Superintendent Rolls Up Her Sleeves and Gets to Work**  
A conversation with Carol Anderson  
PETER MEYER

**FORUM**

54 **Can Digital Learning Transform Education?**  
Education's next future  
WILL CHESTER E. PHIN, JR. and MICHAEL B. HODIN

**RESEARCH**

▶ 62 **School Leaders Matter**  
Assessing the impact of effective principals  
DORIS D. Y. BRANCH, ERIC A. HANUSHEK, and ETCHEEN S. BARKER

70 **COVER STORY: A Double Dose of Algebra**  
Intensive math education has long-term benefits  
HALINA COOPER, JOSHUA GOODMAN, and TAKANO NISHI

1 **20** **School Choice Marches Forward**  
*2011 a year of new laws and new lawsuits*  
**JONATHAN BUTCHER**

EDUCATIONNEXT / WINTER 2013

**2**

**6**

**3**

**4**

**4**

feature

# School Choice Marches Forward

**One year ago**, the *Wall Street Journal* dubbed 2011 “the year of school choice,” springing that “this year is shaping up as the best for reformers in a very long time.” Such quotes were bound to circulate among education reformers and give traditional opponents of school choice, such as teachers unions, heartburn. Thirteen states enacted new programs that allow K–12 students to choose a public or private school instead of attending their assigned school, and similar bills were under consideration in more than two dozen states.

With as much activity, school choice moved from the margins of education reform debates and became the headline. In January 2012, *Washington Post* education reporter Michael Allan Crowder said school choice has become “a mantra of 21st-century education reform,” citing public opinion across the country. **1** Three traditional public schools are competing for students alongside charter schools and private schools.

“It took us 20 years to pass the few 30 private school-choice programs in America and in the 21st year we passed 13 new programs,” says Scott Brumby with the American Federation for Children (AFC).

**2011  
a year of  
new laws  
and  
new lawsuits**

By  
**CHRISTIAN BUTCHER**

a school-choice advocacy group based in Washington, D.C. “We’ve spent five years, on average, one each year, or even in our fall survey.”

Programs enacted in 2011 include

- a non-credit scholarship program in North Carolina
- Arizona’s education savings account system for K–12 students
- Maine’s new charter school law, which brings the total number of states, along with the District of Columbia, with charter schools to 41
- a voucher program in Indiana with broad eligibility rules.

School choice laws also passed in Wisconsin, Washington, D.C., Oklahoma,

WINTER 2013 / EDUCATION NEXT 21

Reprinted by permission of Harvard Kennedy School.



REFERENCE LIST ENTRY FOR AN ARTICLE IN A PRINT JOURNAL OR MAGAZINE

Butcher, J. (2013). School choice marches forward. *Education Next*, 13(1), 20–27.

For more on citing articles in APA style, see items 13–15.

# Citation at a glance

## Article from a database (APA)

To cite an article from a database in APA style, include the following:

- 1 Author(s)
- 2 Year of publication for journal; complete date for magazine or newspaper
- 3 Title and subtitle of article
- 4 Name of periodical
- 5 Volume number; issue number, if required (see p. 555)
- 6 Page number(s)
- 7 DOI (digital object identifier)
- 8 URL for periodical's home page (if there is no DOI)

### DATABASE RECORD

The screenshot shows a database record for the article "Economics, Darwinism, and the Case of Disciplinary Imports." The record includes the following information:

- Author(s):** Cojari, Valentin (1)
- Source:** American Journal of Economics & Sociology; Jan2011, Vol. 72 Issue 1, p179-198 (3)
- Document Type:** Article
- Subjects:** Darwin, Charles, 1809-1882; Economic change; Interdisciplinary research; Theory of evolution (Philosophy); Choice; Biology - Economic aspects; Creation - Economic aspects; Markets
- Abstract:** The problem of causality in economics is still contested by various neoinstitutionalists. The received view of Darwinism in economics and examines the way in which causal ground is concepts and assumptions that reflect causal characteristics of the natural world that rule the contingent pattern plays in understanding socioeconomic change is examined in a rule-based causal mechanism. The article concludes on the merits of equivalent of interdisciplinary studies as one possible standard in relevance to which the adequacy of any paper. [ABSTRACT FROM AUTHOR]
- ISSN:** 00220240
- DOI:** 10.1111/j.1530-7159.2011.00807.x (7)
- Accession Number:** 94652921
- Database:** CrossRef Full Text Select (H.W. Wilson)

Reprinted by permission of EBSCO Publishing.

1 Author(s): Cojari, Valentin

4 Source: American Journal of Economics & Sociology; Jan2011, Vol. 72 Issue 1, p179-198, 20p, 1 Chart.

2

5

6

For more on citing articles from a database in APA style, see items 13–15.





■ **15. Article in a newspaper (cont.)**

**b. Web**

author: last name + initial(s)      year + month + day      article title  
 Villanueva-Whitman, E. (2012, November 27). Working to stimulate  
 newspaper title  
 memory function. *Des Moines Register*. Retrieved from  
 URL for home page  
<http://www.desmoinesregister.com/>

■ **16. Abstract** Add the label “Abstract,” in brackets, after the title.

**a. Abstract of a journal article**

Morales, J., Calvo, A., & Bialystok, E. (2013). Working memory development in monolingual and bilingual children [Abstract]. *Journal of Experimental Child Psychology*, *114*, 187-202. Retrieved from <http://www.sciencedirect.com/>

**b. Abstract of a paper**

Denham, B. (2012). Diffusing deviant behavior: A communication perspective on the construction of moral panics [Abstract]. Paper presented at the AEJMC 2012 Conference, Chicago, IL. Retrieved from <http://www.aejmc.org/home/2012/04/ctm-2012-abstracts/>

■ **17. Supplemental material** If an article on the Web contains supplemental material that is not part of the main article, cite the material as you would an article and add the label “Supplemental material” in brackets following the title.

Reis, S., Grennfelt, P., Klimont, Z., Amann, M., ApSimon, H., Hettelingh, J.-P., . . . Williams, M. (2012). From acid rain to climate change [Supplemental material]. *Science* *338*(6111), 1153-1154. doi:10.1126/science.1226514

■ **18. Article with a title in its title** If an article title contains another article title or a term usually placed in quotation marks, use quotation marks around the internal title or the term.

Easterling, D., & Millesen, J. L. (2012, Summer). Diversifying civic leadership: What it takes to move from “new faces” to adaptive

problem solving. *National Civic Review*, 20-27. doi:10.1002/ncr.21073

- **19. Letter to the editor** Insert the words “Letter to the editor” in brackets after the title of the letter. If the letter has no title, use the bracketed words as the title (as in the following example).

Lim, C. (2012, November-December). [Letter to the editor]. *Sierra*. Retrieved from <http://www.sierraclub.org/sierra/>

- **20. Editorial or other unsigned article**

The business case for transit dollars [Editorial]. (2012, December 9). *Star Tribune*. Retrieved from <http://www.startribune.com/>

- **21. Newsletter article** Cite as you would an article in a magazine, giving whatever publication information is available (volume, issue, page numbers, and so on).

Scrivener, L. (n.d.). Why is the minimum wage issue important for food justice advocates? *Food Workers—Food Justice*, 15. Retrieved from <http://www.thedatabank.com/dpg/199/pm.asp?nav=1&ID=41429>

- **22. Review** Give the author and title of the review (if any) and, in brackets, the type of work, the title, and the author for a book or the year for a film. If the review has no author or title, use the material in brackets as the title.

author of review (journal) year book title  
Aviram, R. B. (2012). [Review of the book *What do I say? The therapist's*

*guide to answering client questions*, by L. N. Edelstein & C. A. Waehler].

journal title volume, issue page(s) DOI  
*Psychotherapy*, 49(4), 570-571. doi:10.1037/a0029815

author(s) year (journal) review title  
Bradley, A., & Olufs, E. (2012). Family dynamics and school violence

[Review of the motion picture *We need to talk about Kevin*, 2011].

journal title volume, issue DOI  
*PsycCRITIQUES*, 57(49). doi:10.1037/a0030982

- **23. Published interview** Begin with the person interviewed, and put the interviewer in brackets following the title (if any).

Githongo, J. (2012, November 20). A conversation with John Githongo [Interview by Baobab]. *The Economist*. Retrieved from <http://www.economist.com/>

- **24. Article in a reference work (encyclopedia, dictionary, wiki)**

**a. Print** See also item 32 on citing a volume in a multivolume work.

Konijn, E. A. (2008). Affects and media exposure. In W. Donsbach (Ed.), *The international encyclopedia of communication* (Vol. 1, pp. 123-129). Malden, MA: Blackwell.

**b. Web**

Ethnomethodology. (2006). In *STS wiki*. Retrieved December 15, 2012, from <http://www.stswiki.org/index.php?title=Ethnomethodology>

- **25. Comment on an online article** Begin with the writer's real name or screen name. If both are given, put the real name first, followed by the screen name in brackets. Before the title, use "Re" and a colon. Add "Comment" in brackets following the title.

Danboy125. (2012, November 9). Re: No flowers on the psych ward [Comment]. *The Atlantic*. Retrieved from <http://www.theatlantic.com/>

- **26. Testimony before a legislative body**

Carmona, R. H. (2004, March 2). *The growing epidemic of childhood obesity*. Testimony before the Subcommittee on Competition, Foreign Commerce, and Infrastructure of the U.S. Senate Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation. Retrieved from <http://www.hhs.gov/asl/testify/t040302.html>

- **27. Paper presented at a meeting or symposium (unpublished)**

Karimi, S., Key, G., & Tat, D. (2011, April 22). *Complex predicates in focus*. Paper presented at the West Coast Conference on Formal Linguistics, Tucson, AZ.

## ■ 28. Poster session at a conference

Lacara, N. (2011, April 24). *Predicate which appositives*. Poster session presented at the West Coast Conference on Formal Linguistics, Tucson, AZ.

## Books and other long works

► Citation at a glance: Book, [page 568](#)

## ■ 29. Basic format for a book

### a. Print

author(s):  
last name  
+ initial(s)      year      book title

Child, B. J. (2012). *Holding our world together: Ojibwe women and the survival of community*.  
place of publication      publisher  
New York, NY: Viking.

**b. Web (or online library)** Give the URL for the home page of the Web site or the online library.

author(s)      year      book title

Amponsah, N. A., & Falola, T. (2012). *Women's roles in sub-Saharan Africa*.  
URL  
Retrieved from <http://books.google.com/>

**c. E-book** Give the version in brackets after the title (“Kindle version,” “Nook version,” and so on). Include the DOI or, if a DOI is not available, the URL for the home page of the site from which you downloaded the book.

Wolf, D. A., & Folbre, N. (Eds.). (2012). *Universal coverage of long-term care in the United States* [Adobe Digital Editions version]. Retrieved from <https://www.russellsage.org/>

**d. Database** Give the URL for the database.

Beasley, M. H. (2012). *Women of the Washington press: Politics, prejudice, and persistence*. Retrieved from <http://muse.jhu.edu/>

# Citation at a glance

## Book (APA)

To cite a print book in APA style, include the following elements:

- |   |                     |   |                      |
|---|---------------------|---|----------------------|
| 1 | Author(s)           | 4 | Place of publication |
| 2 | Year of publication | 5 | Publisher            |
| 3 | Title and subtitle  |   |                      |

### TITLE PAGE

**3**

# CITY

**A GUIDEBOOK FOR THE URBAN AGE**

**1 P. D. SMITH**

**FROM COPYRIGHT PAGE**

First published in Great Britain and the USA in 2012 **2**

Bloomsbury Publishing Plc, 50 Bedford Square, London WC1B 3DP  
Bloomsbury USA, 175 Fifth Avenue, New York, NY 10010

Copyright © 2012 by P. D. Smith

BLOOMSBURY  
LONDON • BERLIN • NEW YORK • SYDNEY

**5** BLOOMSBURY  
**4** LONDON • BERLIN • NEW YORK • SYDNEY

### REFERENCE LIST ENTRY FOR A PRINT BOOK

**1** Smith, P. D. (2012). *City: A guidebook for the urban age*. **2** London, England: **3** **4** **5** Bloomsbury.

For more on citing books in APA style, see items 29–37.

- **30. Edition other than the first** Include the edition number (abbreviated) in parentheses after the title.

Harvey, P. (2013). *An introduction to Buddhism: Teachings, history, and practices* (2nd ed.). Cambridge, England: Cambridge University Press.

- **31. Selection in an anthology or a collection** An anthology is a collection of works on a common theme, often with different authors for the selections and usually with an editor for the entire volume.

**a. Entire anthology**

Warren, A. E. A., Lerner, R. M., & Phelps, E. (Eds.). (2011). *Thriving and spirituality among youth: Research perspectives and future possibilities*. Hoboken, NJ: Wiley.

**b. Selection in an anthology**

Lazar, S. W. (2012). Neural correlates of positive youth development. In A. E. A. Warren, R. M. Lerner, & E. Phelps (Eds.), *Thriving and spirituality among youth: Research perspectives and future possibilities* (pp. 77-90). Hoboken, NJ: Wiley.

- **32. Multivolume work** If the volumes have been published over several years, give the span of years in parentheses. If you have used only one volume of a multivolume work, indicate the volume number after the title of the complete work; if the volume has its own title, add that title after the volume number.

**a. All volumes**

Khalakdina, M. (2008-2011). *Human development in the Indian context: A socio-cultural focus* (Vols. 1-2). New Delhi, India: Sage.

**b. One volume, with title**

Jensen, R. E. (Ed.). (2012). *Voices of the American West: Vol. 1. The Indian interviews of Eli S. Ricker, 1903-1919*. Lincoln: University of Nebraska Press.

**■ 33. Introduction, preface, foreword, or afterword**

Zachary, L. J. (2012). Foreword. In L. A. Daloz, *Mentor: Guiding the journey of adult learners* (pp. v-vii). San Francisco, CA: Jossey-Bass.

**■ 34. Dictionary or other reference work**

Leong, F. T. L. (Ed.). (2008). *Encyclopedia of counseling* (Vols. 1-4). Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage.

Nichols, J. D., & Nyholm, E. (2012). *A concise dictionary of Minnesota Ojibwe*. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press.

**■ 35. Republished book**

Mailer, N. (2008). *Miami and the siege of Chicago: An informal history of the Republican and Democratic conventions of 1968*. New York, NY: New York Review Books. (Original work published 1968)

**■ 36. Book with a title in its title** If the book title contains another book title or an article title, do not italicize the internal title and do not put quotation marks around it.

Marcus, L. (Ed.). (1999). *Sigmund Freud's The interpretation of dreams: New interdisciplinary essays*. Manchester, England: Manchester University Press.

**■ 37. Book in a language other than English** Place the English translation, not italicized, in brackets.

Carminati, G. G., & Méndez, A. (2012). *Étapes de vie, étapes de soins* [Stages of life, stages of care]. Chêne-Bourg, Switzerland: Médecine & Hygiène.

**■ 38. Dissertation****a. Published**

Hymel, K. M. (2009). *Essays in urban economics* (Doctoral dissertation). Available from ProQuest Dissertations and Theses database. (AAT 3355930)



**b. Unpublished**

Mitchell, R. D. (2007). *The Wesleyan Quadrilateral: Relocating the conversation* (Unpublished doctoral dissertation). Claremont School of Theology, Claremont, CA.

**39. Conference proceedings**

Yu, F.-Y., Hirashima, T., Supnithi, T., & Biswas, G. (2011). *Proceedings of the 19th International Conference on Computers in Education: ICCE 2011*. Retrieved from <http://www.apsce.net:8080/icce2011/program/proceedings/>

**40. Government document** If the document has a number, place the number in parentheses after the title.

U.S. Transportation Department, Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration. (2012). *Emergency response guidebook 2012*. Washington, DC: Author.

U.S. Census Bureau, Bureau of Economic Analysis. (2012, December). *U.S. international trade in goods and services, October 2012* (Report No. CB12-232, BEA12-55, FT-900 [12-10]). Retrieved from <http://www.census.gov/foreign-trade/Press-Release/2012pr/10/>

**41. Report from a private organization** If the publisher and the author are the same, begin with the publisher. For a print source, use "Author" as the publisher at the end of the entry (see item 4 on p. 556); for an online source, give the URL. If the report has a number, put it in parentheses following the title.

Ford Foundation. (2012, November). *Eastern Africa*. Retrieved from <http://www.fordfoundation.org/pdfs/library/Eastern-Africa-brochure-2012.pdf>

Atwood, B., Beam, M., Hindman, D. B., Hindman, E. B., Pintak, L., & Shors, B. (2012, May 25). *The Murrow Rural Information Initiative: Final report*. Pullman: Murrow College of Communication, Washington State University.

**42. Legal source** The title of a court case is italicized in an in-text citation, but it is not italicized in the reference list.

Sweatt v. Painter, 339 U.S. 629 (1950). Retrieved from Cornell University Law School, Legal Information Institute website: [http://www.law.cornell.edu/supct/html/historics/USSC\\_CR\\_0339\\_0629\\_ZS.html](http://www.law.cornell.edu/supct/html/historics/USSC_CR_0339_0629_ZS.html)

■ **43. Sacred or classical text** It is not necessary to list sacred works such as the Bible or the Qur'an or classical Greek and Roman works (such as the *Odyssey*) in your reference list. See item 19 on page 553 for how to cite these sources in the text of your paper.

### Web sites and parts of Web sites

► Citation at a glance: Section in a Web document, [page 576](#)

**NOTE:** In an APA paper or an APA reference list entry, the word “website” is spelled all lowercase, as one word.

■ **44. Entire Web site** Do not include an entire Web site in the reference list. Give the URL in parentheses when you mention it in the text of your paper. (See item 13 on p. 552.)

■ **45. Document from a Web site** List as many of the following elements as are available: author's name, publication date (or “n.d.” if there is no date), title (in italics), publisher (if any), and URL. If the publisher is known and is not named as the author, include the publisher in your retrieval statement.

Wagner, D. A., Murphy, K. M., & De Korne, H. (2012, December).

*Learning first: A research agenda for improving learning in low-income countries.* Retrieved from Brookings Institution website: <http://www.brookings.edu/research/papers/2012/12/learning-first-wagner-murphy-de-korne>

Gerber, A. S., & Green, D. P. (2012). *Field experiments: Design, analysis, and interpretation.* Retrieved from Yale Institution for Social and Policy

Studies website: <http://isps.yale.edu/research/data/d081#.UUy2HFdPL5w>

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2012, December 10).

*Concussion in winter sports.* Retrieved from <http://www.cdc.gov/Features/HockeyConcussions/index.html>

■ **46. Section in a Web document** Cite as you would a chapter in a book or a selection in an anthology (see item 31b on p. 569).

Pew Research Center. (2012, December 12). About the 2012 Pew global attitudes survey. In *Social networking popular across globe.* Retrieved from <http://www.pewglobal.org/2012/12/12/social-networking-popular-across-globe>

Chang, W.-Y., & Milan, L. M. (2012, October). Relationship between degree field and emigration. In *International mobility and employment characteristics among recent recipients of U.S. doctorates*. Retrieved from National Science Foundation website: <http://www.nsf.gov/statistics/infbrief/nsf13300>

■ **47. Blog post** Begin with the writer's real name or screen name. If both are given, put the real name first, followed by the screen name in brackets. Add the date of the post (or "n.d." if the post is undated). Place the label "Blog post" in brackets following the title of the post. If there is no title, use the bracketed material as the title. End with the URL for the post.

Kerssen, T. (2012, October 5). Hunger is political: Food Sovereignty Prize honors social movements [Blog post]. Retrieved from <http://www.foodfirst.org/en/node/4020>

■ **48. Blog comment** Cite as a blog post, but add "Re" and a colon before the title of the original post and the label "Blog comment" in brackets following the title.

Studebakerhawk\_14611. (2012, December 5). Re: A people's history of MOOCs [Blog comment]. Retrieved from <http://www.insidehighered.com/blogs/library-babel-fish/people's-history-moocs>

### Audio, visual, and multimedia sources

■ **49. Podcast**

Schulz, K. (2011, March). *Kathryn Schulz: On being wrong* [Video podcast]. Retrieved from TED on <http://itunes.apple.com/>

Taylor, A., & Parfitt, G. (2011, January 13). *Physical activity and mental health: What's the evidence?* [Audio podcast]. Retrieved from Open University on <http://itunes.apple.com/>

■ **50. Video or audio on the Web**

Kurzen, B. (2012, April 5). *Going beyond Muslim-Christian conflict in Nigeria* [Video file]. Retrieved from <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=JD8MIJOA050>

**■ 50. Video or audio on the Web (cont.)**

Malone, T. W. *Collective intelligence* [Video file]. Retrieved from <http://edge.org/conversation/collective-intelligence>

Bever, T., Piattelli-Palmarini, M., Hammond, M., Barss, A., & Bergesen, A. (2012, February 2). *A basic introduction to Chomsky's linguistics* [Audio file]. Retrieved from University of Arizona, College of Social & Behavioral Sciences, Department of Linguistics website: <http://linguistics.arizona.edu/node/711>

**■ 51. Transcript of an audio or a video file**

Malone, T. W. *Collective intelligence* [Transcript of video file]. Retrieved from <http://edge.org/conversation/collective-intelligence>

Glass, I. (2012, September 14). *Back to school* [Transcript of audio file No. 474]. In *This American life*. Retrieved from <http://www.thisamericanlife.org/>

**■ 52. Film (DVD, BD, or other format)** Give the director, producer, and other relevant contributors, followed by the year of the film's release and the title. In brackets, add a description of the medium. Use "Motion picture" if you viewed the film in a theater; "Video file" if you downloaded the film from the Web or through a streaming service such as Netflix; "DVD" or "BD" if you viewed the film on DVD or Blu-ray Disc. For a motion picture or a DVD or BD, add the location where the film was made and the studio. If you retrieved the film from the Web or used a streaming service, give the URL for the home page.

Affleck, B. (Director). (2012). *Argo* [Motion picture]. Burbank, CA: Warner Bros.

Ross, G. (Director and Writer), & Collins, S. (Writer). (2012). *The hunger games* [Video file]. Retrieved from <http://netflix.com/>

**■ 53. Television or radio program****a. Series**

Hager, M. (Executive producer), & Schieffer, B. (Moderator). (2012). *Face the nation* [Television series]. Washington, DC: CBS News.

**b. Episode on the air**

Harleston, R. (Host). (2012, December 1). Federal role in support of autism [Television series episode]. In *Washington journal*. Washington, DC: C-SPAN.

**c. Episode on the Web**

- Morton, D. (Producer). (2012). Fast times at West Philly High [Television series episode]. In M. Hager (Executive producer), *Frontline*. Retrieved from <http://www.wgbh.org/>
- Glass, I. (Host). (2012, November 23). Little war on the prairie (No. 479) [Radio series episode]. In *This American life*. Retrieved from <http://www.thisamericanlife.org/>

**■ 54. Music recording**

Chibalonza, A. Jubilee. (2012). *On African voices* [CD]. Merenberg, Germany: ZYX Music.

*African voices* [CD]. (2012). Merenberg, Germany: ZYX Music.

**■ 55. Lecture, speech, or address**

Verghese, A. (2012, December 6). *Colonialism and patterns of ethnic conflict in contemporary India*. Address at the Freeman Spogli Institute, Stanford University, Stanford, CA.

Donovan, S. (2012, June 12). *Assisted housing mobility in challenging times* [Video file]. Address at the 5th National Conference on Assisted Housing Mobility, Urban Institute, Washington, DC. Retrieved from <http://www.urban.org/events/HUD-Secretary-Shaun-Donovan-Speaks-on-Housing-Mobility.cfm>

**■ 56. Data set or graphic representation of data (graph, chart, table)** Give information about the type of source in brackets following the title. If there is no title, give a brief description of the content of the source in brackets in place of the title. If the item is numbered in the source, indicate the number in parentheses after the title. If the graphic appears within a larger document, do not italicize the title of the graphic.

U.S. Department of Agriculture, Economic Research Service. (2011). *Daily intake of nutrients by food source: 2005-08* [Data set]. Retrieved from <http://www.ers.usda.gov/data-products/food-consumption-and-nutrient-intakes.aspx>

# Citation at a glance

## Section in a Web document (APA)

To cite a section in a Web document in APA style, include the following elements:

- 1 Author(s)
- 2 Date of publication or most recent update (“n.d.” if there is no date)
- 3 Title of section
- 4 Title of document
- 5 URL of section

### WEB DOCUMENT CONTENTS PAGE

The screenshot shows the Minnesota Department of Health website. The main content area features the title "2010 Minnesota Health Statistics Annual Summary" and a brief description of the report. Below the description is a list of "Individual Sections" with links to PDF files. A callout box points to the "Fertility (PDF: 14KB/2 pages)" link.

3 Fertility (PDF: 14KB/2 pages)

5

<http://www.health.state.mn.us/divs/chs/annsum/10annsum/Fertility2010.pdf>

## ON-SCREEN VIEW OF DOCUMENT

Family Table I  
Total Reported Pregnancies by Outcome and Rate  
Minnesota Residents, 1961 - 2010

Year	Total Reported Pregnancies*	Live Births	Infant Abortions	Total Deaths	Female Population Ages 13-44	Pregnancy Rate**
1961	64,934	68,652	13,831	461	967,867	67.8
1962	64,526	68,812	13,539	429	977,005	66.4
1963	60,536	65,559	14,514	457	981,287	62.1
1964	62,716	66,718	15,216	469	985,608	63.9
1965	63,853	67,432	16,002	459	984,549	64.3
1966	61,862	65,766	15,716	400	997,501	62.1
1967	61,318	65,168	15,746	404	1,004,801	60.9
1968	63,335	66,745	16,124	466	1,020,209	61.7
1969	63,426	67,480	15,506	430	1,024,376	61.4
1970	63,714	67,985	15,280	419	1,025,919	61.6
1971	61,964	67,837	14,441	476	1,036,146	59.8
1972	59,844	65,984	13,846	407	1,049,172	56.1
1973	77,939	64,646	17,915	338	1,060,246	73.3
1974	78,344	64,237	13,702	368	1,073,649	73.0
1975	76,338	63,259	12,715	364	1,053,136	72.5
1976	76,908	65,681	12,876	352	1,066,230	72.1
1977	77,856	64,481	12,997	362	1,059,544	74.1
1978	78,846	65,207	13,100	309	1,054,458	74.8
1979	79,374	65,953	13,037	384	1,054,543	75.3
1980	81,838	67,483	13,210	398	1,082,682	74.9

Courtesy of the Minnesota Department of Health.

## REFERENCE LIST ENTRY FOR A SECTION IN A WEB DOCUMENT

Minnesota Department of Health. (n.d.). Fertility. In *2010 Minnesota health statistics annual summary*. Retrieved from <http://www.health.state.mn.us/divs/chs/annsum/10annsum/Fertility2010.pdf>

For more on citing documents from Web sites in APA style, see items 45 and 46.

**■ 56. Data set or graphic representation of data (cont.)**

Gallup. (2012, December 5). *In U.S., more cite obesity as most urgent health problem* [Graphs]. Retrieved from <http://www.gallup.com/poll/159083/cite-obesity-urgent-health-problem.aspx>

**■ 57. Mobile application software (app)** Begin with the developer of the app, if known (as in the second example).

MindNode Touch 2.3 [Mobile application software]. (2012). Retrieved from <http://itunes.apple.com/>

Source Tree Solutions. (2012). *mojoPortal* [Mobile application software]. Retrieved from <http://www.microsoft.com/web/gallery/>

**■ 58. Video game** Begin with the creator of the video game, if known. Add the label “Video game” in brackets after the title of the program. If the game can be played on the Web or was downloaded from the Web, give the URL instead of publication information.

Firaxis Games. (2010). *Sid Meier’s Civilization V* [Video game]. New York, NY: Take-Two Interactive. Xbox 360.

Atom Entertainment. (2012). *Edgeworld* [Video game]. Retrieved from <http://www.addictinggames.com/>

**■ 59. Map**

Ukraine [Map]. (2008). Retrieved from the University of Texas at Austin Perry-Castañeda Library Map Collection website: [http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/cia08/ukraine\\_sm\\_2008.gif](http://www.lib.utexas.edu/maps/cia08/ukraine_sm_2008.gif)

Syrian uprising map [Map]. (2012, October). Retrieved from <http://www.polgeonow.com/2012/10/syria-uprising-map-october-2012-7.html>

**■ 60. Advertisement**

VMware [Advertisement]. (2012, September). *Harvard Business Review*, 90(9), 27.

**■ 61. Work of art or photograph**

Olson, A. (2011). *Short story* [Painting]. Museum of Contemporary Art, Chicago, IL.

Crowner, S. (2012). *Kurtyna fragments* [Painting]. Retrieved from <http://www.walkerart.org/>



Weber, J. (1992). *Toward freedom* [Outdoor mural]. Sherman Oaks, CA.

## ■ 62. Brochure or fact sheet

National Council of State Boards of Nursing. (2011). *A nurse's guide to professional boundaries* [Brochure]. Retrieved from <https://www.ncsbn.org/>

World Health Organization. (2012, September). *Road traffic injuries* (No. 358) [Fact sheet]. Retrieved from <http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs358/en/index.html>

■ **63. Press release** Generally, list the organization responsible for the press release. Give the exact date.

Urban Institute. (2012, October 11). Two studies address health policy on campaign trail [Press release]. Retrieved from <http://www.urban.org/publications/901537.html>

## ■ 64. Presentation slides

Boeninger, C. F. (2008, August). *Web 2.0 tools for reference and instructional services* [Presentation slides]. Retrieved from <http://libraryvoice.com/archives/2008/08/04/opal-20-conference-presentation-slides>

■ **65. Lecture notes or other course materials** Cite materials that your instructor has posted on the Web as you would a Web document or a section in a Web document (see item 45 or 46). If the materials are handouts or printouts, cite whatever information is available in the source. Cite the instructor's personal notes or material that is not posted (such as slides) as personal communication in the text of your paper (see items 15 and 16 on p. 552).

Blum, R. (2011). Neurodevelopment in the first decade of life [Lecture notes and audio file]. In R. Blum & L. M. Blum, *Child health and development*. Retrieved from <http://ocw.jhsph.edu/index.cfm/go/viewCourse/course/childhealth/coursePage/lectureNotes/>

## Personal communication and social media

■ **66. E-mail** E-mail messages, letters, and other personal communication are not included in the list of references. (See item 15 on p. 552 for citing these sources in the text of your paper.)

■ **67. Online posting** If an online posting is not archived, cite it as a personal communication in the text of your paper and do not include it in the list of references. If the posting is archived, give the URL and the name of the discussion list if it is not part of the URL.

McKinney, J. (2006, December 19). Adult education-healthcare partnerships [Electronic mailing list message]. Retrieved from <http://www.nifl.gov/pipermail/healthliteracy/2006/000524.html>

■ **68. Twitter post (tweet)** Use the author's real name, if it is given, and put the screen name in brackets exactly as it appears in the source (including capitalization and punctuation). If only the screen name is known, begin with that name and do not enclose it in brackets. Include the entire text of the tweet as the title, followed by the label "Tweet" in brackets; end with the URL.

CQ Researcher. (2012, December 5). Up to 80 percent of the 600,000 processed foods sold in America have sugar added to their recipes. See <http://bit.ly/UmfA4L> [Tweet]. Retrieved from <https://twitter.com/cqresearcher/status/276449095521038336>

■ **69. Facebook post** Use the author's name exactly as it appears in the post. In place of a title, give a few words of the post followed by the label "Facebook post" in brackets. Include the date you retrieved the source and the URL for the poster's Facebook page. If you are citing a personal Facebook page that will not be accessible to your readers, cite it as personal communication in your text, not in the reference list (see item 15 on p. 552).

U.S. Department of Education. (2012, October 9). They are resilient [Facebook post]. Retrieved October 15, 2012, from <http://www.facebook.com/ED.gov>

## 62 APA manuscript format; sample research paper

The guidelines in this section are consistent with advice given in the *Publication Manual of the American Psychological Association*, 6th ed. (Washington, DC: APA, 2010), and with typical requirements for undergraduate papers.

## 62a APA manuscript format

### Formatting the paper

The guidelines on pages 581–83 describe APA’s recommendations for formatting the text of your paper. For guidelines on preparing the reference list, see pages 583–84.

**Font** If your instructor does not require a specific font, choose one that is standard and easy to read (such as Times New Roman).

**Title page** Begin at the top left, with the words “Running head,” followed by a colon and the title of your paper (shortened to no more than fifty characters) in all capital letters. Put the page number 1 flush with the right margin.

About halfway down the page, on separate lines, center the full title of your paper, your name, and your school’s name. At the bottom of the page, you may add the heading “Author Note,” centered, followed by a brief paragraph that lists specific information about the course or department or provides acknowledgments or contact information. See page 585 for a sample title page.

**Page numbers and running head** Number all pages with arabic numerals (1, 2, 3, and so on) in the upper right corner one-half inch from the top of the page. Flush with the left margin on the same line as the page number, type a running head consisting of the title of the paper (shortened to no more than fifty characters) in all capital letters. On the title page only, include the words “Running head” followed by a colon before the title. See pages 585–96.

**Margins, line spacing, and paragraph indents** Use margins of one inch on all sides of the page. Left-align the text.

Double-space throughout the paper. Indent the first line of each paragraph one-half inch.

**Capitalization, italics, and quotation marks** In headings and in titles of works that appear in the text of the paper, capitalize all words of four letters or more (and all nouns, pronouns, verbs, adjectives, and adverbs of any length). Capitalize the first word following a colon if the word begins a complete sentence.

In the body of your paper, italicize the titles of books, journals, magazines, and other long works, such as Web sites. Use quotation marks around the titles of articles, short stories, and other short works.

**NOTE:** APA has different requirements for titles in the reference list. See page 584.

**Long quotations** When a quotation is forty or more words, set it off from the text by indenting it one-half inch from the left margin. Double-space the quotation. Do not use quotation marks around it. (See p. 594 for an example. See also p. 541 for more information about integrating long quotations.)

**Footnotes** If you insert a footnote number in the text of your paper, place the number, raised above the line, immediately following any mark of punctuation except a dash. At the bottom of the page, begin the note with a one-half-inch indent and the superscript number corresponding to the number in the text. Insert an extra double-spaced line between the last line of text on the page and the footnote. Double-space the footnote. (See p. 587 for an example.)

**Abstract and keywords** An abstract is a 150-to-250-word paragraph that provides readers with a quick overview of your essay. It should express your main idea and your key points; it might also briefly suggest any implications or applications of the research you discuss in the paper.

If your instructor requires one, include an abstract on a new page after the title page. Center the word “Abstract” (in regular font, not boldface) one inch from the top of the page. Double-space the abstract and do not indent the first line.

A list of keywords follows the abstract; the keywords help readers search for a published paper on the Web or in a database. Leave one line of space after the abstract and begin the next line with the word “Keywords,” italicized and indented one-half inch, followed by a colon. Then list important words related to your paper. Check with your instructor for requirements in your course. (See p. 586 for an example of an abstract.)

**Headings** Although headings are not always necessary, their use is encouraged in the social sciences. For most undergraduate papers, one level of heading is usually sufficient. (See pp. 588–92.)

First-level headings are centered and boldface. In research papers and laboratory reports, the major headings are “Method,” “Results,” and “Discussion.” In other types of papers, the major headings should be informative and concise, conveying the structure of the paper.

Second-level headings are flush left and boldface. Third-level headings are indented and boldface, followed by a period and the text on the same line.

In first- and second-level headings, capitalize the first and last words and all words of four or more letters (and nouns, pronouns, verbs, adjectives, and adverbs of any length). In third-level headings, capitalize only the first word, any proper nouns, and the first word after a colon.

### First-Level Heading Centered

#### Second-Level Heading Flush Left

**Third-level heading indented.** Text immediately follows.

**Visuals (tables and figures)** APA classifies visuals as tables and figures (figures include graphs, charts, drawings, and photographs).

Label each table with an arabic numeral (Table 1, Table 2, and so on) and provide a clear title. Place the label and title on separate lines above the table, flush left and double-spaced. Type the table number in regular font; italicize the table title.

If you have used data from an outside source or have taken or adapted the table from a source, give the source information in a note below the table. Begin with the word “Note,” italicized and followed by a period. If any data in the table require an explanatory footnote, use a superscript lowercase letter in the table and in a footnote following the source note. Double-space source notes and footnotes; do not indent the first line of each note. (For an example of a note in a table, see p. 591.)

For each figure, place the figure number and a caption below the figure, flush left and double-spaced. Begin with the word “Figure” and an arabic numeral, both italicized, followed by a period. Place the caption, not italicized, on the same line. If you have taken or adapted the figure from an outside source, give the source information immediately following the caption. Use the term “From” or “Adapted from” before the source information.

In the text of your paper, discuss the most significant features of each visual. Place the visual as close as possible to the sentences that relate to it unless your instructor prefers that visuals appear in an appendix.

### Preparing the list of references

Begin your list of references on a new page at the end of the paper. Center the title “References” one inch from the top of the page. Double-space throughout. For a sample reference list, see page 595.

**Indenting entries** Type the first line of each entry flush left and indent any additional lines one-half inch.

**Alphabetizing the list** Alphabetize the reference list by the last names of the authors (or editors) or by the first word of an organization name (if the author is an organization). When a work has no author or editor, alphabetize by the first word of the title other than *A*, *An*, or *The*.

If your list includes two or more works by the same author, arrange the entries by year, the earliest first. If your list includes two or more works by the same author in the same year, arrange the works alphabetically by title. Add the letters “a,” “b,” and so on within the parentheses after the year. For journal articles, use only the year and the letter: (2012a). For articles in magazines and newspapers, use the full date and the letter in the reference list: (2012a, July 7); use only the year and the letter in the in-text citation.

**Authors’ names** Invert all authors’ names and use initials instead of first names. Separate the names with commas. For two to seven authors, use an ampersand (&) before the last author’s name. For eight or more authors, give the first six authors, three ellipsis dots, and the last author (see item 3 on p. 556).

**Titles of books and articles** In the reference list, italicize the titles and subtitles of books. Do not italicize or use quotation marks around the titles of articles. For both books and articles, capitalize only the first word of the title and subtitle (and all proper nouns). Capitalize names of journals, magazines, and newspapers as you would capitalize them normally (see 45c).

**Abbreviations for page numbers** Abbreviations for “page” and “pages” (“p.” and “pp.”) are used before page numbers of newspaper articles and selections in anthologies (see item 15 on p. 563 and item 31 on p. 569). Do not use “p.” or “pp.” before page numbers of articles in journals and magazines (see items 13 and 14 on pp. 559 and 563).

**Breaking a URL or DOI** When a URL or a DOI (digital object identifier) must be divided, break it after a double slash or before any other mark of punctuation. Do not insert a hyphen; do not add a period at the end.

## 62b Sample APA research paper

On the following pages is a research paper on the effectiveness of treatments for childhood obesity, written by Luisa Mirano, a student in a psychology class. Mirano’s assignment was to write a literature review paper documented with APA-style citations and references.



Running head: CAN MEDICATION CURE OBESITY IN CHILDREN? 1

A running head consists of a title (shortened to no more than fifty characters) in all capital letters. On the title page, it is preceded by the label "Running head." Page numbers appear in the upper right corner.

Can Medication Cure Obesity in Children?  
A Review of the Literature  
Luisa Mirano  
Northwest-Shoals Community College

Full title, writer's name, and school name are centered halfway down the page.

Author Note

This paper was prepared for Psychology 108, Section B, taught by Professor Kang.

An author's note lists specific information about the course or department and can provide acknowledgments and contact information.

## CAN MEDICATION CURE OBESITY IN CHILDREN?

2

## Abstract

In recent years, policymakers and medical experts have expressed alarm about the growing problem of childhood obesity in the United States. While most agree that the issue deserves attention, consensus dissolves around how to respond to the problem. This literature review examines one approach to treating childhood obesity: medication. The paper compares the effectiveness for adolescents of the only two drugs approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for long-term treatment of obesity, sibutramine and orlistat. This examination of pharmacological treatments for obesity points out the limitations of medication and suggests the need for a comprehensive solution that combines medical, social, behavioral, and political approaches to this complex problem.

*Keywords:* obesity, childhood, adolescence, medication, public policy

Abstract appears on a separate page. Heading is centered and not boldface.

Keywords help readers search for a paper on the Web or in a database.



## CAN MEDICATION CURE OBESITY IN CHILDREN?

3

## Can Medication Cure Obesity in Children?

## A Review of the Literature

In March 2004, U.S. Surgeon General Richard Carmona called attention to a health problem in the United States that, until recently, has been overlooked: childhood obesity. Carmona said that the “astounding” 15% child obesity rate constitutes an “epidemic.” Since the early 1980s, that rate has “doubled in children and tripled in adolescents.” Now more than nine million children are classified as obese.<sup>1</sup> While the traditional response to a medical epidemic is to hunt for a vaccine or a cure-all pill, childhood obesity is more elusive. The lack of success of recent initiatives suggests that medication might not be the answer for the escalating problem. This literature review considers whether the use of medication is a promising approach for solving the childhood obesity problem by responding to the following questions.

1. What are the implications of childhood obesity?
2. Is medication effective at treating childhood obesity?
3. Is medication safe for children?
4. Is medication the best solution?

Understanding the limitations of medical treatments for children highlights the complexity of the childhood obesity problem in the United States and underscores the need for physicians, advocacy groups, and policymakers to search for other solutions.

<sup>1</sup>Obesity is measured in terms of body-mass index (BMI): weight in kilograms divided by square of height in meters. A child or an adolescent with a BMI in the 95th percentile for his or her age and gender is considered obese.

Full title, centered and not boldface.

Mirano sets up her organization by posing four questions.

Mirano states her thesis.

Mirano uses a footnote to define an essential term that would be cumbersome to define within the text.

## CAN MEDICATION CURE OBESITY IN CHILDREN?

4

**What Are the Implications of Childhood Obesity?**

Obesity can be a devastating problem from both an individual and a societal perspective. Obesity puts children at risk for a number of medical complications, including Type 2 diabetes, hypertension, sleep apnea, and orthopedic problems (Henry J. Kaiser Family Foundation, 2004, p. 1). Researchers Hoppin and Taveras (2004) have noted that obesity is often associated with psychological issues such as anxiety, depression, and binge eating (Complications section, Table 4).

Obesity also poses serious problems for a society struggling to cope with rising health care costs. The cost of treating obesity currently totals \$117 billion per year—a price, according to the surgeon general, “second only to the cost of [treating] tobacco use” (Carmona, 2004). And as the number of children who suffer from obesity grows, long-term costs will only increase.

**Is Medication Effective at Treating Childhood Obesity?**

The widening scope of the obesity problem has prompted medical professionals to rethink old conceptions of the disorder and its causes. As researchers Yanovski and Yanovski (2002) have explained, obesity was once considered “either a moral failing or evidence of underlying psychopathology” (p. 592). But this view has shifted: Many medical professionals now consider obesity a biomedical rather than a moral condition, influenced by both genetic and environmental factors. Yanovski and Yanovski have further noted that the development of weight-loss medications in the early 1990s showed that “obesity should be treated in the same manner as any other chronic disease . . . through the long-term use of medication” (p. 592).

Headings, centered and boldface, help readers follow the organization.

In a signal phrase, the word “and” links the names of two authors; the date is given in parentheses.

Because the author (Carmona) is not named in the signal phrase, his name and the date appear in parentheses.

Ellipsis mark indicates omitted words.

## CAN MEDICATION CURE OBESITY IN CHILDREN?

5

The search for the right long-term medication has been complicated. Many of the drugs authorized by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) in the early 1990s proved to be a disappointment. Two of the medications—fenfluramine and dexfenfluramine—were withdrawn from the market because of severe side effects (Yanovski & Yanovski, 2002, p. 592), and several others were classified by the Drug Enforcement Administration as having the “potential for abuse” (Hoppin & Taveras, 2004, Weight-Loss Drugs section, para. 6). Currently only two medications have been approved by the FDA for long-term treatment of obesity: sibutramine (marketed as Meridia) and orlistat (marketed as Xenical). This section compares studies on the effectiveness of each.

Sibutramine suppresses appetite by blocking the reuptake of the neurotransmitters serotonin and norepinephrine in the brain (Yanovski & Yanovski, 2002, p. 594). Though the drug won FDA approval in 1998, experiments to test its effectiveness for younger patients came considerably later. In 2003, University of Pennsylvania researchers Berkowitz, Wadden, Tershakovec, and Cronquist released the first double-blind placebo study testing the effect of sibutramine on adolescents, aged 13-17, over a 12-month period. Their findings are summarized in Table 1. After 6 months, the group receiving medication had lost 4.6 kg (about 10 pounds) more than the control group. But during the second half of the study, when both groups received sibutramine, the results were more ambiguous. In months 6-12, the group that continued to take sibutramine gained an average of 0.8 kg, or roughly 2 pounds; the control group, which switched from placebo to sibutramine, lost 1.3 kg, or roughly 3 pounds (Berkowitz et al., 2003,

In a parenthetical citation, an ampersand links the names of two authors.

Mirano draws attention to an important article.

## CAN MEDICATION CURE OBESITY IN CHILDREN?

6

p. 1808). Both groups received behavioral therapy covering diet, exercise, and mental health.

These results paint a murky picture of the effectiveness of the medication: While initial data seemed promising, the results after one year raised questions about whether medication-induced weight loss could be sustained over time. As Berkowitz et al. (2003) advised, "Until more extensive safety and efficacy data are available, . . . weight-loss medications should be used only on an experimental basis for adolescents" (p. 1811).

A study testing the effectiveness of orlistat in adolescents showed similarly ambiguous results. The FDA approved orlistat in 1999 but did not authorize it for adolescents until December 2003. Roche Laboratories (2003), maker of orlistat, released results of a one-year study testing the drug on 539 obese adolescents, aged 12-16. The drug, which promotes weight loss by blocking fat absorption in the large intestine, showed some effectiveness in adolescents: an average loss of 1.3 kg, or roughly 3 pounds, for subjects taking orlistat for one year, as opposed to an average gain of 0.67 kg, or 1.5 pounds, for the control group (pp. 8-9). See Table 1.

Short-term studies of orlistat have shown slightly more dramatic results. Researchers at the National Institute of Child Health and Human Development tested 20 adolescents, aged 12-16, over a three-month period and found that orlistat, combined with behavioral therapy, produced an average weight loss of 4.4 kg, or 9.7 pounds (McDuffie et al., 2002, p. 646). The study was not controlled against a placebo group; therefore, the relative effectiveness of orlistat in this case remains unclear.

When this article was first cited, all four authors were named. In subsequent citations of a work with three to five authors, "et al." is used after the first author's name.

For a source with six or more authors, the first author's surname followed by "et al." is used for the first and subsequent references.

## CAN MEDICATION CURE OBESITY IN CHILDREN?

7

Table 1

*Effectiveness of Sibutramine and Orlistat in Adolescents*

Medication	Subjects	Treatment <sup>a</sup>	Side effects	Average weight loss/gain
Sibutramine	Control	0-6 mos.: placebo	Mos. 6-12: increased blood pressure; increased pulse rate	After 6 mos.: loss of 3.2 kg (7 lb)
		6-12 mos.: sibutramine		After 12 mos.: loss of 4.5 kg (9.9 lb)
Sibutramine	Medicated	0-12 mos.: sibutramine	Increased blood pressure; increased pulse rate	After 6 mos.: loss of 7.8 kg (17.2 lb)
				After 12 mos.: loss of 7.0 kg (15.4 lb)
Orlistat	Control	0-12 mos.: placebo	None	Gain of 0.67 kg (1.5 lb)
		Medicated		0-12 mos.: orlistat
				Loss of 1.3 kg (2.9 lb)

Mirano uses a table to summarize the findings presented in two sources.

*Note.* The data on sibutramine are adapted from “Behavior Therapy and Sibutramine for the Treatment of Adolescent Obesity,” by R. I. Berkowitz, T. A. Wadden, A. M. Tershakovec, & J. L. Cronquist, 2003, *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 289, pp. 1807–1809. The data on orlistat are adapted from *Xenical (Orlistat) Capsules: Complete Product Information*, by Roche Laboratories, December 2003, retrieved from <http://www.rocheusa.com/products/xenical/pi.pdf>

<sup>a</sup>The medication and/or placebo were combined with behavioral therapy in all groups over all time periods.

A note gives the source of the data.

A content note explains data common to all subjects.

## CAN MEDICATION CURE OBESITY IN CHILDREN?

8

**Is Medication Safe for Children?**

While modest weight loss has been documented for both medications, each carries risks of certain side effects. Sibutramine has been observed to increase blood pressure and pulse rate. In 2002, a consumer group claimed that the medication was related to the deaths of 19 people and filed a petition with the Department of Health and Human Services to ban the medication (Hilts, 2002). The sibutramine study by Berkowitz et al. (2003) noted elevated blood pressure as a side effect, and dosages had to be reduced or the medication discontinued in 19 of the 43 subjects in the first six months (p. 1809).

The main side effects associated with orlistat were abdominal discomfort, oily spotting, fecal incontinence, and nausea (Roche Laboratories, 2003, p. 13). More serious for long-term health is the concern that orlistat, being a fat-blocker, would affect absorption of fat-soluble vitamins, such as vitamin D. However, the study found that this side effect can be minimized or eliminated if patients take vitamin supplements two hours before or after administration of orlistat (p. 10). With close monitoring of patients taking the medication, many of the risks can be reduced.

**Is Medication the Best Solution?**

The data on the safety and efficacy of pharmacological treatments of childhood obesity raise the question of whether medication is the best solution for the problem. The treatments have clear costs for individual patients, including unpleasant side effects, little information about long-term use, and uncertainty that they will yield significant weight loss.

## CAN MEDICATION CURE OBESITY IN CHILDREN?

8

In purely financial terms, the drugs cost more than \$3 a day on average (Duenwald, 2004). In each of the clinical trials, use of medication was accompanied by an expensive regime of behavioral therapies, including counseling, nutritional education, fitness advising, and monitoring. As journalist Greg Critser (2003) noted in his book *Fat Land*, use of weight-loss drugs is unlikely to have an effect without the proper “support system”—one that includes doctors, facilities, time, and money (p. 3). For some, this level of care is prohibitively expensive.

A third complication is that the studies focused on adolescents aged 12-16, but obesity can begin at a much younger age. Little data exist to establish the safety or efficacy of medication for treating very young children.

While the scientific data on the concrete effects of these medications in children remain somewhat unclear, medication is not the only avenue for addressing the crisis. Both medical experts and policymakers recognize that solutions might come not only from a laboratory but also from policy, education, and advocacy. A handbook designed to educate doctors on obesity called for “major changes in some aspects of western culture” (Hoppin & Taveras, 2004, Conclusion section, para. 1). Cultural change may not be the typical realm of medical professionals, but the handbook urged doctors to be proactive and “focus [their] energy on public policies and interventions” (Conclusion section, para. 1).

The solutions proposed by a number of advocacy groups underscore this interest in political and cultural change. A report by the Henry J. Kaiser Family Foundation (2004) outlined trends that may have contributed to the childhood obesity crisis, including food advertising for children as well as

Mirano develops the paper's thesis.

Brackets indicate Mirano's change in the quoted material.

## CAN MEDICATION CURE OBESITY IN CHILDREN?

9

A quotation longer than forty words is indented without quotation marks.

Mirano interprets the evidence; she doesn't just report it.

The tone of the conclusion is objective.

a reduction in physical education classes and after-school athletic programs, an increase in the availability of sodas and snacks in public schools, the growth in the number of fast-food outlets . . . , and the increasing number of highly processed high-calorie and high-fat grocery products. (p. 1)

Addressing each of these areas requires more than a doctor armed with a prescription pad; it requires a broad mobilization not just of doctors and concerned parents but of educators, food industry executives, advertisers, and media representatives.

The barrage of possible approaches to combating childhood obesity—from scientific research to political lobbying—indicates both the severity and the complexity of the problem. While none of the medications currently available is a miracle drug for curing the nation's nine million obese children, research has illuminated some of the underlying factors that affect obesity and has shown the need for a comprehensive approach to the problem that includes behavioral, medical, social, and political change.



## CAN MEDICATION CURE OBESITY IN CHILDREN? 10

## References

- Berkowitz, R. I., Wadden, T. A., Tershakovec, A. M., & Cronquist, J. L. (2003). Behavior therapy and sibutramine for the treatment of adolescent obesity. *Journal of the American Medical Association, 289*, 1805-1812.
- Carmona, R. H. (2004, March 2). *The growing epidemic of childhood obesity*. Testimony before the Subcommittee on Competition, Foreign Commerce, and Infrastructure of the U.S. Senate Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation. Retrieved from <http://www.hhs.gov/asl/testify/t040302.html>
- Critser, G. (2003). *Fat land*. Boston, MA: Houghton Mifflin.
- Duenwald, M. (2004, January 6). Slim pickings: Looking beyond ephedra. *The New York Times*, p. F1. Retrieved from <http://nytimes.com/>
- Henry J. Kaiser Family Foundation. (2004, February). *The role of media in childhood obesity*. Retrieved from <http://www.kff.org/entmedia/7030.cfm>
- Hilts, P. J. (2002, March 20). Petition asks for removal of diet drug from market. *The New York Times*, p. A26. Retrieved from <http://nytimes.com/>
- Hoppin, A. G., & Taveras, E. M. (2004, June 25). Assessment and management of childhood and adolescent obesity. Clinical Update. Retrieved from <http://www.medscape.com/viewarticle/481633>
- McDuffie, J. R., Calis, K. A., Uwaifo, G. I., Sebring, N. G., Fallon, E. M., Hubbard, V. S., & Yanovski, J. A. (2002). Three-month tolerability of orlistat in adolescents with obesity-related comorbid conditions. *Obesity Research, 10*, 642-650.

List of references begins on a new page. Heading is centered and not boldface.

List is alphabetized by authors' last names. All authors' names are inverted.

The first line of an entry is at the left margin; subsequent lines indent 1/2".

Double-spacing is used throughout.

## CAN MEDICATION CURE OBESITY IN CHILDREN?

11

Roche Laboratories. (2003, December). *Xenical (orlistat) capsules: Complete product information*. Retrieved from <http://www.rocheusa.com/products/xenical/pi.pdf>

Yanovski, S. Z., & Yanovski, J. A. (2002). Drug therapy: Obesity. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, *346*, 591-602.

## APPENDIX

### A document design gallery

Good document design promotes readability and increases the chances that you will achieve your purpose for writing and reach your readers. How you design a document—how you format it for the printed page or for a computer screen, for example— affects your readers' response to it. Most readers have expectations about document design and format, usually depending on the context and the purpose of the piece of writing.

This gallery features pages from both academic and business documents. The annotations on the sides of the pages point out design choices as well as important features of the writing.

- ▶ Pages from an MLA-style research paper, 598–99
- ▶ Pages from an APA-style review of the literature, 600–2
- ▶ Page from a business report (showing a visual), 603
- ▶ Business letter, 604
- ▶ Résumé, 605
- ▶ Professional memo, 606
- ▶ E-mail message, 607

#### Standard academic formatting

Use the manuscript format that is recommended for your academic discipline. In most English and some other humanities classes, you will be asked to use MLA (Modern Language Association) format (see 57). In most social science, business, education, and health-related classes, you'll be asked to use APA (American Psychological Association) format (see 62).

Pages 598–602 show basic formatting in MLA and APA styles. For complete student papers in MLA and APA formats, see 57b and 62b.

#### Standard professional formatting

It helps to look at examples when you are preparing to write a professional document such as a letter, a memo, or a résumé. (See pp. 604–6 for examples.) In general, business and professional writing is direct, clear, and courteous, and documents are designed to be read easily and quickly. When writing less formal documents such as e-mail messages in academic contexts, it's just as important to craft the document for easy readability. (See p. 607 for a sample e-mail message.)

## MLA ESSAY FORMAT

1" ↓

Writer's name, instructor's name, course title, date flush left on first page; title centered.

↑ 1/2" Larson 1

Writer's last name and page number in upper right corner of each page.

The Transformation of Mrs. Peters:  
An Analysis of "A Jury of Her Peers"

1/2" ← → In Susan Glaspell's 1917 short story "A Jury of Her Peers," two women accompany their husbands and a county attorney to an isolated house where a farmer named John Wright has been choked to death in his bed with a rope. The chief suspect is Wright's wife, Minnie, who is in jail awaiting trial. The sheriff's wife, Mrs. Peters, has

Double-spacing throughout.

← 1" → come along to gather some personal items for Minnie, and Mrs. Hale has joined her. Early in the story, Mrs. Hale sympathizes with Minnie and objects to the way the male investigators are "snoopin' round and criticizin'" her kitchen (249). In contrast, Mrs. Peters shows respect for the law, saying that the men are doing "no more than their duty" (249). By the end of the story, however, Mrs. Peters has joined Mrs. Hale in a conspiracy of silence, lied to the men, and committed a crime—hiding key evidence. What causes this dramatic change?

Quotations from source cited with page numbers in parentheses.

One critic, Leonard Mustazza, argues that Mrs. Hale recruits Mrs. Peters "as a fellow 'juroi' in the case, moving the sheriff's wife away from her sympathy for her husband's position and towards identification with the accused wom[a]n" (494). While this is true, Mrs. Peters also reaches insights on her own. Her observations in the kitchen lead her to understand Minnie's grim and lonely plight

← 1" → as the wife of an abusive farmer, and her identification with both Minnie and Mrs. Hale is strengthened as the men conducting the investigation trivialize the lives of women.

The first evidence that Mrs. Peters reaches understanding on her own surfaces in the following passage:

A long quotation is set off by indenting; no quotation marks are needed; ellipsis dots indicate a sentence omitted from the source.

The sheriff's wife had looked from the stove to the sink—to the pail of water which had been carried in from outside. . . . That look of seeing into things, of seeing through a thing to something else, was in the eyes of the sheriff's wife now. (251-52)

Something about the stove, the sink, and the pail of water connects

↑ 1" ↓

## MLA WORKS CITED PAGE

Larson 7

## Works Cited

- Ben-Zvi, Linda. "Murder, She Wrote': The Genesis of Susan Glaspell's *Trifles*." *Susan Glaspell: Essays on Her Theater and Fiction*, edited by Ben-Zvi, U of Michigan P, 1995, pp. 19-48. Originally published in *Theatre Journal*, vol. 44, no. 2, May 1992, pp. 141-62.
- Glaspell, Susan. "A Jury of Her Peers." *Literature and Its Writers: An Introduction to Fiction, Poetry, and Drama*, edited by Ann Charters and Samuel Charters, 6th ed., Bedford/St. Martin's, 2013, pp. 243-58.
- Hedges, Elaine. "Small Things Reconsidered: 'A Jury of Her Peers.'" *Susan Glaspell: Essays on Her Theater and Fiction*, edited by Linda Ben-Zvi, U of Michigan P, 1995, pp. 49-69.
- Mustazza, Leonard. "Generic Translation and Thematic Shift in Susan Glaspell's *Trifles* and 'A Jury of Her Peers.'" *Studies in Short Fiction*, vol. 26, no. 4, 1989, pp. 489-96.

Heading centered.

List alphabetized by authors' last names (or by title for works with no author).

First line of each entry at left margin; extra lines indented 1/2".

Double-spacing throughout; no extra space between entries.

## APA TITLE PAGE

Header consists of shortened title (no more than 50 characters) in all capital letters at left margin and page number at right margin; on title page only, words "Running head" and colon precede shortened title.

Running head: REACTION TIMES IN VISUAL SEARCH TASKS 1

Full title, writer's name, and school centered halfway down page.

Reaction Times for Detection of Objects  
in Two Visual Search Tasks  
Allison Leigh Johnson  
Carthage College

Author's note (optional) gives writer's affiliation, information about course, and possibly acknowledgments and contact information.

Author Note  
Allison Leigh Johnson, Department of Psychology,  
Carthage College. This research was conducted for  
Psychology 2300, Cognition: Theories and Application, taught  
by Professor Leslie Cameron.

**APA ABSTRACT**

## REACTION TIMES IN VISUAL SEARCH TASKS

2

Shortened title and page number on every page.

## Abstract

Visual detection of an object can be automatic or can require attention. The reaction time varies depending on the type of search task being performed. In this visual search experiment, 3 independent variables were tested: type of search, number of distracters, and presence or absence of a target. A feature search contains distracters notably different from the target, while a conjunctive search contains distracters with features similar to the target. For this experiment, 14 Carthage College students participated in a setting of their choice. A green circle was the target. During the feature search, reaction times were similar regardless of the number of distracters and the presence or absence of the target. In the conjunctive search, the number of distracters and the presence or absence of the target affected reaction times. This visual search experiment supports the idea that feature searches are automatic and conjunctive searches require attention from the viewer.

Abstract, a 150-to-250-word overview of paper, appears on separate page. Heading centered, not boldface.

Numerals for all numbers in abstract, including numbers under 10.

*Keywords:* visual search, cognition, feature search, conjunctive search

Keywords (optional) help readers search for paper on the Web or in a database.

### APA ESSAY FORMAT

Full title, repeated and centered, not boldface.

REACTION TIMES IN VISUAL SEARCH TASKS 3

Reaction Times for Detection of Objects  
in Two Visual Search Tasks

1/2" 1"

1/2"

1"

1"

Sources cited in parentheses with author's last name and date.

Vision is one of the five senses, and it is the sense trusted most by humans (Reisberg, 2010). We use our vision for everything. We are always looking for things, whether it is where we are going or finding a friend at a party. Our vision detects the object(s) we are looking for. Some objects are easier to detect than others. Spotting your sister wearing a purple shirt in a crowd of boring white shirts is automatic and can be done with ease. However, if your sister was also wearing a white shirt, it would take much time and attention to spot her in that same crowd.

The "pop out effect" describes the quick identification of an object being searched for because of its salient features (Reeves, 2007). When you look for your sister wearing a purple shirt, for example, you use the pop out effect for quick identification. The pop out effect works when attention is drawn to a specific object that is different from the surrounding objects.

### APA LIST OF REFERENCES

List of references begins on new page; heading centered, not boldface.

List alphabetized by authors' last names.

First line of each entry flush left; additional lines indented 1/2". Double-spacing throughout.

REACTION TIMES IN VISUAL SEARCH TASKS 8

References

Reeves, R. (2007). *The Norton psychology labs workbook*. New York, NY: Norton.

Reisberg, D. (2010). *Cognition: Exploring the science of the mind*. New York, NY: Norton.

Treisman, A. (1986). Features and objects in visual processing. *Scientific American*, 255, 114-125.

Wolfe, J. M. (1998). What do 1,000,000 trials tell us about visual search? *Psychological Science*, 9, 33-39.

ZAPS: *The Norton psychology labs*. (2004). Retrieved from <http://www.norton.com/ZAPS/>



**BUSINESS REPORT WITH A VISUAL**

## Employee Motivation 5

Doug Ames, manager of operations for OAISYS, noted that some of these issues keep the company from outperforming expectations: "Communication is not timely or uniform, expectations are not clear and consistent, and some employees do not contribute significantly yet nothing is done" (personal communication, February 28, 2006).

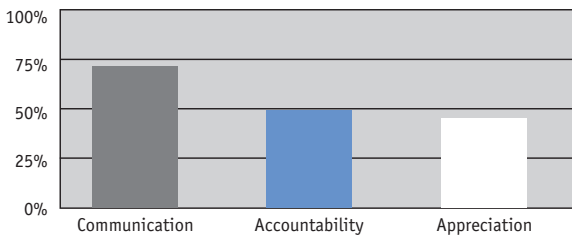
Report formatted in typical business style, with citations in APA style.

**Recommendations**

It appears that a combination of steps can be used to unlock greater performance for OAISYS. Most important, steps can be taken to strengthen the corporate culture in key areas such as communication, accountability, and appreciation. Employee feedback indicates that these are areas of weakness or motivators that can be improved. This feedback is summarized in Figure 1.

Visual referred to in body of report.


A plan to use communication effectively to set expectations, share results in a timely fashion, and publicly offer appreciation to specific contributors will likely go a long way toward aligning individual motivation with corporate goals. Additionally, holding individuals accountable for results will bring parity to the workplace.



Figure, a bar graph, appears at bottom of page on which it is mentioned. Figure number and caption placed below figure.

Figure 1. Areas of greatest need for improvements in motivation.

## BUSINESS LETTER IN FULL BLOCK STYLE

**LatinoVoice** 

Date — March 16, 2013

Jonathan Ross  
Managing Editor  
*Latino World Today*  
2971 East Oak Avenue  
Baltimore, MD 21201

Inside address

Salutation — Dear Mr. Ross:


Thank you very much for taking the time yesterday to speak to the University of Maryland's Latino Club. A number of students have told me that they enjoyed your presentation and found your job search suggestions to be extremely helpful.

As I mentioned to you, the club publishes a monthly newsletter, *Latino Voice*. Our purpose is to share up-to-date information and expert advice with members of the university's Latino population. Considering how much students benefited from your talk, I would like to publish excerpts from it in our newsletter.

I have transcribed parts of your presentation and organized them into a question-and-answer format for our readers. Would you mind looking through the enclosed article and letting me know if I may have your permission to print it? I'm hoping to include this article in our next newsletter, so I would need your response by April 4.

Once again, Mr. Ross, thank you for sharing your experiences with us. I would love to be able to share your thoughts with students who couldn't hear you in person.

Sincerely, \_\_\_\_\_ Close



Signature

Jeffrey Richardson  
Associate Editor

Enc.

Paragaphs single-spaced, not indented; double-spacing between paragaphs.

Indicates something enclosed with letter.

210 Student Center **University of Maryland** College Park, MD 20742

## RÉSUMÉ

**Alexis A. Smith**

404 Ponce de Leon NE, #B7  
Atlanta, GA 30308

404-231-1234  
asmith@smith.localhost

**SKILLS SUMMARY**

- Writing: competent communicating to different audiences, using a range of written forms (articles, reports, flyers, pamphlets, memos, letters)
- Design: capable of creating visually appealing, audience appropriate documents; skilled at taking and editing photographs
- Technical: proficient in Microsoft Office; comfortable with Dreamweaver, Photoshop, InDesign
- Language: fluent in spoken and written Spanish

**EDUCATION**

Bachelor of Arts, English expected May 2014

Georgia State University, Atlanta, GA

- Emphasis areas: journalism and communication
- Study Abroad, Ecuador (Fall 2012)
- Dean's List (Fall 2012, Fall 2013, Spring 2014)

**EXPERIENCE**

Copyeditor Sept. 2013-present

*The Signal*, Atlanta, GA

- copyedit articles for spelling, grammar, and style
- fact-check articles
- prepare copy for Web publication in Dreamweaver

Writing Tutor Oct. 2011-present

Georgia State University Writing Studio, Atlanta, GA

- work with undergraduate and graduate students on writing projects in all subject areas
- provide technical support for multimedia projects

**OUTREACH AND ACTIVITIES**

- Publicity Director, English Department Student Organization Aug. 2013-present
- Coordinator, Georgia State University Relay for Life Student Team April 2013, 2014

Limit résumé to one page, if possible, two pages at most.

Information organized into clear categories—Skills Summary, Education, Experience, etc.—and formatted for easy scanning.

Information presented in reverse chronological order.

Bulleted lists organize information.

Present-tense verbs (*provide*) used for current activities.

## PROFESSIONAL MEMO

COMMONWEALTH PRESS  
MEMORANDUM

Date, name of recipient, name of sender on separate lines.

February 26, 2013

To: Editorial assistants, Advertising Department

cc: Stephen Chapman

From: Helen Brown

Subject: Training for new database software

Subject line describes topic clearly and concisely.

The new database software will be installed on your computers next week. I have scheduled a training program to help you become familiar with the software and with our new procedures for data entry and retrieval.

Introduction states point of memo.

**Training program**

A member of our IT staff will teach in-house workshops on how to use the new software. If you try the software before the workshop, please be prepared to discuss any problems you encounter.

Headings guide readers and promote quick scanning of document.

We will keep the training groups small to encourage hands-on participation and to provide individual attention. The workshops will take place in the training room on the third floor from 10:00 a.m. to 2:00 p.m.

Lunch will be provided in the cafeteria.

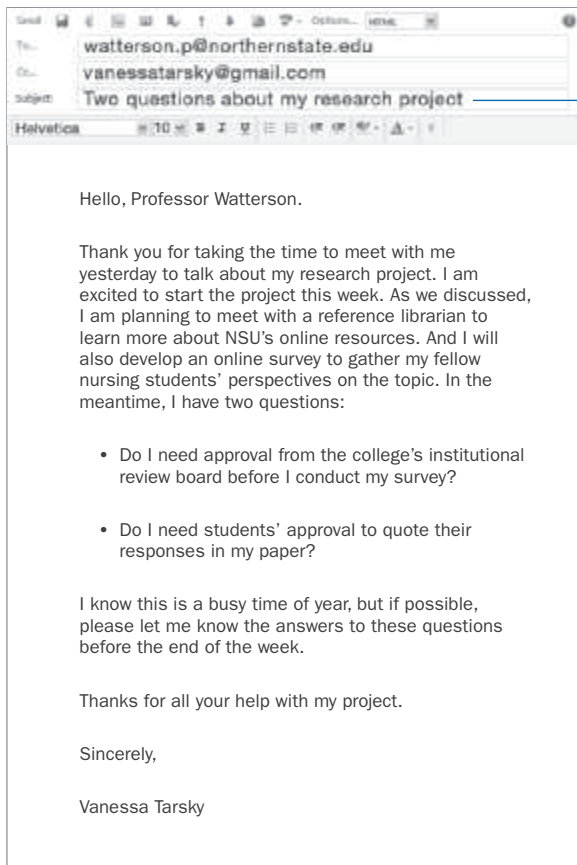
**Sign-up**

Please sign up by March 1 for one of the following dates by adding your name in the department's online calendar:

- Monday, March 4
- Wednesday, March 6
- Friday, March 8

List calls attention to important information.

If you will not be in the office on any of those dates, please let me know by March 1.

**E-MAIL MESSAGE**

Clear, specific subject line gives purpose of message.

Introduction explains reason for writing.

Formal tone and language appropriate for communicating with professor.

Message formatted to be read quickly. Bullets draw reader's eye to important details.

Desired outcome of message: request stated briefly.

Message ends with brief, friendly closing.

## APPENDIX

### Glossary of usage

This glossary includes words commonly confused (such as *accept* and *except*), words commonly misused (such as *aggravate*), and words that are nonstandard (such as *hisself*). It also lists colloquialisms and jargon. Colloquialisms are casual expressions that may be appropriate in informal speech but are inappropriate in formal writing. Jargon is needlessly technical or pretentious language that is inappropriate in most contexts. If an item is not listed here, consult the index. For irregular verbs (such as *sing*, *sang*, *sung*), see 27a. For idiomatic use of prepositions, see 18d.

**a, an** Use *an* before a vowel sound, *a* before a consonant sound: *an apple, a peach*. Problems sometimes arise with words beginning with *h* or *u*. If the *h* is silent, the word begins with a vowel sound, so use *an*: *an hour, an honorable deed*. If the *h* is pronounced, the word begins with a consonant sound, so use *a*: *a hospital, a historian, a hotel*. Words such as *university* and *union* begin with a consonant sound (a *y* sound), so use *a*: *a union*. Words such as *uncle* and *umbrella* begin with a vowel sound, so use *an*: *an underground well*. When an abbreviation or an acronym begins with a vowel sound, use *an*: *an EKG, an MRI, an AIDS prevention program*.

**accept, except** *Accept* is a verb meaning “to receive.” *Except* is usually a preposition meaning “excluding.” *I will accept all the packages except that one.* *Except* is also a verb meaning “to exclude.” *Please except that item from the list.*

**adapt, adopt** *Adapt* means “to adjust or become accustomed”; it is usually followed by *to*. *Adopt* means “to take as one’s own.” *Our family adopted a Vietnamese child, who quickly adapted to his new life.*

**adverse, averse** *Adverse* means “unfavorable.” *Averse* means “opposed” or “reluctant”; it is usually followed by *to*. *I am averse to your proposal because it could have an adverse impact on the economy.*

**advice, advise** *Advice* is a noun, *advise* a verb. *We advise you to follow John’s advice.*

**affect, effect** *Affect* is usually a verb meaning “to influence.” *Effect* is usually a noun meaning “result.” *The drug did not affect the disease, and it had adverse side effects.* *Effect* can also be a verb meaning “to bring about.” *Only the president can effect such a dramatic change.*

**aggravate** *Aggravate* means “to make worse or more troublesome.” *Overgrazing aggravated the soil erosion.* In formal writing, avoid the use of *aggravate* meaning “to annoy or irritate.” *Her babbling annoyed (not aggravated) me.*

**agree to, agree with** *Agree to* means “to give consent to.” *Agree with* means “to be in accord with” or “to come to an understanding with.” *He agrees with me about the need for change, but he won’t agree to my plan.*

**ain’t** *Ain’t* is nonstandard. Use *am not*, *are not* (*aren’t*), or *is not* (*isn’t*). *I am not (not ain’t) going home for spring break.*

**all ready, already** *All ready* means “completely prepared.” *Already* means “previously.” *Susan was all ready for the concert, but her friends had already left.*

**all right** *All right*, written as two words, is correct. *Alright* is nonstandard.

**all together, altogether** *All together* means “everyone or everything in one place.” *Altogether* means “entirely.” *We were not altogether certain that we could bring the family all together for the reunion.*

**allude** To *allude* to something is to make an indirect reference to it. Do not use *allude* to mean “to refer directly.” *In his lecture, the professor referred (not alluded) to several pre-Socratic philosophers.*

**allusion, illusion** An *allusion* is an indirect reference. An *illusion* is a misconception or false impression. *Did you catch my allusion to Shakespeare? Mirrors give the room an illusion of depth.*

**a lot** *A lot* is two words. Do not write *alot*. *Sam lost a lot of weight.* See also *lots*, *lots of*.

**among, between** See *between*, *among*.

**amongst** In American English, *among* is preferred.

**amoral, immoral** *Amoral* means “neither moral nor immoral”; it also means “not caring about moral judgments.” *Immoral* means “morally wrong.” *Until recently, most business courses were taught from an amoral perspective. Murder is immoral.*

**amount, number** Use *amount* with quantities that cannot be counted; use *number* with those that can. *This recipe calls for a large amount of sugar. We have a large number of toads in our garden.*

**an** See *a*, *an*.

**and etc.** *Et cetera* (*etc.*) means “and so forth”; *and etc.* is redundant. See also *etc.*

**and/or** Avoid the awkward construction *and/or* except in technical or legal documents.

**angry at, angry with** Use *angry with*, not *angry at*, when referring to a person. *The coach was angry with the referee.*

**ante-, anti-** The prefix *ante-* means “earlier” or “in front of”; the prefix *anti-* means “against” or “opposed to.” *William Lloyd Garrison was a leader of the antislavery movement during the antebellum period.* *Anti-* should be used with a hyphen when it is followed by a capital letter (*anti-Semitic*) or a word beginning with *i* (*anti-intellectual*).

**anxious** *Anxious* means “worried” or “apprehensive.” In formal writing, avoid using *anxious* to mean “eager.” *We are eager* (not *anxious*) *to see your new house.*

**anybody, anyone** *Anybody* and *anyone* are singular. (See 21e and 22a.)

**anymore** Use the adverb *anymore* in a negative context to mean “any longer” or “now.” *The factory isn’t producing shoes anymore.* Using *anymore* in a positive context is colloquial; in formal writing, use *now* instead. *We order all our food online now* (not *anymore*).

**anyone** See *anybody, anyone.*

**anyone, any one** *Anyone*, an indefinite pronoun, means “any person at all.” *Any one*, the pronoun *one* preceded by the adjective *any*, refers to a particular person or thing in a group. *Anyone from the winning team may choose any one of the games on display.*

**anyplace** *Anyplace* is colloquial. In formal writing, use *anywhere.*

**anyways, anywheres** *Anyways* and *anywheres* are nonstandard. Use *anyway* and *anywhere.*

**as** Do not use *as* to mean “because” if there is any chance of ambiguity. *We canceled the picnic because* (not *as*) *it began raining.* *As* here could mean either “because” or “when.”

**as, like** See *like, as.*

**as to** *As to* is jargon for *about.* *He inquired about* (not *as to*) *the job.*

**averse** See *adverse, averse.*

**awful** The adjective *awful* and the adverb *awfully* are not appropriate in formal writing.

**awhile, a while** *Awhile* is an adverb; it can modify a verb, but it cannot be the object of a preposition such as *for.* The two-word form *a while* is a noun preceded by an article and therefore can be the object of a preposition. *Stay awhile. Stay for a while.*

**back up, backup** *Back up* is a verb phrase. *Back up the car carefully. Be sure to back up your hard drive.* *Backup* is a noun meaning “a copy of electronically stored data.” *Keep your backup in a safe place. Backup* can also be used as an adjective. *I regularly create backup disks.*

**bad, badly** *Bad* is an adjective, *badly* an adverb. *They felt bad about ruining the surprise. Her arm hurt badly after she slid into second base.* (See 26a, 26b, and 26c.)

**being as, being that** *Being as* and *being that* are nonstandard expressions. Write *because* instead. *Because* (not *Being as*) *I slept late, I had to skip breakfast.*

**beside, besides** *Beside* is a preposition meaning “at the side of” or “next to.” *Annie sleeps with a flashlight beside her bed.* *Besides* is a preposition meaning “except” or “in addition to.” *No one besides Terrie can have that ice cream. Besides* is also an adverb meaning “in addition.” *I’m not hungry; besides, I don’t like ice cream.*



**between, among** Ordinarily, use *among* with three or more entities, *between* with two. *The prize was divided among several contestants. You have a choice between carrots and beans.*

**bring, take** Use *bring* when an object is being transported toward you, *take* when it is being moved away. *Please bring me a glass of water. Please take these forms to Mr. Scott.*

**burst, bursted; bust, busted** *Burst* is an irregular verb meaning “to come open or fly apart suddenly or violently.” Its past tense is *burst*. The past-tense form *bursted* is nonstandard. *Bust* and *busted* are slang for *burst* and, along with *bursted*, should not be used in formal writing.

**can, may** The distinction between *can* and *may* is fading, but some writers still observe it in formal writing. *Can* is traditionally reserved for ability, *may* for permission. *Can you speak French? May I help you?*

**capital, capitol** *Capital* refers to a city, *capitol* to a building where lawmakers meet. *Capital* also refers to wealth or resources. *The residents of the state capital protested plans to close the streets surrounding the capitol.*

**cancel, censor** *Cancel* means “to remove or suppress material considered objectionable.” *Censor* means “to criticize severely.” *The administration’s policy of censoring books has been censured by the media.*

**cite, site** *Cite* means “to quote as an authority or example.” *Site* is usually a noun meaning “a particular place.” *He cited the zoning law in his argument against the proposed site of the gas station.* Locations on the Internet are usually referred to as *sites*. *The library’s Web site improves every week.*

**climactic, climatic** *Climactic* is derived from *climax*, the point of greatest intensity in a series or progression of events. *Climatic* is derived from *climate* and refers to meteorological conditions. *The climactic period in the dinosaurs’ reign was reached just before severe climatic conditions brought on an ice age.*

**coarse, course** *Coarse* means “crude” or “rough in texture.” *The coarse weave of the wall hanging gave it a three-dimensional quality.* *Course* usually refers to a path, a playing field, or a unit of study; the expression of *course* means “certainly.” *I plan to take a course in car repair this summer. Of course, you are welcome to join me.*

**compare to, compare with** *Compare to* means “to represent as similar.” *She compared him to a wild stallion.* *Compare with* means “to examine similarities and differences.” *The study compared the language ability of apes with that of dolphins.*

**complement, compliment** *Complement* is a verb meaning “to go with or complete” or a noun meaning “something that completes.” As a verb, *compliment* means “to flatter”; as a noun, it means “flattering remark.” *Her skill at rushing the net complements his skill at volleying. Martha’s flower arrangements receive many compliments.*

**conscience, conscious** *Conscience* is a noun meaning “moral principles.” *Conscious* is an adjective meaning “aware or alert.” *Let your conscience be your guide. Were you conscious of his love for you?*

**continual, continuous** *Continual* means “repeated regularly and frequently.” *She grew weary of the continual telephone calls. Continuous* means “extended or prolonged without interruption.” *The broken siren made a continuous wail.*

**could care less** *Could care less* is nonstandard. Write *couldn't care less* instead. *He couldn't (not could) care less about his psychology final.*

**could of** *Could of* is nonstandard for *could have*. *We could have (not could of) taken the train.*

**council, counsel** A *council* is a deliberative body, and a *councilor* is a member of such a body. *Counsel* usually means “advice” and can also mean “lawyer”; a *counselor* is one who gives advice or guidance. *The councilors met to draft the council's position paper. The pastor offered wise counsel to the troubled teenager.*

**criteria** *Criteria* is the plural of *criterion*, which means “a standard or rule or test on which a judgment or decision can be based.” *The only criterion for the scholarship is ability.*

**data** *Data* is a plural noun technically meaning “facts or propositions.” But *data* is increasingly being accepted as a singular noun. *The new data suggest (or suggests) that our theory is correct.* (The singular *datum* is rarely used.)

**different from, different than** Ordinarily, write *different from*. *Your sense of style is different from Jim's.* However, *different than* is acceptable to avoid an awkward construction. *Please let me know if your plans are different than (to avoid from what) they were six weeks ago.*

**differ from, differ with** *Differ from* means “to be unlike”; *differ with* means “to disagree with.” *My approach to the problem differed from hers. She differed with me about the wording of the agreement.*

**disinterested, uninterested** *Disinterested* means “impartial, objective”; *uninterested* means “not interested.” *We sought the advice of a disinterested counselor to help us solve our problem. Mark was uninterested in anyone's opinion but his own.*

**don't** *Don't* is the contraction for *do not*. *I don't want any. Don't* should not be used as the contraction for *does not*, which is *doesn't*. *He doesn't (not don't) want any.*

**due to** *Due to* is an adjective phrase and should not be used as a preposition meaning “because of.” *The trip was canceled because of (not due to) lack of interest. Due to* is acceptable as a subject complement and usually follows a form of the verb *be*. *His success was due to hard work.*

**each** *Each* is singular. (See 21e and 22a.)

**effect** See *affect, effect*.

**e.g.** In formal writing, replace the Latin abbreviation *e.g.* with its English equivalent: *for example* or *for instance*.

**either** *Either* is singular. (See 21e and 22a.) For *either . . . or* constructions, see 21d and 22a.

**elicit, illicit** *Elicit* is a verb meaning “to bring out” or “to evoke.” *Illicit* is an adjective meaning “unlawful.” *The reporter was unable to elicit any information from the police about illicit drug traffic.*

**emigrate from, immigrate to** *Emigrate* means “to leave one country or region to settle in another.” *In 1903, my great-grandfather emigrated from Russia to escape the religious pogroms. Immigrate* means “to enter another country and reside there.” *More than fifty thousand Bosnians immigrated to the United States in the 1990s.*

**eminent, imminent** *Eminent* means “outstanding” or “distinguished.” *We met an eminent professor of Greek history. Imminent* means “about to happen.” *The snowstorm is imminent.*

**enthused** Avoid using *enthused* as an adjective. Use *enthusiastic* instead. *The children were enthusiastic (not enthused) about baking.*

**etc.** Avoid ending a list with *etc.* It is more emphatic to end with an example, and in most contexts readers will understand that the list is not exhaustive. When you don’t wish to end with an example, *and so on* is more graceful than *etc.* (See also *and etc.*)

**eventually, ultimately** Often used interchangeably, *eventually* is the better choice to mean “at an unspecified time in the future,” and *ultimately* is better to mean “the furthest possible extent or greatest extreme.” *He knew that eventually he would complete his degree. The existentialists considered suicide the ultimately rational act.*

**everybody, everyone** *Everybody* and *everyone* are singular. (See 21e and 22a.)

**everyone, every one** *Everyone* is an indefinite pronoun. *Every one*, the pronoun *one* preceded by the adjective *every*, means “each individual or thing in a particular group.” *Every one* is usually followed by *of*. *Everyone wanted to go. Every one of the missing books was found.*

**except** See *accept*, *except*.

**expect** Avoid the informal use of *expect* meaning “to believe, think, or suppose.” *I think (not expect) it will rain tonight.*

**explicit, implicit** *Explicit* means “expressed directly” or “clearly defined”; *implicit* means “implied, unstated.” *I gave him explicit instructions not to go swimming. My mother’s silence indicated her implicit approval.*

**farther, further** *Farther* usually describes distances. *Further* usually suggests quantity or degree. *Chicago is farther from Miami than I thought. I would be grateful for further suggestions.*

**fewer, less** Use *fewer* for items that can be counted; use *less* for items that cannot be counted. *Fewer people are living in the city. Please put less sugar in my tea.*

**finalize** *Finalize* is jargon meaning “to make final or complete.” Use ordinary English instead. *The architect prepared final drawings* (not *finalized the drawings*).

**firstly** *Firstly* sounds pretentious, and it leads to the ungainly series *firstly, secondly, thirdly*, and so on. Write *first, second, third* instead.

**further** See *farther, further*.

**get** *Get* has many colloquial uses. In writing, avoid using *get* to mean the following: “to evoke an emotional response” (*That music always gets to me*); “to annoy” (*After a while, his sulking got to me*); “to take revenge on” (*I got back at her by leaving the room*); “to become” (*He got sick*); “to start or begin” (*Let’s get going*). Avoid using *have got to* in place of *must*. *I must* (not *have got to*) *finish this paper tonight*.

**good, well** *Good* is an adjective, *well* an adverb. (See 26a, 26b, and 26c.) *He hasn’t felt good about his game since he sprained his wrist last season. She performed well on the uneven parallel bars.*

**graduate** Both of the following uses of *graduate* are standard: *My sister was graduated from UCLA last year. My sister graduated from UCLA last year.* It is nonstandard, however, to drop the word *from*: *My sister graduated UCLA last year.* Though this usage is common in informal English, many readers object to it.

**grow** Phrases such as *to grow the economy* and *to grow a business* are jargon. Usually the verb *grow* is intransitive (it does not take a direct object). *Our business has grown very quickly.* Use *grow* in a transitive sense, with a direct object, to mean “to cultivate” or “to allow to grow.” *We plan to grow tomatoes this year. John is growing a beard.*

**hanged, hung** *Hanged* is the past-tense and past-participle form of the verb *hang* meaning “to execute.” *The prisoner was hanged at dawn.* *Hung* is the past-tense and past-participle form of the verb *hang* meaning “to fasten or suspend.” *The stockings were hung by the chimney with care.*

**hardly** Avoid expressions such as *can’t hardly* and *not hardly*, which are considered double negatives. *I can (not can’t) hardly describe my surprise at getting the job.* (See 26e.)

**has got, have got** *Got* is unnecessary and awkward in such constructions. It should be dropped. *We have (not have got) three days to prepare for the opening.*

**he** At one time *he* was commonly used to mean “he or she.” Today such usage is inappropriate. (See 17e and 22a.)

**he/she, his/her** In formal writing, use *he or she* or *his or her*. For alternatives to these wordy constructions, see 17e and 22a.

**hisself** *Hisself* is nonstandard. Use *himself*.

**hopefully** *Hopefully* means “in a hopeful manner.” *We looked hopefully to the future.* Some usage experts object to the use of *hopefully* as a sentence adverb, apparently on grounds of clarity. To be safe, avoid using

*hopefully* in sentences such as the following: *Hopefully, your son will recover soon.* Instead, indicate who is doing the hoping: *I hope that your son will recover soon.*

**however** In the past, some writers objected to the conjunctive adverb *however* at the beginning of a sentence, but current experts allow placing the word according to the intended meaning and emphasis. All of the following sentences are correct. *Pam decided, however, to attend the lecture. However, Pam decided to attend the lecture.* (She had been considering other activities.) *Pam, however, decided to attend the lecture.* (Unlike someone else, Pam chose to attend the lecture.) (See 32f.)

**hung** See *hanged, hung*.

**i.e.** In formal writing, use “in other words” or “that is” rather than the Latin abbreviation *i.e.* to introduce a clarifying statement. *Exposure to borax usually causes only mild skin irritation; in other words (not i.e.), it’s not especially toxic.*

**if, whether** Use *if* to express a condition and *whether* to express alternatives. *If you go on a trip, whether to Nebraska or Italy, remember to bring traveler’s checks.*

**illusion** See *allusion, illusion*.

**immigrate** See *emigrate from, immigrate to*.

**imminent** See *eminent, imminent*.

**immoral** See *amoral, immoral*.

**implement** *Implement* is a pretentious way of saying “do,” “carry out,” or “accomplish.” Use ordinary language instead. *We carried out (not implemented) the director’s orders.*

**implicit** See *explicit, implicit*.

**imply, infer** *Imply* means “to suggest or state indirectly”; *infer* means “to draw a conclusion.” *John implied that he knew all about computers, but the interviewer inferred that John was inexperienced.*

**in, into** *In* indicates location or condition; *into* indicates movement or a change in condition. *They found the lost letters in a box after moving into the house.*

**in regards to** *In regards to* confuses two different phrases: *in regard to* and *as regards*. Use one or the other. *In regard to (or As regards) the contract, ignore the first clause.*

**irregardless** *Irregardless* is nonstandard. Use *regardless*.

**is when, is where** These mixed constructions are often incorrectly used in definitions. *A runoff election is a second election held to break a tie (not is when a second election is held to break a tie).* (See 11c.)

**its, it’s** *Its* is a possessive pronoun; *it’s* is a contraction of *it is*. (See 36c and 36e.) *It’s always fun to watch a dog chase its tail.*

**kind(s)** *Kind* is singular and should be treated as such. Don’t write *These kind of chairs are rare*. Write instead *This kind of chair is rare. Kinds is*

plural and should be used only when you mean more than one kind. *These kinds of chairs are rare.*

**kind of, sort of** Avoid using *kind of* or *sort of* to mean “somewhat.” *The movie was somewhat (not sort of) boring.* Do not put *a* after either phrase. *That kind of (not kind of a) salesclerk annoys me.*

**lay, lie** See *lie, lay*.

**lead, led** *Lead* is a metallic element; it is a noun. *Led* is the past tense of the verb *lead*. *He led me to the treasure.*

**learn, teach** *Learn* means “to gain knowledge”; *teach* means “to impart knowledge.” *I must teach (not learn) my sister to read.*

**leave, let** *Leave* means “to exit.” Avoid using it with the nonstandard meaning “to permit.” *Let (not Leave) me help you with the dishes.*

**led** See *lead, led*.

**less** See *fewer, less*.

**let, leave** See *leave, let*.

**liable** *Liable* means “obligated” or “responsible.” Do not use it to mean “likely.” *You’re likely (not liable) to trip if you don’t tie your shoelaces.*

**lie, lay** *Lie* is an intransitive verb meaning “to recline or rest on a surface.” Its forms are *lie, lay, lain*. *Lay* is a transitive verb meaning “to put or place.” Its forms are *lay, laid, laid*. (See 27b.)

**like, as** *Like* is a preposition, not a subordinating conjunction. It can be followed only by a noun or a noun phrase. *As* is a subordinating conjunction that introduces a subordinate clause. In casual speech, you may say *She looks like she hasn’t slept* or *You don’t know her like I do*. But in formal writing, use *as*. *She looks as if she hasn’t slept. You don’t know her as I do.* (See also 46f and 46g.)

**loose, lose** *Loose* is an adjective meaning “not securely fastened.” *Lose* is a verb meaning “to misplace” or “to not win.” *Did you lose your only loose pair of work pants?*

**lots, lots of** *Lots* and *lots of* are informal substitutes for *many, much*, or *a lot*. Avoid using them in formal writing.

**mankind** Avoid *mankind* whenever possible. It offends many readers because it excludes women. Use *humanity, humans, the human race*, or *humankind* instead. (See 17e.)

**may** See *can, may*.

**maybe, may be** *Maybe* is an adverb meaning “possibly.” *Maybe the sun will shine tomorrow. May be* is a verb phrase. *Tomorrow may be brighter.*

**may of, might of** *May of* and *might of* are nonstandard for *may have* and *might have*. *We might have (not might of) had too many cookies.*

**media, medium** *Media* is the plural of *medium*. *Of all the media that cover the Olympics, television is the medium that best captures the spectacle of the events.*

**might of** See *may of, might of*.

**most** *Most* is informal when used to mean “almost” and should be avoided. *Almost* (not *Most*) *everyone went to the parade*.

**must of** See *may of, might of*. *Must of* is nonstandard for *must have*.

**myself** *Myself* is a reflexive or intensive pronoun. Reflexive: *I cut myself*. Intensive: *I will drive you myself*. Do not use *myself* in place of *I* or *me*. *He gave the pie to Ed and me* (not *myself*). (See also 24a and 24b.)

**neither** *Neither* is singular. For *neither . . . nor* constructions, see 21d, 22a, and 22d.

**none** *None* may be singular or plural. (See 21e.)

**nowheres** *Nowheres* is nonstandard. Use *nowhere* instead.

**number** See *amount, number*.

**of** Use the verb *have*, not the preposition *of*, after the verbs *could*, *should*, *would*, *may*, *might*, and *must*. *They must have* (not *must of*) *left early*.

**off of** *Off* is sufficient. Omit *of*. *The ball rolled off* (not *off of*) *the table*.

**OK, O.K., okay** All three spellings are acceptable, but avoid these expressions in formal speech and writing.

**parameters** *Parameter* is a mathematical term that has become jargon for “boundary” or “guideline.” Use ordinary English instead. *The task force worked within certain guidelines* (not *parameters*).

**passed, past** *Passed* is the past tense of the verb *pass*. *Ann passed me another slice of cake*. *Past* usually means “belonging to a former time” or “beyond a time or place.” *Our past president spoke until past midnight*. *The hotel is just past the next intersection*.

**percent, per cent, percentage** *Percent* (also spelled *per cent*) is always used with a specific number. *Percentage* is used with a descriptive term such as *large* or *small*, not with a specific number. *The candidate won 80 percent of the primary vote*. *A large percentage of registered voters turned out for the election*.

**phenomena** *Phenomena* is the plural of *phenomenon*, which means “an observable occurrence or fact.” *Strange phenomena occur at all hours of the night in that house, but last night’s phenomenon was the strangest of all*.

**plus** *Plus* should not be used to join independent clauses. *This raincoat is dirty; moreover* (not *plus*), *it has a hole in it*.

**precede, proceed** *Precede* means “to come before.” *Proceed* means “to go forward.” *As we proceeded up the mountain path, we noticed fresh tracks in the mud, evidence that a group of hikers had preceded us*.

**principal, principle** *Principal* is a noun meaning “the head of a school or an organization” or “a sum of money.” It is also an adjective meaning “most important.” *Principle* is a noun meaning “a basic truth or law.” *The*

*principal expelled her for three principal reasons. We believe in the principle of equal justice for all.*

**proceed, precede** See *precede, proceed*.

**quote, quotation** *Quote* is a verb; *quotation* is a noun. Avoid using *quote* as a shortened form of *quotation*. *Her quotations (not quotes) from current movies intrigued us.*

**raise, rise** *Raise* is a transitive verb meaning “to move or cause to move upward.” It takes a direct object. *I raised the shades. Rise* is an intransitive verb meaning “to go up.” *Heat rises.*

**real, really** *Real* is an adjective; *really* is an adverb. *Real* is sometimes used informally as an adverb, but avoid this use in formal writing. *She was really (not real) angry.* (See 26a and 26b.)

**reason . . . is because** Use *that* instead of *because*. *The reason she’s cranky is that (not because) she didn’t sleep last night.* (See 11c.)

**reason why** The expression *reason why* is redundant. *The reason (not The reason why) Jones lost the election is clear.*

**relation, relationship** *Relation* describes a connection between things. *Relationship* describes a connection between people. *There is a relation between poverty and infant mortality. Our business relationship has cooled over the years.*

**respectfully, respectfully** *Respectfully* means “showing or marked by respect.” *Respectively* means “each in the order given.” *He respectfully submitted his opinion to the judge. John, Tom, and Larry were a butcher, a baker, and a lawyer, respectively.*

**rise** See *raise, rise*.

**sensual, sensuous** *Sensual* means “gratifying the physical senses,” especially those associated with sexual pleasure. *Sensuous* means “pleasing to the senses,” especially those involved in the experience of art, music, and nature. *The sensuous music and balmy air led the dancers to more sensual movements.*

**set, sit** *Set* is a transitive verb meaning “to put” or “to place.” Its past tense is *set*. *She set the dough in a warm corner of the kitchen. Sit* is an intransitive verb meaning “to be seated.” Its past tense is *sat*. *The cat sat in the doorway.*

**shall, will** *Shall* was once used in place of the helping verb *will* with *I* or *we*: *I shall, we shall*. Today, however, *will* is generally accepted even when the subject is *I* or *we*. The word *shall* occurs primarily in polite questions (*Shall I find you a pillow?*) and in legalistic sentences suggesting duty or obligation (*The applicant shall file form A by December 31*).

**should of** *Should of* is nonstandard for *should have*. *They should have (not should of) been home an hour ago.*

**since** Do not use *since* to mean “because” if there is any chance of ambiguity. *Because (not Since) we won the game, we have been celebrating*



with a pitcher of root beer. Since here could mean “because” or “from the time that.”

**sit** See *set, sit*.

**site** See *cite, site*.

**somebody, someone** *Somebody* and *someone* are singular. (See 21e and 22a.)

**something** *Something* is singular. (See 21e.)

**sometime, some time, sometimes** *Sometime* is an adverb meaning “at an indefinite time.” *Some time* is the adjective *some* modifying the noun *time* and means “a period of time.” *Sometimes* is an adverb meaning “at times, now and then.” *I’ll see you sometime soon. I haven’t lived there for some time. Sometimes I see him at work.*

**suppose to** *Suppose to* is nonstandard for *supposed to*. *I was supposed to (not suppose to) be there by noon.*

**sure and** Write *sure to*. *We were all taught to be sure to (not sure and) look both ways before crossing a street.*

**take** See *bring, take*.

**than, then** *Than* is a conjunction used in comparisons; *then* is an adverb denoting time. *That pizza is more than I can eat. Tom laughed, and then we recognized him.*

**that** See *who, which, that*.

**that, which** Many writers reserve *that* for restrictive clauses, *which* for nonrestrictive clauses. (See 32e.)

**themselves** *Theirselves* is nonstandard for *themselves*. *The crash victims pushed the car out of the way themselves (not theirselves).*

**them** The use of *them* in place of *those* is nonstandard. *Please take those (not them) flowers to the patient in room 220.*

**then, than** See *than, then*.

**there, their, they’re** *There* is an adverb specifying place; it is also an expletive (placeholder). Adverb: *Sylvia is sitting there patiently*. Expletive: *There are two plums left*. *Their* is a possessive pronoun: *Fred and Jane finally washed their car*. *They’re* is a contraction of *they are*: *They’re later than usual today*.

**they** The use of *they* to indicate possession is nonstandard. Use *their* instead. *Cindy and Sam decided to sell their (not they) 1975 Corvette*.

**they, their** The use of the plural pronouns *they* and *their* to refer to singular nouns or pronouns is nonstandard. *No one handed in his or her (not their) draft on time*. (See 22a.)

**this kind** See *kind(s)*.

**to, too, two** *To* is a preposition; *too* is an adverb; *two* is a number. *Too many of your shots slice to the left, but the last two were just right*.

**toward, towards** *Toward* and *towards* are generally interchangeable, although *toward* is preferred in American English.

**try and** *Try and* is nonstandard for *try to*. *The teacher asked us all to try to (not try and) write an original haiku.*

**ultimately, eventually** See *eventually, ultimately*.

**unique** Avoid expressions such as *most unique, more straight, less perfect, very round*. Either something is unique or it isn't. It is illogical to suggest degrees of uniqueness. (See 26d.)

**usage** The noun *usage* should not be substituted for *use* when the meaning is "employment of." *The use (not usage) of insulated shades has cut fuel costs dramatically.*

**use to** *Use to* is nonstandard for *used to*. *I used to (not use to) take the bus to work.*

**utilize** *Utilize* means "to make use of." It often sounds pretentious; in most cases, *use* is sufficient. *I used (not utilized) the laser printer.*

**wait for, wait on** *Wait for* means "to be in readiness for" or "to await." *Wait on* means "to serve." *We're waiting for (not waiting on) Ruth to take us to the museum.*

**ways** *Ways* is nonstandard when used to mean "distance." *The city is a long way (not ways) from here.*

**weather, whether** The noun *weather* refers to the state of the atmosphere. *Whether* is a conjunction referring to a choice between alternatives. *We wondered whether the weather would clear.*

**well, good** See *good, well*.

**where** Do not use *where* in place of *that*. *I heard that (not where) the crime rate is increasing.*

**whether** See *if, whether*.

**which** See *that, which* and *who, which, that*.

**while** Avoid using *while* to mean "although" or "whereas" if there is any chance of ambiguity. *Although (not While) Gloria lost money in the slot machine, Tom won it at roulette.* Here *While* could mean either "although" or "at the same time that."

**who, which, that** Do not use *which* to refer to persons. Use *who* instead. *That*, though generally used to refer to things, may be used to refer to a group or class of people. *The player who (not that or which) made the basket at the buzzer was named MVP. The team that scores the most points in this game will win the tournament.*

**who, whom** *Who* is used for subjects and subject complements; *whom* is used for objects. (See 25.)

**who's, whose** *Who's* is a contraction of *who is*; *whose* is a possessive pronoun. *Who's ready for more popcorn? Whose coat is this?* (See 36c and 36e.)

**will** See *shall, will*.

**would of** *Would of* is nonstandard for *would have*. *She would have (not would of) had a chance to play if she had arrived on time.*

**you** In formal writing, avoid *you* in an indefinite sense meaning “anyone.” (See 23d.) *Any spectator (not You) could tell by the way John caught the ball that his throw would be too late.*

**your, you're** *Your* is a possessive pronoun; *you're* is a contraction of *you are*. *Is that your new bike? You're in the finals.* (See 36c and 46b.)

# Answers to Lettered Exercises

## EXERCISE 6–1, page 102

a. hasty generalization; b. false analogy; c. *either... or* fallacy; d. biased language; e. faulty cause-and-effect reasoning

## EXERCISE 8–1, page 129 *Possible revisions:*

- The Prussians defeated the Saxons in 1745.
- Ahmed, the producer, manages the entire operation.
- The tour guides expertly paddled the sea kayaks.
- Emphatic and active; no change
- Protesters were shouting on the courthouse steps.

## EXERCISE 9–1, page 132 *Possible revisions:*

- Police dogs are used for finding lost children, tracking criminals, and detecting bombs and illegal drugs.
- Hannah told her rock-climbing partner that she bought a new harness and that she wanted to climb Otter Cliffs.
- It is more difficult to sustain an exercise program than to start one.
- During basic training, I was told not only what to do but also what to think.
- Jan wanted to drive to the wine country or at least to Sausalito.

## EXERCISE 10–1, page 136 *Possible revisions:*

- A grapefruit or an orange is a good source of vitamin C.
- The women entering the military academy can expect haircuts as short as those of the male cadets.
- Looking out the family room window, Sarah saw that her favorite tree, which she had climbed as a child, was gone.
- The graphic designers are interested in and knowledgeable about producing posters for the balloon race.
- The Great Barrier Reef is larger than any other coral reef in the world.

## EXERCISE 11–1, page 140 *Possible revisions:*

- Using surgical gloves is a precaution now taken by dentists to prevent contact with patients' blood and saliva.
- A career in medicine, which my brother is pursuing, requires at least ten years of challenging work.
- The pharaohs had bad teeth because tiny particles of sand found their way into Egyptian bread.
- Recurring bouts of flu caused the team to forfeit a record number of games.
- This box contains the key to your future.

## EXERCISE 12–1, page 143 *Possible revisions:*

- More research is needed to evaluate effectively the risks posed by volcanoes in the Pacific Northwest.
- Many students graduate from college with debt totaling more than fifty thousand dollars.

- c. It is a myth that humans use only 10 percent of their brains.
- d. A coolhunter is a person who can find the next wave of fashion in the unnoticed corners of modern society.
- e. Not all geese fly beyond Narragansett for the winter.

**EXERCISE 12–6, page 146** *Possible revisions:*

- a. To complete an online purchase with a credit card, you must enter the expiration date and the security code.
- b. Though Martha was only sixteen, UCLA accepted her application.
- c. As I settled in the cockpit, the pounding of the engine was muffled only slightly by my helmet.
- d. After studying polymer chemistry, Phuong found computer games less complex.
- e. When I was a young man, my mother enrolled me in tap dance classes.

**EXERCISE 13–5, page 151** *Possible revisions:*

- a. An incredibly talented musician, Ray Charles mastered R&B, soul, and gospel styles. He even performed country music well.
- b. Environmentalists point out that shrimp farming in Southeast Asia is polluting water and making farmlands useless. They warn that governments must act before it is too late.
- c. We observed the samples for five days before we detected any growth. *Or* The samples were observed for five days before any growth was detected.
- d. In his famous soliloquy, Hamlet contemplates whether death would be preferable to his difficult life and, if so, whether he is capable of committing suicide.
- e. The lawyer told the judge that Miranda Hale was innocent and asked that she be allowed to prove the allegations false. *Or* The lawyer told the judge, “Miranda Hale is innocent. Please allow her to prove the allegations false.”

**EXERCISE 13–6, page 152** *Possible revisions:*

- a. Courtroom lawyers need to have more than a touch of theater in their blood.
- b. The interviewer asked if we had brought our proof of citizenship and our passports.
- c. Experienced reconnaissance scouts know how to make fast decisions and use sophisticated equipment to keep their teams from being detected.
- d. After the animators finish their scenes, the production designer arranges the clips according to the storyboard and makes synchronization notes for the sound editor and the composer.
- e. Madame Defarge is a sinister figure in Dickens’s *A Tale of Two Cities*. On a symbolic level, she represents fate; like the Greek Fates, she knits the fabric of individual destiny.

**EXERCISE 14–1, page 155** *Possible revisions:*

- a. Williams played for the Boston Red Sox from 1939 to 1960, and he managed the Washington Senators and Texas Rangers for several years after retiring as a player.
- b. In 1941, Williams finished the season with a batting average of .406; no player has hit over .400 for a season since then.
- c. Although he acknowledged that Joe DiMaggio was a better all-around player, Williams felt that he was a better hitter than DiMaggio.

- d. Williams was a stubborn man; for example, he always refused to tip his cap to the crowd after a home run because he claimed that fans were fickle.
- e. Williams's relationship with the media was unfriendly at best; he sarcastically called baseball writers the "knights of the keyboard" in his memoir.

**EXERCISE 14–2, page 158**    *Possible revisions:*

- a. The X-Men comic books and Japanese woodcuts of kabuki dancers, all part of Marlena's research project on popular culture, covered the tabletop and the chairs.
- b. Our waitress, costumed in a kimono, had painted her face white and arranged her hair in a lacquered beehive.
- c. Students can apply for a spot in the leadership program, which teaches thinking and communication skills.
- d. Shore houses were flooded up to the first floor, beaches were washed away, and Brant's Lighthouse was swallowed by the sea.
- e. Laura Thackray, an engineer at Volvo Car Corporation, addressed women's safety needs by designing a pregnant crash-test dummy.

**EXERCISE 14–8, page 159**    *Possible revisions:*

- a. These particles, known as "stealth liposomes," can hide in the body for a long time without detection.
- b. Irena, a competitive gymnast majoring in biochemistry, intends to apply her athletic experience and her science degree to a career in sports medicine.
- c. Because students, textile workers, and labor unions have loudly protested sweatshop abuses, apparel makers have been forced to examine their labor practices.
- d. Developed in a European university, IRC (Internet relay chat) was created as a way for a group of graduate students to talk from their dorm rooms about projects.
- e. The cafeteria's new menu, which has an international flavor, includes everything from enchiladas and pizza to pad thai and sauerbraten.

**EXERCISE 14–10, page 161**    *Possible revisions:*

- a. To help the relief effort, Gina distributed food and medical supplies.
- b. Janbir, who spent every Saturday learning tabla drumming, noticed with each hour of practice that his memory for complex patterns was growing stronger.
- c. When the rotor hit, it gouged a hole about an eighth of an inch deep in my helmet.
- d. My grandfather, who was born eighty years ago in Puerto Rico, raised his daughters the old-fashioned way.
- e. By reversing the depressive effect of the drug, the Narcan saved the patient's life.

**EXERCISE 15–1, page 165**    *Possible revisions:*

- a. Across the hall from the fossils exhibit are the exhibits for insects and spiders.
- b. After growing up desperately poor, Sayuri becomes a successful geisha.
- c. Researchers who have been studying Mount St. Helens for years believe that earthquakes may have caused the 1980 eruption.

- d. Ice cream typically contains 10 percent milk fat, but premium ice cream may contain up to 16 percent milk fat and has considerably less air in it.
- e. If home values climb, the economy may recover quickly.

**EXERCISE 16–1, page 169** *Possible revisions:*

- a. Martin Luther King Jr. set a high standard for future leaders.
- b. Alice has loved cooking since she could first peek over a kitchen tabletop.
- c. Bloom's race for the governorship is futile.
- d. A successful graphic designer must have technical knowledge and an eye for color and balance.
- e. You will deliver mail to all employees.

**EXERCISE 17–1, page 173** *Possible revisions:*

- a. When I was young, my family was poor.
- b. This conference will help me serve my clients better.
- c. The meteorologist warned the public about the possible dangers of the coming storm.
- d. Government studies show a need for after-school programs.
- e. Passengers should try to complete the customs declaration form before leaving the plane.

**EXERCISE 17–6, page 178** *Possible revisions:*

- a. Dr. GERALYN Farmer is the chief surgeon at University Hospital. Dr. Paul Green is her assistant.
- b. All applicants want to know how much they will earn.
- c. Elementary school teachers should understand the concept of nurturing if they intend to be effective.
- d. Obstetricians need to be available to their patients at all hours.
- e. If we do not stop polluting our environment, we will perish.

**EXERCISE 18–2, page 182** *Possible revisions:*

- a. We regret this delay; thank you for your patience.
- b. Ada's plan is to acquire education and experience to prepare herself for a position as property manager.
- c. Serena Williams, the ultimate competitor, has earned millions of dollars just in endorsements.
- d. Many people take for granted that public libraries have up-to-date computer systems.
- e. The effect of Gao Xingjian's novels on other Chinese exiles is hard to gauge.

**EXERCISE 18–5, page 183** *Possible revisions:*

- a. Queen Anne was so angry with Sarah Churchill that she refused to see her again.
- b. Correct
- c. The parade moved off the street and onto the beach.
- d. The frightened refugees intend to make the dangerous trek across the mountains.
- e. What type of wedding are you planning?

**EXERCISE 18–8, page 186**    *Possible revisions:*

- a. John stormed into the room like a hurricane.
- b. Some people insist that they'll always be available to help, even when they haven't been before.
- c. The Cubs easily beat the Mets, who were in trouble early in the game today at Wrigley Field.
- d. We worked out the problems in our relationship.
- e. My mother accused me of evading her questions when in fact I was just saying the first thing that came to mind.

**EXERCISE 19–1, page 194**    *Possible revisions:*

- a. Listening to the CD her sister had sent, Mia was overcome with a mix of emotions: happiness, homesickness, and nostalgia.
- b. Cortés and his soldiers were astonished when they looked down from the mountains and saw Tenochtitlán, the magnificent capital of the Aztecs.
- c. Although my spoken Spanish is not very good, I can read the language with ease.
- d. There are several reasons for not eating meat. One reason is that dangerous chemicals are used throughout the various stages of meat production.
- e. To learn how to sculpt beauty from everyday life is my intention in studying art and archaeology.

**EXERCISE 20–1, page 200**    *Possible revisions:*

- a. The city had one public swimming pool that stayed packed with children all summer long.
- b. The building is being renovated, so at times we have no heat, water, or electricity.
- c. The view was not what the travel agent had described. Where were the rolling hills and the shimmering rivers?
- d. Walker's coming-of-age novel is set against a gloomy scientific backdrop; the earth's rotation has begun to slow down.
- e. City officials had good reason to fear a major earthquake: Most [*or* most] of the business district was built on landfill.

**EXERCISE 20–2, page 201**    *Possible revisions:*

- a. Wind power for the home is a supplementary source of energy that can be combined with electricity, gas, or solar energy.
- b. Correct
- c. In the Middle Ages, when the streets of London were dangerous places, it was safer to travel by boat along the Thames.
- d. "He's not drunk," I said. "He's in a state of diabetic shock."
- e. Are you able to endure extreme angle turns, high speeds, frequent jumps, and occasional crashes? Then supermoto racing may be a sport for you.

**EXERCISE 21–1, page 211**

- a. One of the main reasons for elephant poaching is the profits received from selling the ivory tusks.
- b. Correct
- c. A number of students in the seminar were aware of the importance of joining the discussion.



- d. Batik cloth from Bali, blue and white ceramics from Delft, and a bocce ball from Turin have made Angelie's room the talk of the dorm.
- e. Correct

**EXERCISE 22-1, page 217** Possible revisions:

- a. Every presidential candidate must appeal to a wide variety of ethnic and social groups to win the election.
- b. David lent his motorcycle to someone who allowed a friend to use it.
- c. The aerobics teacher motioned for all the students to move their arms in wide, slow circles.
- d. Correct
- e. Applicants should be bilingual if they want to qualify for this position.

**EXERCISE 23-1, page 221** Possible revisions:

- a. Some professors say that engineering students should have hands-on experience with dismantling and reassembling machines.
- b. Because she had decorated her living room with posters from chamber music festivals, her date thought that she was interested in classical music. Actually, she preferred rock.
- c. In my high school, students didn't need to get all A's to be considered a success; they just needed to work to their ability.
- d. Marianne told Jenny, "I am worried about your mother's illness."  
[or "... about my mother's illness."]
- e. Though Lewis cried for several minutes after scraping his knee, eventually his crying subsided.

**EXERCISE 24-1, page 226**

- a. Correct [But the writer could change the end of the sentence: . . . *than he was.*]
- b. Correct [But the writer could change the end of the sentence: . . . *that she was the coach.*]
- c. She appreciated his telling the truth in such a difficult situation.
- d. The director has asked you and me to draft a proposal for a new recycling plan.
- e. Five close friends and I rented a station wagon, packed it with food, and drove two hundred miles to Mardi Gras.

**EXERCISE 25-1, page 230**

- a. Correct
- b. The environmental policy conference featured scholars whom I had never heard of. [*or . . . scholars I had never heard of.*]
- c. Correct
- d. Daniel always gives a holiday donation to whoever needs it.
- e. So many singers came to the audition that Natalia had trouble deciding whom to select for the choir.

**EXERCISE 26-1, page 236**

- a. Do you expect to perform well on the exam next week?
- b. With the budget deadline approaching, our office has hardly had time to handle routine correspondence.

- c. Correct
- d. The customer complained that he hadn't been treated nicely by the agent on the phone.
- e. Of all the smart people in my family, Aunt Ida is the cleverest. [*or . . . most clever.*]

**EXERCISE 27-1, page 242**

- a. When I get the urge to exercise, I lie down until it passes.
- b. Grandmother had driven our new hybrid to the sunrise church service, so we were left with the station wagon.
- c. A pile of dirty rags was lying at the bottom of the stairs.
- d. How did the game know that the player had gone from the room with the blue ogre to the hall where the gold was heaped?
- e. Abraham Lincoln took good care of his legal clients; the contracts he drew for the Illinois Central Railroad could never be broken.

**EXERCISE 27-5, page 247**

- a. The glass sculptures of the Swan Boats were prominent in the brightly lit lobby.
- b. Visitors to the glass museum were not supposed to touch the exhibits.
- c. Our church has all the latest technology, even a closed-circuit television.
- d. Christos didn't know about Marlo's promotion because he never listens. He is [*or He's*] always talking.
- e. Correct

**EXERCISE 27-9, page 254**    *Possible revisions:*

- a. Correct
- b. Watson and Crick discovered the mechanism that controls inheritance in all life: the workings of the DNA molecule.
- c. When city planners proposed rezoning the waterfront, did they know that the mayor had promised to curb development in that neighborhood?
- d. Tonight's concert begins at 9:30. If it were earlier, I'd consider going.
- e. Correct

**EXERCISE 28-1, page 261**

- a. In the past, tobacco companies denied any connection between smoking and health problems.
- b. The volunteer's compassion has touched many lives.
- c. I want to register for a summer tutoring session.
- d. By the end of the year, the state will have tested 139 birds for avian flu.
- e. The golfers were prepared for all weather conditions.

**EXERCISE 28-4, page 263**

- a. A major league pitcher can throw a baseball more than ninety-five miles per hour.
- b. The writing center tutor will help you revise your essay.
- c. A reptile must adjust its body temperature to its environment.
- d. Correct
- e. My uncle, a cartoonist, could sketch a face in less than two minutes.

**EXERCISE 28–7, page 267** *Possible revisions:*

- a. The electrician might have discovered the broken circuit if she had gone through the modules one at a time.
- b. If Verena wins a scholarship, she will go to graduate school.
- c. Whenever a rainbow appears after a storm, everybody comes out to see it.
- d. Sarah did not understand the terms of her internship.
- e. If I lived in Budapest with my cousin Szusza, she would teach me Hungarian cooking.

**EXERCISE 28–10, page 270** *Possible answers:*

- a. I enjoy riding my motorcycle.
- b. The tutor told Samantha to come to the writing center.
- c. The team hopes to work hard and win the championship.
- d. Ricardo and his brothers miss surfing during the winter.
- e. Jon remembered to lock the door. *Or* Jon remembered seeing that movie years ago.

**EXERCISE 29–1, page 278**

- a. Doing volunteer work often brings satisfaction.
- b. As I looked out the window of the plane, I could see Cape Cod.
- c. Melina likes to drink her coffee with lots of cream.
- d. Correct
- e. I completed my homework assignment quickly. *Or* I completed the homework assignment quickly.

**EXERCISE 30–1, page 283**

- a. There are some cartons of ice cream in the freezer.
- b. I don't use the subway because I am afraid.
- c. The prime minister is the most popular leader in my country.
- d. We tried to get in touch with the same manager whom we spoke to earlier.
- e. Recently there have been a number of earthquakes in Turkey.

**EXERCISE 30–4, page 285** *Possible revisions:*

- a. Although freshwater freezes at 32 degrees Fahrenheit, ocean water freezes at 28 degrees Fahrenheit.
- b. Because we switched cable packages, our channel lineup has changed.
- c. The competitor confidently mounted his skateboard.
- d. My sister performs the *legong*, a Balinese dance, well.
- e. Correct

**EXERCISE 30–7, page 286**

- a. Listening to everyone's complaints all day was irritating.
- b. The long flight to Singapore was exhausting.
- c. Correct
- d. After a great deal of research, the scientist made a fascinating discovery.
- e. Surviving that tornado was one of the most frightening experiences I've ever had.

**EXERCISE 30–10, page 288**

- a. an intelligent young Vietnamese sculptor
- b. a dedicated Catholic priest

- c. her old blue wool sweater
- d. Joe's delicious Scandinavian bread
- e. many beautiful antique jewelry boxes

**EXERCISE 31-1, page 289**

- a. Whenever we eat at the Centerville Café, we sit at a small table in the corner of the room.
- b. Correct
- c. On Thursday, Nancy will attend her first home repair class at the community center.
- d. Correct
- e. We decided to go to a restaurant because there was no fresh food in the refrigerator.

**EXERCISE 32-1, page 296**

- a. Alisa brought the injured bird home and fashioned a splint out of Popsicle sticks for its wing.
- b. Considered a classic of early animation, *The Adventures of Prince Achmed* used hand-cut silhouettes against colored backgrounds.
- c. If you complete the evaluation form and return it within two weeks, you will receive a free breakfast during your next stay.
- d. Correct
- e. Roger had always wanted a handmade violin, but he couldn't afford one.

**EXERCISE 32-2, page 296**

- a. J. R. R. Tolkien finished writing his draft of *The Lord of the Rings* trilogy in 1949, but the first book in the series wasn't published until 1954.
- b. In the first two minutes of its ascent, the space shuttle had broken the sound barrier and reached a height of over twenty-five miles.
- c. German shepherds can be gentle guide dogs, or they can be fierce attack dogs.
- d. Some former professional cyclists admit that the use of performance-enhancing drugs is widespread in cycling, but they argue that no rider can be competitive without doping.
- e. As an intern, I learned most aspects of the broadcasting industry, but I never learned about fundraising.

**EXERCISE 32-5, page 298**

- a. The cold, impersonal atmosphere of the university was unbearable.
- b. An ambulance threaded its way through police cars, fire trucks, and irate citizens.
- c. Correct
- d. After two broken arms, three cracked ribs, and one concussion, Ken quit the varsity football team.
- e. Correct

**EXERCISE 32-6, page 299**

- a. NASA's rovers on Mars are equipped with special cameras that can take close-up, high-resolution pictures of the terrain.
- b. Correct
- c. Correct

- d. Love, vengeance, greed, and betrayal are common themes in Western literature.
- e. Many experts believe that shark attacks on surfers are a result of the sharks' mistaking surfboards for small injured seals.

**EXERCISE 32-9, page 302**

- a. Choreographer Alvin Ailey's best-known work, *Revelations*, is more than just a crowd-pleaser.
- b. Correct
- c. Correct
- d. A member of an organization that provides job training for teens was also appointed to the education commission.
- e. Brian Eno, who began his career as a rock musician, turned to meditative compositions in the late 1970s.

**EXERCISE 32-11, page 307**

- a. Cricket, which originated in England, is also popular in Australia, South Africa, and India.
- b. At the sound of the starting pistol, the horses surged forward toward the first obstacle, a sharp incline three feet high.
- c. After seeing an exhibition of Western art, Gerhard Richter escaped from East Berlin and smuggled out many of his notebooks.
- d. Corrie's new wet suit has an intricate blue pattern.
- e. We replaced the rickety old spiral staircase with a sturdy new ladder.

**EXERCISE 32-12, page 308**

- a. On January 15, 2012, our office moved to 29 Commonwealth Avenue, Mechanicsville, VA 23111.
- b. Correct
- c. Ms. Carlson, you are a valued customer whose satisfaction is very important to us.
- d. Mr. Mundy was born on July 22, 1939, in Arkansas, where his family had lived for four generations.
- e. Correct

**EXERCISE 33-1, page 312**

- a. Correct
- b. Tricia's first artwork was a bright blue clay dolphin.
- c. Some modern musicians (trumpeter John Hassell is an example) blend several cultural traditions into a unique sound.
- d. Myra liked hot, spicy foods such as chili, kung pao chicken, and buffalo wings.
- e. On the display screen was a soothing pattern of light and shadow.

**EXERCISE 34-1, page 316**

- a. Do not ask me to be kind; just ask me to act as though I were.
- b. When men talk about defense, they always claim to be protecting women and children, but they never ask the women and children what they think.
- c. When I get a little money, I buy books; if any is left, I buy food and clothes.
- d. Correct
- e. Wit has truth in it; wisecracking is simply calisthenics with words.

**EXERCISE 34–2, page 317**

- a. Strong black coffee will not sober you up; the truth is that time is the only way to get alcohol out of your system.
- b. Margaret was not surprised to see hail and vivid lightning; conditions had been right for violent weather all day.
- c. There is often a fine line between right and wrong, good and bad, truth and deception.
- d. Correct
- e. Severe, unremitting pain is a ravaging force, especially when the patient tries to hide it from others.

**EXERCISE 35–1, page 319**

- a. Correct [Either *It* or *it* is correct.]
- b. If we have come to fight, we are far too few; if we have come to die, we are far too many.
- c. The travel package includes a round-trip ticket to Athens, a cruise through the Cyclades, and all hotel accommodations.
- d. The news article portrays the land use proposal as reckless, although 62 percent of the town's residents support it.
- e. Psychologists Kindlon and Thompson (2000) offer parents a simple starting point for raising male children: "Teach boys that there are many ways to be a man" (p. 256).

**EXERCISE 36–1, page 322**

- a. Correct
- b. The innovative shoe fastener was inspired by the designer's young son.
- c. Each day's menu features a different European country's dish.
- d. Sue worked overtime to increase her family's earnings.
- e. Ms. Jacobs is unwilling to listen to students' complaints about computer failures.

**EXERCISE 37–1, page 328**

- a. As for the advertisement "Sailors have more fun," if you consider chipping paint and swabbing decks fun, then you will have plenty of it.
- b. Correct
- c. After winning the lottery, Juanita said that she would give half the money to charity.
- d. After the movie, Vicki said, "The reviewer called this flick 'trash of the first order.' I guess you can't believe everything you read."
- e. Correct

**EXERCISE 39–1, page 335**

- a. A client left his or her [*or a*] cell phone in our conference room after the meeting.
- b. The films we made of Kilauea on our trip to Hawaii Volcanoes National Park illustrate a typical spatter cone eruption.
- c. Correct
- d. Of three engineering fields—chemical, mechanical, and materials—Keegan chose materials engineering for its application to toy manufacturing.
- e. Correct

**EXERCISE 40–1, page 341**

- a. Correct
- b. Some combat soldiers are trained by government diplomats to be sensitive to issues of culture, history, and religion.
- c. Correct
- d. How many pounds have you lost since you began running four miles a day?
- e. Denzil spent all night studying for his psychology exam.

**EXERCISE 41–1, page 342**

- a. *MLA style:* The carpenters located three maple timbers, twenty-one sheets of cherry, and ten oblongs of polished ebony for the theater set. *APA style:* The carpenters located three maple timbers, 21 sheets of cherry, and 10 oblongs of polished ebony for the theater set.
- b. Correct
- c. Correct
- d. Eight students in the class had been labeled “learning disabled.”
- e. The Vietnam Veterans Memorial in Washington, DC, had 58,132 names inscribed on it when it was dedicated in 1982.

**EXERCISE 42–1, page 345**

- a. Howard Hughes commissioned the *Spruce Goose*, a beautifully built but thoroughly impractical wooden aircraft.
- b. The old man screamed his anger, shouting to all of us, “I will not leave my money to you worthless layabouts!”
- c. I learned the Latin term *ad infinitum* from an old nursery rhyme about fleas: “Great fleas have little fleas upon their back to bite ‘em, / Little fleas have lesser fleas and so on *ad infinitum*.”
- d. Correct
- e. Neve Campbell’s lifelong interest in ballet inspired her involvement in the film *The Company*, which portrays a season with the Joffrey Ballet.

**EXERCISE 44–1, page 356**

- a. Correct
- b. The swiftly moving tugboat pulled alongside the barge and directed it away from the oil spill in the harbor.
- c. Correct
- d. Your dog is well known in our neighborhood.
- e. Roadblocks were set up along all the major highways leading out of the city.

**EXERCISE 45–1, page 360**

- a. Assistant Dean Shirin Ahmadi recommended offering more world language courses.
- b. Correct
- c. Kalindi has an ambitious semester, studying differential calculus, classical Hebrew, brochure design, and Greek literature.
- d. Lydia’s aunt and uncle make modular houses as beautiful as modernist works of art.
- e. We amused ourselves on the long flight by discussing how spring in Kyoto stacks up against summer in London.

**EXERCISE 46-1, page 362**

a. stage, confrontation, proportions; b. courage, mountain (noun/adjective), climber, inspiration, rescuers; c. need, guest, honor, fog; d. defense (noun/adjective), attorney, appeal, jury; e. museum, women (noun/adjective), artists, 1987

**EXERCISE 46-5, page 365**

a. his; b. that, our (pronoun/adjective); c. he, himself, some, his (pronoun/adjective); d. I, my (pronoun/adjective), you, one; e. no one, her

**EXERCISE 46-9, page 367**

a. told; b. were, killed; c. brought down; d. Stay, 'll [will] arrive; e. struggled, was trapped

**EXERCISE 46-13, page 369**

a. Adjectives: weak, unfocused; b. Adjectives: The (article), Spanish, flexible; adverb: wonderfully; c. Adjectives: The (article), fragrant, the (article), steady; adverb: especially; d. Adjectives: hot, cold; adverbs: rather, slightly, bitterly; e. Adjectives: The (article), its (pronoun/adjective), wicker (noun/adjective); adverb: soundly

**EXERCISE 47-1, page 377**

a. Complete subjects: The hills and mountains, the snow atop them; simple subjects: hills, mountains, snow; b. Complete subject: points; simple subject: points; c. Complete subject: (You); d. Complete subject: hundreds of fireflies; simple subject: hundreds; e. Complete subject: The evidence against the defendant; simple subject: evidence

**EXERCISE 47-5, page 381**

a. Subject complement: expensive; b. Direct object: death; c. Direct object: their players' efforts; d. Subject complement: the capital of the Russian Empire; e. Subject complement: bitter

**EXERCISE 47-6, page 381**

a. Direct objects: adults and children; object complement: weary; b. Indirect object: students; direct object: healthy meal choices; c. Direct object: the work; object complement: finished; d. Indirect objects: the agent, us; direct objects: our tickets, boarding passes; e. Direct object: community service; object complement: her priority

**EXERCISE 48-1, page 385**

a. In northern Italy (adverb phrase modifying *met*); as their first language (adverb phrase modifying *speak*); b. through the thick forest (adjective phrase modifying *hike*); with ease (adverb phrase modifying *completed*); c. To my boss's dismay (adverb phrase modifying *was*); for work (adverb phrase modifying *late*); d. of Mayan artifacts (adjective phrase modifying *exhibit*); into pre-Columbian culture (adjective phrase modifying *insight*); e. In 2002, in twelve European countries (adverb phrases modifying *became*)



**EXERCISE 48–6, page 388**

a. Updating your software (gerund phrase used as subject); b. decreasing the town budget (gerund phrase used as object of the preposition *in*); identifying nonessential services (gerund phrase used as subject complement); c. to help her mother by raking the lawn (infinitive phrase used as direct object); raking the lawn (gerund phrase used as object of the preposition *by*); d. Understanding little (participial phrase modifying *I*); passing my biology final (gerund phrase used as object of the preposition *of*); e. Working with animals (gerund phrase used as subject)

**EXERCISE 48–10, page 391**

a. so that every vote would count (adverb clause modifying *adjusted*); b. that targets baby boomers (adjective clause modifying *campaign*); c. After the Tambora volcano erupted in the southern Pacific in 1815 (adverb clause modifying *realized*); that it would contribute to the “year without a summer” in Europe and North America (noun clause used as direct object of *realized*); d. that at a certain point there will be no more oil to extract from the earth (noun clause used as direct object of *implies*); e. when you are rushing (adverb clause modifying *are overlooked*)

**EXERCISE 49–1, page 394**

a. Complex; that are ignited in dry areas (adjective clause); b. Compound;  
c. Simple; d. Complex; Before we leave for the station (adverb clause);  
e. Compound-complex; when you want to leave (noun clause)

# Index

## A

- a, an*. See also *the*  
*a vs. an*, 271, 608  
    choosing, with common nouns, 274–76  
    defined, 270  
    multilingual/ESL challenges with, 270–71, 274–76  
    needed, 136  
    omission of, 136, 274–76
- Abbreviations, 338–41  
    acronyms, 339  
    in APA reference list, 584  
    common, 338–39  
    inappropriate, 340  
    Latin, 340  
    in MLA works cited list, 470  
    periods with, 330–31, 338–39  
    plurals of, 322, 340  
    for titles with proper names, 338  
    for units of measurement, 339–40
- abide by* (not *with*) *a decision*, 182
- Absolute concepts (such as *unique*), 235
- Absolute phrases  
    commas with, 304  
    defined, 388
- Abstract nouns, 181
- Abstracts  
    in APA papers, 582, 586, 601  
    citing  
        APA style, 562  
        MLA style, 482–83  
    in databases, 421  
    keywords in, 580, 584, 601
- Academic degrees, abbreviations for, 338–39
- Academic habits, developing. See Habits of mind
- Academic writing, 66–123. See also Sample student writing  
    analysis papers, 66–91  
    APA papers, 527–96  
    argument papers, 91–119  
    assignments, understanding, 6–7  
    audience for, 4, 8–9  
    e-mail, 607  
    genre (type of writing) and, 4, 10  
    manuscript formats, 597–99  
        APA style, 580–84  
        MLA style, 45–48, 513–16, 598–99  
    MLA papers, 431–525  
    oral presentations, 119–23  
    purpose of, 4, 7–8  
    reading for, 66–73  
    research papers, 396–430  
    speeches, 119–23
- accept, except*, 608
- according to* (not *with*), 182
- Acronyms, 339
- Active reading. See Reading
- Active verbs, 126–29. See also Active voice
- Active voice  
    vs. *be* verbs, 127–28  
    changing to passive, 379, 383  
    vs. passive, 126–29, 383  
    shifts between passive and, avoiding, 149–50  
    verb tenses in, 257–59  
    and wordy sentences, 168
- adapt, adopt*, 608
- AD, BC (CE, BCE)*, 339
- Addresses. See also URLs  
    commas with, 306  
    e-mail, 355–56  
    numbers in, 342
- ad hominem* fallacy, 98–100
- Adjective clauses  
    avoiding repetition in, 282–83  
    defined, 389  
    punctuation of, 301  
    words introducing, 389, 390
- Adjective phrases  
    infinitive, 387  
    introductory, with comma, 295  
    participial, 386  
    prepositional, 384–85  
    punctuation of, 301–02  
    restrictive (essential) vs. nonrestrictive (nonessential), 301–02
- Adjectives  
    and absolute concepts, 235  
    and adverbs, 230–37, 368–69

- commas with coordinate, 297–98  
 comparative forms (with *-er* or *more*), 234–35  
 defined, 367  
 after direct objects (object complements), 232, 379  
 hyphens with, 354  
 after linking verbs (subject complements), 231–32, 378  
 no commas with cumulative, 297–98, 309–10  
 order of, 287  
 with prepositions (idioms), 291  
 superlative forms (with *-est* or *most*), 234–35
- adopt*. See *adapt*, *adopt*, 608
- Adverb clauses  
 comma with, 295  
 defined, 390  
 no comma with, 310–11  
 punctuation of, 295, 310–11  
 words introducing, 390
- Adverb phrases  
 infinitive, 387  
 prepositional, 384–85
- Adverbs. See also Conjunctive adverbs  
 and adjectives, 230–37  
 comparative forms (with *-er* or *more*), 234–35  
 defined, 368  
 introducing clauses, 282–83, 389  
 placement of, 284  
 relative, 282–83, 389, 390  
 repetition of, avoiding, 282–83  
 superlative forms (with *-est* or *most*), 234–35
- adverse*, *averse*, 608
- Advertisements, writing about. See Multimodal texts
- advice*, *advise*, 608
- affect*, *effect*, 608
- aggravate*, 608
- Agreement of pronoun and antecedent, 213–18  
 with antecedents joined by *and*, 215  
 with antecedents joined by *or* or *nor*, 216–17  
 with collective nouns (*audience*, *family*, *team*, etc.), 215  
 with generic nouns, 214–15  
 with indefinite pronouns, 213–14  
 and sexist language, avoiding, 213–14, 216
- Agreement of subject and verb, 202–12  
 with collective nouns (*audience*, *family*, *team*, etc.), 207–08  
 with company names, 211  
 with gerund phrases, 211  
 with indefinite pronouns, 206–07  
 with intervening words, 202–03  
 with nouns of plural form, singular meaning (*athletics*, *economics*, etc.), 211  
 standard subject-verb combinations, 202, 204–05  
 with subject, not subject complement, 209–10  
 with subject after verb, 209  
 with subjects joined with *and*, 203, 206  
 with subjects joined with *or* or *nor*, 206  
 with *the number*, *a number*, 208  
 with *there is*, *there are*, 209  
 with titles of works, 211  
 with units of measurement, 208  
 with *who*, *which*, *that*, 210  
 with words between subject and verb, 202–03  
 with words used as words, 211
- agree to*, *agree with*, 182, 609
- ain't* (nonstandard), 609
- Aircraft, italics for names of, 344
- Alignment of text (left, right, centered, justified)  
 in APA papers, 581  
 in MLA papers, 514, 598–99
- all* (singular or plural), 206–07
- all-*, as prefix, with hyphen, 355
- all ready*, *already*, 609
- all right* (not *alright*), 609
- all together*, *altogether*, 609
- allude*, 609
- allusion*, *illusion*, 609
- almost*, placement of, 140–41
- a lot* (not *alot*), 609
- already*. See *all ready*, *already*, 609
- alright* (nonstandard). See *all right*, 609
- although*  
 avoiding with *but* or *however*, 283–84  
 introducing subordinate clause, 370  
 no comma after, 312
- altogether*. See *all together*, *altogether*, 609

- American Psychological Association.  
 See APA papers
- among, between.* See *between, among*, 611
- amongst*, 609
- amoral, immoral*, 609
- amount, number*, 609
- a.m., p.m., AM, PM*, 339
- am vs. is or are.* See Agreement of subject and verb
- an, a.* See *a, an*
- Analogy
- as argument strategy, 93–94
  - false, 93–94
  - as paragraph pattern, 56
- Analysis. See also Analysis papers
- critical thinking, 66–73
  - evaluating sources, 403–04, 416–30
  - synthesizing sources
    - APA style, 545–46
    - MLA style, 454–56
  - of visual and multimodal texts, 80–91
  - of written texts, 66–80, 410, 412
- Analysis papers, 66–91. See also Analysis
- and critical thinking, 66–73, 81–84
  - drafting, 73–77
  - evidence for, 73–74, 86–87
  - judgment in, 75, 76, 86–87
  - interpretation in, 73–75, 86–88
  - revising, 77
  - sample papers, 78–80, 88–91
  - summaries in, 72–73
    - balancing with analysis, 74, 76, 86–87
    - revising, 77
    - writing, 73, 85
  - thesis in, 75, 76–77, 87
  - writing guide for, 76–77
- and*
- antecedents joined by, 215
  - comma with, 294–95
  - as coordinating conjunction, 131, 370
  - excessive use of, 158–60
  - no comma with, 308–09, 311
  - no semicolon with, 316
  - parallelism and, 131
  - subjects joined by, 203, 206
- and etc.* (nonstandard), 609
- and/or*
- avoiding, 609
  - slash with, 335
- angry with* (not *at*), 182, 609
- Annotated bibliography, 427–30
- sample entry (MLA style), 430
  - writing guide for, 428–29
- Annotating texts
- electronic texts, 67, 72
  - to generate ideas, 13, 67–68, 412–13
  - guidelines for, 70
  - visual or multimodal texts, 81–82, 83
    - sample annotated visual text, 83
  - written texts, 67–68, 70
    - sample annotated written texts, 67–68, 413, 454
- ante-, anti-*, 609
- Antecedent
- agreement of pronoun and, 213–18
  - defined, 213, 218, 363
  - pronoun reference, 218–22
  - singular vs. plural, 213–18
  - unclear or unstated, 219–20
  - of *who, which, that*, 210
- Anthology or collection, citing
- APA style, 569
  - MLA style, 464–65, 491
  - citation at a glance, 492–93
- anti-, ante-*. See *ante-, anti-*, 609
- Antonyms (opposites), 350
- a number* (plural), *the number* (singular), 208
- anxious*, 610
- any*, 206–07
- anybody* (singular), 206–07, 213–14, 610
- anymore*, 610
- anyone* (singular), 206–07, 213–14, 610
- anyone, any one*, 610
- anyplace*, 610
- anything* (singular), 206–07, 213–14
- anyways, anywhere* (nonstandard), 610
- APA papers, 527–96
- abstracts in, 582, 586, 601
  - authority in, 405, 533
  - author note in (optional), 600
  - citation at a glance
    - article from a database, 562–63
    - article in a journal or magazine, 560–61
    - book, 568
    - section in a Web document, 576–77

- citations, in-text  
     directory to models for, 528  
     models for, 547–53  
 DOIs (digital object identifiers)  
     in, 555, 562–63, 584  
 evidence for, 532–33  
 footnotes in  
     formatting, 582  
     sample, 587  
 keywords in, 582, 586, 601  
 manuscript format, 580–84,  
     600–02  
 numbers in, 341–42, 601  
 organizing, 531–32  
 plagiarism in, avoiding, 534–37  
 reference list  
     directory to models for, 528–29  
     formatting, 583–84, 602  
     general guidelines for, 554–55  
     models for, 553–80  
     sample, 595–96, 602  
 sample paper, 585–96  
 signal phrases in, 541–44  
 sources in  
     citing, 534–37, 546–80  
     integrating, 537–44  
     synthesizing, 545–46  
     uses of, 532–33  
 supporting arguments in, 532–33,  
     545–46  
 tables and figures in  
     citing sources of, 585  
     formatting, 583  
     sample, 591, 603  
 tenses in, 250, 542, 547  
 thesis in, 530–31  
 title page  
     formatting, 581, 600  
 samples, 585  
 URLs in, 555, 572, 584
- Apostrophes, 319–23  
     in contractions, 321  
     misuse of, 322  
     in plurals, 321–22  
     in possessives, 319–20
- Appeals, in arguments. *See Ethos*  
     (ethical appeals); *Logos* (logical  
     appeals); *Pathos* (emotional  
     appeals)
- Apposition, faulty, 139  
 Appositive phrases, 156, 388  
 Appositives (nouns that rename  
     other nouns)  
     case of pronouns with, 224  
     colon with, 317  
     commas with, 302  
     dashes with, 332  
     defined, 302  
     no commas with, 310  
     as sentence fragments, 191–92
- Appropriate language (avoiding  
     jargon, slang, etc.), 170–79
- Apps  
     citing  
         APA style, 578  
         MLA style, 501  
         italics for titles of, 344
- are vs. is. See Agreement of subject  
 and verb*
- Argument papers, 91–119. *See also*  
     Arguments, evaluating  
     appeals in, 104, 105  
     audience for, 103–05  
     common ground in, 104, 105–06,  
         111, 118  
     context in, 103, 118  
     counterarguments in, 32, 100–02,  
         109–11, 118  
     credibility in, 104, 105–06  
     drafting, 103–11, 119  
     evidence in, 104, 107–09, 118  
     introduction to, 105–06  
     lines of argument in, 106–07  
     oral presentations of, 119–23  
     purpose in, 103  
     researching, 103  
     sample paper, 112–17  
     support for, 106–09  
     thesis in, 105–07, 118  
     writing guide for, 118–19
- Arguments, evaluating, 91–102. *See*  
     *also* Argument papers  
     argumentative tactics, 91–97, 102  
     assumptions, 96  
     bias, 423–24  
     claims, 96  
     deductive reasoning, 96–97  
     *ethos* (ethical appeals), 99, 100  
     fairness, 98–100  
     generalizations, faulty, 93  
     inductive reasoning, 91–92, 94  
     logical fallacies, 91–99  
     *logos* (logical appeals), 91–97, 99  
     *pathos* (emotional appeals), 98–100
- Article from a database, citing. *See*  
     *also* Articles in periodicals  
     APA style, 559–67  
         citation at a glance, 562–63  
     MLA style, 477–85  
         citation at a glance, 480–81

- Articles (*a, an, the*), 270–79. See also *a, an; the*
- Articles in periodicals. See also Article from a database
- abstracts of, 421
  - capitalizing titles of, 358–59
    - APA style, 554, 581, 584
    - MLA style, 470, 514
  - citation at a glance
    - APA style, 560–61
    - MLA style, 478–79
  - citing
    - APA style, 559–67
    - MLA style, 477–87
  - finding, 402–06
  - keeping records of, 409, 410
  - previewing, 418, 420
  - quotation marks for titles of, 325
    - APA style, 554, 581, 584
    - MLA style, 471, 514
- Artwork, italics for title of, 343–44
- as*
- ambiguous use of, 610
  - needed word, 135
  - parallelism and, 131–32
  - pronoun after, 225
- as, like*. See *like, as, 616*
- Assignments, understanding, 6–7
- Assumptions, in arguments, 96
- as to*, 610
- at*, in idioms (common expressions)
- with adjectives, 291
  - vs. *in, on*, to show time and place, 288–89
  - with verbs, 291–92
- athletics* (singular), 211
- audience*. See Collective nouns
- Audience
- for argument paper, 103–05
  - assessing, 4, 8–9
  - and document design, 597
  - for e-mail, 9
  - and genre (type of writing), 10
  - and global (big-picture) revision, 38–39
  - and level of formality, 175–76
  - for speech or oral presentation, 120
  - and thesis, 14–15, 16
- Authority, establishing in research papers, 405
- in APA papers, 533
  - in MLA papers, 438, 451–52
- Author note, in APA papers, 600
- Authors, of sources
- in APA reference list, 554
  - identifying, 425, 474–75
  - in MLA works cited list, 469–76
  - in reposted files, 502–03
- Auxiliary verbs. See Helping verbs
- averse*. See *adverse, averse*, 608
- awful*, 610
- awhile, a while*, 610
- Awkward sentences, 137–40
- B**
- back up, backup*, 610
- bad, badly*, 233–34, 610
- Bandwagon appeal fallacy, 100
- Base form of verb, 237–38, 366–67
- modal (*can, should, etc.*) with, 246, 261–63
  - in negatives with *do*, 264
- BC, AD (BCE, CE), 339
- be*, as irregular verb, 237–38, 244, 256–57
- be*, forms of, 204, 256–57, 366–67
- vs. active verbs, 127–28
  - and agreement with subject, 202–12
  - in conditional sentences, 266
  - as helping verbs, 127–28, 258–60, 366
  - as linking verbs, 127–28, 246, 280, 378
  - in passive voice, 126–27, 259–61
  - in progressive forms, 248–49, 258
  - and subjunctive mood, 252–53
  - in tenses, 238, 247–49
  - as weak verbs, 127–28
- because*
- avoiding after *reason is*, 139, 618
  - avoiding with *so* or *therefore*, 283–84
  - introducing subordinate clause, 370
  - not omitting, 132
- Beginning of essays. See Introduction
- Beginning of sentences
- capitalizing words at, 359
  - numbers at, 342
  - varying, 163
- being as, being that* (nonstandard), 610
- beside, besides*, 610
- better, best*, 234–35
- between, among*, 611
- Bias, signs of, 423

- Biased language, avoiding, 98, 179.  
*See also* Sexist language, avoiding
- Bible. *See* Sacred texts (Bible, Qur'an)
- Bibliography. *See also* Reference list (APA); Works cited list (MLA)
- annotated, 427–30  
 sample entry (MLA style), 430  
 for finding sources, 405–06  
 working, 409  
 information for, 29, 411
- Block quotation. *See* Quotations, long
- Blog  
 citing  
 APA style, 573  
 MLA style, 498  
 to explore ideas, 14
- Body  
 of essay, 24–27  
 of speech or oral presentation, 120–21
- Books  
 capitalizing titles of, 358–59  
 APA style, 554, 581, 584  
 MLA style, 470, 514  
 citation at a glance  
 APA style, 568  
 MLA style, 489, 492–93  
 citing  
 APA style, 567–72  
 MLA style, 488–95  
 italics for titles of, 343  
 APA style, 554, 581, 584  
 MLA style, 471, 514  
 library catalog for finding, 403, 418  
 previewing, 406, 418, 420
- Borrowed language and ideas. *See* Citing sources; Plagiarism, avoiding
- both . . . and*, 370–71  
 parallelism and, 131
- Brackets, 334  
 APA style, 540  
 MLA style, 449
- Brainstorming, 13
- Bridges. *See* Transitions
- bring, take*, 611
- Broad reference of *this, that, which, it*, 219
- burst, bursted; bust, busted*, 611
- Business writing, 597, 603–07  
 abbreviations in, 604  
 audience for, 8–9  
 e-mail, 9, 607  
 letters, 604  
 memos, 606  
 reports, 603  
 résumés, 605
- but*  
 avoiding with *although* or *however*, 283–84  
 comma with, 294–95  
 as coordinating conjunction, 131, 370  
 excessive use of, 158–60  
 no comma with, 308–09, 311  
 no semicolon with, 316  
 parallelism and, 131  
 as preposition, 370
- by*, not omitting, 132

**C**

- can*, as modal verb, 261, 262, 366
- can, may*, 611
- capable of* (not *to*), 182
- capital, capitol*, 611
- Capitalization, 356–60  
 after colon, 318, 359–60  
 APA style, 581  
 MLA style, 514  
 of first word of sentence, 359  
 of Internet terms, 358, 572  
 misuse of, 356–58  
 of proper nouns, 356–58  
 in quotations, 359  
 of titles of persons, 358  
 of titles of works, 358–59  
 APA style, 554, 581, 584  
 MLA style, 470, 514
- capitol*. *See* *capital, capitol*, 611
- Captions  
 APA style, 583, 603  
 MLA style, 515, 519
- Case. *See* Pronoun case
- Catalog, library, 403, 418
- Causative verbs, 269
- Cause and effect  
 as paragraph pattern, 56–57  
 reasoning, 95
- CE, BCE (AD, BC)*, 339
- cancel, censor*, 611
- Central idea. *See* Focus; Thesis
- cf.*, 340
- Charts, 26. *See also* Visuals, in documents
- Choppy sentences, 157

- Citation at a glance  
 APA style  
 article from a database, 562–63  
 article in a journal or magazine, 560–61  
 book, 568  
 section in a Web document, 576–77  
 MLA style  
 article from a database, 480–81  
 article in a journal, 478–79  
 book, 489  
 selection from an anthology or a collection, 492–93  
 short work from a Web site, 497
- Citations. *See* Citation at a glance;  
 Citing sources
- cited in*, for a source in another source, 552–53. *See also* *quoted in*
- cite, site*, 611
- Citing sources. *See also* Integrating sources; Plagiarism, avoiding; Quotations  
 APA style  
 in-text citations, 534–37  
 reference list, 546–80  
 common knowledge  
 in APA papers, 534  
 in MLA papers, 442–43  
 MLA style  
 in-text citations, 441–45  
 works cited list, 458–512  
 software for, 409  
 in speeches or presentations, 121
- Claims. *See* Arguments, evaluating;  
 Thesis
- class*. *See* Collective nouns
- Classification, as paragraph pattern, 57–58
- Clauses. *See* Independent clauses;  
 Subordinate clauses
- Clichés, 184–85
- climactic, climatic*, 611
- coarse, course*, 611
- Coherence, 59–63
- Collaborative writing. *See* Peer review
- Collection. *See* Anthology or collection, citing
- Collective nouns (*audience, family, team*, etc.)  
 agreement of pronouns with, 215  
 agreement of verbs with, 207–08
- College writing. *See* Academic writing
- Colloquial words, 175, 350–51
- Colon, 317–19  
 with appositives (nouns that rename other nouns), 317  
 capitalization after, 318, 359–60  
 APA style, 581  
 MLA style, 514  
 for emphasis, 317–18  
 to fix run-on sentences, 198–99  
 with greetings and salutations, 318, 604  
 between hours and minutes, 318  
 introducing quotations, 317, 327  
 with lists, 317  
 misuse of, 318  
 outside quotation marks, 326  
 with ratios, 318  
 between titles and subtitles of works, 318
- Combining sentences (coordination and subordination), 152–61
- Commands. *See* Imperative mood;  
 Imperative sentences
- Commas, 294–313. *See also* Commas, unnecessary  
 with absolute phrases, 304  
 in addresses, 306  
 with *and, but, etc.*, 294–95  
 with contrasted elements, 305  
 between coordinate adjectives, 297–98  
 before coordinating conjunctions, 154, 294–95  
 in dates, 306  
 with interrogative tags (questions), 305  
 with interruptions (*he writes* etc.), 303–05  
 after introductory elements, 295, 327  
 with items in a series, 297  
 with mild interjections, 305  
 with modifiers, 297–98  
 with nonrestrictive (nonessential) elements, 299–303  
 with nouns of direct address, 305  
 in numbers, 306–07  
 with parenthetical expressions, 304  
 to prevent confusion, 307  
 with quotation marks, 305, 326  
 with semicolons, 314–15  
 to set off words or phrases, 303–05



- with titles following names, 306
- with transitional expressions, 303–04
- before *which* or *who*, 301
- with *yes* and *no*, 305
- Commas, unnecessary, 308–13
  - between adjective and noun, 309–10
  - after *although*, 312
  - after *and*, *but*, etc., 311
  - between compound elements, 308–09
  - before concluding adverb clauses, 310–11
  - after a coordinating conjunction, 311
  - between cumulative adjectives, 297–98, 309–10
  - with indirect quotations, 312
  - in an inverted sentence (verb before subject), 311
  - before a parenthesis, 312
  - with a question mark or an exclamation point, 312
  - with restrictive (essential) elements, 310
  - before or after a series, 309
  - between subject and verb, 309
  - after *such as* or *like*, 312
  - between verb and object, 309
- Comma splices. *See* Run-on sentences
- Comments on a draft, understanding. *See* Revising with comments
- Comments on online articles, citing
  - APA style, 566
  - MLA style, 484
- committee*. *See* Collective nouns
- Common ground, establishing,
  - in argument papers, 104, 105–06, 111, 118
  - in MLA papers, 438
- Common knowledge
  - in APA papers, 534
  - in MLA papers, 442–43
- Common nouns, 271–76, 356–58
- Company names
  - abbreviations in, 338–39, 340–41
  - agreement of verb with, 211
- Comparative form of adjectives and adverbs (with *-er* or *more*), 234–35. *See also* Superlative form of adjectives and adverbs
- compare to*, *compare with*, 611
- Comparisons
  - with adjectives and adverbs, 234–35
  - needed words in, 134–35
  - as paragraph pattern, 55–56
  - parallel elements in, 131–32
  - with pronoun following *than* or *as*, 225
- complement*, *compliment*, 611
- Complements, object, 379
- Complements, subject
  - adjectives as, 231–32, 378
  - case of pronouns as, 223
  - defined, 378
  - and subject-verb agreement, 209–10
- Complete subject, 375–76
- Complex sentences, 393
- compliment*. *See* *complement*, *compliment*, 611
- comply with* (not *to*), 183
- Compound antecedents, 215–17
- Compound-complex sentences, 393–94
- Compound elements
  - case of pronoun in, 223–24
  - comma with, 294–95
  - needed words in, 133–34
  - no comma with, 308–09
  - parallelism and, 130–32
- Compound nouns (*father-in-law* etc.)
  - plural of, 347
  - possessive of, 320
- Compound numbers, hyphens with, 354
- Compound predicates
  - fragmented, 192
  - no comma in, 294–95, 308–09
- Compound sentences
  - comma in, 294–95
  - defined, 393
  - excessive use of, 158–60
  - semicolon in, 313–15
- Compound subjects
  - agreement of pronoun with, 215–17
  - agreement of verb with, 203, 206
  - defined, 376
- Compound verbs. *See* Compound predicates
- Compound words
  - in dictionary entry, 349
  - hyphens with, 353–54
  - plural of, 347

- Conciseness, 166–70
- Conclusion  
 in deductive reasoning, 96–97  
 of essay, 25, 28  
 in inductive reasoning, 91–92, 94  
 of speech or presentation, 120–21, 122  
 strategies for drafting, 25
- Concrete nouns, 181
- Conditional sentences, 265–66. *See also* Subjunctive mood
- Confused words, 181–82. *See also* Glossary of usage
- Conjunctions, 370–71. *See also* Conjunctive adverbs  
 in coordination and subordination, 153–55  
 to fix run-on sentences, 197–98
- Conjunctive adverbs  
 comma after, 303–04, 371  
 and coordination, 153, 154  
 defined, 371  
 and run-on sentences, 197, 198  
 semicolon with, 314–15, 371
- Connections. *See* Transitions
- Connotation (implied meaning of word), 180
- conscience, conscious*, 612
- Consistency  
 in mood and voice, 149–50  
 in paragraphs, 61  
 in point of view, 147–48  
 in questions and quotations, 150–51  
 in verb tense, 148–49
- Constructive criticism, 33–34
- Context, establishing  
 in APA papers, 544  
 in argument papers, 103, 118  
 in MLA papers, 453–54  
 when researching, 397–98, 406  
 in speech or presentation, 120
- continual, continuous*, 612
- Contractions  
 apostrophe in, 321  
 in informal language, 175  
 needed verbs and, 246
- Contrary-to-fact clauses, 252–53, 266
- Contrast, as paragraph pattern, 55–56
- Contrasted elements, comma with, 305
- Conversations, academic and research. *See* Synthesizing sources; Talking and listening
- Conversing with a text, 68–69, 82–84
- Coordinate adjectives, comma with, 297–98
- Coordinating conjunctions  
 comma before, 294–95  
 coordination and, 153, 154  
 defined, 370  
 to fix run-on sentences, 197–98  
 no comma after, 308–09, 312  
 no semicolon with, 316  
 parallelism and, 131
- Coordination  
 for combining ideas of equal importance, 153, 154  
 comma and coordinating conjunction for, 294–95  
 excessive use of, 158–60  
 to fix choppy sentences, 157  
 to fix run-on sentences, 197–98  
 and subordination, 158–59
- Copies, of drafts, saving, 29
- Correlative conjunctions  
 defined, 370–71  
 parallelism with, 131
- could*, as modal verb, 261, 262, 366
- could care less* (nonstandard), 612
- could of* (nonstandard), 612
- council, counsel*, 612
- Counterarguments  
 addressing, 109–11, 118  
 in APA papers, 533  
 evaluating, 70, 100–02, 423–24  
 in MLA papers, 438–39  
 revising for, 32
- Count nouns, articles (*a, an, the*) with, 271–75
- Country names, abbreviations for, 338–39
- couple*. *See* Collective nouns
- course*. *See* *coarse, course*, 611
- Course materials, citing  
 APA style, 552, 579  
 MLA style, 498–99, 508–09
- Cover letters, for portfolios, 49
- Credibility, establishing. *See also* Authority  
 in argument papers, 104, 105–06  
 in research papers, 417
- criteria*, 612
- Critical reading. *See* Reading
- Critical thinking  
 for analysis, 66–73, 81–84  
 about arguments, 91–102  
 evaluating sources, 403–04, 416–30

Criticism, constructive, 33–34  
*crowd*. See Collective nouns  
 Cumulative adjectives  
   no comma with, 297–98, 309–10  
   order of, 287  
 Curiosity. See Habits of mind

## D

-d, -ed, verb ending, 237–38, 245–46, 257  
 Dangling modifiers, 144–46  
 Dashes, 332–33  
   for emphasis, 332  
   to fix run-on sentences, 198–99  
*data*, 612  
 Database, article from. See Article  
   from a database  
 Databases, for finding sources, 403, 405, 418  
 Dates  
   abbreviations in, 339, 340  
   in APA reference list, 554  
   capitalization of, 357  
   commas with, 306  
   in MLA works cited list, 470–71  
   numbers in, 342  
 Days of the week  
   abbreviations of, 340  
   capitalization of, 357  
 Deadlines, 5, 396–97  
 Debates. See Argument papers;  
   Arguments, evaluating  
 Declarative sentences, 394  
 Deductive reasoning, 96–97  
 Definite article. See *the*  
 Definition  
   of key terms or concepts,  
   providing  
   in APA papers, 532  
   in MLA papers, 437–38  
   as paragraph pattern, 58–59  
   of words, 180, 350  
 Degree of adjectives and adverbs.  
   See Comparative form of  
   adjectives and adverbs;  
   Superlative form of adjectives  
   and adverbs  
 Degrees, academic, abbreviations for,  
 338–39  
 Demonstrative pronouns, 364  
 Denotation (dictionary definition),  
 180  
 Dependent clauses. See Subordinate  
 clauses

Description, as paragraph pattern,  
 54  
 Descriptive word groups. See  
 Adjective phrases; Adverb  
 phrases  
 Design. See Document design;  
 Visuals, in documents  
*desirous of* (not *to*), 183  
 Detail, adequate, 52. See also  
 Development, of ideas;  
 Evidence  
 Determiners, 270–79  
 Development, of ideas, 24, 41–42,  
 52. See also Paragraph  
 patterns  
 Diagrams, 27. See also Visuals, in  
 documents  
 Dialects, 174–75  
 Dialogue  
   paragraphing of, 324  
   quotation marks in, 324  
 Diction. See Words  
 Dictionaries  
   guide to use of, 347–51  
   sample online entry, 349  
   sample print entry, 348  
*different from*, *different than*, 183,  
 612  
*differ from*, *differ with*, 612  
 Digital object identifier (DOI)  
   APA style, 555, 584  
   MLA style, 470, 471, 479, 480  
 Digital texts. See Electronic  
 documents; Multimodal texts;  
 Web and digital sources  
 Direct address, commas with, 305  
 Direct language, 167–68  
 Direct objects  
   case of pronouns as, 223–24  
   defined, 378  
   followed by adjective or noun  
   (object complement), 379  
   placement of adverbs and, 284  
   transitive verbs and, 378–79  
 Directories, to documentation  
 models  
   APA style, 528–29  
   MLA style, 432–34  
 Direct questions. See Questions,  
 direct and indirect  
 Direct quotations. See Quotations,  
 direct and indirect  
*disinterested*, *uninterested*, 612  
 Division, as paragraph pattern,  
 58

Division of words  
 in dictionary entry, 348–50  
 hyphen and, 355–56  
*do*, as irregular verb, 239  
*do*, forms of  
 in forming negatives, 264  
 as helping verbs, 366  
 and subject-verb agreement, 204, 244  
*do* vs. *does*. *See* Agreement of subject and verb

Document design, 597–607  
 academic manuscripts, 597–98  
   APA format, 580–84, 600–02  
   MLA format, 513–16, 598–99  
 business letters, 604  
 and critical reading, 81–82  
 e-mail, 9, 607  
 format options, 5, 11  
 genre (type of writing) and, 4, 10  
 headings  
   in APA papers, 601  
   in memos, 606  
   in MLA papers, 599  
 lists, displayed, 606  
 memos, 606  
 model documents, 597–607  
 résumés, 605  
 visuals, 25, 26–27, 603

Documenting sources. *See* Citing sources

*does* vs. *do*. *See* Agreement of subject and verb

DOI (digital object identifier), 555, 584

*don't* vs. *doesn't*, 612. *See also* Agreement of subject and verb

Dots, ellipsis. *See* Ellipsis mark

Double comparatives and superlatives, avoiding, 235

Double-entry notebook, 68–69, 84

Double negatives, avoiding, 235–36, 264

Doublespeak, avoiding, 171–72

Double subjects, avoiding, 281–82

Draft, comments on. *See* Revising with comments

Drafting  
 analysis papers, 73–77  
 annotated bibliographies, 429  
 argument papers, 103–11, 119  
 body, 24–27  
 conclusion, 25, 28  
 introduction, 22–24  
 sample rough draft, 35–37

and saving files, 29, 48  
 thesis, 14–19, 22–24

Drawing conclusions (deductive reasoning), 96–97

Dropped quotation, avoiding  
 in APA papers, 542  
 in MLA papers, 451

*due to*, 612

## E

*each* (singular), 206–07, 213–14, 612

E-books, citing  
   APA style, 567  
   MLA style, 488

*economics* (singular), 211

*-ed*, verb ending, 237–38, 245–46, 257

Editing log, 31, 44

Editing sentences, 30, 43–44

*effect*. *See* *affect*, *effect*, 608

Effect. *See* Cause and effect

*e.g.* (“for example”), 340, 613

*either* (singular), 206–07, 213–14, 613

*either . . . or*  
 and parallelism, 131  
 and pronoun-antecedent agreement, 216–17  
 and subject-verb agreement, 206

*either . . . or* fallacy, 95–96

*-elect*, hyphen with, 355

Electronic documents. *See also* Multimodal texts; Web and digital sources  
 annotating, 67, 72  
 avoiding plagiarism from, 410, 412  
 double-entry notebooks, 68–69  
 e-mail messages, 9, 607  
 managing, 29  
 reading, 72

*elicit*, *illicit*, 613

Ellipsis mark  
 in arguments, 101–02  
 for deleted lines of poetry, 334  
 for omissions in sources, 334  
   APA style, 540  
   MLA style, 448

Elliptical clause, dangling, 144–45

Elliptical constructions, 391

E-mail  
 addresses, division of, 355–56  
 audience for, 9  
 effective, 9, 607  
 formatting, 607  
 italics in, 343

*emigrate from*, *immigrate to*, 613

- eminent, imminent*, 613
- Emotional appeals (*pathos*), in argument, 98–100, 104, 105
- Emphasis, 152–62
- active verbs for, 126–29
  - choppy sentences and, 157
  - colon for, 317–18
  - dash for, 332
  - exclamation point for, 331
  - parallel structure and, 162
  - sentence endings for, 162, 164
  - subordinating minor ideas for, 160
- Enc.* (“enclosure”), in business writing, 604
- Ending. *See* Conclusion
- Endnotes. *See* Footnotes or endnotes
- End punctuation, 330–32
- Engagement. *See* Habits of mind
- English as a second language (ESL).  
*See* Multilingual writers
- enough*, with infinitive, 269
- enthused*, 613
- er* ending (*faster, stronger*), 234–35
- Errors
- identifying, 44
  - sic* for, 334
    - in APA papers, 540
    - in MLA papers, 449
- ESL (English as a second language).  
*See* Multilingual writers
- especially*, and sentence fragments, 193
- es, -s*
- spelling rules, for plurals, 340, 346–47
  - as verb ending, 202, 204–05, 242–43
- Essays. *See also* Sample student writing
- adapting for a speech or presentation, 123
  - drafting, 22–28
  - editing, 43–44
  - planning, 3–22
  - researching, 396–430
  - reviewing, 30–38
  - revising, 38–42
  - saving drafts of, 29
  - est* ending (*fastest, strongest*), 234–35
  - et al.* (“and others”), 340
    - in APA papers, 548–49
    - in MLA papers, 461, 469, 470, 472
  - etc.*, 340, 613
  - Ethos* (ethical appeals), in arguments, 99, 100, 104, 105
  - Etymology, 350
  - Euphemisms, avoiding, 171–72
  - Evaluating arguments. *See* Arguments, evaluating
  - Evaluating sources, 403–04, 416–30
    - even, placement of, 140–41
    - eventually, ultimately*, 613
    - everybody, everyone* (singular), 206–07, 213–14, 613
    - everyone, every one*, 613
  - Evidence
    - in analysis papers, 73–74, 86–87
    - in APA papers, 532–33
    - in argument papers, 104, 107–09, 118
    - in MLA papers, 437–39
    - in speeches or presentations, 120
    - writing situation and, 5
  - ex-*, hyphen with, 355
  - Exact language, 180–86
  - Examples
    - as evidence, 108
    - as paragraph pattern, 53
    - as sentence fragments, 193
  - except*. *See* *accept, except*, 608
  - Excerpts, of articles and books, online, 421–22
  - Exclamation points, 331
    - with in-text citations (MLA style), 327, 459–60
    - no comma with, 312
    - with quotation marks, 326–27
  - Exclamations (interjections), 305, 331, 371
  - Exclamatory sentence, 394
  - expect*, 613
  - Expert opinion, using as support, 109
  - Expletives *there, it*
    - and subject following verb, 209, 280–81, 376–77, 382
    - and subject-verb agreement, 209
    - and wordy sentences, 168
  - explicit, implicit*, 613
  - Expressions
    - idiomatic (common), 182–84
    - regional, 174–75
    - transitional, 303–04, 314–15
    - trite or worn-out ( clichés), 184–85
- F**
- Facebook. *See* Social media, citing
- Facts
  - in APA papers, 532, 544
  - in argument papers, 107–08

- Facts (*continued*)  
 in MLA papers, 437, 457  
 scientific, and verb tense, 249–50
- Fairness, in arguments, 98–100,  
 109–11
- Fallacies, logical  
*ad hominem*, 98–100  
 bandwagon appeal, 100  
 biased language, 98  
*either . . . or*, 95–96  
 false analogy, 93–94  
 hasty generalization, 93  
 non sequitur, 96  
*post hoc*, 95  
 red herring, 100  
 stereotype, 93  
 straw man, 101  
 transfer, 100
- False analogy, 93–94
- family*. *See* Collective nouns
- farther, further*, 613
- Faulty apposition, 139
- Faulty predication, 138–39
- Feedback, giving, 33–34
- Feedback, seeking and using, 30–34.  
*See also* Peer review
- fewer, less*, 613
- Field research, 406–07
- Figures. *See* Numbers; Visuals, in documents
- Figures of speech, 185
- Files, managing, 29, 48
- finalize*, 614
- firstly*, 614
- First-person point of view  
 consistency with, 147  
 revising for, 42
- Flow (coherence), 59–63
- Flowcharts, 27. *See also* Visuals, in documents
- Focus. *See also* Thesis  
 of argument paper, 105–07  
 of essay, 5–7, 14–19, 22–24, 42  
 of introduction, 32  
 of paragraph, 49–51  
 of research paper, 399–400  
 sharpening, 39  
 of speech or presentation, 120
- Footnotes or endnotes  
 APA style, 582, 587  
 MLA style, 512–13
- for*  
 comma before, 294–95  
 as coordinating conjunction,  
 131, 370  
 parallelism and, 131  
 as preposition, 370
- Foreign words, italics for, 344
- for example*  
 no colon after, 318  
 and sentence fragments, 193
- Formality, level of, 175–76
- Formal outline, 20–21, 71–72.  
*See also* Informal outline
- Format. *See* Document design;  
 Manuscript formats
- Fractions  
 hyphens with, 354  
 numerals for, 342
- Fragments, sentence  
 acceptable, 194  
 clauses as, 190–91  
 for emphasis or effect, 194  
 examples as, 193  
 finding and recognizing, 188–89  
 fixing, 188, 190–93  
 lists as, 192–93  
 phrases as, 191–92  
 predicates as, 192  
 testing for, 189
- Freewriting, 13
- Full-block style, for business letters,  
 604
- further*. *See farther, further*, 613
- Fused sentences. *See* Run-on sentences
- Future perfect tense, 248
- Future progressive forms, 248–49
- Future tense, 247–48, 257, 260

## G

- Gender, and pronoun agreement,  
 213–14, 216
- Gender-neutral language, 176–79,  
 213–14, 216
- Generalization, hasty, 93
- Generic *he*, 177, 214, 216, 614
- Generic nouns, 214–15
- Genre (type of writing)  
 and document design, 4, 10  
 and language, 170  
 of multimodal texts, 80–81  
 purpose and, 4, 10, 23  
 thesis and, 23  
 writing situation and, 4
- Geographic names, *the* with, 277–79
- Gerunds  
 defined, 386–87  
 following prepositions, 290

following verbs, 267–68  
 phrases, agreement of verb with, 211  
 possessives as modifiers of, 226  
*get*, 614  
 Global (big-picture) revisions, 38–42. *See also* Revising with comments  
 Glossary of usage, 608–21  
*good, well*, 233–34, 614  
 Government documents, citing  
   APA style, 571  
   MLA style, 508–10  
*graduate*, 614  
 Grammar, mixed. *See* Mixed constructions  
 Graphic narrative, citing (MLA style), 474–75  
 Graphs, 26. *See also* Visuals, in documents  
 Greetings and salutations, colon with, 318, 604  
*grow*, 614  
 Guides to writing. *See* Writing guides

## H

Habits of mind, 2  
   curiosity, 2, 3, 5–6, 91  
   engagement, 2, 91, 396  
   reflection, 2, 48–49  
   responsibility, 2  
 Handouts (course materials), citing  
   APA style, 552, 579  
   MLA style, 498–99, 508–09  
*hanged, hung*, 614  
*hardly*, 614  
   avoiding double negative with, 235–36  
   placement of, 140–41  
*has got, have got*, avoiding, 614  
 Hasty generalization, 93  
*has vs. have*, 204, 243–44. *See also*  
   Agreement of subject and verb  
*have*, as irregular verb, 240  
*have*, forms of  
   as helping verbs, 258–60, 366  
   and passive voice, 259–60  
   and perfect tenses, 258, 260  
   and subject-verb agreement, 204, 243–44  
*have got, has got*, avoiding, 614  
*have vs. has*, 204, 243–44. *See also*  
   Agreement of subject and verb

Headings  
   in APA papers, 531–32, 582–83, 601  
   in document design, 599, 601, 606  
   in MLA papers, 515, 599  
   to organize ideas, 41, 531–32  
   planning with, 21–22, 531–32  
*he, him, his*, sexist use of, 177, 214, 216, 614  
 Helping verbs  
   contractions with, 246  
   defined, 246, 366  
   and forming passive voice, 238, 259–61  
   and forming perfect tenses, 238, 248, 250–51, 258  
   and forming verb tenses, 238, 258–60  
   modals (*can, should*, etc.) as, 246, 261–63, 366  
   needed, 246  
   and progressive forms, 258–59  
*here*, not used as subject, 281  
*her vs. she*, 222–27  
*he/she, his/her*, 335, 614  
*he vs. him*, 222–27  
*he writes, she writes*, comma with, 305, 327  
*hissself* (nonstandard), 614  
 Homophones (words that sound alike), 351  
 Hook, in introduction, 22–23, 32, 439  
*hopefully*, 614–15  
*however*  
   avoiding with *but* or *although*, 283–84  
   at beginning of sentence, 615  
   comma with, 303–04  
   semicolon with, 314–15  
 “How to” boxes  
   citing a source reposted from another source, 502–03  
   citing course materials, 508–09  
   identifying authors, 474–75  
 Humanities, writing in. *See* MLA papers  
*hung*. *See* *hanged, hung*, 614  
 Hyphens, 353–56  
   with adjectives, 354  
   to avoid confusion, 355  
   in compound words, 353–54  
   and division of words, 355–56  
   in e-mail addresses, 355–56  
   to form dash, 332

- Hyphens (*continued*)  
 in fractions, 354  
 in numbers, 354  
 with prefixes and suffixes, 355  
 in a series, 354  
 in URLs, 355–56  
   APA style, 584  
   MLA style, 514–15, 516

## I

- I*  
 vs. *me*, 222–27  
 point of view, 42, 147  
 shifts with *you*, *he*, or *she*,  
   avoiding, 147
- Idioms (common expressions)  
 adjective + preposition  
   combinations, 291  
 with prepositions showing time  
   and place (*at*, *on*, *in*, etc.),  
   288–89  
 standard, 182–84  
 verb + preposition combinations,  
   291–92
- i.e.* (“that is”), 340, 615  
 -*ie*, -*ei*, spelling rule, 345–46
- if* clauses  
 conditional sentences, 265–66  
 contrary to fact (subjunctive),  
   252–53
- if*, *whether*, 615
- illicit*. See *elicit*, *illicit*, 613
- illusion*. See *allusion*, *illusion*, 609
- Illustrated work, citing (MLA style),  
 474–75
- Illustrations (examples). See also  
 Visuals, in documents  
 as evidence, 108  
 as paragraph pattern, 53
- Images. See Visuals, in documents;  
 Visual texts
- immigrate*. See *emigrate from*,  
*immigrate to*, 613
- imminent*. See *eminent*, *imminent*, 613
- immoral*. See *amoral*, *immoral*, 609
- Imperative mood, 252
- Imperative sentences  
 defined, 376, 394  
 you understood in, 280, 376, 382
- implement*, 615
- implicit*. See *explicit*, *implicit*, 613
- Implied meaning of word  
 (connotation), 180
- imply*, *infer*, 615
- in*, in idioms (common expressions)  
 with adjectives, 291  
 vs. *at*, *on*, to show time and place,  
   288–89  
 with verbs, 291–92
- including*, no colon after, 318
- Inclusive language, 176–79, 216
- Incomplete comparison, 134–35
- Incomplete construction, 133–36
- Incomplete sentences. See Fragments,  
 sentence
- Indefinite articles. See *a*, *an*
- Indefinite pronouns  
 agreement of verb with, 206–07  
 as antecedents, 213–14  
 apostrophe with, 320  
 defined, 364
- Indenting  
 in APA reference list, 583, 602  
 of long quotations, 324–25  
   APA style, 541, 582, 594  
   MLA style, 449–50, 514, 522,  
   598  
 no quotation marks with,  
   324–25  
 in MLA works cited list, 516, 599  
 in outlines, 20–21
- Independent clauses  
 colon between, 317–18  
 combined with subordinate  
   clauses, 393–94  
 and comma with coordinating  
   conjunction, 294–95  
 defined, 392  
 and run-on sentences, 195–201  
 semicolon between, 313–15
- Indexes to periodical articles.  
 See Databases, for finding  
 sources
- Indicative mood, 252
- Indirect objects  
 case of pronouns as, 223–24  
 defined, 379
- Indirect questions  
 no question mark after, 331  
 shifts to direct questions,  
   avoiding, 150–51
- Indirect quotations  
 no comma with, 312  
 shifts to direct quotations,  
   avoiding, 150–51
- Indirect source (source quoted in  
 another source), citing  
 APA style, 552–53  
 MLA style, 466–67, 476–77



- Inductive reasoning, 91–92, 94  
*infer*. See *imply*, *infer*, 615
- Infinitive phrases, 387
- Infinitives
- case of pronouns with, 225–26
  - dangling, 144–45
  - following verbs, 267–68
  - marked (with *to*), 267–68, 290
  - and sequence of tenses, 251–52
  - split, 142–43
  - subject of, objective case for, 225–26
  - to*, infinitive marker vs. preposition, 290
  - with *too* and *enough*, 269
  - unmarked (without *to*), 269
- Inflated phrases, 167–68
- Infographics, 26. See also Visuals, in documents; Visual texts
- Informal language, 175–76
- Informal outline, 19–20, 84–85.  
 See also Formal outline
- Information, for essay
- finding, 396–408
  - managing, 408–15
  - sources of, 4–5, 10–11
  - working bibliography, 409
- Information notes (MLA), 512–13  
*-ing* verb ending. See Gerunds;  
 Present participles
- in*, *into*, 615
- in regards to*, 615
- Inserted material, in quotations. See Brackets
- Institutional review board (IRB), for research subjects, 406
- Instructor's comments, responding to. See Revising with comments
- Integrating sources
- in APA papers, 537–44
  - in MLA papers, 445–57
  - parallelism and, 132
  - in speeches and presentations, 121
- intend to do* (not on *doing*), 183
- Intensive pronouns, 363–64
- Interjections (exclamations), 305, 331, 371
- Internet. See also URLs; Web and digital sources
- avoiding plagiarism from, 410, 412, 415
  - capitalization of terms for, 358, 572
  - reading on, 72
  - searching, 403–04, 405
- Interpretation
- in analysis papers, 73–75, 86–88
  - different perspectives and, 70
  - of visual and multimodal texts, 80–91
  - of written texts, 66–80
- Interrogative pronouns
- defined, 364
  - who*, *whom*, 227–30
- Interrogative sentences, 394
- Interrogative tags (questions), commas with, 305
- Interruptions, commas with, 303–05
- Interviews, as information source, 11, 406–07
- In-text citations. See also Integrating sources
- APA style
    - directory to models for, 528
    - models for, 547–53
  - MLA style
    - directory to models for, 432
    - models for, 458–68
    - periods with, 326
- into*. See *in*, *into*, 615
- Intransitive verbs
- defined, 380–81
  - not used in passive voice, 261
- Introduction. See also Thesis
- of argument paper, 105–06
  - of essay, 22–24
  - hook in, 22–23, 32
  - of MLA paper, 439–40
  - revising, 32, 40
  - of speech or presentation, 120–21, 122
  - strategies for drafting, 23
  - to portfolio, 48–49
- Introductory word groups, comma with, 295
- Inverted sentence order
- for emphasis, 162, 164
  - with expletives *there*, *it*, 209, 280–81, 376–77, 382
  - no comma with, 311
  - and position of subject, 376–77, 382
  - in questions, 377, 382
  - and subject-verb agreement, 209
  - for variety, 164
- IRB (institutional review board), for research subjects, 406
- irregardless* (nonstandard), 615

Irregular verbs, 237–42  
*be, am, is, are, was, were*, 237–38, 244  
*do, does*, 239, 244  
*have, has*, 240, 243–44  
*lie, lay*, 241–42  
 list of, 238–41

Issue and volume numbers, in APA reference list, 555

*is vs. are*. *See* Agreement of subject and verb

*is when, is where*, avoiding, 139, 615

*it*  
 broad reference of, 219  
 as expletive (placeholder), 280–81  
 indefinite use of, 220  
 as subject of sentence, 280–81

Italics, 343–45  
 in e-mail, 343  
 for foreign words, 344  
 for names of ships, spacecraft, and aircraft, 344  
 for titles of works, 343–44  
 APA style, 554, 581, 584  
 MLA style, 470, 514  
 for words as words, 344–45

*its, it's*, 321, 322, 351, 615

## J

Jargon, avoiding, 171

Journal, keeping a, 13

Journalist's questions, 13

Journals. *See* Periodicals

Judgment, in analysis papers, 75, 76, 86–87

*jury*. *See* Collective nouns

*just*, placement of, 140–41

## K

Key words  
 in APA abstracts, 582, 586, 601  
 defining for readers  
 in APA papers, 532  
 in MLA papers, 437–38  
 repeating for coherence, 60, 121

*kind(s)*, 615–16

*kind of, sort of*, 616

## L

Labels for visuals. *See* Captions

Language. *See also* Tone; Words  
 appropriate, 170–79  
 biased, avoiding, 179

borrowed. *See* Citing sources;  
 Plagiarism, avoiding

clichés, avoiding, 184–85

colloquial, 175, 350–51

direct, 121, 167–68

doublespeak, avoiding, 171–72

euphemisms, avoiding, 171–72

exact, 180–86

formality of, 175–76

idioms (common expressions), 182–84

jargon, avoiding, 171

nonstandard English, avoiding, 174–75

offensive, avoiding, 179

plain, 121, 171–73

pretentious, avoiding, 171–72

regionalisms, avoiding, 174–75

sexist, avoiding, 176–79

slang, avoiding, 174–75

wordy, 166–70

Latin abbreviations, 340

*lay, lie; laying, lying*, 241–42, 616

Layout of documents. *See* Document design

*lead, led*, 616

*learn, teach*, 616

*leave, let*, 616

Length  
 of paper, 5, 11  
 of paragraph, 49, 63–64

*less*. *See* *fewer, less*, 613

*let*. *See* *leave, let*, 616

Letters, writing  
 for business, 604  
 for a portfolio, 49

Letters of the alphabet  
 capitalizing, 356–60  
 italics for, 344–45  
 plural of, 321

*liable*, 616

Library resources, 403, 405–06, 418

*lie, lay; lying, laying*, 241–42, 616

*like*  
 no comma after, 312  
 and sentence fragments, 193

*like, as*, 616

Limiting modifiers (*only, almost, etc.*), 140–41

Line spacing  
 in APA paper, 581, 602  
 and document design, 598–99, 602, 604  
 in MLA paper, 514

- Linking verbs  
 adjective after, 231–32, 378  
 defined, 378  
 omission of, 246, 280  
 pronoun after, 223
- Listening, 121. *See also* Talking and listening
- Listing ideas, 13
- List of sources. *See* Reference list (APA); Works cited list (MLA)
- Lists. *See also* Series  
 with colon, 317  
 with dash, 333  
 and document design, 606  
 as fragments, 192–93  
 for generating ideas, 13
- Literacy narrative, 45–48  
 sample student writing, 35–37, 45–48
- Literary present tense, 148–49, 249–50
- Literature review, sample paper (APA style), 585–96
- Logic  
 analogies, 93–94  
 cause-and-effect reasoning, 95  
 deductive reasoning, 96–97  
 fallacies. *See* Fallacies, logical  
 inductive reasoning, 91–92, 94  
*logos* (logical appeals), 91–97, 99, 104  
 of sentences, 138–39
- Logos* (logical appeals), in arguments, 91–97, 99, 104. *See also* Logic
- Logs  
 editing, 31, 44  
 reading, 68–69  
 research, 396–97, 398, 402  
 revision, 31
- loose, lose*, 616
- lots, lots of*, 616
- ly* ending on adverbs, 230, 354
- lying vs. laying*, 241–42

**M**

- man, mankind*, sexist use of, 177, 616
- Manuscript formats. *See also* Document design  
 academic formats, 5, 597–99  
 APA style, 580–84, 600–02  
 MLA style, 45–48, 513–16, 598–99  
 business and professional formats, 597, 603–07  
 writing situation and, 11
- Mapping. *See* Outlines
- Maps, 27. *See also* Visuals, in documents
- Margins  
 in APA papers, 581, 602  
 in MLA papers, 514, 598
- Mass (noncount) nouns, 271–77
- mathematics* (singular), 211
- may*. *See can, may*, 611
- may*, as modal verb, 261, 262, 366
- maybe, may be*, 616
- may of, might of* (nonstandard), 616
- Meaning, finding in a text, 73–75, 86–88, 410, 412
- measles* (singular), 211
- Measurement, units of  
 abbreviations for, 339–40  
 and agreement of subject and verb, 208
- media, medium*, 616
- Memos, 606
- Metaphor, 185
- me vs. I*, 222–27
- might*, as modal verb, 261, 262, 366
- might of* (nonstandard). *See may of, might of*, 616
- Minor ideas. *See* Subordination
- Misplaced modifiers, 140–43. *See also* Modifiers
- Missing claims, in arguments, 96
- Missing words. *See* Needed words
- Misspelled words, common, 351–52
- Misuse of words, 181–82
- Mixed constructions  
 illogical connections, 138–39  
*is when, is where*, 139, 615  
 mixed grammar, 137–38  
*reason . . . is because*, 139, 618
- Mixed metaphors, 185
- MLA Handbook*, 458, 513
- MLA papers, 431–525  
 authority in, 405, 438, 451–52

- MLA papers (*continued*)
- citation at a glance
    - article from a database, 480–81
    - article in a journal, 478–79
    - book, 489
    - selection from an anthology or a collection, 492–93
    - short work from a Web site, 497
  - citations, in-text
    - directory to models for, 432
    - models for, 458–68
  - evidence for, 437–39
  - information notes (optional), 512–13
  - manuscript format, 45–48, 513–16, 598–99
  - organizing, 436–37
  - plagiarism, avoiding, 441–45
  - sample papers
    - analysis, 78–80, 88–91
    - argument, 112–17
    - research, 517–25
  - signal phrases in, 450–54
  - sources in
    - citing, 441–45, 458–513
    - integrating, 445–57
    - synthesizing, 454–56
    - uses of, 437–39
  - supporting arguments in, 437–39, 454–56
  - tenses in, 148–49, 249–50, 451
  - thesis in, 435–36
  - URLs in, 470, 471, 496, 497, 516
  - voice (tone) in, 440
  - works cited list
    - directory to models for, 432–34
    - formatting, 515–16
    - general guidelines for, 470–72
    - models for, 468–512
    - sample, 524–25
- Modal verbs (*can, should, etc.*), 246, 261–63, 366. *See also* Helping verbs
- Model documents, gallery of, 597–607
- Modern Language Association. *See* MLA papers
- Modes. *See* Multimodal texts; Paragraph patterns
- Modifiers
  - adjectives as, 230–37, 367–68
  - adverbs as, 230–37, 368–69
  - commas with, 297–98
  - dangling, 144–46
  - of gerunds, 226
  - limiting, 140–41
  - misplaced, 140–43
  - redundant, 166
  - restrictive (essential) and nonrestrictive (nonessential), 299–303
  - split infinitives, 142–43
  - squinting, 142
- Money
  - abbreviations for, 339
  - numerals for, 342
- Mood of verbs, 252–53. *See also* Conditional sentences
- shifts in, avoiding, 149–50
- more, most* (comparative, superlative), 234–35
- moreover*
  - comma with, 303–04
  - semicolon with, 314–15
- most*, 617
- Motive. *See* Purpose in writing; Writing situation
- Multilingual writers, 256–91
  - adjectives, 285–87
  - adjectives and adverbs, placement of, 287
  - articles (*a, an, the*), 270–79
  - idioms (common expressions), 288–92
  - nouns, types of, 271
  - omitted subjects or expletives, 280–81
  - omitted verbs, 280
  - participles, present vs. past, 285–86
  - prepositions, in idioms (common expressions)
    - with adjectives, 291
    - with nouns and *-ing* forms, 290
    - to show time and place (*at, in, on, etc.*), 288–89
    - with verbs, 291–92
  - repeated objects or adverbs, 157, 282–83
  - repeated subjects, 138, 281–82
  - sentence structure, 279–87
  - verbs
    - active voice, 257–59
    - conditional, 265–66
    - forms of, 256–59
    - with gerunds or infinitives, 267–70

- modals (*can, should, etc.*),  
261–63
- negative forms, 264
- passive voice, 259–61
- tenses, 256–61, 265–66
- Multimedia sources, citing. *See also*  
Web and digital sources
- APA style, 573–79
- MLA style, 499–507
- Multimodal texts. *See also* Genre  
(type of writing)
- analyzing, 80–91
- annotating, 10, 72, 81–82, 83
- conversing with, 82–84
- defined, 80
- purpose and, 10, 121
- reading, 10, 72
- writing about, 85–87
- Multitasking, avoiding, 72
- must*, as modal verb, 261, 262, 366
- must of* (nonstandard). *See may of, might of*, 616
- myself*, 224, 617
- N**
- namely*, and sentence fragments, 193
- Narration, as paragraph  
pattern, 54
- Narrative writing. *See* Literacy  
narrative
- Narrowing a subject. *See* Topic
- N.B.* (“note well”), 340
- n.d.* (“no date”), in APA papers,  
551
- nearly*, placement of, 140–41
- Needed words, 133–36
- articles (*a, an, the*), 136, 270–79
- in comparisons, 134–35
- in compound structures, 133–34
- it*, 280–81
- in parallel structures, 132
- subjects, 280–81
- that*, 134
- there*, 280–81
- verbs, 246, 280
- Negatives
- double, avoiding, 235–36, 264
- forming, 264
- not* and *never*, 368–69
- neither* (singular), 206–07, 213–14,  
617
- neither . . . nor*  
and parallel structure, 131
- and pronoun-antecedent  
agreement, 216–17
- and subject-verb agreement, 206
- never*  
as adverb, 368–69
- in double negatives, avoiding,  
235–36
- nevertheless*  
comma with, 303–04
- semicolon with, 314–15
- news* (singular), 211
- Newspapers. *See* Periodicals
- no*  
comma with, 305
- in double negatives, avoiding,  
235–36, 264
- nobody* (singular), 206–07, 213–14
- Noncount nouns, 271–77
- none*, 206–07, 617
- Nonrestrictive (nonessential)  
elements, commas with,  
299–303
- Non sequitur, 96
- Nonsexist language, 176–79, 213–14,  
216
- Nonstandard English, avoiding,  
174–75
- no one* (singular), 206–07, 213–14
- nor*  
comma with, 294–95
- as coordinating conjunction,  
131, 370
- parallelism and, 131
- and pronoun-antecedent  
agreement, 216–17
- and subject-verb agreement,  
206
- not*  
as adverb, 264, 368–69
- in double negatives, avoiding,  
235–36, 264
- in forming negatives, 264
- placement of, 140–41
- Notes. *See* Footnotes or endnotes;  
Information notes (MLA)
- Note taking  
for analysis, 67–70, 81–84
- and avoiding plagiarism, 410–15
- double-entry notebook for,  
68–69, 84
- on drafts, 29
- on electronic documents, 72
- to generate ideas, 13
- research log for, 396–97, 398, 402
- sample notes, 67–68, 69, 83

- nothing* (singular), 206–07, 213–14
- not only . . . but also*, 370–71  
and parallel structure, 131  
and pronoun-antecedent agreement, 216–17  
and subject-verb agreement, 206
- Noun/adjectives, 362, 368
- Noun clauses, 391  
words introducing, 390
- Noun markers, 270–79
- Nouns. *See also* Nouns, types of  
adjectives with, 367–68  
articles with, 270–79  
capitalizing, 356–58  
defined, 362  
of direct address, comma with, 305  
plural form, singular meaning (*athletics, economics, etc.*), 211  
plural of, 346–47  
after prepositions, 290  
renaming other nouns. *See* Appositives  
shifts between singular and plural, avoiding, 147–48
- Nouns, types of. *See also* Nouns abstract, 181  
collective (*audience, family, team, etc.*), 207–08, 215  
common, 271–76, 356–58  
concrete, 181  
count, 271–75  
defined, 362  
general vs. specific, 181, 274  
generic, 214–15  
noncount, 271–77  
possessive, 319–20  
proper, 271, 273, 277–79, 356–58  
singular and plural, 271, 273  
specific, concrete, 181, 271  
specific vs. general, 181, 274
- Novels, titles of  
capitalization of, 358–59  
italics for, 343
- nowheres* (nonstandard), 617
- number*. *See amount, number*, 609
- number*, agreement of verb with, 208
- Number and person  
shifts in, avoiding, 147–48  
and subject-verb agreement, 202–06
- Numbers  
commas in, 306–07  
consistency of, 341–42  
hyphens with, 354  
italics for, 344–45  
plural of, 321  
spelled out vs. numerals, 341–42  
APA style, 341–42, 601  
MLA style, 341–42
- O**
- Object complements, 379  
adjectives as, following direct object, 232
- Objections, to arguments. *See* Counterarguments
- Objective case, of pronouns  
for objects, 223–24  
for subjects and objects of infinitives, 225–26  
*whom*, 227–30
- Objectivity  
assessing, in sources, 100–02, 423  
in writing a summary, 72–73
- Objects  
direct, 378–79  
indirect, 379  
of infinitives, 225–26  
no comma between verb and, 309  
objective case for, 223–24, 227–30  
of prepositions, 384  
pronouns as, 223–24  
repetition of, avoiding, 282–83
- Observation, as information source, 11, 407
- of*, after *could, would, may, etc.* (nonstandard), 617
- Offensive language, 179
- off of* (nonstandard), 183, 617
- OK, O.K., okay, 617
- Omission of needed words. *See* Needed words
- Omissions of letters and words  
apostrophe for, 321  
comma for, 307  
ellipsis mark for, 334–35
- on*, in idioms (common expressions)  
with adjectives, 291  
vs. *at, in*, to show time and place, 288–89  
with verbs, 291–92
- one of the*, agreement of verb with, 210
- Online sources. *See* Web and digital sources

- only*, placement of, 140–41  
*only one of the*, agreement of verb with, 210
- Opening. *See* Introduction
- Opinion, expert, using as support, 109
- Opposing arguments. *See* Counterarguments
- or*
- comma with, 294–95
  - as coordinating conjunction, 131, 370
  - excessive use of, 158–60
  - parallelism and, 131
  - and pronoun-antecedent agreement, 216–17
  - and subject-verb agreement, 206
- Oral presentations. *See* Speaking
- Organization. *See also* Outlines
- of APA papers, 531–32
  - improving, 40–42
  - of MLA papers, 436–37
  - patterns of. *See* Paragraph patterns
  - of speeches or presentations, 120–21
- Organizations, abbreviations for, 338–39
- ought to*, as modal verb, 366
- Outlines
- for essay, 19–21
  - formal, 20–21, 71–72
  - informal, 19–20, 84–85
  - for MLA paper, 436–37
  - for summary or analysis, 71–72, 84–85
- Ownership. *See* Possessive case
- P**
- Page numbers (of sources). *See also* Pagination (of paper)
- APA style, 555
  - MLA style, 471
- Page setup. *See* Document design; Manuscript formats
- Pagination (of paper)
- APA style, 581, 600–01
  - MLA style, 514, 598
- Paired ideas, parallelism and, 130–32
- Paragraph patterns. *See also* Paragraphs
- analogy, 56
  - cause and effect, 56–57
  - classification, 57–58
  - comparison and contrast, 55–56
  - definition, 58–59
  - description, 54
  - division, 58
  - examples, 53
  - illustrations, 53
  - narration, 54
  - process, 54–55
- Paragraphs, 49–64. *See also* Paragraph patterns
- coherence in, 59–63
  - concluding, 25, 28
  - defined, 49
  - details in, 52
  - development of, 41–42, 52–59
  - drafting, 24
  - focus of, 49–51
  - introductory, 22–24
  - length of, 49, 63–64
  - main point in, 50–52
  - organizing, 40
  - revising, 41–42
  - sample student writing, 39
  - topic sentences in, 40, 50–51
  - transitions in, 61–63
  - unity of, 51
- Parallelism
- for emphasis, 162
  - in paragraphs, 60
  - in sentences, 129–33
- parameters*, 617
- Paraphrases
- acceptable and unacceptable in APA papers, 536–37
  - in MLA papers, 444–45
  - effective use of in APA papers, 538
  - in MLA papers, 446–47, 457
  - integrating in APA papers, 542–43
  - in MLA papers, 452–54
  - no quotation marks for, 324
  - and note taking, 410, 412, 414
  - quotations within, 414
- Parentheses, 333
- capitalizing sentence in, 359
  - no comma before, 312
  - periods with, 442
- Parenthetical citations. *See* In-text citations
- Parenthetical elements
- commas with, 304
  - dashes with, 332
- Participial phrases. *See also* Past participles; Present participles
- for combining sentences, 156

- Participial phrases (*continued*)  
 dangling, 144–45  
 defined, 386
- Participles. *See* Past participles;  
 Present participles
- Particles, with verbs, 367
- Parts of speech, 362–74  
 adjectives, 367–68  
 adverbs, 368–69  
 conjunctions, 370–71  
 in dictionary entry, 350  
 interjections (exclamations),  
 371  
 nouns, 362–63  
 prepositions, 369–70  
 pronouns, 363–65  
 verbs, 365–67
- passed, past*, 617
- Passive voice  
 vs. active voice, 126–29, 383  
 appropriate uses of, 126–27  
 forming, 259–61  
 shifts between active and,  
 avoiding, 149–50  
 and wordy sentences, 168
- past*. *See passed, past*, 617
- Past participles  
 as adjectives, 285–86  
 defined, 237–38  
 of irregular verbs, 237–41  
 in participial phrases, 386  
 and passive voice, 259–61, 383  
 and perfect tenses, 248, 250–51,  
 258, 260  
 vs. present participles, 285–86  
 of regular verbs, 245–46  
 as verbals, 386
- Past perfect tense, 248, 250–51, 258–60
- Past progressive form, 248–49,  
 258–59, 260
- Past tense  
 in APA papers, 250, 542, 547  
 and *-d*, *-ed* endings, 237–38,  
 245–46  
 defined, 247–48, 257, 260  
 of irregular verbs, 237–41  
 vs. past perfect, 250–51  
 of regular verbs, 237–38, 245–46
- Patchwriting, avoiding, 398, 410  
 in APA papers, 536  
 in MLA papers, 444–45
- Pathos* (emotional appeals), in  
 arguments, 98–100, 104, 105
- Patterns of organization. *See*  
 Paragraph patterns
- Peer review  
 acknowledging, 31  
 for an analytical essay, 77  
 for an annotated bibliography,  
 429  
 for an argument paper, 119  
 engagement with, 2  
 guidelines for, 31, 33–34  
 sample comments, 34–38  
 seeking feedback, 30–34,  
 38–39
- Percentages, numerals for, 342. *See*  
*also* Statistics
- percent, per cent, percentage*, 617
- Perfect progressive forms, 248–49,  
 259
- Perfect tenses, 248, 250–51, 258–60
- Periodicals. *See also* Articles in  
 periodicals  
 capitalizing titles of, 358–59  
 APA style, 554, 581, 584  
 italics for titles of, 343  
 APA style, 554, 581, 584  
 MLA style, 470, 514
- Periods, 330–31  
 with abbreviations, 330–31,  
 338–39  
 and ellipsis mark, 334  
 to end a sentence, 330  
 with in-text citations, 326  
 with quotation marks, 326
- Personal experience, writing about, 6
- Personal pronouns  
 case of, 222–27  
 defined, 363
- Personal titles. *See* Titles of persons
- Person and number  
 shifts in, avoiding, 147–48  
 and subject-verb agreement,  
 202–06
- Persons, names of. *See* Nouns
- Persuasive writing. *See* Argument  
 papers
- phenomena*, 617
- Photographs, 27. *See also* Visuals, in  
 documents; Visual texts
- Phrasal verbs. *See* Particles, with  
 verbs
- Phrases. *See also* Phrases, types of  
 dangling, 144–46  
 empty or inflated, 167–68  
 fragmented, 191–92  
 introductory, comma after, 295  
 misplaced, 141–42  
 as modifiers, 386



- nonrestrictive (nonessential),  
with commas, 299–303
- restrictive (essential), with no  
commas, 299–303, 310
- separating subject and  
verb, 142
- Phrases, types of. *See also* Phrases  
absolute, 388  
appositive, 388  
gerund, 386–87  
infinitive, 387  
participial, 386  
prepositional, 384  
verbal, 385–88
- physics* (singular), 211
- Pictures, using in documents, 25,  
26–27. *See also* Visuals, in  
documents; Visual texts
- Place of publication  
in APA reference list, 555  
in MLA works cited list, 471
- Places, names of. *See* Nouns
- Plagiarism, avoiding  
in APA papers, 534–37  
and drafting, 24–25  
in MLA papers, 441–45  
and note taking, 410–15  
responsibility and, 2, 398  
and Web sources, 410, 412, 415  
working bibliography and, 409,  
411
- Planning an essay. *See also* Outlines  
assessing the writing situation,  
3–12  
exploring ideas, 12–14  
working thesis, 14–19
- plan to do* (not *plan on doing*), 183
- Plays, titles of  
capitalizing, 358–59  
italics for, 343
- Plurals. *See also* Agreement of  
pronoun and antecedent;  
Agreement of subject and  
verb; Singular vs. plural  
of abbreviations, 322, 340  
of compound nouns, 347  
of letters, 321  
of numbers, 321  
spelling of, 346–47  
of words used as words, 322
- plus*, 617
- p.m.*, *a.m.*, *PM*, *AM*, 339
- Podcast, citing  
APA style, 573  
MLA style, 499
- Poems, titles of  
capitalizing, 358–59  
quotation marks with, 325
- Point of view  
consistency in, 61, 147–48  
dominant, 42  
opposing, in arguments. *See*  
Counterarguments  
revising for, 42
- politics* (singular), 211
- Portfolios, 48–49
- Position, stating. *See* Thesis
- Possessive case  
apostrophe for, 319–20  
with gerund, 226
- Possessive pronouns  
defined, 363  
no apostrophe in, 322
- post hoc* fallacy, 95
- precede, proceed*, 617
- Predicate  
compound, 192  
defined, 192, 378  
fragmented, 192
- Predicate adjective. *See* Subject  
complements
- Predicate noun. *See* Subject  
complements
- Predication, faulty, 138–39  
*preferable to* (not *than*), 183
- Prefixes, hyphen after, 355
- Premises, in deductive reasoning,  
96–97
- Prepositional phrases  
defined, 384–85  
fragmented, 191–92  
restrictive (essential) vs.  
nonrestrictive (nonessential),  
301–02  
between subject and verb, 203
- Prepositions  
after adjectives, 291  
*at, in, on*, to show time and place,  
288–89  
defined, 369  
followed by nouns or *-ing* forms,  
not verbs, 290  
in idioms (common expressions),  
182–84, 288–92  
list of, 370  
objects of, 384  
repeating, for parallel structure, 132  
after verbs, 291–92, 367
- Presentations. *See* Multimodal texts;  
Speaking

- Present participles  
 as adjectives, 285–86  
 in gerund phrases, 386–87  
 in participial phrases, 386  
 vs. past participles, 285–86  
 and progressive forms, 248–49,  
 258–59  
 and sequence of tenses, 251–52
- Present perfect tense, 248, 252,  
 258–60  
 in APA papers, 250, 542, 547
- Present progressive form, 248, 258
- Present tense, 247–48, 257  
 subject-verb agreement in,  
 202–06  
 in summaries, 85  
 and tense shifts, avoiding, 148–49  
 in writing about literature,  
 148–49, 249–50  
 in writing about science, 249–50
- Preentious language, avoiding,  
 171–72
- Previewing  
 sources, 418–22  
 visual and multimodal texts, 81  
 written texts, 66–67, 70
- Prewriting strategies, 12–14
- Primary sources  
 for authenticity, 406  
 vs. secondary sources, 423  
 on the Web, 502–03  
*principal*, *principle*, 617  
*prior to* (not *than*), 183
- Problem/strategy approach, for  
 revising a thesis, 16–18
- proceed*. See *precede*, *proceed*, 617
- Process  
 of evaluating sources, 416, 417  
 as paragraph pattern, 54–55  
 of writing an essay  
 drafting, 22–28  
 editing, 43–44  
 planning, 3–22  
 reviewing, 30–38  
 revising, 38–42  
 as social activity, 2, 30
- Professional documents. See Business  
 writing
- Progressive forms, 248–49, 258–59
- Pronoun/adjectives, 363
- Pronoun-antecedent agreement,  
 213–18  
 with collective nouns (*jury*, *class*,  
 etc.), 215  
 with compounds with *and*, 215  
 with compounds with *either* . . .  
*or* or *neither* . . . *nor*, 216–17  
 with compounds with *or*,  
 216–17  
 with indefinite pronouns (*anyone*,  
*each*, etc.), 213–14  
 sexist language with, avoiding,  
 213–14, 216
- Pronoun case  
*I* vs. *me* etc., 222–27  
*who* vs. *whom*, 227–30  
*you* vs. *your*, 226
- Pronoun reference, 218–22  
 ambiguous, 218–19  
 broad *this*, *that*, *which*, *it*, 219  
 implied, 219–20  
 indefinite *they*, *it*, *you*, 220  
 remote, 218–19  
 unstated antecedent, 219–20  
*who* (not *that*, *which*) for persons,  
 221, 621
- Pronouns, types of, 363–65. See also  
 adjectives with, 367–68  
 agreement of verbs with, 202–06  
 agreement with antecedent,  
 213–18  
 as appositives, 224  
 case (*I* vs. *me* etc.), 222–27  
 defined, 363  
 lists of, 363–65  
 as objects, 223–24  
 pronoun/adjectives, 363  
 reference of, 218–22  
 shifts in person and number,  
 avoiding, 147–48  
 singular vs. plural, 147–48,  
 213–18  
 as subjects, 223  
*who*, *whom*, 227–30
- Pronouns, types of, 363–65. See also  
 Pronouns  
 demonstrative (*those*, *that*, etc.),  
 364  
 indefinite (*some*, *any*, etc.), 364  
 intensive (*herself*, *themselves*, etc.),  
 363–64  
 interrogative (*who*, *which*, etc.),  
 364  
 personal (*you*, *they*, etc.), 363  
 possessive (*your*, *his*, etc.), 226,  
 363  
 reciprocal (*each other* etc.), 365  
 reflexive (*myself*, *yourselves*, etc.),  
 363–64  
 relative (*that*, *which*, etc.), 364

- Pronunciation, in dictionary entry, 350
- Proof. *See* Evidence
- Proofreading, 44
- Proper nouns, 271, 273
- capitalizing, 356–58
  - the* with, 277–79
- Proposal, research, 408
- Publication Manual of the American Psychological Association*, 546, 580. *See also* APA papers
- Public speaking. *See* Speaking
- Public writing, audience for, 9
- Publisher names
- in APA reference list, 555
  - in MLA works cited list, 471
- Punctuation, 294–336
- apostrophe, 319–23
  - brackets, 334
  - colon, 317–19
  - comma, 294–313
  - dash, 332–33
  - ellipsis mark, 334
  - exclamation point, 331
  - parentheses, 333
  - period, 330–31
  - question mark, 331
  - quotation marks, 323–29
  - with quotation marks, 326–28
  - semicolon, 313–17
- Purpose in writing
- for argument papers, 103
  - assignments and, 6–7
  - curiosity and, 2
  - and document design, 597
  - and finding sources, 398–402
  - and genre (type of writing), 4, 10
  - for research papers, 398–402
  - for speeches or presentations, 120
  - and writing situation, 4, 7–8

**Q**

- Quantifiers with noncount nouns, 276–77
- Question mark, 331
- and APA citations, 327
  - and MLA citations, 327, 459–60
  - no comma with, 312
  - with quotation marks, 326–27
- Questionnaires, as information source, 11, 407
- Questions
- commas with, 305
  - direct and indirect, 150–51, 331
  - pronouns for, 364
  - punctuation of, 331
  - recognizing in assignments, 7
  - subject in, 377, 382
- Questions to ask
- for an analysis paper, 75, 76–77
  - for an annotated bibliography, 428–29
  - about arguments, 41, 99, 118–19
  - about audience, 8
  - to generate ideas, 2, 3, 13
  - about genre (type of writing), 10
  - of peer reviewers, 30–31
  - about reading, 70
  - about a research subject, 398–401, 408
  - for APA papers, 530–31
  - for MLA papers, 435, 456
  - to shape a thesis, 15
  - when drafting, 24
- Quotation marks, 323–29. *See also* Quotations
- to avoid plagiarism, 414–15
  - with direct quotations (exact language), 324–25, 414–15
  - misuses of, 328
  - not used with indented (long) quotations, 324–25
  - not used with paraphrases and summaries, 324
  - other punctuation with, 326–28
  - single, 325
  - with titles of works, 325
  - APA style, 554, 581, 584
  - MLA style, 470, 514
  - with words used as words, 325–26
- quotation, quote.* *See quote, quotation, 618*
- Quotations. *See also* Quotation marks in APA papers
- accuracy of, 540
  - avoiding plagiarism in, 534–37
  - brackets with, 540
  - citing, 534–37, 546–80
  - context for, 544
  - dropped, avoiding, 542
  - effective use of, 539–41
  - ellipsis mark with, 540
  - embedding, 544
  - indenting, 541, 582, 594
  - integrating, 537–44
  - long (indented), 541, 582, 594
  - parallelism with, 132
  - quotation marks for, 535–36
  - sic* for errors in, 540

Quotations (*continued*)

- in APA papers (*continued*)
  - with signal phrase, 541–44
  - synthesizing, 545–46
- in argument papers, 101–02
- capitalization in, 359
- commas with, 305
- direct and indirect, 150–51, 324–25
- ellipsis marks for cuts in, 334
- integrating, 50
- from interviews, 407
- long (indented), 324–25
- in MLA papers
  - accuracy of, 448–49
  - avoiding plagiarism in, 442–43
  - brackets with, 449
  - citing, 442–43, 458–513
  - context for, 453–54
  - dropped, avoiding, 451
  - effective use of, 447–50, 457
  - ellipsis mark with, 448
  - embedding, 453–54
  - indenting, 449–50, 514, 522, 598
  - integrating, 447–50
  - long (indented), 449–50, 514, 522, 598
  - quotation marks for, 443
  - “sic” for errors in, 449
  - with signal phrase, 450–54
  - synthesizing, 454–56
  - within paraphrases, 414
  - punctuation of, 323–29
  - within quotations, 325
- quoted in (qtd. in)*, for a source in another source, 466–67, 476–77. See also *cited in quote, quotation*, 618
- Quotes. See Quotations

## R

- raise, rise*, 618
- Ratios, colon with, 318
- Readability, document design for, 597
- Readers, engaging, 22–23, 32
- Reading
  - active and critical
    - for analysis, 66–73, 81–84
    - of arguments, 91–102
    - of research sources, 422–27
    - of visual and multimedia texts, 81–84
    - of written texts, 66–73
  - annotating. See Annotating texts
  - conversing with a text, 68–69, 82–84
  - engagement with, 2, 91–94
  - evaluating arguments, 91–102
  - evaluating sources, 403–04, 416–30
  - to explore a subject, 11, 13
  - previewing sources, 418–22
  - previewing texts, 66–67, 70, 81
  - and thinking like a researcher, 398
  - visual and multimodal texts, 80–88
  - on the Web, 72
- real, really*, 233, 618
- Reasoning. See also Argument papers
  - deductive, 96–97
  - inductive, 91–92, 94
  - logical fallacies, 91–99
- reason . . . is because* (nonstandard), 139, 618
- reason why* (nonstandard), 618
- Reciprocal pronouns, 365
- Red herring fallacy, 100
- Redundancies, 166
- Reference list (APA). See also Works cited list (MLA)
  - directory to models for, 528–29
  - formatting, 583–84, 602
  - general guidelines for, 554–55
  - models for, 553–80
  - sample, 595–96, 602
- Reference of pronouns. See Pronoun reference
- Reflection. See also Habits of mind
  - for literacy narrative, 45–48
  - for portfolio, 48–49
- Reflexive pronouns, 363–64
- Regional expressions, 174–75
- Regular verbs
  - d*, -*ed* endings on, 237–38, 245–46
  - defined, 237–38, 366
  - s* forms of, 242–43
- relation, relationship*, 618
- Relative adverbs
  - defined, 389
  - introducing adjective clauses, 282–83, 389
- Relative pronouns
  - agreement with verb, 210
  - defined, 364, 389, 390
  - introducing adjective clauses, 282–83, 389
  - in noun clauses, 390
  - who, whom*, 227–30

- Repetition  
   of function words, for parallel structure, 132  
   of key words, 60  
   in speeches or presentations, 121  
   unnecessary  
     ideas, 166–67  
     nouns and pronouns, 281–82  
     objects or adverbs, 282–83  
     words, 166–67
- Report, business, 603
- Reposted source, citing (MLA style), 502–03
- Requests, subjunctive mood for, 253
- Researched writing. *See also*  
   Researching a topic;  
   Responsibility, with sources  
   APA papers, 527–96  
   MLA papers, 431–525  
   sample student writing  
     APA style, 585–96  
     MLA style, 517–25
- Researching a topic, 396–430. *See also*  
   Researched writing  
   for argument papers, 103  
   bibliography  
     annotated, 427–30  
     scholarly, 405  
     working, 409, 411  
   catalog, library, 403, 418  
   databases, 403, 405  
   evaluating sources, 403–04, 416–30  
   field research, 406–07  
   getting started, 396–402  
   keeping a research log, 396–97, 398, 402  
   keeping track of sources, 410  
   library resources, 401–06  
   managing information, 396–98, 408–15  
   narrowing the focus, 399–400  
   note taking, 396–97, 410–15  
   planning, 396, 397, 417  
   purpose and, 398–402  
   reading critically, 417, 422–27  
   reading selectively, 418–21  
   reference librarians, 401, 403  
   research proposals, 408  
   research questions, 398–401, 408  
     for APA papers, 530–31  
     for MLA papers, 435–36  
   schedule for, 396, 397  
   search strategy, 401–02, 408, 417  
     shortcuts to good sources, 404–06  
     thinking like a researcher, 398  
     tips for smart searching, 405–06  
     Web resources, 403–04, 405  
   *respectfully, respectively*, 618  
   Response papers. *See* Analysis papers  
   Responsibility, with sources  
     altering quotations, 407  
     in APA papers, 540  
     in MLA papers, 448  
     copying from electronic files, 412  
     documenting evidence, 107  
     keeping records, 24–25, 69, 402, 409  
     and note taking, 408–15  
     reading critically, 422  
     and thinking like a researcher, 398  
   Restrictive (essential) elements, no commas with, 299–303, 310  
   Résumés, 605  
   Reviewers. *See* Peer review  
   Review of the literature, sample of, 585–96  
   Revising with comments, 30–34  
     “Consider opposing viewpoints,” 32  
     giving comments, 33–34  
     “Unfocused introduction,” 32  
     sample peer review process, 34–37  
   Revision, 30–42  
     with comments, 30–34  
     cycles of, 38–42  
     vs. editing, 30, 43  
     global (big-picture), 38–42  
     revision and editing logs, 31  
     sample revised draft, 45–48  
     sentence-level, 30, 43–44  
     as social process, 30  
     strategies for, 32  
     of thesis, 15–18, 39–40, 42  
   *rise*. *See* *raise, rise*, 618  
   Running heads. *See also* Pagination (of paper)  
     in APA papers, 581, 585, 600–02  
     in MLA papers, 514, 598  
   Run-on sentences  
     finding and recognizing, 195–96  
     fixing, 197–200  
       with colon or dash, 198–99  
       with comma and coordinating conjunction, 197–98  
       by making two sentences, 199  
       by restructuring, 200  
       with semicolon, 198

## S

-s

- and apostrophe, 319–22
- and plurals of abbreviations, 340
- and spelling, 346–47
- as verb ending, 202, 204–05, 242–43
- Sacred texts (Bible, Qur'an)
  - citing
    - APA style, 556, 572
    - MLA style, 468, 493
  - no italics for, 344
  - punctuation between chapter and verse, 318
- Salutations and greetings, colon with, 318, 604
- Sample student writing
  - analysis, 78–80, 88–91
  - argument, 112–17
  - literacy narrative, 45–48
  - paragraphs, 39
  - research
    - APA style, 585–96
    - MLA style, 517–25
  - revised draft, 45–48
  - rough draft with peer comments, 35–37
  - speech (excerpt), 123
- Scholarly sources, identifying, 405, 421
- Scientific facts, and verb tense, 249–50
- Scores, numerals for, 342
- Search engines, 403–04
- Search strategy, 401–02, 408
- Secondary sources, 423
- Second-person point of view, 42, 147
- self-*, hyphen with, 355
- Self-assessment. *See* Reflection
- Semicolon, 313–17
  - for combining sentences, 154
  - with commas, 314–15
  - to fix run-on sentences, 198
  - and independent clauses, 313–15
  - misuse of, 315–16
  - with quotation marks, 326
  - with series, 315
  - transitional expressions with, 314–15
- sensual, sensuous*, 618
- Sentence fragments. *See* Fragments, sentence
- Sentence patterns, 375–83
- Sentence purposes, 394
- Sentences. *See also* Sentence types
  - awkward, 137–40
  - choppy, combining, 157
  - conditional, 265–66
  - fragments. *See* Fragments, sentence
  - fused. *See* Run-on sentences
  - incomplete. *See* Fragments, sentence
  - inverted (verb before subject), 164, 209, 280–81, 376–77, 382
  - logical, 138–39
  - parts of, 375–81
  - patterns of, 375–83
  - purposes of, 394
  - revising and editing, 30, 43–44
  - run-on. *See* Run-on sentences
  - thesis. *See* Thesis
  - topic, 50–51
  - transitional, 61–63, 121
  - variety in, 163–65
  - wordy, 166–70
- Sentence structure
  - mixed constructions, 137–40
  - multilingual/ESL challenges with, 279–87
    - adjectives, placement of, 287
    - adverbs, placement of, 284
    - although, because*, 283–84
    - linking verb between subject and complement, 280
    - present participle vs. past participle, 285–86
    - repetition of object or adverb, avoiding, 282–83
    - repetition of subject, avoiding, 281–82
    - subject, needed, 280–81
    - there, it*, 280–81
  - paraphrases and, 414
  - simplifying, 168
  - variety in, 163–65
- Sentence types, 392–94
  - complex, 393
  - compound, 393
  - compound-complex, 393–94
  - declarative, 394
  - exclamatory, 394
  - imperative, 394
  - interrogative, 394
  - simple, 392–93
- Series. *See also* Lists
  - comma with, 297
  - parallelism and, 130
  - parentheses with, 333
  - semicolon with, 315

- set, sit*, 618
- Setup, page. *See* Document design; Manuscript formats
- Sexist language, avoiding, 176–79, 213–14, 216
- shall*, as modal verb, 261, 366
- shall, will*, 618
- she, her, hers*, sexist use of, 177, 214, 216
- she vs. her*, 222–27
- she writes, he writes*, comma with, 305, 327
- Shifts, avoiding
- from indirect to direct questions or quotations, 150–51
  - in levels of formality, 175–76
  - in mood or voice, 149–50
  - in point of view (person and number), 147–48
  - in verb tense, 148–49
- Ships, italics for names of, 344
- Short stories, titles of
- capitalizing, 358–59, 581
  - quotation marks for, 325
    - APA style, 581
    - MLA style, 470, 514
- should*, as modal verb, 261, 262, 366
- should of* (nonstandard), 618
- sic*, 334
- in APA paper, 540
  - in MLA paper, 449
- Signal phrases
- APA style, 541–44
  - MLA style, 450–54
- Signposts, in speeches or presentations, 121
- Simile, 185
- Simple sentences, 392–93
- Simple subjects, 376
- Simple tenses, 247–48, 257, 260
- since*, 618–19
- Singular vs. plural
- antecedents, 213–14
  - nouns, 202–12, 242–44
  - pronouns, 213–14
  - subjects, 202–12, 242–44
- sit*. *See set, sit*, 618
- site*. *See cite, site*, 611
- Skimming. *See* Previewing
- Slang, avoiding, 174–75
- Slash, 335
- Slides, presentation, 121
- so*
- comma with, 294–95
  - as coordinating conjunction, 370
- Social activity, writing as, 2, 30
- Social media, citing
- APA style, 552, 579–80
  - MLA style, 466, 511–12
- Social sciences, writing in. *See* APA papers
- Software. *See* Word processing programs
- some*, 206–07
- somebody, someone* (singular), 206–07, 213–14, 619
- something* (singular), 206–07, 213–14
- sometime, some time, sometimes*, 619
- Songs, titles of, quotation marks for, 325
- sort of*. *See kind of, sort of*, 616
- Sound-alike words (homophones), 351
- Sources
- citing. *See* Citing sources
  - documenting. *See* APA papers; MLA papers
  - evaluating, 403–04, 416–30
  - finding, 401–06
  - integrating, 50
    - in APA papers, 537–44
    - in MLA papers, 445–57
    - in speeches or presentations, 121
  - introducing. *See* Signal phrases
  - keeping records of, 396–97, 410
  - list of. *See* Reference list (APA); Works cited list (MLA)
  - online. *See* Web and digital sources
  - primary, 406, 423
    - and purpose of research project, 398–402, 416–17
    - quoted in another source
      - in APA papers, 552–53
      - in MLA papers, 466–67, 476–77
  - responsible use of. *See* Responsibility, with sources
  - scholarly, 405, 421
  - secondary, 423
  - selecting, 418–22
  - synthesizing
    - in APA papers, 545–46
    - in MLA papers, 454–56
  - uses of, 416–17
    - in APA papers, 532–33
    - in MLA papers, 437–39
  - of visuals, crediting, 25
    - in APA papers, 573–79, 583
    - in MLA papers, 465–66, 499–510

- “So what?” test  
 critical reading and, 69, 70  
 revision and, 15–18, 38, 42  
 thesis and, 14, 15–18  
   in APA papers, 531  
   in MLA papers, 436
- Spacecraft, italics for names of, 344
- Spacing. *See* Line spacing
- Speaking, 119–23  
 adapting essays for presentations, 123  
 audience for, 120  
 conclusions for, 122  
 context for, 120  
 delivering, 122  
 introductions for, 122  
 preparing for, 120–21  
 purpose of, 120  
 sample student speech (excerpt), 123  
 slides for, 121
- Specific nouns, 181  
*the* with, 271–74
- Speeches. *See* Speaking
- Spelling, 345–53
- Split infinitives, 142–43
- Sponsor, of Web sources, 403–04, 425  
 in MLA works cited list, 470
- Squinting modifiers, 142. *See also*  
 Misplaced modifiers
- Standard English, 174–75
- Standard (US) units, abbreviations  
 for, 339–40
- Statements contrary to fact, 252–53, 266
- statistics* (singular), 211
- Statistics  
 in APA papers, 544  
 in argument papers, 107–08  
 in MLA papers, 453, 457  
 numerals for, 342
- Stereotypes, avoiding, 93, 179
- Straw man fallacy, 101
- Student essays. *See* Sample student writing
- Subject, of paper or presentation. *See* Topic
- Subject, of sentence  
 and agreement with verb, 202–12  
 case of, 223  
 complete, 375–76  
 compound, 376  
 following verb, 164, 209, 280–81, 376–77, 382  
 identifying, 209–10  
 of infinitive, 225–26  
 naming the actor (active voice), 126–29  
 naming the receiver (passive voice), 126–29  
 pronoun as, 223  
 in questions, 377, 382  
 repeated, 281–82  
 required in sentences, 280–81  
 separated from verb, 142  
 simple, 376  
 singular vs. plural, 202–12  
 understood (*you*), 280, 376, 382
- Subject complements  
 adjectives as, 231–32, 378  
 case of pronouns as, 223  
 defined, 378  
 with linking verbs, 378  
 and subject-verb agreement, 209–10
- Subjective case, of pronouns, 223  
*who*, *whom*, 227–30
- Subjects, of field research, 406
- Subject-verb agreement. *See*  
 Agreement of subject and verb
- Subjunctive mood, 252–53. *See also*  
 Conditional sentences
- Subordinate clauses, 389–92  
 adjective (beginning with *who*, *that*, etc.), 389  
 adverb (beginning with *if*, *when*, *where*, etc.), 390–91  
 avoiding repeated elements in, 282–83  
 defined, 389, 392  
 fragmented, 190–91  
 with independent clauses, 393–94  
 minor ideas in, 160  
 misplaced, 141–42  
 noun, 391  
 and sentence types, 393–94  
 words introducing, 389–91
- Subordinate word groups, 383–92
- Subordinating conjunctions, 371, 390
- Subordination  
 for combining ideas of unequal importance, 154–56, 158–59  
 and coordination, 158–59  
 for fixing run-on sentences, 200  
 for fixing sentence fragments, 190–93  
 of major ideas, avoiding, 160  
 overuse of, 160–61



- Subtitles of works  
 capitalizing, 358–59  
 APA style, 554, 584  
 MLA style, 470, 514  
 colon between title and, 318
- such as*  
 no colon after, 318  
 no comma after, 312  
 and sentence fragments, 193
- Suffixes  
 hyphen before, 355  
 spelling rules for, 346
- Summary  
 acceptable and unacceptable  
 in APA papers, 536–37  
 in MLA papers, 444–45  
 vs. analysis, 74, 76, 86–87  
 in annotated bibliographies,  
 427–30  
 effective use of  
 in APA papers, 538  
 in MLA papers, 446, 457  
 integrating  
 in APA papers, 542–43  
 in MLA papers, 452–53  
 no quotation marks for, 324  
 and note taking, 412–13  
 outlining a text for, 71–72, 84–85  
 writing, 72–73, 85–87
- superior to* (not *than*), 183
- Superlative form of adjectives and  
 adverbs (with *-est* or *most*),  
 234–35. *See also* Comparative  
 form of adjectives and  
 adverbs
- Support. *See* Evidence
- suppose to* (nonstandard), 619
- sure and* (nonstandard), 183, 619
- Surveys, as information source, 407
- Syllables, division of words into  
 in dictionary, 348–50  
 hyphen for, 355–56
- Synonyms, 180, 350
- Synthesizing sources  
 in APA papers, 532–33  
 in MLA papers, 454–56
- T**
- Tables, 26. *See also* Visuals, in  
 documents  
 in APA papers, 575, 583, 591  
 in MLA papers, 507–08, 515
- take*. *See* *bring, take*, 611
- Taking notes. *See* Note taking
- Talking and listening  
 to generate ideas, 2, 12  
 in speeches and presentations,  
 121, 122
- Talking back to a text, 68–69, 82–84
- teach*. *See* *learn, teach*, 616
- Teacher's comments, responding to.  
*See* Revising with comments
- team*. *See* Collective nouns
- Teamwork. *See* Peer review
- Tenses, verb, 247–52  
 in active voice, 257–59  
 and agreement with subject,  
 202–12  
 in APA papers, 250, 542, 547  
 conditional, 265–66  
 in MLA papers, 451  
 multilingual/ESL challenges with,  
 256–61, 265–66  
 in passive voice, 260  
 present  
 in summaries, 85  
 in writing about literature,  
 148–49, 249–50  
 in writing about science,  
 249–50  
 sequence of, 251–52  
 shifts in, avoiding, 148–49
- Text messages, citing (MLA style),  
 511–12
- Texts. *See* Multimodal texts; Visual  
 texts; Written texts
- than*  
 in comparisons, 134–35  
 parallelism with, 131–32  
 pronoun after, 225
- than, then*, 619
- that*  
 agreement of verb with, 210  
 broad reference of, 219  
 needed word, 132, 134  
 vs. *which*, 301, 619  
 vs. *who*, 221. *See also* *who, which,*  
*that*, 620
- the*. *See also* *a, an*  
 with geographic names, 277–79  
 multilingual/ESL challenges with,  
 270–79  
 omission of, 136, 277–79  
 with proper nouns, 277–79
- their*  
 misuse of, with singular  
 antecedent, 147, 213–14, 216  
 vs. *there, they're*, 619  
 vs. *they*, 619

- themselves* (nonstandard), 619
- them* vs. *they*, 222–27
- them* vs. *those*, 619
- then, than*. See *than, then*, 619
- the number, a number*, 208
- there*, as expletive (placeholder)
- not used as subject, 281
  - and sentence order (verb before subject), 280–81, 376–77, 382
  - and subject-verb agreement, 209
  - with verb, 280–81
  - and wordy sentences, 168
- therefore*
- comma with, 303–04
  - semicolon with, 314–15
- there, their, they're*, 619
- Thesis
- active reading for, 69, 70
  - in analysis papers, 75, 87
  - in APA papers, 530–31
  - in argument papers, 105–07, 118
  - audience and, 14–15, 16
  - developing, 24
  - drafting, 14–15
  - effective, 14, 16–18, 75, 87
  - in essays, 14–19, 22–24, 42
  - evaluating, 16–18
  - in MLA papers, 435–36
  - of paragraph, 50–51
  - of research paper, 398–401
  - revising, 15–18, 39–40, 42
  - testing, 16
    - for APA papers, 531
    - for MLA papers, 436
  - working, 14–19
    - in APA papers, 530–31
    - in MLA papers, 435–36
- they*
- indefinite reference of, 220
  - vs. *I* or *you*, 147
  - misuse of, with singular antecedent, 213–14, 216
  - nonstandard for *their*, 619
  - vs. *them*, 222–27
- they're*. See *there, their, they're*, 619
- Third-person point of view, 42, 85, 147
- this*, broad reference of, 219
- this kind*. See *kind(s)*, 615–16
- Time
- abbreviations for, 339
  - colon with, 318
  - managing, 396
  - numerals for, 342
- Title page
- for APA paper
    - formatting, 581, 600
    - sample, 585
  - for MLA paper (optional)
    - formatting, 513–14
- Titles of persons
- abbreviations with names, 338
  - capitalizing, 358
  - comma with, 306
- Titles of works
- capitalizing, 358–59
    - APA style, 554, 581, 584
    - MLA style, 470, 514
  - italics for, 343–44
    - APA style, 554, 581, 584
    - MLA style, 470, 514
  - quotation marks for, 325
    - APA style, 554, 581, 584
    - MLA style, 470, 514
  - treated as singular, 211
- to*
- needed word, 132
  - as preposition vs. infinitive marker, 290
- Tone (voice). See also Language
- in APA paper, 537
  - in argument paper, 105
  - in MLA paper, 440, 445–46
  - revising for, 38–39
  - in e-mail, 607
- too*, with infinitive, 269
- Topic
- big picture for, 397–98
  - curiosity and, 2, 3
  - exploring, 5–7, 12–14, 120
  - narrowing, 4, 399–400
  - of research paper, 397–98
  - working thesis and, 14–19
  - writing situation and, 4, 5–7
- Topic sentence, 50–51
- to, too, two*, 619
- toward, towards*, 620
- Transfer (fallacy), 100
- Transitional expressions
- commas with, 303–04
  - list of, 314
  - semicolon with, 314–15
- Transitions, for coherence, 61–63, 121
- Transitive verbs, 261, 378–79, 383
- Trite expressions. See Clichés
- troop*. See Collective nouns
- try and* (nonstandard), 183, 620
- Tutorials. See Writing guides
- Tutors, working with. See Peer review

Twitter. *See* Social media, citing  
*two*. *See to, too, two*, 619  
*type of* (not of *a*), 183  
 Types of writing. *See* Genre (type of  
 writing)  
 Typing. *See* Document design

## U

*ultimately*. *See eventually, ultimately*,  
 613  
 Unclear thesis, revising, 18  
 Underlining. *See* Italics  
 Understood subject (*you*), 280, 376,  
 382  
*uninterested*. *See disinterested*,  
*uninterested*, 612  
*unique*, 235, 620  
 Unity. *See* Focus  
 Unmarked infinitives, 269  
 Uploaded materials, citing (MLA  
 style), 474–75, 502–03,  
 508–09  
 URLs  
   in citations  
     APA style, 555, 559, 572  
     MLA style, 470, 471, 496, 497  
   dividing, 355–56  
     APA style, 584  
     MLA style, 514–15, 516  
   evaluating, 403  
 Usage  
   glossary of, 608–21  
   labels in dictionary, 350–51  
*usage*, 620  
*use to* (nonstandard), 620  
*us vs. we*, 222–27  
*utilize*, 620

## V

Vague thesis, revising, 18  
 Variety  
   in sentences, 163–65  
   in signal phrases  
     APA style, 543  
     MLA style, 450  
   in speeches or presentations,  
   121  
 Verbal phrases, 385–88  
   fragmented, 191–92  
   gerund, 386–87  
   infinitive, 387  
   participial, 386

Verbs. *See also* Verbs, types of  
 active, 126–29, 257–59, 383  
 adverbs with, 368–69  
 agreement with subjects, 202–12  
*be*, forms of, vs. active, 127–28  
 compound predicates, 192  
 in conditional sentences, 265–66  
 -*d*, -*ed* ending on, 237–38,  
 245–46  
 defined, 365  
 followed by gerunds or infinitives,  
 267–70  
 forms of, 256–59  
 mood of, 252–53  
 multilingual/ESL challenges with.  
   *See* Multilingual writers, verbs  
   needed, 246  
   negative forms of, 264  
   without objects, 380–81  
 passive, 126–29, 259–61, 383  
 with prepositions (idioms),  
 291–92  
 separated from subjects, 142  
 -*s* form of, 202, 204–05, 242–43  
 shifts in tense, mood, voice,  
   avoiding, 148–50  
 in signal phrases  
   APA style, 541–42, 543  
   MLA style, 450–51  
 with singular vs. plural subjects,  
 242–44  
 standard forms of, 237–41  
 strong, vs. *be* and passive verbs,  
 126–29, 168  
 before subjects (inverted  
 sentences), 164, 209, 280–81,  
 376–77  
 tenses of. *See* Tenses, verb  
 two-word, 367  
 voice of (active, passive), 126–29,  
 257–61, 383  
 Verbs, types of. *See also* Verbs  
 helping. *See* Helping verbs  
 intransitive (no direct object),  
 380–81  
 irregular, 237–41, 256–59, 366–67  
 linking, 231–32, 280, 378  
 main, 247–53, 261–63, 366–67  
 modal (*can, should*, etc.). *See*  
   Modal verbs  
 phrasal. *See* Particles, with verbs  
 regular, 237–38, 245–46, 256–59,  
 366  
 transitive (with direct object),  
 378–79

- Video, online, citing  
 APA style, 573  
 MLA style, 474–75, 500, 502–03
- Video game, citing  
 APA style, 578  
 MLA style, 501
- Visuals, in documents. *See also* Visual texts  
 choosing, 25, 26–27  
 citing sources of, 25  
 APA style, 573–79, 583  
 MLA style, 465–66, 499–510  
 in document design, 603  
 as evidence, 108–09  
 labeling  
 APA style, 583, 603  
 MLA style, 515, 519  
 purposes for, 25, 26–27, 108–09, 121  
 types of  
 bar graph, 26  
 diagram, 27  
 flowchart, 27  
 infographic, 26  
 line graph, 26  
 map, 27  
 photograph, 27  
 pie chart, 26  
 table, 26
- Visual sources. *See* Visuals, in documents; Visual texts
- Visual texts (photograph, advertisement, etc.). *See also* Multimodal texts; Visuals, in documents  
 analyzing, 80–91  
 annotating, 81–82, 83  
 conversing with, 82–84  
 writing about, 85–87
- Voice. *See also* Tone (voice)  
 active (preferred), 126–29, 257–61, 379, 383  
 passive, 126–27, 168, 259–61, 383  
 shifts between active and passive, avoiding, 149–50
- Volume and issue numbers, in APA reference list, 555
- and subject-verb agreement, 204, 244  
 and subjunctive mood, 252–53
- ways*, 620
- we*  
 vs. *us*, 222–27  
 vs. *you* or *they*, 147
- weather*, *whether*, 620
- Web and digital sources. *See also* Electronic documents; Internet  
 abstracts of, 421  
 authors of, identifying, 425, 474–75, 502–03  
 avoiding plagiarism from, 410, 412, 415  
 citation at a glance  
 APA style, 562–63, 576–77  
 MLA style, 480–81, 497  
 citing  
 APA style, 551–52, 559–67, 572–73  
 MLA style, 466, 477–87, 495–99  
 course materials, citing  
 APA style, 552, 559  
 MLA style, 498–99, 508–09  
 databases for, 402, 403, 405  
 evaluating, 403–04, 419, 421, 424–27  
 finding, 402–06  
 keeping records of, 409, 410  
 library catalog for, 403, 418  
 previewing, 397–98, 418–22  
 reading, 72  
 reposted sources, citing (MLA style), 502–03  
 search engines for, 403–04  
 selecting appropriate versions of, 421–22
- well*, *good*, 233–34. *See also* *good*, *well*, 614
- were*, in conditional sentences, 252–53, 265–66
- were* vs. *was*. *See* *was* vs. *were*
- when* clauses, 252–53, 265–66
- where* vs. *that*, 620
- whether*. *See* *if*, *whether*, 615; *weather*, *whether*, 620
- whether* . . . or, 131, 370–71
- which*  
 agreement of verb with, 210  
 broad reference of, 219  
 vs. *that*, 301, 619

## W

*wait for*, *wait on*, 620

*was* vs. *were*

in conditional sentences, 265–66

- vs. *who*, 221. See also *who, which, that*, 620
- while*, 620
- who*
- agreement of verb with, 210
  - omission of, 133–34
  - vs. *which* or *that*, 221. See also *who, which, that*, 620
  - vs. *whom*, 227–30, 620
- who's, whose*, 322, 620
- who, which, that*, 620
- will*, as modal verb, 261, 263, 366
- will, shall*. See *shall, will*, 618
- Wishes, subjunctive mood for, 253
- Word groups. See Independent clauses; Phrases; Subordinate clauses
- Wordiness, 166–70
- Word processing programs
- and automatic division of words, 355–56
  - and citing sources, 409
  - and double-entry notebooks, 68–69
  - and keeping track of files, 29, 412
- Words. See also Language; Spelling
- abstract vs. concrete, 181
  - antonyms (opposites), 350
  - colloquial, 175, 350–51
  - compound, 349, 353–54
  - confused, 181–82. See also Glossary of usage
  - connotation and denotation of, 180
  - division of, 348–50, 355–56
  - foreign, italics for, 344
  - general vs. specific, 181, 271, 274
  - homophones (sound-alike), 351
  - meaning of, 180, 350
  - misuse of, 181–82
  - needed. See Needed words
  - origin of (etymology), 350
  - prefixes (beginnings of), 355
  - sound-alike (homophones), 351
  - spelling of, 345–53
  - suffixes (endings of), 346, 355
  - synonyms (words with similar meanings), 180, 350
  - unnecessary repetition of, 166–67
  - using your own. See Paraphrases; Summary
- Words used as words
- italics for, 344–45
  - plural of, 322
  - quotation marks for, 325–26
  - treated as singular, 211
- Work in an anthology. See Anthology or collection, citing
- Working bibliography. See also Annotated bibliography
- information for, 411
  - maintaining, 409
  - research log for, 396–97
- Working thesis. See Thesis, working
- Works cited list (MLA)
- directory to models for, 432–34
  - formatting, 515–16, 599
  - general guidelines for, 470–71
  - models for, 468–512
  - sample, 117, 524–25
- World Wide Web. See Electronic documents; Internet; Web and digital sources
- would*, as modal verb, 261, 263, 366
- would* of (nonstandard), 621
- Writing guides
- for analytical essay, 76–77
  - for annotated bibliography, 428–29
  - for argument paper, 118–19
- Writing in the disciplines. See Academic writing; Genre (type of writing)
- Writing process
- drafting, 22–28
  - editing, 43–44
  - planning, 3–22
  - reviewing, 30–38
  - revising, 38–42
  - as social activity, 2, 30
- Writing situation, 3–12
- Writing tutors, working with. See Peer review
- Written texts. See also Reading
- analyzing, 66–80
  - annotating, 67–68, 70, 413
  - conversing with, 68–69
  - sample paper analyzing, 78–80
  - writing about, 72–77

**Y**

- yes, no*, commas with, 305
- yet*
  - comma before, 294–95
  - as coordinating conjunction, 370
- you*
  - appropriate use of, 147, 220
  - inappropriate use of, 220, 621
  - vs. *I* or *they*, 147
  - and shifts in point of view,
    - avoiding, 147
    - understood, 280, 376, 382
- your, you're*, 621
- YouTube. *See* Video, online, citing

*this page left intentionally blank*

# Multilingual Menu

A complete section for multilingual writers:

- 28 Verbs** 256
- a** Form and tense 256
  - b** Passive voice 259
  - c** Base form after modal 261
  - d** Negative forms 264
  - e** Conditional sentences 265
  - f** With gerunds or infinitives 267
- 29 Articles** 270
- a** Articles; other noun markers 270
  - b** When to use *the* 271
  - c** When to use *a* or *an* 274
  - d** When not to use *a* or *an* 276
  - e** With general nouns 277
  - f** With proper nouns 277
- 30 Sentence structure** 279
- a** Linking verb with subject and complement 280
  - b** Omitted subjects 280
  - c** Repeated nouns, pronouns 281
  - d** Repeated objects, adverbs 282
  - e** Mixed constructions 283
  - f** Adverb placement 284
  - g** Present and past participles 285
  - h** Order of adjectives 287
- 31 Prepositions and idiomatic expressions** 288
- a** *at, on, in* 288
  - b** Noun (*-ing* form) after preposition 290
  - c** Adjective + preposition 291
  - d** Verb + preposition 291

Multilingual and Academic English notes in other sections:

## The Writing Process

- The writing situation 5
- Using a direct approach 24
- Choosing transitions 62

## Academic Reading, Writing, and Speaking

- Avoiding hasty generalizations 93
- Making an argument 105

## Clarity

- Passive voice 126
- Missing words 133
- Articles 136
- Double subjects, repeated objects 138
- Adverb placement 142
- Repeated objects, or adverbs 157
- Idioms 183

## Grammar

- Problems with verbs 190
- Pronoun-antecedent gender agreement 213
- Adjective and adverb placement 231
- No plural adjectives 231
- Omitted verbs 246
- Verb tenses 249

## Mechanics

- American and British spelling 347

## Research

- Recognizing intellectual property 412



# Revision Symbols

**Boldface numbers refer to sections of the handbook.**

<b>abbr</b>	faulty abbreviation <b>40</b>	<b>p</b>	punctuation
<b>adj/adv</b>	misuse of adjective or adverb <b>26</b>	;	comma <b>32</b>
<b>add</b>	add needed word <b>10</b>	<b>no</b> ,	no comma <b>33</b>
<b>agr</b>	faulty agreement <b>21, 22</b>	;	semicolon <b>34</b>
<b>appr</b>	inappropriate language <b>17</b>	:	colon <b>35</b>
<b>art</b>	article ( <i>a, an, the</i> ) <b>29</b>	↓	apostrophe <b>36</b>
<b>awk</b>	awkward	“ ”	quotation marks <b>37</b>
<b>cap</b>	capital letter <b>45</b>	. ?	period, question mark <b>38a–b</b>
<b>case</b>	error in case <b>24, 25</b>	!	exclamation point <b>38c</b>
<b>cliché</b>	cliché <b>18e</b>	— ( )	dash, parentheses <b>39a–b</b>
<b>coh</b>	coherence <b>3d</b>	[ ] . . .	brackets, ellipsis mark <b>39c–d</b>
<b>coord</b>	faulty coordination <b>14a</b>	/	slash <b>39e</b>
<b>cs</b>	comma splice <b>20</b>	¶	new paragraph <b>3e</b>
<b>dev</b>	inadequate development <b>3b, 6h</b>	<b>pass</b>	ineffective passive <b>8</b>
<b>dm</b>	dangling modifier <b>12e</b>	<b>pn agr</b>	pronoun agreement <b>22</b>
<b>-ed</b>	<i>-ed</i> ending <b>27d</b>	<b>proof</b>	proofreading problem <b>2g</b>
<b>emph</b>	emphasis <b>14</b>	<b>ref</b>	pronoun reference <b>23</b>
<b>ESL</b>	English as a second language, multilingual <b>28–31</b>	<b>run-on</b>	run-on sentence <b>20</b>
<b>exact</b>	inexact language <b>18</b>	<b>-s</b>	<i>-s</i> ending <b>21, 27c</b>
<b>frag</b>	sentence fragment <b>19</b>	<b>sexist</b>	sexist language <b>17e, 22a</b>
<b>fs</b>	fused sentence <b>20</b>	<b>shift</b>	distracting shift <b>13</b>
<b>gl/us</b>	see glossary of usage	<b>sl</b>	slang <b>17c</b>
<b>hyph</b>	hyphen <b>44</b>	<b>sp</b>	misspelled word <b>43</b>
<b>idiom</b>	idioms <b>18d</b>	<b>sub</b>	subordination <b>14</b>
<b>inc</b>	incomplete construction <b>10</b>	<b>sv agr</b>	subject-verb agreement <b>21, 27c</b>
<b>irreg</b>	irregular verb <b>27a</b>	<b>t</b>	verb tense <b>27f</b>
<b>ital</b>	italics <b>42</b>	<b>trans</b>	transition needed <b>3d</b>
<b>jarg</b>	jargon <b>17a</b>	<b>usage</b>	see glossary of usage
<b>lc</b>	lowercase letter <b>45</b>	<b>v</b>	voice <b>8a</b>
<b>mix</b>	mixed construction <b>11</b>	<b>var</b>	lack of variety in sentence structure <b>14, 15</b>
<b>mm</b>	misplaced modifier <b>12a–d</b>	<b>vb</b>	verb problem <b>27, 28</b>
<b>mood</b>	mood <b>27g</b>	<b>w</b>	wordy <b>16</b>
<b>nonst</b>	nonstandard usage <b>17c, 27</b>	//	parallelism <b>9</b>
<b>num</b>	use of numbers <b>41</b>	^	insert
<b>om</b>	omitted word <b>10, 30b</b>	#	insert space
		○	close up space

# Detailed Menu

## The Writing Process 1

- 1 Exploring, drafting  
*plan/draft* 3
- 2 Revising, reflecting  
*rev* 30  
*Sample revision* 45
- 3 Paragraphs *par* 49

## Reading, Writing, Speaking 65

- 4 Reading, writing  
critically *crit* 66  
*Sample article* 67  
*Sample analysis* 78
- 5 Multimodal texts  
*texts* 80  
*Sample advertisement* 83  
*Sample analysis* 88
- 6 Reading, writing  
arguments *arg* 91  
*Sample argument* 112
- 7 Speaking  
confidently *spk* 119

## Clarity 125

- 8 Active verbs  
*active* 126
  - a vs. passive verbs
  - b vs. *be* verbs
  - c actor as subject
- 9 Parallelism // 129
  - a series
  - b pairs
  - c repeated words
- 10 Needed words  
*add* 133
  - a compound structures
  - b *that*
  - c in comparisons
  - d *a, an, and the*
- 11 Mixed constructions  
*mix* 137
  - a mixed grammar
  - b illogical connections
  - c *is when, is where*, etc.
- 12 Misplaced and  
dangling modifiers  
*mm/dm* 140
  - a limiting modifiers

- b misplaced modifiers
  - c awkward placement
  - d split infinitives
  - e dangling modifiers
- 13 Shifts *shift* 147
    - a person, number
    - b tense
    - c mood, voice
    - d indirect to direct
  - 14 Emphasis *emph* 152
    - a coordination and subordination
    - b choppy sentences
    - c ineffective coordination
    - d ineffective subordination
    - e excessive subordination
    - f other techniques
  - 15 Variety *var* 163
  - 16 Wordy sentences  
*w* 166
  - 17 Appropriate  
language *appr* 170
    - a jargon
    - b pretentious language, euphemisms
    - c slang, nonstandard English
    - d levels of formality
    - e sexist language
    - f offensive language
  - 18 Exact words  
*exact* 180
    - a connotations
    - b concrete nouns
    - c misused words
    - d idioms
    - e clichés
    - f figures of speech

## Grammar 187

- 19 Sentence fragments  
*frag* 188
  - a subordinate clauses
  - b phrases
  - c other word groups
  - d acceptable fragments

## 20 Run-on sentences *run-on* 195

- a revision with *and, but*, etc.
- b with semicolon, colon, or dash
- c separating sentences
- d restructuring

## 21 Subject-verb agreement *sv agr* 202

- a standard combinations
- b words between subject and verb
- c subjects with *and*
- d subjects with *or, nor*, etc.
- e indefinite pronouns
- f collective nouns
- g subject after verb
- h subject complement
- i *who, which, that*
- j plural form
- k titles, words as words, etc.

## 22 Pronoun-antecedent agreement *pn agr* 213

- a indefinite pronouns, generic nouns
- b collective nouns
- c with *and*
- d with *or, nor*, etc.

## 23 Pronoun reference *ref* 218

- a ambiguous, remote
- b broad *this, that, which, it*
- c implied antecedents
- d indefinite *they, it, you*
- e *who, which, that*

## 24 Case of personal pronouns *case* 222

- a subjective case
- b objective case
- c appositives
- d after *than or as*
- e *we, us* before a noun

- f with infinitives
- g with gerunds
- 25** Case of *who* and *whom* *case* 227
- 26** Adjectives and adverbs *adj/adv* 230
  - a adjectives
  - b adverbs
  - c *good, well, bad, badly*
  - d comparatives and superlatives
  - e double negatives
- 27** Verb forms, tenses, moods *vb* 237
  - a irregular verbs
  - b *lie* and *lay*
  - c *-s* (or *-es*) endings
  - d *-ed* endings
  - e omitted verbs
  - f tense
  - g mood

## Multilingual/ESL 255

- 28** Verbs *ESL* 256
- 29** Articles; types of nouns *ESL* 270
- 30** Structure *ESL* 279
- 31** Prepositions and idioms *ESL* 288

## Punctuation 293

- 32** The comma  $\uparrow$  294
  - a with *and, but*, etc.
  - b introductory elements
  - c series
  - d coordinate adjectives
  - e nonrestrictive elements
  - f transitions
  - g direct address, *yes* and *no*, etc.
  - h *he said* etc.
  - i dates, addresses, titles, numbers
  - j to prevent confusion
- 33** Unnecessary commas *no*, 308
- 34** The semicolon ; 313
  - a independent clauses

- b transitional expressions
- c series
- d misuses
- 35** The colon : 317
  - a with lists, appositives, quotations
  - b conventional uses
  - c misuses
- 36** The apostrophe  $\downarrow$  319
  - a possessive nouns
  - b indefinite pronouns
  - c contractions
  - d plurals of numbers, letters, etc.
  - e misuses
- 37** Quotation marks “ ” 323
  - a direct quotations
  - b quotation within a quotation
  - c titles of short works
  - d words as words
  - e with other punctuation marks
  - f misuses

- 38** End punctuation 330
  - a period .
  - b question mark ?
  - c exclamation point !
- 39** Other punctuation marks 332
  - a dash —
  - b parentheses ( )
  - c brackets [ ]
  - d ellipsis mark ...
  - e slash /

## Mechanics 337

- 40** Abbreviations *abbr* 338
- 41** Numbers *num* 341
- 42** Italics *ital* 343
- 43** Spelling *sp* 345
- 44** The hyphen *hyph* 353
- 45** Capitalization *cap* 356

## Grammar Basics 361

- 46** Parts of speech *basic* 362
- 47** Sentence patterns *basic* 375
- 48** Subordinate word groups *basic* 383
- 49** Sentence types *basic* 392

## Research 395

- 50** Conducting research *res* 396
- 51** Managing information; taking notes *res* 408
- 52** Evaluating sources *res* 416

## MLA Papers 431

- 53** Thesis *MLA* 435
- 54** Avoiding plagiarism *MLA* 441
- 55** Integrating sources *MLA* 445
- 56** Documenting sources *MLA* 458
- 57** Manuscript format *MLA* 513
  - Sample paper* 517

## APA Papers 527

- 58** Thesis *APA* 530
- 59** Avoiding plagiarism *APA* 534
- 60** Integrating sources *APA* 537
- 61** Documenting sources *APA* 546
- 62** Manuscript format *APA* 580
  - Sample paper* 585

## Appendixes 597

- Document design 597
- Glossary of usage 608

## Answers to lettered exercises 622

## Index 636

**You're a writer.**

***Rules for Writers* is here for you.**

No one learns everything about writing in a single course or even two; we all need to consult the rules or seek out advice sometimes. Having a reliable support system is key. Your peers, your instructor, and your writing center are part of your support system—and so is your *Rules for Writers*. Whatever the assignment, whatever your purpose for writing, *Rules for Writers* has answers and advice you need for papers and projects in every course. The more you rely on your handbook and learn from its advice, the more successful you'll be as a college writer.

**79%**

According to a recent survey of 700 students at 50 colleges, 79% of students feel that their handbook makes them more effective academic writers.

## More support for you online

If your instructor has assigned this book with LaunchPad Solo for *Rules for Writers*, use the activation code to access even more support. Visit [macmillanhighered.com/rules8e](http://macmillanhighered.com/rules8e) to check out **192** grammar and research exercises, **39** sample student papers, and **30** LearningCurve adaptive quizzes.

macmillanhighered.com

bedford  
ST. MARTIN'S



ISBN 978-1-319-08349-6

